<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Session</th>
<th>Room</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

(Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.)
PREFACE.

The editors have undertaken the task of reediting entirely the well-known Allen & Greenough's *Cæsar*, to satisfy the ever-increasing demands of modern secondary education. In view of the improvements lately made in the text of *Cæsar* by Meusel and others, they have changed the readings in many places, following chiefly Meusel's as almost a new textus receptus. Most of the changes will at once commend themselves. The editors have in general been conservative in regard to spelling, especially the new spelling of old Gallic names, feeling that much that is proposed of that kind as yet lacks certainty. But they have adopted the spelling -is for the accusative plural of i-stems in accordance with the prevailing usage. They have allowed themselves full liberty in enriching the notes as to grammar, exegesis, and subject-matter. They have added very full suggestions for parallel reading, and have spared no pains to enrich the study of this famous piece of literature. The treatises on military affairs and other introductory matters have been rewritten and brought out of the notes under one head, so that a pupil may have a chance to gain some general information before he begins to read. Special attention has been given to indirect discourse, the bugbear of Latin education, and throughout the earlier books the direct form has been printed in full in the notes, that any teacher who desires may
begin either the first or second book and avoid at the start the enormous difficulties of the indirect form. They have endeavored to put in every kind of illustration that might tend to make the story more real to the pupil's imagination.

In order to encourage pupils to associate words together for acquiring a vocabulary they have made a large number of groups of words containing the same elements without introducing the vague notion of roots. It is hoped that these may be found convenient to learn by heart, at least in some measure. Attention is also called to the foot-notes which have been added to the text. In the first four books these refer backward to some previous use of the same word. In the last three books reference is made to words of similar or opposite meaning, whereby it is thought that sight-reading may be facilitated. The editors have not thought it desirable to give any pronouncing vocabulary of proper names, as generally these may be pronounced in the Latin manner, except those few that are familiar enough to have become English words, like Caesar and Cicero, which of course must be pronounced like English. The vocabulary has been enriched by a fuller insertion of idioms, and the etymological matter has been made clearer without sacrificing its peculiar character.

April, 1898.

J. B. G.
B. L. D.
M. G. D.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List of Maps and Illustrations</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Introduction

| I. Life of Cæsar                  | xiii |
| II. Roman Military Affairs        | xxix |
| III. Gaul and the Gauls           | xlv  |
| IV. The Britons                   | lli  |
| V. The Germans                    | liii |
| VI. The Campaigns in Gaul         | liv  |
| VII. Reading Courses              | lv   |
| VIII. Directions for Reading      | lvii |

| Book I                           | 1    |
| Book II                          | 49   |
| Book III                         | 74   |
| Book IV                          | 94   |
| Book V                           | 117  |
| Book VI                          | 157  |
| Book VII                         | 186  |
| Notes                            | 247  |
| Groups of Related Words          | 443  |

### Vocabulary
LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

Babelon. — Description historique et chronologique des Monnaies de la République romaine. 1885.
Baumeister. — Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums. 1885-88.
Bertrand and Perrot. — Revue archéologique, 3rd Series, Tome X.
Cohen. — Description générale des Monnaies de la République romaine, etc. 1857.
Fleury. — Antiquités et Monuments du département de l'Aisne, etc. 1877-78.
von Gölker. — Caesar’s Gallischer Krieg, etc. 1880.
Grasset. — Costumes de Guerre de l'age du bronze et de l'ère gauloise. 1886.
Guhl and Kohner. — The Life of the Greeks and Romans, described from Antique Monuments. 1875.
Head. — A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients. (Br. Mus.) 1881.
Jeuffrain. — Essai d'Interprétation de Types de quelques Médailles muettes, émises par les Celtes-Gaulois. 1846.
von Kampen. — XV ad Caesaris de Bell. Gall. Commentarios Tabulae. 1879.
Lindenschmidt. — Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres während der Kaiserzeit, etc. 1882.
Oehler. — Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bell. Gall. 1890.
Rheinhard. — C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii de Bell. Gall. 1896.
Stoffel. — Guerre de César et d’Arioviste. 1890.

Fig. 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fig.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Cæsar. Bust in the Museum of the Louvre</td>
<td>Frontispiece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Campaign map of B.C. 58</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Pas de l'Ecluse (looking down stream). Photograph</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig.</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Junction of the Rhône and Saône (looking south). Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Loading boats with supplies. Froehner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Gallic remains. Grasset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Soldiers marching with packs (sarcinae). Froehner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Roman javelins (pila). Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Plan of battle with the Helvetii. von Kampen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Roman swords. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>View of Besançon (Vesontio). From a drawing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>View of the fortress of Belfort. Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Coin of the Fabian family. Obverse: ROMA Q. MAX. Laurelled head of Apollo, lyre in front. Reverse: horn of plenty filled with fruits; thunderbolts; the whole in a wreath of grain ears and poppy. Cohen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Map of the campaign with Ariovistus. Stoffel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Soldiers attacked while encamping. Froehner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Ostheim, looking towards Zellenberg. Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Plan of battle with Ariovistus. Stoffel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Campaign map of B.C. 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Writing materials: atramentarium (for black and red ink); papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO FLAM[ini] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[s]); dip-tycha (folding tablet), stilus, and erasing knife. Wall painting. Overbeck's Pompeii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Gaul with trumpet. Restoration from carvings on the Arc de Triomphe at Orange. Crasset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Coin of Diviciacus, king of the Suessiones. Fleury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Slinger (funditor). Dict. des Antiquités</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Berry au Bac. Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Battle on the Aisne. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig.</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Vinea or Testudo. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Hautmont. Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Defeat of the Nervii. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Lituus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>Tuba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>Cornu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>Aquilifer. Lindenschmidt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>Centurio. Lindenschmidt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>Citadel of Namur. Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>Siege of the stronghold of the Aduatuci. From first ed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Siege works. von Göler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>Gallic coins. (1) Obverse: a Gaul running, with torch in one hand and torque (?) in the other. Reverse: bear (?). (2) Obverse: ox-head. Reverse: bear of the Helvetii. Fleury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Shipbuilder. Grave relief (Ravenna). Schreiber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>Map of Octodurus. von Kampen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>Cæsar. Bust in the British Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>Galley. From the Præneste relief. Baumeister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>Map of the Veneti neighborhood. Altered from modern map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>View at mouth of the Loire. Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>Roman battle ship. Wall painting at Pompeii. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>Trading vessel. Ancient relief. Baumeister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>Gallic sword-blade. Museum at Namur. Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>Soldiers making camp. Froehner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Campaign map of B.C. 55-53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Scenery on the Meuse. Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Bridge. From first ed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Cliffs of Dover. &quot;Shakespeare’s Cliff.&quot; Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>Catapulta. Modern restoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig.</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Anchor and tackle. <em>Arc de Triomphe</em> at Orange. Schreiber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Soldiers foraging. <em>Froehner</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Gallic coin. <em>Jeuffrain</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Map of campaigns in Britain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Boulogne. <em>Photograph</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Testudo. <em>Froehner</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Soldiers building camp, with guards. <em>Froehner</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Signa Militaria. <em>Guhl and Kner</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>Roman Transports. <em>Froehner</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>Hollow square. Col. of M. Aurelius. <em>Oehler</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Roman camp assaulted. <em>Froehner</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Ballista. Modern restoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Obverse: human figure seated. Reverse: bear, serpent, and stars. <em>Jeuffrain</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>Gallic torques. Museum at Namur. <em>Photograph</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>Cæsar. Bust in the Naples Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>Gallic chief. Museum at Avignon. <em>Photograph</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Bridge. Model in the Museum of St. Germain. <em>Oehler</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Gallic coin. <em>Jeuffrain</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Gallic coins. LVCOTI (Paris?); human eye in profile, supposed to symbolize the sun. <em>Fleury</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Statue of Ambiorix at Tongres. <em>Photograph</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>Sacrifice in camp. Military band (<em>Cornicines</em>). <em>Froehner</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Soldiers marching in presence of the Imperator. <em>Froehner</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>Chain mail. Fragment found at Mainz. <em>Oehler</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>Helmets. <em>Schreiber</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>Campaign map of B.C. 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Siege of Avaricum. <em>von Kampen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>Bourges. <em>Photograph</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>View of siege works. <em>von Kampen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig.</td>
<td>Map/Illustration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>Plan of siege works. von Kampen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>Gallic wall. Model in the Museum of St. Germain, slightly restored from existing remains at Murcens. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>Scorpio. Modern restoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>Coin of the Bituriges. Obverse: beardless male head. Reverse: galloping horse, flying eagle above; below three circles. ABVDOS (name of chief?). Head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>Siege of Gergovia. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>Care of the wounded. Froehner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Expeditio Labieni. von Kampen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Defeat of Vercingetorix at the Vingeanne. von Kampen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Alise Ste. Reine (Alesia). Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Siege of Alesia. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>View of Caesar's line of works before Alesia. Model in the Museum of St. Germain. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Light-armed soldier. Lindenschmidt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Archer. Lindenschmidt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>Statue of Vercingetorix. Erected at Alesia by order of Napoleon III. Designed by Bartholdi. Photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>The legionary. Slightly altered from Bartholdi's Model in the Museum of St. Germain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Fleury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Obverse: horse. VIRO (perhaps name of a chief), or VIRO[mandui]. Reverse: various devices. Fleury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Rude representation of a human head. Fleury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Horse, stars, circles. Fleury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Cock. Fleury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Signifer. Lindenschmidt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>Soldiers. From first ed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>Scutum. Rheinhard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>Scutum. Rheinhard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>Wall and ditch. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>Castra Romana. Rheinhard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>General view of siege operations. Rheinhard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig.</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.</td>
<td>Vexillum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.</td>
<td>Aquila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Reverse: L. Hostilius Sasem[a]. Warrior fighting, armed with spear and shield, in a Gallic chariot (essedum) driven by a charioteer holding a whip. Babeion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.</td>
<td>Caliga. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.</td>
<td>Oppugnatio. From first ed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127.</td>
<td>Signum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128.</td>
<td>Tabernaculum. Rheinhard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.</td>
<td>Pluteus. Modern restoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130.</td>
<td>Pluteus. Modern restoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131.</td>
<td>Liiium. Oehler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132.</td>
<td>Stimulus. Oehler</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

"Julius Cæsar, whose remembrance yet
Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues
Be theme and hearing ever." — Shakespeare.

"The greatest name in history." — Merivale.

I. THE POLITICAL CONDITION OF ITALY IN THE FIRST
CENTURY B.C.

The Roman state was in form and name a commonwealth or republic. While Rome was a small agricultural community and her citizens a body of patriotic, sturdy, and independent freeholders, the task of government was easy and the constitution well adapted to its purpose. The wars that followed for the establishment and extension of her power at first fostered unity and soundness of national life. But in course of time Rome became an imperial state and took upon herself the guardianship of every country in the world. Wealth flowed into her coffers from every quarter of the earth, her citizens became corrupt, and the rule of the people became the rule of a rich landed aristocracy, whose principal ambition was to perpetuate its mischievous power. The organ of this aristocracy was the senate, a body of six or seven hundred men, who became members of it nominally by virtue of holding certain high offices, and who remained senators for life. In theory, therefore, the senate was elective, and rested on the popular will; but the members really became such on account of noble blood, wealth, or political, social, or other influence. Moreover, the great offices of the state came to be bought and sold openly and without shame, and opposing factions contended not with ballots alone, but with iron and
steel, so that the election place was frequently stained with the blood of the slain. It became increasingly difficult for one not possessing and willing to use such means to be elected to any office.

Opposed to the landed aristocracy was a class of wealthy capitalists known as *equites*, the "Equestrian Order." Many of these were as rich as the senators, but their wealth — most of it gained by usury, state contracts, slave-dealing, and tax-gathering — consisted of money instead of land. They took no active interest in politics excepting so far as they could influence legislation to their advantage by lobbying and bribing.

There was no industrious middle class among the free citizens of Rome. Manufacture on a large scale, as a means of wealth, was absolutely unknown; while all mechanical industries were carried on by slaves. The poorer class of citizens, the *plebs*, were wholly influenced in their votes by their wealthy patrons or by scheming demagogues. The freedmen were the only class who could become rich by industry.

The rural portions of Italy were for the most part held in large plantations (*latifundia*), owned by nobles and cultivated by slaves, or, more frequently, occupied by great droves of cattle. This plantation system had crowded out the free peasant proprietors in almost all parts of the peninsula. After throwing up their farms, which foreign competition had made unprofitable, they flocked to Rome to swell the idle mob that lived on what their votes would bring. There still remained, especially in Northern Italy, a considerable body of small land owners; and the municipal towns (*municipia*), about four hundred in number, whose territories comprised, politically speaking, the whole area of Italy, were still the home of a fairly prosperous middle class. These had all received Roman citizenship after the social war (B.C. 90) and might, by their substantial character and intelligence, have served as a strong opposition to the corrupt aristocracy at Rome; but they lacked organization and leadership, and when they went to Rome to vote, they were wholly powerless against the turbulent political clubs of the metropolis, whose violence was a regular feature of all public proceedings. Yet in this class alone was the old Roman virtue to be found, and in it lay whatever hope there was to redeem the state.
Another menace to the government was in the constitution of
the armies. After a man had been consul, he was given charge of a
province and was put in command of several legions. While abroad
he was not amenable to the government at home, and when he
returned he used his old soldiers to further his political schemes, and
rewarded them at the expense of the opposing faction, often by
wholesale spoliation and murder.

Partisans of the nobility were known as Optimates; those opposed
to them as Populares. Before Cæsar, the most conspicuous leader
of the former had been Sulla, of the latter, Marius, Cæsar’s uncle by
marriage. These two men by their thirst for power and mutual
hatred filled all Italy with bloodshed and terror for years. Under
the established régime there was no continuity in government, but a
perpetual see-saw between rivals. Rome was kept in a constant
electioneering excitement accompanied by the worst forms of demorali-
zation. All the vast interests of the Roman world were sacrificed to
the luxury and ambition of a governing class wholly incompetent for
its task; and the only resource against anarchy appears to have been
that some one man, by craft or by force, should get all the reins of
does of
power into his single hand. That man was destined to be Julius Cæsar.

II. Cæsar’s Earlier Career.

“Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village,
Than be second in Rome.” — Longfellow.

Caius Julius Cæsar (Gaius Julius Caesar) was born July 12th, B.C.
100, or, according to some authorities, two years earlier. Assuming
the later date, he was six years younger than Pompey, his great rival,
and Cicero, the distinguished orator. His ancestry was of the noblest,
and was supposed to reach back on his mother’s side to Ancus
Marcius, the Roman king, and on the father’s to Æneas, the founder
of the Roman nation and reputed to be the son of a goddess.

The time of his birth was during the great ascendancy of the
Populares under Marius, his uncle; and his childhood was passed
amid the horrors of the proscriptions that marked Marius’s dictatorship.
Though Cæsar was connected by blood with the oldest and
Introduction.

proudest houses of Rome, he early showed his predilection for the party of the people; and the sturdy Marius, with all his defects, doubtless exercised a marked influence over the life and destinies of his young nephew. Cæsar lost his father early in life, so that most of the responsibility for his education and bringing up rested upon his mother, Aurelia. She was a typical matron of the old school, managing her house with simplicity and frugality, and holding to the traditions and virtues of the ancient Romans. Tacitus, the Roman historian, couples her name with that of Cornelia, the famous mother of the Gracchi. Cæsar owed much of his future greatness to her influence, and his love and reverence for her are highly honorable to both.

In the year 86, when Cæsar was still a boy, he was appointed a priest of Jupiter. This office was a perfunctory one and had little real religious significance. In 83 he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, an act which identified him thus early with the Populares; for Cinna was a very prominent leader of that party. It was soon after this that Sulla, the leader of the Optimates, returned from Asia Minor with a victorious army, prepared to take a terrible revenge for the proscription of Marius. Cæsar soon fell under his displeasure because of his relationship to Marius. He was ordered to divorce his young wife because she was Cinna’s daughter. In this crisis Cæsar showed a prominent trait of his character, a trait which led him during all his life to brave every danger rather than allow himself to be controlled. Though but a youth, he refused to obey Sulla’s command. A price was set on his head and he was obliged to flee for his life. Often he was in great peril, and once he was taken, and escaped only by bribing his captor. His friends interceded for him, pleading his youth, and finally obtained his pardon, Sulla saying, “Take him, since you will have it so; but I would have you know that the youth for whom you are so earnest, will one day overthrow the aristocracy. I see in him many Mariuses.”

Cæsar thinking it safer to leave Italy for a time went to Asia Minor, where he gained some military experience and distinguished himself for valor by saving a comrade’s life. Sulla died in 78 and Cæsar returned to his family and resumed his studies. He was a diligent and thorough student and doubtless followed the usual course
of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory. To be a good speaker was essential to political success, and Cæsar was especially anxious to excel in that direction. He gave some public exhibitions of his skill and won much applause; but anxious to perfect himself still farther he went to Rhodes in 76, to study under Apollonius Molon, the most famous teacher of oratory and rhetoric of the day. On this journey, when near Miletus, he was captured by pirates and held for a heavy ransom. He spent some time among them while waiting for the money, and joined in their sports and games with the greatest freedom, at the same time assuring them that he would hang them all as soon as he was free. They seem to have regarded him with mingled awe and admiration. The ransom was paid. Cæsar was released, went at once to Miletus, where he hastily collected a few ships and made a descent on the pirates before they dreamt of danger. He recovered the ransom money and punished the pirates as he had threatened.

On his return to Rome, he began his political career (B.C. 68) by serving as quaestor, an office connected with the public treasury and the first step toward the consulship. This was followed in 65 by the ædileship. The taking of this office, which was one of the chief magistracies, though it involved only the care of the public buildings and the oversight of the great festivals and games, was considered a direct bid for a future consulship, and a man's claims upon that higher office were determined in large measure by the lavishness and splendor of his ædileship. Cæsar was poor, but with characteristic boldness he played for the highest political stakes and did not hesitate to incur enormous debts, in fact so enormous that those who had not the most perfect confidence in his capacity and his powers believed him irretrievably ruined. His ædileship surpassed all before it in magnificence; but he left it—as he remarked with grim humor—worth more than a million dollars less than nothing.

After his ædileship he identified himself more and more with the popular faction, and even dared to restore some of the statues and trophies of Marius, which had been banished from sight seventeen years before by the order of Sulla. The people began to hope for a successful revival of the Marian party and to look to Cæsar as its leader.
In B.C. 63 he was elected *pontifex maximus* against the strong opposition of the *Optimates*. This office was one of great political power and dignity, though not formally a civil office. Cæsar held it for the rest of his life. In 62 he was elected prætor, an office of a judicial character, and this was followed by a year of command in Spain as proprætor. Before leaving for Spain, his creditors became insistent and threatened to detain him unless he paid them. Cæsar then obtained a large loan from the richest man in Rome, Crassus, who was ambitious for office and doubtless hoped to make good use in turn of Cæsar’s brilliant abilities to further his own ends.

In Spain Cæsar gained valuable military experience and made his administration so profitable to himself, as was usual with provincial governors, that, though he left Rome owing millions of sesterces, he returned in the year 60 with enough money to pay all his debts. His design was to run for the consulship, the highest office in the gift of the people. To secure his election he effected a union of interests between himself and Crassus and Pompey. These were the two most powerful men in Rome,—Crassus because of his wealth, Pompey because of his fame as a general and his popularity with the army. The latter was, in fact, really the first man in the state. He had but recently returned from Asia Minor laden with the spoils of the Mithridatic war, and might easily have seized the dictatorship had he so chosen; but he disbanded his army and preferred to appear as a private citizen, but with almost autocratic power. He had quarreled with Crassus, but Cæsar reconciled them, and the three formed a sort of offensive and defensive alliance known as the first triumvirate,—what we should call a political deal. This was for Cæsar, who was at that time quite their inferior in fame and influence, a master stroke of craft and diplomacy.

In 59 Cæsar was elected consul almost without opposition. He well understood the critical condition of affairs and saw clearly the dangers that threatened the state, and instituted valuable reforms looking to its regeneration and salvation. The army and the moneyed classes represented by Pompey and Crassus were with him, and he could do almost as he pleased. His first act was the passage of an agrarian law, by which thousands of acres were to be distributed to the poor. This was not a mere act of bribery, but an attempt to
restore the peasant freeholders, who had been dispossessed by the rich. Then he passed the excellent body of laws known as the Leges Juliae, which mark an epoch in Roman jurisprudence, and which were devised in the interests of individual rights, purity of justice, morality, and good government. All that one man could do in a single year to save his country from anarchy, Cæsar did.

Cæsar was now forty-three years of age. With the exception of the time spent in Spain, his life had been employed in petty miserable contests with Roman factions. He longed for a new and larger field where he might have freedom to perform deeds worthy of his surpassing abilities and unbounded ambition. This opportunity came to him when, as proconsul, he was entrusted with the protection of the northern frontier against the Gauls, and was assigned the provin-ces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum. It was a most hazardous post and doubtless many of the Optimates thought that they were well rid of him.

III. Cæsar in Gaul.

"What security men derive from a resolute spirit." — Cæsar.

By the 'deal' of the triumvirate, Cæsar was to have the government of Gaul for five years, while Crassus and Pompey were to remain in the city to look after the interests of the coalition. The bond was farther strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Julia, Cæsar's young and beautiful daughter.

Cæsar, as we have seen, was over forty when he went to Gaul. He was more of a civilian than a soldier and was far more at home in the Forum than in the camp. Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon had been trained in war from childhood. The qualities that are most potent in war—hope, confidence, audacity, and pugnacity—are qualities that belong to youth. So Cæsar is an anomaly in military history. In spite of his years and his comparative inexperience, he leaped at once to the highest place, and is counted to-day among the three or four greatest generals in history, if not the greatest of them all. He never lost a set battle and he showed infinite versatility in adapting means to ends, always doing the right thing at the
right time. He never admits the possibility of defeat and overcomes the most stupendous difficulties with such ease that he rarely speaks of them. His promptness of decision and rapidity of execution were such that the enemy were constantly overwhelmed with awe and were led to regard him as a supernatural being. 'Forced marches,' 'continuous marching day and night,' 'as quickly as possible' are phrases that recur again and again in his narrative. Only a natural ruler of men could get things done with such swiftness. He carried out his plans with the greatest audacity and, at the same time, without recklessness. No one could be more minute and thorough in preparations than he. No one left less chance for luck, good or bad, to enter into the result. In all that was done, his was the masterful and presiding genius, and the legions rarely accomplished much in his absence. His relations with his soldiers were most cordial. They idolized him and he respected and admired them and constantly labored for their safety and comfort. He allows them to share in the glory of his victories and in his story lingers with delight over their heroic exploits. He shared all their dangers and privations, he excelled personally in deeds of arms, and he allowed himself no luxury but a favorite horse. It is not strange that when trouble came upon their master, his soldiers were true to him, and even volunteered to serve without pay. Only three of his officers, two of them Gauls, went over to the enemy, while thousands came to him from the other side.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56, Cæsar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost like a royal court. More than two hundred senators were present, and one hundred and twenty lictors were in attendance, attached to the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and, after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar command to that held by Cæsar,—namely, that Pompey should command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also that when Cæsar's five years were up, he should receive in the same way a second term of five years. His ten years' administration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time
an interval of ten years having elapsed—he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhæ, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province into the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence.

Cæsar served eight campaigns in Gaul, an account of which is contained in the eight books of his Commentaries. Seven of these he wrote himself. The eighth was written by his friend and staff-officer, Hirtius. During these years he stormed more than 800 towns and subdued 300 tribes, engaged with more than 3,000,000 men, swept over a million human beings from the earth, and took a million more prisoners to be sold into slavery. "He was the first to lead an army into interior Gaul, the first to cross the Rhine into Germany, the first to bring a navy into the Western Ocean or to sail into the Atlantic with an army to make war." He left a magnificent country for the Romans to appropriate and retain until their increasing corruption left it in turn an easy prey to the Germans. He inspired such terror of the Roman arms that the tide of barbarian invasion was stayed for centuries.

IV. Cæsar's Later Career.

"The foremost man of all this world."—Shakespeare.
"Cæsar could bear no superior, Pompey no equal."—Lucan.

Meanwhile events had been moving on at Rome. With Crassus dead, Cæsar and Pompey were left in the enjoyment of almost absolute authority. They had been friends from youth, but none the less rivals, and the death of Julia (B.C. 54) sundered the last ties that bound them together. In 52 Pompey had been made sole consul and found himself at the head of a party which, under cover of the constitution, was determined to destroy Cæsar that it might retain the power which his reforms threatened to place in worthier hands.

Cæsar's proconsulship of Gaul would expire at the end of B.C. 49. He wished to run for a second consulship in B.C. 48. The senate
resolved to prevent this, and commanded him to resign his office and disband his army several months before the expiration of his term. If they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they knew they could crush him. Cæsar knew this too, and refused to obey the decree unless Pompey should also disband his troops. Pompey would have been willing to agree to this fair proposition, but his friends would not permit him, and were bent on destroying Cæsar. Naturally the charge of false play was made on both sides, and the strife continued until Cæsar was finally declared a public enemy. He therefore crossed the Rubicon, a small stream which formed the boundary of his province and the limit of his authority, and began to march towards Rome. He took but a single legion with him and continued his efforts to come to an understanding with the Optimates, having hopes of a compromise. He made a speech to his soldiers, explaining the situation, and was assured of their enthusiastic support. Labienus alone deserted him, corrupted, it is said, by Roman gold.

Cæsar's march through Italy was like a triumphal procession; the cities opened their gates to him and he was everywhere hailed with enthusiasm. Among the Optimates there was nothing but consternation and fear. They had pinned their faith to Pompey, who had boasted that he had but to stamp his foot on the ground and legions would spring from the earth ready to obey him. He had vastly overrated himself (as was his wont), and had no conception of Cæsar's power and genius. Cicero well sums up the situation in a letter to his friend Atticus: "The consuls are helpless. There has been no levy. With Cæsar pressing forward and our general doing nothing, the men will not come to be enrolled. Pompey is prostrate, without courage, without purpose, without force, without energy." Pompey had been looked upon by his partisans as almost divine. He had been peculiarly fortunate throughout his career and had made a great military reputation by assuming the laurels that others had won. Mommsen says of him: "He was radically a commonplace man, formed by nature to make a good corporal, but forced by circumstances to be a general." Now that he was confronted by a really serious difficulty and by a really able man, he was paralyzed.

Pompey with his forces and accompanied by the senators fled in
The Life of Caius Julius Caesar.

a panic to Brundisium and sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. Cæsar meanwhile continued his victorious advance, and in sixty days was master of Italy. Then he went to Spain, and before autumn closed had met and defeated all opposition there. Returning to Rome he made preparations to follow Pompey. Many prominent Optimates had fallen into his hands, but he let them all go free, to their own great amazement and to Cæsar’s eternal praise. In a letter he says: “I will conquer after a new fashion and fortify myself in the possession of the power I acquire by generosity and mercy.”

Cæsar followed Pompey across the sea from Brundisium, transporting his army in two divisions. He encountered considerable difficulty on account of storms and the lack of ships. After much skirmishing, anxiety, and suffering (on Cæsar’s part), owing to scarcity of food and supplies, he fought a battle at Pharsalia in Thessaly on Aug. 9, B.C. 48. Before the battle Pompey’s officers felt so sure of victory that a rich banquet was spread awaiting their return from the field. In numbers and equipment Pompey was much superior, and with him was all the wealth and respectability of Rome. He had 45,000 infantry and 5000 cavalry against Cæsar’s 22,000 and 1000, respectively; but he was overwhelmingly defeated and the battle ended in a terrible panic and great slaughter, in which 15,000 men lost their lives. As Cæsar viewed the slain he said sadly: “They would have it so. After all that I had done for my country, I, Gaius Cæsar, should have been condemned as a criminal if I had not appealed to my army.”

Pompey fled for his life and took ship to Egypt and was there murdered by the king, who hoped thus to win Cæsar’s favor. When Cæsar arrived there, however, a few days later, and Pompey’s head was presented to him, he is said to have turned away from the sight with horror and grief. He now overcame all remaining opposition in several short and brilliant campaigns. The first of these was in Asia Minor, where he conquered so easily that he reported it to the senate in the words that have since become famous: “Veni, vidi, vici.” By the battle of Thapsus in Africa (B.C. 46) and that of Munda in Spain (B.C. 45), the Pompeian party was finally crushed.

Cæsar now returned to Rome, where he was made imperator—possessing the entire imperium, or military dominion of Rome, not
of a single colony or province merely—and perpetual dictator \(\text{\textit{dictator perpetuo}}\), which offices clothed him with all the political authority of the state. By the powers thus conferred he laid the foundations of the Imperial constitution, which was afterwards (B.C. 30) set in operation by his grand-nephew and adopted son, Octavianus, later known as Augustus. This scheme of government eventually became (as was possibly foreseen from the start) an hereditary monarchy, under the name and form of a republic. During the short period of Cæsar’s rule he continued the good work of his first consulship and carried a series of measures of wise and practical statesmanship, such as the reform of the calendar, the regulation of the administrative system, and the policy of checks upon the abuses of the money power. He also planned extensive military expeditions against Parthia, Scythia, and Germany, and large public works and improvements, such as draining the Pomptine marshes and cutting through the isthmus of Corinth. With characteristic energy he accomplished much in a very short time.

But the possession of this exalted authority involved the utter overthrow of the constitution and necessarily excited alarm and jealousy among patriots and demagogues alike. Rumors were abroad that Cæsar was seeking to be king, a name detested at Rome since the foundation of the republic. His rivals were jealous, and not a few friends were disappointed at not having received as large favors as they thought they deserved. Many of his former enemies were bitter against him, because he had been magnanimous enough to forgive them. These feelings culminated in a conspiracy against his life. The leaders were Cassius, a violent and fearless man driven mad by jealousy and baffled ambition; and Marcus Brutus, who had no better friend than Cæsar, but who fancied that he must emulate his ancestor, Brutus the first consul, who expelled the Tarquins. Cæsar received many warnings of what was going on, but disregarded them all with his usual indifference to danger. The deed was consummated in the senate-house on the Ides of March, B.C. 44. The great dictator was struck down by false friends and fell, pierced with wounds, at the foot of Pompey’s statue. This dastardly act received the condemnation it deserved, and few have dared to defend it on the ground of patriotism. Those concerned in it all
died violent deaths soon after. Both Brutus and Cassius committed suicide, the latter stabbing himself with the very dagger which he had used against Cæsar.¹

V. PERSON AND CHARACTER OF CÆSAR.

"Death makes no conquest of this conqueror
For now he lives in fame, though not in life."—Shakespeare.

"Great Julius, whom all the world admires."—Milton.

Suetonius describes Cæsar when a youth as tall, slight, and handsome, with dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. He adds further that he was neat to effeminacy about his dress and appearance. Fond of athletics, he excelled in all manly sports, especially in riding. In danger he knew no fear and often performed acts of great personal daring. His health was vigorous until his later years, and he could endure an apparently unlimited amount of labor and hardship. Added years gave him a majestic and commanding presence without detracting from the grace and courtesy of his bearing. We judge him to have been a man of singular charm and of unusual personal magnetism.

Thanks to the peculiar skill possessed by the ancients in the art of portraiture, we have good reason to believe that we may see the great dictator as he was, from existing statues and busts. Two of the most noted of these are the busts in the British Museum (Fig. 47) and that in the Louvre (Fig. 1). The one in the Naples Museum (Fig. 78) is judged by competent critics to be conventional and not modelled after the living man. Those first mentioned are thought to be true to life. The one in the British Museum shows us Cæsar the statesman, the man of peace; the one in the Louvre, Cæsar the man of action, the martial hero.²

¹ For a vivid imaginative account of the conspiracy, see Shakespeare's "Julius Cæsar."

What Alexander was to the Greeks, and Hannibal to the Carthaginians, that and much more was Cæsar to the Romans. The two former excelled all men of their times in war only; but Cæsar had such extraordinary abilities in widely different directions that many regard him as the most remarkable man that history records. In whatever he did, he always did the best possible. He had the greatest diversity of gifts: as a student of language, he composed a treatise on grammar while crossing the Alps; as an orator, Quintilian says he would have rivalled Cicero had he devoted his time to this art; as a general, he has had no superior and hardly a peer; and, above all, he was the greatest politician and statesman of his time. To his statecraft all his other acts are subordinate, and by this they should be interpreted.

Cæsar was too great a man to be without enemies. He has been accused of being a traitor to his country, who by a deep-laid scheme overthrew its constitution. He was undoubtedly ambitious for power, and he used it in making such changes in the constitution as were sorely needed to keep it from going to pieces; but how far the acts by which he accomplished this desirable end were the result of a plan to further his personal ambition, and how far they were compelled by the stress of circumstances, we cannot judge. We do know, however, that he professed an earnest desire for peace, until he was driven into war by the hatred and perversity of his opponents.

He has also been accused of immorality, cruelty, and irreligion. It would be vain to maintain that Cæsar was a model of virtue in an age that was notoriously and openly wicked and profligate. We know that Cæsar was a man of perfect self-control, and that he was remarkable for extreme abstemiousness in eating and drinking. As for the rest, he was probably no worse than the average.

Doubtless he was cruel, judged by modern standards. He butchered without mercy thousands of defenceless men, women, and children. But we must remember that Cæsar was a Roman, of a people naturally cruel and careless of bloodshed, and, again, that he was dealing with Gauls and Germans, whom the Romans despised, and for whom he had not, nor could have, any feelings of sympathy or kindness. The doctrine of human brotherhood is something he never heard of. But, on the other hand, contrast with this his constant care
and anxiety for the welfare of his soldiers, his patience and forbearance with their mistakes, such as no modern commander has exhibited in his memoirs, and, above all, recall his mercy to his opponents in the Civil War, whom he freely pardoned and restored to honor and favor. Contrast Cæsar’s dictatorship with the horrors of Marius and Sulla, and we cannot wonder that his clemency became famous.

That Cæsar was a skeptic is no doubt true. The age was skeptical and the learned classes no longer believed in the gods of their forefathers. What Cæsar’s real beliefs were, or if he had any, we do not know. He often speaks of fortune as ruling in the affairs of men, and probably had some vague and dimly defined belief in a supreme power.

VI. Cæsar’s Literary Work.

As a man of letters Cæsar is hardly less eminent. His vast and massive intellect could hold in its grasp a great variety of subjects. He wrote on many different themes, such as philosophy, language, astronomy, and divination. Of all his books only his Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars have come down to us in complete form. They stand as the best military history that was ever written. Their ulterior purpose was to justify him in the eyes of the world for the course he took in opposing the senate and the government. He does this rarely by argument, but by such a tactful and masterful collocation of facts that the unthinking reader feels himself persuaded that Cæsar could hardly have done otherwise.

The style of these memoirs is remarkable for directness, terseness, and simplicity. Cicero, one of the greatest masters of style, says of them, “I pronounce them indeed to be very commendable, for they are simple, straight-forward, agreeable, with all rhetorical ornament stripped from them as one strips off a garment.” While the language is lucid, it is packed full of meaning, and even a good Latinist needs to read slowly and with deliberation that the full thought of each sentence may be gathered. Sometimes a whole sentence is crammed into an adjective or a participle. To translate into good English requires, therefore, frequent amplification.

Like all great men, Cæsar rarely speaks of himself. In his works he refers to himself in the third person and with such modesty and
Introduction.

Impartiality that you would never suspect him to be the writer. He betrays his identity by three slips of the pen where he uses the first person. He never struts or poses for effect, not even when he is narrating sublime deeds of heroism.

Cæsar wrote his Commentaries in the midst of intense activity. They were jotted down as he journeyed and fought; mere notes, as it were, for future amplification. Hirtius says, "While others know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and rapidity he dashed them off."

For us the Gallic War has a peculiar interest because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of their present political and social peculiarities.

VII. Important Events in Cæsar's Life.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.C.</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Born, July 12th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Marries Cornelia, the Daughter of Cinna.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80–78</td>
<td>Serves with the Army in Asia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76–75</td>
<td>Studies Oratory at Rhodes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Quæstor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Aédile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Pontifex Maximus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Prætor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Proprætor in Spain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Forms the First Triumvirate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Consul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58–49</td>
<td>Proconsul in Gaul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Meeting of the Triumvirate at Luca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>The Trouble with Pompey begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>The Battle of Pharsalia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>The Battle of Thapsus. Declared Dictator for ten years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>The Battle of Munda. Appointed Imperator for life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>The Conspiracy. Assassinated in the Senate House on the Ides of March.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II.

ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS.

I. The Army and its Divisions.

1. The Legions.
2. The Cavalry.
3. The Auxiliaries.
4. The Engineers and Artisans.
5. The Artillery.
6. The Baggage Train.
7. The Officers and their Staff.

II. The Standards.

III. The Music.

IV. The Legionary.

a. Enlistment.
g. Work.h. Pay.i. Discipline.

V. The Camp.

VI. The March.

VII. The Battle.

VIII. The Siege.

IX. The Fleet.

I. The Army and its Divisions.

1. The Legions.

The Roman legion corresponded to a modern Division, but was more an organic whole, since it was the smallest unit that had separate line officers. What its normal strength was in Cæsar’s time we have no means of knowing; but a probable estimate puts it at 5000 men. The actual effective strength in the field, however, was usually much less, falling to 3000 men, as at the battle of Pharsalia (on Cæsar’s own authority). This variation in number was due to the many absences from duty which always occur in a military organization, and to the losses incurred by the individual legions in previous campaigns. Losses in old legions were not usually made good by new recruits, but the latter were formed into new legions; hence the older the legion, the smaller usually its enrollment. The average effective strength of the legion in the Gallic War was probably near 3600 men.
The subdivisions of the legions were as follows:

1 legion = 10 cohorts of about 360 men each.
1 cohort = 3 maniples of 120 men each.
1 maniple = 2 centuries of 60 men each.

There were, therefore, 10 cohorts, 30 maniples, and 60 centuries in each legion. These divisions did not, however, like our companies, have special "commissioned officers," but were commanded by centurions who came from the ranks. The legions constituted the main body of the army and did most of the fighting, but there were other arms employed for various purposes (see below). The legions were designated by numbers, given in the order of their enlistment.

2. The Cavalry.

The cavalry (equitatus), originally of Roman citizens, was in Cæsar’s time composed almost exclusively of recruits from subject or allied states. In Cæsar’s army it was composed of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. There was no fixed ratio between the number of legionaries and cavalry. In the campaign against the Helvetians, Cæsar had 4000 equites, in the battle of Pharsalia, 1000; but the number of legions was the same in both.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (alae) of about 330 horsemen each; these were subdivided into 10 squadrons (turmae) of 33 horsemen each; and these again into 3 squads (decuriae) of 11 each. See Figs. 12, 13.

3. The Auxiliaries.

The auxiliaries (auxilia peditum) were infantry forces from allied and subject states. Cæsar nowhere gives the number of his auxilia, and it was doubtless as various as that of his cavalry. They were the light-armed soldiers (milites levis armaturae), the archers (sagittarii), and the slingers (funditores). See Figs. 30, 104, 105, 115. The best slingers came from the Balearic Islands, the best archers from Crete and Numidia. The light-armed soldiers wore no heavy armor and carried a light round shield (parma). The archers had neither corselet, helmet, nor shield. The latter they could not carry on account of their bows.
Caesar placed little reliance on his *auxilia* for actual fighting, but used them for the most part to make a show of force and frighten the enemy (Bk. i. 51), and to assist in building fortifications. In engagements the bowmen and slingers were usually stationed on the wings (alae), and from this were called *alarii*.

4. The Engineers and Artisans.

The engineers and artisans (*fabri*) sometimes formed a separate corps under the command of a chief engineer (*praefectus fabrum*), and sometimes they were called from the ranks of the legions when their services were needed. Caesar had a chief engineer, but no special body of men (cf. Bk. v. 11). They were employed in building bridges, ships, winter quarters, and in repairing weapons and equipments.

5. The Artillery.

Engines of war were not often used on the battlefield, where modern artillery forms such an important branch of the service, but mainly in the defence and assault of fortified cities or camps. They had a limited use also in the fleet (Bk. iv. 25).

We have no exact account of the construction of these engines. Caesar almost always calls them *tormenta* (cf. *torquere*, *to twist*), a name which clearly points to the elasticity of twisted rope, sinew, or hair, for the source of their energy. They were of three kinds: *catapultae, ballistae*, and *scorpiones* (see Figs. 61, 75, 95). The *catapultae* shot great arrows in a horizontal direction, like a cannon; the *ballistae* hurled great stones or heavy blocks of wood through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells. The range of these weapons was from 1500 to 2000 ft. A *scorpio* was a small catapult having a range of about 350 ft. It was an accurate and deadly weapon. Caesar tells of one at the siege of Avaricum that marked and killed man after man in the same spot (Bk. vii. 25). The *tormenta* were usually served and kept in repair by the *fabri*, but as Caesar had no such corps, they were probably in his army served by legionaries.
6. The Baggage Train.

The baggage of the army, except the packs corresponding to knapsacks which the soldiers themselves carried (*sarcinae*), was borne by horses and mules (*iumenta*), and in wagons. The latter, however, were used mainly by the traders (*mercatores*) and sutlers (*lixae*) that followed the legion. The baggage of each legion was by no means inconsiderable. It consisted of tents, blankets, tools, the *tormenta*, provisions, etc., and required no less than 500 pack-animals to a legion. The inconvenience and delay occasioned by the care of so much baggage caused the Romans to call it *impedimenta* (incumbrances), and a legion marching with its baggage was called *legio impedita*; when without, *legio expedita*. Along with the baggage train went a multitude of drivers, grooms, officers' servants, and other menials, all of whom are included in the general term *calones*. Most or all of these were slaves. See Figs. 14, 55.

7. The Officers and their Staff.

The superior officers were: (1) the commander-in-chief (*imperator* or *dux belli*). He possessed the *imperium* or supreme military authority by virtue of his office, but by etiquette first received the name *imperator* from his soldiers after his first victory. In Cæsar's case it was bestowed after his victory over the Helvetii.

(2) The *legati*. These were men of senatorial rank (i.e. who had once held a curule magistracy). They were appointed by the senate or the people on the nomination of the proconsul. The senate also determined the number that a general should have; Cæsar had ten. They often acted as ambassadors and made treaties, but their chief duties were military. Their powers were in no way independent, but derived from the general, who might put them in command of one or more legions or confer upon them the *imperium* in his absence (*legatus pro praetore*). In his battle with Ariovistus Cæsar placed a *legatus* at the head of each of his legions (Bk. i. 53), thus giving them an independent command, a practice which he afterwards continued to the great advantage of the service.

(3) The *quaestores* were officers elected by the people annually to administer the financial affairs of the provinces, one for each *imperator*. 

---

*Introduction.*
They had charge of the military chest, and saw to the pay, clothing, shelter, and general equipment of the legions serving in their respective provinces. On occasion they exercised the military authority of a legatus (Bk. i. 53); they were the ancient equivalent of a modern quartermaster. Besides these general officers, there were attached to each legion six tribuni militum, who were probably originally in command of the legion. They were divided into three pairs, each pair taking command in its turn. In Cæsar's time they were no longer trained soldiers, but chiefly young men of equestrian rank, who went into the army for a year or two to get some military experience and thus begin their public career (cf. Bk. i. 39), so that ordinarily the legion had no proper commanding officers. Cæsar was not slow to see that these political and social favorites were not the men to lead his legions into battle, and he therefore introduced the lasting reform of transferring this duty to the legati, as mentioned above (cf. Bk. ii. 20; v. i, 25, 47). Thereafter the duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the quaestor; and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. Sometimes they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands (cf. Bk. vii. 47, 52).

Surrounding the superior officers there was always a large number of young men, forming a kind of staff, who acted as orderlies and body-guards. The only officers "of the line" were the tribunes, and, as appears above, their command was limited.

The real leaders of the men were the inferior ("non-commissioned") officers, the centurions. Corresponding to sergeants and corporals, these were always plebeians, often of the lowest birth, who were promoted from the ranks entirely on account of their fighting qualities, and could never rise higher. There were two centurions in each maniple, making six for each cohort and sixty for the legion. The six centurions of the first cohort outranked the others and were called centuriones primorum ordinum, and were the only ones that ordinarily sat with the superior officers in the council of war. The first cohort always contained the flower of the legion, and the men in the first century of this cohort excelled all the others. Their leader,
the first centurion of the whole cohort (\textit{primus} or \textit{primi-pilus}) and so of the whole legion, must needs be a man of great personal prowess and skill, an actual fighter, one to whom all could look as to a model soldier. Such was, for example, Publius Sextius Baculus, who repeatedly deserved the praise of his general (cf. Bk. ii. 25; iii. 5; vi. 38), and Titus Balventius (\textit{vir fortis et magnae virtutis}, Bk. v. 35). As a badge of his office the centurion carried a short staff (\textit{vitis}), but he was armed much like the other soldiers (see Fig. 40).

The chief distinction in dress between the officers and men was the red \textit{tunica militaris} worn by the legates and tribunes, and the purple cloak (\textit{paludamentum}) worn by the general (Bk. vii. 88). The officers wore also coats-of-mail of gilded bronze (see Fig. 86).

Between the centurions and common soldiers in rank were the \textit{speculatores}, \textit{evocati}, \textit{beneficiarii}, \textit{aquiliferi} or \textit{signiferi}, and \textit{bucinatores}, \textit{tubicines}, or \textit{cornicines}. The \textit{speculatores} or scouts obtained news of the enemy and carried despatches. The \textit{evocati} were veterans who had completed their term of service, but remained in the army at the request of their commander. The \textit{beneficiarii} were soldiers that had received some gift or privilege for meritorious service. The \textit{signiferi} or \textit{aquiliferi} were the standard bearers: soldiers selected for their courage and fidelity. The \textit{bucinatores} and \textit{tubicines} were the musicians. All of these had rights and exemptions not enjoyed by the common soldiers. See Figs. 39, 84, 114.

II. The Standards.

The term \textit{signa} is applied in a general sense to all the standards of the army. That of the legion was an eagle (\textit{aquila}), usually of silver or bronze, about the size of a dove, on a wooden staff. It was sometimes carried by the chief centurion (\textit{primipilus}) of the legion. Sometimes it had below it a little red or white banner (\textit{vexillum}), inscribed with the number or name of the legion. See Figs. 13, 121, 123.

In a narrower sense, \textit{signum} was used for the standard of the cohort or the maniple. Each cohort had its own \textit{signum} (Bk. ii. 21), and in earlier times each maniple, but probably not in Cæsar’s day.
Roman Military Affairs.

The cavalry and light-armed troops and all separate detachments carried only the vexillum (Bk. vi. 36). The general's flag at headquarters was also called vexillum. It was a large white banner with an inscription in red, giving the name of the general and that of his army. A large red vexillum displayed at headquarters was the signal for battle (Bk. ii. 20). See Fig. 70.

III. The Music.

The difficulty of carrying the voice through the din of battle early led the Romans to use the penetrating tones of brass instruments for giving orders. The four instruments used by them were the bugle (bucina), the trumpet (tuba), the cavalry trumpet (lituus), and the horn (cornu). See Figs. 36, 37, 38, 84.

The bucina, whose shape and appearance are uncertain, sounded the changes of the night-watch and the reveille in the morning. The tuba, a straight trumpet of brass more than three feet long, with a bell-shaped mouth, gave the signal for attack or retreat, the signal being taken up and repeated by the cornu. The latter was a circular-shaped instrument which the performer often placed about his neck. The tuba had a deep tone; the cornu a sharper one. The general's call to an assembly (contio) was the classicum, sounded by all the instruments at once.

IV. The Legionary.

a. Enlistment. — The legion was composed of Romans only. Citizens were liable to conscription between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The recruit must be of sound health and of suitable height. The Romans, as a rule, were rather undersized. Cæsar expressly mentions the small stature of his troops as compared with that of the Germans (Bk. i. 39; ii. 30); but the Romans had learned the lesson of civilization, — that victories are gained not by huge bones and big bodies, but by trained skill and scientific tactics. Man for man, the Germans were doubtless more than a match for the Romans; but against the organized and disciplined legion — the most effective machine for battle that the world had yet seen — they were almost
powerless. The term of service was twenty years, and after this the veteran was discharged with enough to provide for his old age. Often he reënlisted for farther service (evocatus).

b. Clothing. — All the legionaries were clothed alike. Next the skin was a nearly or quite sleeveless woollen shirt (tunica), reaching nearly to the knees; over this a leathern coat strengthened by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders (lorica). In cold or wet weather the soldier wore about him a wide woollen mantle (sagum), which was fastened by a clasp (fibula) on the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free. At night the sagum served as a blanket. About his waist was a leather belt (cingulum militiae), bound with metal and with strips of metal hanging from the front as a protection to the lower part of the body. His feet were covered with strong half-boots (caligae). This might be called his undress uniform. See Figs. 107, 115, 126, etc.

c. Armor. — The defensive armor consisted of a coat-of-mail (lorica, described above), a helmet, and a shield. The helmet (galea or cassis), of iron or of leather strengthened with brass, was open in front and adorned with a white crest, which was one of the insignia put on at the beginning of a battle (Bk. ii. 21). See Fig. 87, etc. The shield (scutum) was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide; it was made of wood slightly curved, and covered with linen and heavy leather. About the rim it was bound with metal, and also in the centre. There was a single handle on the inside and opposite it on the outside a boss or knob (umbo) of metal, to divert missiles and to strengthen the whole. A common device on the outside was a winged thunderbolt. See Figs. 116, 117, etc.

d. Weapons. — The weapons of offence were the sword and spear. The sword (gladius Hispanus) was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was used more for thrusting than for striking, and was not usually hung from the body-belt, but from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip (balteus). See Figs. 17, 115, etc.

The spear (pilum) of Cæsar's soldiers was between six and seven feet long. The shaft was of wood and about four feet long. Into this was fitted the slender iron shank that ended in a barbed head. From monuments and from remains that have been found in various places, the weight is estimated at about three pounds and the
hurling distance about 100 feet. Each legionary had one of these weapons. See Figs. 15, 107.

e. Baggage (Packs).—Besides his arms and armor, the legionary carried tools for digging, cooking utensils (vasa), food for at least two weeks (cibaria), his cloak or blanket (sagum), and usually one or two stakes (valli) for the rampart of the camp. The weight of the whole was about sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, the vasa, cibaria, and other small articles were tied in a compact bundle to the end of a forked stick and carried over the shoulder. During a halt this rested on the ground and the soldier could lean on it for support. Upon a sudden call to battle he could quickly lay it down and be ready (expeditus) for the fray. The forked sticks were named Marius’s mules (muli Mariani), after the great Marius who introduced their use. The collective personal baggage of the legionary was called his sarcina (see Figs. 14, 115).

f. Food. — The food provided for the legionary was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley. This he must grind for himself. The ration of food for one day was about two pounds. Every fifteen days he received two modii,—about two pecks. This monotonous diet was varied occasionally by meat and such food as he could find by foraging; and there was always the chance of bartering his rations for the greater variety carried by the traders (mercatores), who followed the army in large numbers and did a thriving business with the soldiers.

g. Work. — It has been truthfully said that Cæsar conquered Gaul as much with the spade and shovel as with the sword and spear. The legionary was above all a skilful digger, and besides the actual fighting, no small part of his labor was the almost daily task of fortifying the camp (castra munire). At least three hours were needed for this work. After this there were the watches to keep, the arms to burnish, and all the other busy routine of camp life.

h. Pay. — Cæsar paid his legionaries 12½ cents a day or about $45 a year. This was nearly the same amount that a day laborer could earn at Rome. The soldier was better off than the laborer merely by his shelter and by the certainty of employment. A deduction from the pay was made for food and equipments furnished by the state. Food, however, was very cheap, and a soldier in active
service could always expect a considerable increase in his income from booty and from the gifts of his general.

i. Discipline. — The martial spirit of the soldiers and their attention to duty were maintained and increased by appropriate rewards and punishments. Among the latter the most usual were withholding of wages, degradation in rank, corporal punishment, dismissal from the service, and, in cases of flagrant offences, death. A minor offence committed by a company of soldiers was punished by putting them on barley rations and giving them extra work on the fortifications. Among rewards may be mentioned public praise in the presence of the army, promotion in rank, increase in wages, or the presentation of a crown of leaves or grasses, which corresponded to the bestowal of a modern military decoration.

V. The Camp.

The success of Roman arms in hostile and barbarous countries was largely due to the custom of guarding against surprise by making fortified camps. The summer camp (castra aestiva) and the winter camp (castra hiberna) seem to have been alike in all essential features. In the latter, however, more provision was made for the comfort and convenience of the men. Instead of tents, huts of timber and earth, thatched with straw or covered with hides, were provided for them. The camp was regularly in the form of a square, often with rounded corners, but the lay of the land necessitated many variations from the regular plan (see Fig. 119). Of all the camps of Cæsar that have been discovered, but one, that on the Aisne (Bk. ii. 5), approaches a square form. The site was chosen with great care, and was always on high ground and near wood and water. An ideal spot was the slope of a hill with some kind of natural defence on the sides and rear, and with sufficient ground in front for the array of the legions. Such a position would give the Romans an opportunity for their favorite onslaught e superiore loco (cf. Bk. ii. 8; Bk. v. 50).

A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select the site for the camp and stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the four gates (see Fig. 119): the porta praetoria, facing the enemy; the porta decumana,
in the rear; the porta principalis dextra, on the right side; the porta principalis sinistra, on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street, the via principalis. The forward half of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear half to the officers and their attendants. All about the inside of the fortifications ran a broad space, at least one hundred feet wide, left vacant for baggage, evolutions of troops, and to protect the tents within from missiles that the enemy might hurl over the walls. Near the middle of the camp was an open square (praetorium), in which stood the general’s tent (tabernaculum ducis). Before this was the altar on which he sacrificed, and on the left was a sodded mound of earth (tribunal or suggestus; cf. Bk. vi. 3), from which he pronounced judgment and addressed the assembled soldiers. The full details of the interior arrangement of Caesar’s camp are not known; but every officer, every cohort, every maniple, every man had his appointed place.

No night passed that the army was not housed in such a camp, fortified by wall and ditch. As soon as the soldiers arrive at the spot marked out for them, laying aside helmet, shield, and spear, they begin to dig the ditch (fossa), the earth from which is used in constructing the wall (vallum). If time permits, the sides of the embankment are covered with sods to hold the earth, or with bundles of brush (fascines). The ditch was usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep, the wall six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top to afford good standing room for a soldier in action. An ordinary camp for a night’s sojourn could be fortified in about three hours. If the camp was intended for more than one night (castra stativa), the fortifications were made stronger. The earth was made firmer by imbedding in it several lines of fascines parallel to the length, and on its top was set a breastwork of stakes (valli or sudes; cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72). This breastwork was about four feet high (see Fig. 118). Often wooden towers were erected on the walls (cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72), connected by galleries (pontes). The wall was made easy of access on the inner side by steps of brush. Sometimes small redoubts (castella) were built at a distance from the main camp. These were made on the same general plan.

After the camp had been fortified and the leathern tents (tentoria, pelles) put up in their assigned places, guards were set at the gates, and the regular routine of camp life began.
Introduction.

VI. The March.

When the trumpet gave the signal (*signum profectionis*) to break up camp (*castra movere*), the soldiers struck their tents and packed their baggage (*vasa conligere*); at the second signal the baggage (*impedimenta*) was put on the pack-animals and in the wagons; at the third signal the army (*agmen*) began its march. The start was made usually at sunrise, but it might be made earlier on special occasion. The ordinary day's march lasted about seven hours, and covered about 15 miles; a forced march (*magnum iter*) about 25. Cæsar made many such, his men travelling immense distances with incredible swiftness.

When marching in the enemy's country, the main body of troops (*agmen*) protected itself by a vanguard (*agmen primum*) of cavalry, light-armed infantry, and scouts (*exploratores*), and by a rear guard (*agmen novissimum*). Sometimes individual spies (*speculatores*) were sent far in advance to reconnoitre the country and the movements of the enemy's forces.

The order of march of the main body depended on the nearness of the enemy. When no enemy was near, each legion marched in a single column and was followed by its baggage train (see Bk. ii. 17). In the neighborhood of the enemy, a single column of troops in fighting trim (*expediti*), i.e. without packs (*sarcinae*), followed directly after the vanguard; then came the baggage of the whole army, while the remaining forces acted as a rear guard (cf. Bk. ii. 19). Sometimes, for additional security against flank attacks, columns of infantry marched on each side of the baggage train, forming a hollow square (*agmen quadratum*; see Fig. 73). If, when marching in this order, the army was compelled to halt and defend itself, the soldiers, by facing about, presented to the foe a complete circle (*orbis*) of armed men. When the foe was near and the ground level and open, the march was sometimes made in three parallel columns, which, by a simple evolution, could be quickly changed to the triple battle line (*acies triplex*), the regular formation for an engagement.

Streams were crossed either by fords or bridges. Romans could cross deeper fords than we, for they had no powder to keep dry
Roman Military Affairs.

Sometimes a line of cavalry was sent across the stream to break the force of the current (cf. Bk. vii. 56). Bridges were usually very simple affairs of logs covered with earth and brush, or of boats, but Cæsar's masterpiece of military engineering was his roadway forty feet wide with which he twice spanned the Rhine (Bk. iv. 17; Bk. vi. 9; see Figs. 59, 80).

VII. The Battle.

As has been said (V), the camp was so chosen that the ground in front of it would be suitable for battle. The usual order of battle was triplex acies. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other, varying in formation according to the depth of the line. As to the distance between the lines we have no definite information; nor even as to whether spaces were left between the cohorts. There were probably spaces between the different legions and doubtless between the centre (media acies), where the legionaries stood, and the wings (cornua), composed of auxiliaries and cavalry. Cæsar's lines were probably eight men deep. That would give each legion, estimated at 3600 men, a front of 180 legionaries, 45 for each cohort. When standing in open order for fighting, giving to each man the space necessary for the free use of his weapons, the front of each legion covered probably about 1000 feet, supposing the cohorts to stand close together; all this, however, is very uncertain.

When an attacking enemy had reached the right distance, the bugle sounded the charge, and the legions rushed forward, sword in sheath, and the front ranks with spears uplifted ready to hurl. When within range, the spears were thrown in a shower, the swords drawn, and a fierce charge made upon the mass of the foe, more or less disordered by the volley of spears. Along the front of the cohort rages a series of combats. The rear ranks press forward, throw their spears over the heads of their comrades, and take their places as the latter are wounded or weary. When the first line of cohorts has done its best, it makes room for the second line, re-forms, and gets breath for a new onset. Thus the battle goes on with the two
lines in almost constant motion. The enemy are given no rest and are worn out by the repeated charges of the cohorts. The third line, however, is held in reserve, and is brought into action only in case the other two prove insufficient.

The cavalry in the rear, or on the wings, stand ready when the enemy break and flee to ride down the fugitives and cut them to pieces.

There were times when troops had to be arranged in special formations. The most important of these were the *cuneus*, or wedge, the *testudo*, or tortoise, and the *orbis*, or circle. The first was an attack in column instead of in line, and was of use in cutting through and dividing an opposing battle line. The second, in which the shields overlapped above like shingles on a roof, was used especially in approaching and storming walls, or whenever the enemy were to be driven from a higher position (cf. Bk. ii. 6; see Fig. 68). The last formation was like a modern hollow square with officers in the centre—except that from the character of ancient fighting it was rather circular than rectangular. It was necessary when the attack came from all sides at once (see Bk. iv. 37).

VIII. THE SIEGE.

The Romans excelled in the art of taking walled cities, and this skill gave them an immense advantage in their warfare with semi-barbarous and ignorant peoples. There were three methods of doing this: first, by an immediate attack (*oppugnatio repentina*); second, by an active siege, brought to a close by an assault (*expugnatio*); third, by investment and blockade (*obsidio*).

If there seemed to be a chance of success, a city was stormed at once with no formal preparation (*ex itinere*). Its defenders were driven from the walls by a shower of missiles (Bk. iii. 25); the moat was filled with brush and earth; the assailters with shields locked in a *testudo* attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

If this method proved unsuccessful or impossible, a regular siege was begun. The work of a regular siege centred about the mound or *agger*, and to its construction everything else was subordinated.
It was begun at a distance from the wall, very nearly out of reach of the missiles of the enemy. It was then gradually extended in the direction of the point to be attacked, and was at the same time gradually increased in height until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. At Avaricum the mound was 80 feet high (Bk. vii. 23–28). Its width was possibly 40 or 50 feet. It was made of earth and timber, and had connected galleries running through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover (see Fig. 120). The men engaged in constructing the agger had to be protected from the enemy. Those who were building worked behind lines of plutei (see Figs. 130, 131), large standing shields, which were moved forward from time to time as the agger progressed. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of sheds called vineae (see Figs. 33, 120), extending the length of the agger. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers and by engines of war (tormenta) standing behind lines of plutei or upon movable towers (turres). The latter stood on the agger or on either side of it, and advanced with it, and as they advanced increased in height story by story. As the workmen get nearer the wall the plutei will no longer protect them. Then they find refuge under strong sheds of wood called testudines or musculi, placed at the ends of lines of vineae.

When the mound has reached the wall, a breach is made through it for the final assault (expugnatio). Sometimes this was accomplished by undermining the wall, or it was pulled down from the top with huge iron hooks (falces murales). But the most common and most effective means was the battering ram (aries), a huge swinging beam from 60 to 100 feet long with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This under a testudo, or in the lowest story of a tower, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. When the final assault was made, soldiers rushed in from every quarter, over the mound, through the breach, and from the movable towers, from whose highest stories drawbridges stretched to the walls.

Against these forms of assault the inhabitants used such means of resistance as they could. The most effective were masses of stone, thrown from the wall upon the works, and fire. To guard against
the latter, the besiegers had to cover all exposed woodwork with green hides. Battering rams and mural hooks were caught in slings and held fast, or drawn into the city, and mines were met by countermines. See Figs. 92, 93, 127.

When the location of the place was such that it could not be taken by such a siege as that described above, it was invested on every side (obsidio) and the inhabitants starved into submission. Among sieges of this kind were those of Gergovia (Bk. vii. 44–53) and Alesia (Bk. vii. 72–80), of which the last was one of the most remarkable of ancient times; see Figs. 97, 102.

IX. The Fleet.

Caesar mentions two principal classes of ships: naves longae, or war galleys, and naves onerariae, or freight and transport vessels. As compared with the former, the latter were shorter, broader, and deeper; hence could carry greater burdens and were more seaworthy. They depended mainly on their sails, but often had rowers in addition. The naves actuariae of Bk. v. 1 were a special class of transport vessel, with both sails and oars. Caesar used them to carry troops, horses, and munitions of war to Britain. See Figs. 48, 51, 52.

The war galley was long, low, and narrow; armed at the prow with a sharp beam (rostrum) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy’s ships; and propelled by one or two sails and a large force of rowers. The seamen (nautae) attended to the steering and the managing of the sails, and were freemen. The rowers (remiges) were usually slaves. Galleys in Caesar’s time mostly had three banks of oars. The steering apparatus was two broad-bladed oars near the stern, one on each side. The speed of these vessels was remarkable, almost equalling that of a modern steamship.

The fighting men were the legionaries embarked for the purpose. In fact, there was no distinct naval service, as with us. A fleet was simply an army afloat, and was commanded by military officers. Before going into action tormenta were placed on the deck, and also a turris; the mast was taken down and the sails and tackle housed. See Fig. 62.
The district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which several centuries earlier had been occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and was not yet reckoned politically as a part of Italy; it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonnese Gaul received its name from its capital, the Roman colony Narbo. It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but as a whole it had been but recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean from the Pyrenees to the Alps, having for its northern boundary an irregular and uncertain line, which separated the territory of the conquered nations of Gaul from the states which were still free. To these two provinces was added also Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, whose power was not limited by the laws which protected the citizens of Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, such as the old Greek city Massilia, were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, including Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute and under the jurisdiction of the governor, though the rights of Roman citizens were secured to them. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions; to these were added auxiliaries, both foot and horse, but the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had six legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, if there was any excuse for war, and
of such excuses there was usually no lack. The Roman policy was to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of it to overcome its rivals; in Gaul the Haedui, attached to Rome through some local rivalries, very well served this purpose.

Caesar's province, at its western extremity, reached to Spain, a country which had belonged to the empire for more than a hundred and fifty years. To the north lay four great nationalities, with all of which he was ultimately brought in contact. These were the Gauls proper, the Belgians, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (Libera Gallia) at that time consisted of all the unsubdued territory between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Germany, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a half of it in extent and population, was occupied by the Gauls proper, or, as they called themselves, Celts, no doubt originally the same word. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, a separate people of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish; of these, the Basques of the present day are the representatives. To the northeast lived the Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be considered certain is that they were largely mixed with Germans. The Belgians occupied more territory than is now known as Belgium, including a considerable part of Holland on the one hand, and the northern belt of France on the other.

2. The Gallic People.

a. Origin and Early History.—The Gauls were a branch of the great nations of the Indo-European family that in prehistoric times occupied parts of Asia and the greater part of Europe. They were known to the ancients as Celts or Gauls, and this name was applied without discrimination to all the barbarous peoples of the unknown west of Europe. The term was rather geographical than racial. The Romans, though they had been brought into contact with the barbarians of the north by war and commerce for many centuries, made no distinction, before Caesar's time, between German and Gaul.
The Phœnicians, those pioneer traders and intrepid sailors of antiquity, had had commercial dealings with the Gauls at a very remote period. Several centuries later, but still at an early date (about B.C. 600), the Greeks had made a settlement near the mouth of the Rhone, which afterwards grew into the prosperous city of Massilia (Marseilles), and opened up some trade routes into the interior. Both Phœnicians and Greeks found the most powerful part of the Celts already well established in western Europe, and showing evidence of previous possession for a period going back of any assignable date.

The Celts had been for centuries a migratory and always a warlike people. These characteristics led them into many countries where they made settlements of more or less importance. Besides those who occupied Gaul proper, there were Iberian Celts (Celtiberi) in Spain, British Celts, Belgic Celts, Italian Celts in northern Italy, Celts in the Alps (notably the Helvetii), Illyrian Celts, and Asiatic Celts, who had settled in Asia Minor and were known as Galatians. It was to them, after they were Christianized, that Paul wrote his well-known epistle.

What knowledge the Greeks and Romans had of this powerful nation of barbarians was extremely vague. They had long hung like a dark storm-cloud on the northern frontier of both countries, and at intervals poured forth in overwhelming and destructive numbers. Once they spread desolation and dismay through Greece, and all but succeeded in plundering the rich temple of Delphi. In B.C. 390 Rome was destroyed by these same barbarians, and in B.C. 102 it was only the military genius of C. Marius that spared Italy a similar visitation.

Long before the time of Cæsar, the Romans had succeeded in subduing the Gauls south of the Alps, making the prosperous and orderly province of Cisalpine Gaul, as related above. Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum were more recent additions to the empire, and were less thoroughly subdued and civilized. They had been finally conquered by Q. Fabius Allobrogicus. All to the north had as yet been unexplored and uninvaded by Roman arms. The Gauls, according to circumstances and location, showed at this time various degrees of civilization. Those to the south and west, being nearer to the refinement of the province, had made rapid strides, had built many
flourishing cities, enjoyed prosperous and on the whole peaceful community life, and practised the arts and commerce. But those farther removed in the east and north, and the Britons, were still in a semi-savage condition. Cæsar's expeditions among these are somewhat like similar military expeditions that nations are sending in our day to explore and subdue unknown Africa; and the trading posts established among them by the enterprising Greek merchants of Massilia, like the business ventures formerly sent among the Indians.

b. Character and Customs.—The Gauls are described as tall and of great physical strength, with a fair skin and blonde hair, which they often reddened by artificial means. Men of rank and of authority wore the hair and beard long. The more barbarous tribes gave themselves a terrible aspect by painting hideous devices on their half-naked bodies. Their voices were rough and harsh, their words few, and their language obscure and figurative. Disparaging others, boastful of themselves, arrogant, fond of idleness, they were very quarrelsome and always ready to fight, to relieve the monotony of their existence, if for no other reason. They were, however, high-spirited and brave to utter recklessness and contempt for death.

The Gallic women are described by an ancient writer as the most beautiful of all barbarian women and as thrifty housewives. He adds that, aided by his wife, who is much more formidable than he, the Gaul will hold his own in any conflict. The Roman invaders were often witnesses of the heroism of these veritable Amazons.

The Gauls lacked stability of character, and are often criticized by Cæsar for their fickleness; they were also very avaricious and given to superstitions. On the other hand, they were not vicious, but naturally of a simple and teachable disposition. They were very quick to learn and adopt whatever useful arts their neighbors brought to them. Their love of freedom was passionate; but their long years of wandering had not developed in them that feeling of national unity and that love of the soil that we include under the term patriotism.

The life of the less civilized tribes was rude in the extreme. Their houses were little more than huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. The dwelling was open to daylight by the door
alone, and had little or no furniture. Their beds were heaps of straw or furs. War was their principal occupation. They gave some attention to agriculture, raising the coarser grains, the better sort of fruits and vegetables being unknown to them. They also had large flocks and herds. They ate but little bread, but large quantities of meat, which they are described as cutting with their swords and eating in a ravenous manner.

The Gauls knew something of the arts and sciences. They did some weaving, and those on the coast had skill in shipbuilding and in navigation, and the Aquitanians were skilful miners. Their attempts at art were mainly imitations of what other lands brought to them. For example, they made more or less successful attempts to imitate the artistic coins of the Greeks and Romans. Several illustrations of Gallic coins may be found in the text (see Figs. 29, 64, 66, 81, etc., etc.). Cæsar was the first to bring to the world authentic information about most of these matters, and the student is referred for farther interesting details to his narrative (see especially Bk. vi).

c. Dress.—The details of Gallic dress are not fully known. Like most semi-civilized or savage people, they were very fond of bright colors and finery. They wore much jewelry—both men and women—of gold, if they could afford it, otherwise of bronze. Especially characteristic was the heavy collar of twisted gold (torquis, see Fig. 77), worn about the neck. The principal garments were a short, bright-colored tunic, either with or without sleeves, confined by a girdle of silver or gold, and trousers (braca). Over the shoulders was worn a short cloak (sagum) often of fine material and of gorgeous color. The character of the costume depended upon the rank and wealth of the wearer. The feet were protected by shoes or by soles of wood strapped on with leathern thongs. See Fig. 28.

d. Arms and Military Tactics.—As has been said, a Gaul’s chief business was war. He was always a soldier and, whether in youth or in old age, hastened to war with the same ardor. His principal weapon was a long two-edged sword, hanging from an iron or steel chain at the right side. It was adapted for striking and cutting, but not so much for thrusting, and was but poorly tempered. This in itself gave the Romans a great advantage through the superiority of their arms. The Gallic bronze sword came into use later,
Introduction.

and was a much better weapon. In Cæsar's time the iron sword probably still predominated. They had also various kinds of pikes, lances, and javelins, some made with peculiar waving and twisted blades to cause an uglier wound. Many weapons are mentioned with special names, but they are not capable of identification. Bows and slings, too, were used by them.

Ordinarily the Gaul wore no defensive armor. In fact, the common soldier went into battle with body almost bare. But the principal warriors wore chain mail (see Fig. 86), which is said to be a Gallic invention. At first this was made of iron. Later, better and lighter suits were made of bronze, and were sometimes adorned with silver and gold. The usual means for defence were the helmet and the shield. Shields were of various shapes and sizes and were adorned with figures of animals, etc., to suit the caprice or wealth of the owner, but the designs were of ancient origin. The helmets were surmounted with great horns, forms of birds or beasts, etc., designed to terrify the enemy (see Fig. 11). These also were, no doubt, survivals of earlier barbarism.

In battle they placed much reliance on their cavalry and in Northern Gaul and Britain on their war chariots. The infantry was arranged in great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx, with a line of shields before and on the sides, and sometimes with a roof of shields overhead, something like the testudo formation of the Romans. When they had drawn near, champions were accustomed to leave the ranks, and, brandishing their arms, challenge the foe to single combat. The first onset of the Gallic phalanx was terrific and often swept everything before it; but if that could be withstood, the advantage lay with the open and pliable order of the legion. In the latter every soldier was called into action, but in the former the great bulk of the Gallic warriors was practically imprisoned in the mass, and only those on the outside could use their arms.

e. Government.—The Gauls were not a single nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, united by a very slight bond of consanguinity and common religion. These tribes, which may be loosely compared to those of the North American Indians, though most of them were at a very much higher degree of civilization, varied greatly in extent and power, the smaller ones often main-
Gaul and the Gauls.

Gaul and the Gauls. retaining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate. But sometimes an ambitious leader, like Orgetorix, succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power. Thus the several states were torn by hostile parties, and were at the same time grouped into national factions, under the lead of the more powerful states. At the time of Cæsar, royalty had been almost abolished, and yearly magistrates (vergobrets) were elected instead. Every year representatives from the different states met in assembly, and questions of national policy were discussed. Owing to the violent and excitable natures of the Gauls, these assemblies often ended in tumultuous scenes of disorder.

At the commencement of war, a call to arms was sounded, to which old and young responded. The last man to appear was put to death with tortures in the presence of the assembled people.

f. Religion. — The Druids. — Cæsar says that the Gauls were devoted to religious matters. They were under the control of a class of priests known as Druids, who acted not only as priests, but also as arbiters and judges. By them was treasured the religious and philosophic lore of the Gauls, and to them the Gallic youth went for instruction, some of them remaining in training as long as twenty years. One of their most important doctrines was that of the transmigration of souls. Belief in immortality gave the Gauls a contempt for death which enabled them to face the greatest dangers without flinching.

The Druids gave their instructions and performed their bloody sacrifices in the depths of the forest. The oak and the mistletoe were sacred in their eyes. The mysterious rites of their worship are not well known, but many cruel and horrible practices are attributed to them by ancient writers, among them human sacrifices. Cæsar mentions these, but did not know of their actual occurrence from personal observation.

The principal religious observances of the Gauls were gradually abolished under Roman rule, but many of them were ‘baptized’ into Christianity and survive to-day in various modified forms as a part of the popular religion.
The strange monuments of stone found in many lands, called 'cromlechs' and 'menhirs,' popularly supposed to be Druidic monuments, are far older than the Druids and have nothing to do with their religion.

Cæsar gives the first authentic information about the Druids in his narrative (Bk. vi. 13-16).


Cæsar left Gaul subdued and open to Roman occupation and greed. The country was rapidly colonized and civilized. Augustus divided it into four provinces and established the Roman authority on a firm basis. Only one great patriotic uprising occurred after Cæsar's time, though the Gauls took part in the contests later for the imperial throne. In course of time the very language of Gaul became Latin, and this became the parent of modern French. In the fifth century tribes of Germans began to make inroads on the Roman domain, and the Franks, under Clovis as king, firmly established themselves in the north. Their power spread; they subjugated the inhabitants, and gave their name to the country, which it bears to this day,—France, the lands of the Franks. There were many social and political changes after this time, but the same life flowed on from Roman Gaul to modern France. The French still display many of the characteristics of the ancient Gauls; they live in substantially the same limits; many of their mountains, cities, and streams still bear the old names.

IV.

THE BRITONS.

With Cæsar begins the history of England. He found there a Celtic people, differing but little from those on the continent, save that they were more barbarous. What the condition or history of the British Isles was before Cæsar's invasion is wrapped in obscurity. A few Greek writers refer vaguely to them, and there was an equally vague knowledge of the smaller islands lying near. Even Cæsar
The Germans. 

The Germans. The Germans first appear in history in the campaigns of the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 113-101), the latter of whom were undoubtedly of Germanic origin. The Romans obtained their first considerable knowledge of the country from Cæsar. The ancient limits assigned to it were less on the west and south, but indefinitely greater on the east and north, than the modern. In those directions it was terra incognita to the Romans, and always remained so. They never did more than subdue the border tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar had relatively little to do with the Germans, but made such investigations as he could, the results of which are succinctly given in his narrative (Bk. iv. 1-3; Bk. vi. 21-28). The next account, in greater detail, was given by Tacitus in his "Germania," who corroborates Cæsar in all important particulars.

The Germans were much less civilized than most of the Gauls. They were just at the end of the nomadic stage, and were settling down and beginning community life. Their last onward nomadic movement was that under Ariovistus, which it was Cæsar’s fortune to arrest (Bk. i. 31-54). They were a more manly and vigorous race than the Gauls, warlike, independent, and virtuous. The country is described as a dismal land, covered for the most part with forests and swamps, producing little food, and subject to almost constant winter.
VI.

THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.

The campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul lasted through eight seasons (B.C. 58–51), and are told in eight books,—the last written by Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar,—each book containing the operations of a single year. The following is a brief outline:

Book I. B.C. 58. Cæsar checks the attempt of the Helvetians to settle in Western Gaul, and, after a bloody defeat, forces the remnant to return to their own territory. He then engages with a powerful tribe of Germans, who had made a military settlement in Eastern Gaul, and drives them, with their chief, Ariovistus, back across the Rhine.

Book II. B.C. 57. A formidable confederacy of the northern populations of Gaul is suppressed, with the almost complete extermination of the bravest Belgian tribe, the Nervii, in a battle which seems to have been one of the most desperate of all that Cæsar ever fought. In this campaign the coast towns of the west and northwest (Brittany) also are reduced to submission.

Book III. B.C. 56. After a brief conflict with the mountaineers of the Alps, who attacked the Roman armies on their march, the chief operations are the conquest of the coast tribes of Brittany (Veneti, etc.), in a warfare of curious naval engineering in the shallow tidewater inlets and among the rocky shores. During the season, the tribes of the southwest (Aquitani), a mining population, allied to the Iberians or Basques, are reduced by one of Cæsar's officers.

Book IV. B.C. 55. An inroad of the Germans into Northern Gaul is repulsed, and Cæsar follows them by a bridge of timber hastily built across the Rhine. Returning, he crosses to Britain in the early autumn for a visit of exploration.

Book V. B.C. 54. The partial conquest of Britain (second invasion) is followed by various movements in Northern Gaul, in which the desperate condition of the Roman garrisons is relieved after serious losses by the prudent and brave conduct of Labienus and Quintus Cicero.

Book VI. B.C. 53. Cæsar makes a second brief expedition across the Rhine against the Germans. Some general disturbances are quelled, and Northern Gaul is reduced to peace.
Book VII. B.C. 52. Vercingetorix, a brave and high-spirited chief of Southern Gaul, effects a confederacy of the whole country, which is at length subdued. Vercingetorix surrenders himself to secure the quiet of the country, and is taken in chains to Rome, where he was afterwards put to death at Caesar's triumph.

Book VIII. B.C. 51. Slight insurrections breaking out here and there are easily subdued; and by the capture of the last native stronghold, Uxellodunum, the subjugation of Gaul is made complete.

READING COURSES.

In order to make a wider acquaintance with the Gallic War easy and practicable, and, further, to bring greater variety and interest to the narrative for teachers and students alike, the following reading courses are suggested, any one of which covers an amount equivalent to the first four books.

Course I.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.
The War against the Belgian Confederacy, Bk. ii.
The Campaign against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and the First Invasion of Germany, Bk. iv. chs. 1-19.
The Second Invasion of Germany, and the Customs of the Gauls and Germans, Bk. vi. chs. 9-29.
The General Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii.

Course II.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.
The Campaign against the Helvetii, Bk. i. chs. 2-29.
The First Invasion of Britain, Bk. iv. chs. 20-36.
The Second Invasion of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 1-23.
The General Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii.
Introduction.

Course III.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.
The Campaign against the Helvetii, Bk. i. chs. 2–29.
The Campaign against Ariovistus, Bk. i. chs. 30–54.
The Campaign against the Veneti, Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.
Crassus in Aquitania, Bk. iii. chs. 23–27.
The Expedition against the Morini and Menapii, Bk. iii. chs. 28, 29.
The First Invasion of Britain, Bk. iv. chs. 20–36.
The Second Invasion of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 1–23.
The Revolt of Ambiorix, Bk. v. chs. 24–53.
Pursuit of Ambiorix and the Punishment of the Eburones, Bk. vi. chs. 29–44.

Course IV.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.
The Campaign against the Helvetii, Bk. i. chs. 2–29.
The Campaign against Ariovistus, Bk. i. chs. 30–54.
The Customs of the Gauls and Germans, Bk. vi. chs. 11–29.
The Campaign against the Veneti, Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.
The Revolt of Ambiorix, Bk. v. chs. 24–53.
The Pursuit of Ambiorix, and the Punishment of the Eburones, Bk. vi. chs. 29–44.
The Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii. chs. 1–11.
The Siege of Alesia, Bk. vii. chs. 68–90.

Course V.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.
The War against the Belgian Confederacy, Bk. ii.
The Campaign against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and the First Invasion of Germany, Bk. iv. chs. 1–19.
The Second Invasion of Germany, and the Customs of the Gauls and Germans, Bk. vi. chs. 9–29.
The First Invasion of Britain, Bk. iv. chs. 20–36.
The Second Invasion of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 1–23.
Directions for Reading.

The Siege and Sack of Avaricum, Bk. vii. chs. 16-30.
Operations against Gergovia, and Plots among the Hædui, Bk. vii.
chs. 31-56.

VIII.
DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

As "Cæsar," though in many respects a book for advanced students, is often the first Latin classic put into the learner's hands, it may be well to give a few hints as to the method of study.

1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases and Moods, the use of Tenses, and the Definitions of common grammatical terms such as Sentence, Subject, Predicate, Object, Transitive and Intransitive, Phrase, Clause, and the like.

2. Notice at once the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, etc., — which show the corresponding relations of the words and ideas to each other, — may be present to your mind. If the form of the word gives several possibilities, hold them all in your mind, so far as may be, till something occurs in the progress of the sentence to settle the doubt.

3. Always try to take in the ideas in that order in which the Latin presents them. Read every word as if it were the last on a page and you had to turn over without being able to turn back. The mind soon becomes accustomed to the order of any language, as we see by the constant and almost unnoticed inversions of common speech and poetry. If, however, you are obliged to turn back, begin again at the beginning of the sentence and proceed as before. The greatest difficulty to a beginner is his inability to remember the first parts of a complex idea. This difficulty can often be lessened by jotting down, in a loose kind of English, the words as they come in the Latin. In this way it is often easy to see what a string of words must mean, though we should never say anything like it in English.

4. Don't try to translate formally until you have got a complete idea of some integral part of the sentence. It makes nonsense
to render words mechanically, without thinking the corresponding ideas.

5. From the outset, notice that the emphatic position of words plays a most important part in Latin writing, and try to feel the emphasis of position as you read. (See § 595–601 (343–346), and compare B. 348–351; G. 671–687; H. 663–685 (559–573); H–B. 620–630.)

As an illustration of § 5 we append a translation of the first chapter of Book II with especial reference to the emphasis indicated by the order. As the translation is made expressly to bring out explicitly the force of order, it should not be taken as a model of desirable translation. Such a translation as is here given forces the emphasis on the attention more than is perhaps natural in English. The force is all present in the Latin, but in English it may often be left to be brought out by the context or by some kindred emphasis which the English substitutes. A short, easy passage from Book V is also given without comment for study and practice.

And BEING 1 thus in Hither 2 Gaul, as I have shown above, Cæsar 3 had frequent 4 rumors brought to him, 5 and despatches 6 also from Labienus 7 continued to inform him that all 8 the Belgæ, 9 who constituted a third part 10 of the Gaul, as I had previously stated, were conspiring [for an attack] against the Roman gov-

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliâ, ita uti supra dēmōnstrāvi-
mus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā popu-
lum Rōmānum consīūrāre obsi-

1 The emphasis on being binds this part of the narrative with the situation left at the end of the last book, as if it were "Cæsar went to Hither Gaul,—and while he was engaged there."

2 Opposed to Farther Gaul, where the troops were.

3 The main subject of discourse.

4 The repetition of the stories is the significant fact, "he kept hearing," but at the same time the rumors are opposed to Labienus's despatches.

5 An emphasis continued in Latin from Cæsar, the main person, but lost in English. See § 598. l (344. l); H–B. 627. 2.

6, 7 Opposed to the rumors.

8, 9 Both words together the subject of discourse, but the adjective most prominent, "the entire body of the Belgæ."

10 Opposed to the whole, as one might say, "a full third of the whole."
Directions for Reading.

ernment\textsuperscript{11} and exchanging hostages. That for this conspiracy\textsuperscript{12} the reasons were these,\textsuperscript{13} namely: in the first place, because they were afraid\textsuperscript{14} (i.e. in their own minds) that when Gaul was all\textsuperscript{15} subdued,\textsuperscript{16} our army would be brought against them\textsuperscript{17}; and in the second place, because some\textsuperscript{18} of the Gauls\textsuperscript{19} (i.e. from outside) were tampering\textsuperscript{18} with them. These Gauls were partly those who were disturbed that the Roman\textsuperscript{19} army should pass the winter\textsuperscript{20} and get a footing in Gaul, just as\textsuperscript{21} they had been unwilling that the Germans\textsuperscript{22} should stay any longer\textsuperscript{23} there, and partly those who from [mere] fickleness\textsuperscript{24} dēsque inter sē dare. Coniū-randī hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Gallīā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nullis Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Gallīā versāri nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitūm hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Gallīā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte

\textsuperscript{11} Here not the conspiracy itself, but the aim of it is the most important part of the idea.
\textsuperscript{12} The main subject of discourse, "now this conspiracy, the reports said," etc.
\textsuperscript{13} The difference between "the reasons why were these" and "these were the reasons why" is obvious. Cæsar might say either.
\textsuperscript{14} A peculiar emphasis not directly carried out. Cicero would very likely have been more rhetorical and have opposed "fear" to "being tampered with." But Cæsar changes his point of view in the course of the sentence; and, as if he had said ipsi in the first member, opposes to the motives of the Belgæ themselves, the Gauls by whom outside influence was brought to bear.
\textsuperscript{15}, \textsuperscript{16} The completion of the business now in hand is first emphasized, then the business itself.
\textsuperscript{17} Cæsar brings out the whole force of the idea by opposing "them" to "Gaul," which has not before been emphatic, but which is now made so by being contrasted with the Belgians; cf. Chiasmus, § 598, f (344, f); B. 350. 11, c; G. 682 and r.; H. 666. 2 (562); H-B. 628.
\textsuperscript{18} See note 14.
\textsuperscript{19} Opposed to the "Germans."
\textsuperscript{20} Opposed to "stay any longer."
\textsuperscript{21} The English emphasis here represents the position of the two clauses, relative and antecedent.
\textsuperscript{22} Opposed to the "Romans."
\textsuperscript{23} See note 20.
\textsuperscript{24} Notice that the view of the first party is a rational idea seriously thought out, to which implied state of mind the inconstancy of the second party is opposed.
and unsteadiness were [always] eager for new forms of government; [they were stimulated] by some also besides, who, inasmuch as in Gaul regal power was regularly usurped by the more powerful and by those who had means to employ soldiers, could not so easily succeed in such usurpations under our imperial control.  

25 A natural consequence of their character. For no good reason they got tired of the established order and wanted a change.  

26 Opposed to other countries in which the government was more stable.  

27, 28 The two means of attaining regal power.  

29 And consequently wanted to rebel.  

30 The Latin often compresses into an indefinite, and to us unemphatic, word (as rem here) a whole important idea. In such cases the true emphasis appears in English only when a suitable descriptive word is substituted for the vague one according to our way of saying things.  

31 This control, of course, tended towards establishing order.

V. 23. After taking hostages he led his army back to the sea [where he] found the ships repaired. Having launched them, inasmuch as he had a great number of captives, and some of the ships had been lost in the storm, he proceeded to transport his army in two voyages. And [fortunately] it so happened that out of so many ships in so many voyages not a single one was lost that carried soldiers either that year or the year before, while of the ships which were sent back to him empty from the continent after discharging the soldiers of the first voyage, as well as of the seventy others that Labienus had built later, very few reached their destination. Almost all the rest were driven back.  

Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redúcit ad mare, návis invenit refectás. His dédúcitis, quod et captivórum mágnum numerum habébat, et nón nállae tempestáte déperierant návés, duóbus commeátiibus exercitum reportáre instituit. Àc sic accidit uti ex tantó návium numeró, tot návigátióniibus, neque hoc neque superiöre annó ìlla omnínó návis quae milités portáret désiderárétur; at ex eis quae inánēs ex continénti ad eum remitterentur, [et] priórís commeáti-tús expositís militibus, et quás posteá Labiēnus faciendás curáverat numeró l.x, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae férē omnēs réicerentur.
THE GALLIC WAR.

BOOK I.

CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETII AND ARIOVISTUS. B.C. 58.

The Nations of Gaul.

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partis tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitâni, tertiam qui ipsorum linguâ Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnès linguâ, institütis, légibus inter sè differunt. Gallòs ab Aquitânis Garumna flûmen, à Belgis Mâtrona et Sèquana dividit.¹

Their Characters Compared.

Hòrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod à cultù atque hûmânitâte provinciae longissimè absunt, minimèque ad eòs mercâtòrèst saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effeminandòs animòs pertinent important; proximique sunt Germânis qui trâns Rhénum incolunt,² quibuscum con- tinenter bellum gerunt. Quà dê causâ Helvêtii quoque reliquòs Gallòs virtùte praecèdunt, quod ferè cotidiânis proeliis cum Germânis contendunt, cum aut suís finibus eòs prohibent aut ipsi in eòrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Cf. ¹ dìvïsa, l. 1. — ² incolunt, l. 2.
The Territories of Each.

Eorum ūna pars,\(^1\) quam Gallōs obtinère dictum est, initium capit à flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad infériorem partem flūminis Rhēni, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sólem. Aquitānia à Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montis et eam partem Ōceani quae est ad Histpāniam pertinet;\(^2\) spectat inter occāsum sólis et septentrionēs.

Orgetorix with his Fellow Nobles Forms a Plan to Invade Gaul.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē\(^3\) nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messāla et M. Pisōne cōnsulibus, régni cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civitāti persuāsit ut dē finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent:\(^4\) perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.

He Persuades his People, the Helvetii.

Id hoc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur:\(^5\) ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētiōm à Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertia lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.

They Assent, being Warlike and feeling Cramped by their Narrow Limits.

His rēbus fīebat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitīmis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte homi-

Cf. \(^1\) partīs, p. 1, l. 1. — \(^2\) pertinent, l. 5. — \(^3\) longissimē, 1, 7. — \(^4\) continētur, l. 2.
3.

They Employ Two Years in Preparations.

3. His rebus adducti et auctóritáte Orgetorígis permótí constituit urunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinérent compárrae, iúmentórum et carrórum quam maximum numerum coémere, séméntis quam maximá facere, ut in itinere cópia frúmenti suppeteret, cum proximís civitáibus pácem et amicitiam confirmáre. Ad eás rès conficiendás biennium sibi satis esse duxērunt; in tertium annum profectiónem légé confirmást.

Orgetoríx Consiprís with Other Gallic Chiefs.

Ad eás rès conficiendás Orgetoríx déligitur. Is sibi légatióinem ad civitátis suscépit. In eó itinere persuádet Castíci, Catamantaloedí fílió, Séquanó, cúius pater régnnum in Séquanís multóss annóss obtinuerat et á senátú populí Római amicus appellátor erat, ut régnum in civitáte suá occupáret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorígi Háeduó, frátrí Divíciáci, qui eó tempore principátum in civitáte obtinébat ac maximé plébí acceptus erat, ut idem cónārētur persuádet, eíque filiám suam in mātrimónium dat.

His Arguments.

Perfacile factú esse illis probat cônāta perficere, proptereá quod ípse suae civitátis imperium obtentúrus esset: nón esse dubium quin tótius Galliæ plúrimum Helvétii possent; sé suís cópiís suóque exercitú illis régna conciliátúrum côn-

Cf. finibus, p. 2, 1. 3.— pertinént, 2, 5.— proxími, 1, 9.— persuásit, 2, 14.— obtinére, 2, 1.
firmat. Hác orátiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

**Orgetorix is Brought to Trial.**


**He Escapes.**

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnīs clientīs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam diceret sē ēripuit.

**His Death.**

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs coēgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut 15 Helvētii arbitrantur, quīn ipse sībī mortem cōnsciverit.

**Still the Helvetii Persist in the Attempt.**

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētii id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suīs exequi carnētur, multītūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs coēgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut 15 Helvētii arbitrantur, quīn ipse sībī mortem cōnsciverit.

Campaign against the Helvetii.

Other Tribes are Persuaded to Join them.

Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis uti eodem usi consilió, oppidis suis vicisque exūstis, una cum eis proficiscantur; Bölōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsćiscunt.

Two Routes for Invasion Described.

6. Erant omninō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent: unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singuli carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut

Cf. 1 proficiscendum, p. 3, l. 7. — 2 carrōrum, 3, 8.
facile perpauci prohibère¹ posse: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finis Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit,isqueūnōnnullis locis vadō trānsītūr.² Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque³ Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva.

They Decide to March through the Province.


Cāsar Resolves to Stop them, and Destroys the Bridge near Geneva.

7. Cāsari cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri,⁵ mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī,⁶ et quam maximum potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem qui erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

They Ask Cāsar’s Permission.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nobilissimōs civitātīs, ĉūius lēgātiōnis⁷ Nammēius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent ‘sibi esse in animō sine ūlō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.’

Campaign against the Helvetii.

Cæsar Unwilling, but Puts them off to Gain Time.

Caesar, quod memoria tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occisum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faci- undi,1 temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficīō existimābat.2 Tamen, ut spatium intercédere posset dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent,3 lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum su̇mptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Íd. Apr. reverterentur.

Caesar Constructs Fortifications to Stop the Helvetii.

8. Interea eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque 10 qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant, a lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, qui finis Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō 15 facilius, sī sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii Attempt to Pass, but are Repulsed.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt,5 negat sē móre et exemplō populi Rō- mānī posses iter úlli per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrum ostendit. Helvētii, eā spē dēiectī, 20 nāvibus iūnectis ratibusque complūribus factīs, alīi vadis 6 Rhodanī, quā7 minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numīquam interdiū, saepius 8 noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnāti, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstītērunt.

Cf. 1 facere, p. 6, 1. 25. — 2 existimābant, 6, 9. — 8 conveniant, 6, 12. — 4 perficere, 3, 23. — 5 reverterentur, 1. 9. — 6 vādō, 6, 4. — 7 quā, 5, 8. — 8 saepe, 1, 8.
Through the Influence of Dumnorix, a Hæduan, they are Allowed to Pass through the Sequanian Territory.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Ŝequanos via, quā Ŝequanīs invitīs propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgēm Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōrē a Ŝequanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātīā et largītīōne apud Ŝequanos plūrīmum poterat et Helvētiis erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitātē Orgetorīgis filiām in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupidītātē rēgni adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quām plūrīmās cīvitātīs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Ŝequanīs impetrat ut per finīs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiāntur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficīt: Ŝequani, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Cæsar Opposes this Movement also.

10. Caesari renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Ŝequanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santōnum finīs facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in Prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentībus maximēque frūmentāriis fīnitimos habēret.

He Takes Active Measures.

Ob eās causās ei mūniūtiōni quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficīt; ipse in Italiam māgnīs itineribus conten-dit duāsque ibi legiōnēs conscribit, et trēs quae circum

Fig. 7.—Junction of the Rhone and Saône.
Aquiléiam hiemabant ex hibernis édúcit, et, quâ proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpis erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit.

Some Tribes Resist his March, but he Crosses the Rhone with his Army.

Ibi Ceutrones et Gräioceli et Caturiges locís superiöribus occupátis itinere exercitum prohibère cónantur. Complûribus his proeliiis pulsís, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriöris prövinciae extrëmum, in finis Vocontiörum ulteriöris prövinciae dië septimö pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finis, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavös exercitum dúcit. Hî sunt extrá prövinciaim trâns Rhodanum primi.

The Helvetii Commit Depredations on their March, and Several Tribes Ask for Cæsar's Help against them.

The Helvetii Attempt to Cross the Saône.

12. Flumen est Arar, quod per finis Haeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iudicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus iunctis transibant. Ubi per 5 exploratöres Caesar certior factus est tres iam partis copiarum Helvetiös id flumen tradüxisse,¹ quartam ferè partem citræ flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertiä vigiliä cum legionibus tribus è castris profectus,² ad eam partem pervenit quae nóndum flumen transierat.

Caesar Cuts to Pieces a Part (the Tigurini), Who had not yet Crossed.

10 Eös impeditōs et inopinantis adgressus māgnam partem eōrum concidit; reliqui sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximas³ silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hic pāgus unus, cum domō exisset,⁴ patrum nostrōrum 15 memorıä L. Cassium consulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum miserat.

Thus he Wipes out a Long-standing Disgrace.

Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat,⁵ ea princeps poenas persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar

Cf. ¹ tradüxerant, p. 9, l.12. — ² proficiscī, 6, 15. — ³ proximum, 9, 1. ⁴ exīre, 5, 7. — ⁵ inferre, 2, 24.
nôn sôlum públicâs sed etiam privâtâs iniûriâs ultus est; quod èius soceri L. Písônis avum, L. Písônom légâtum, Tigurini eòdem proeliò quô Cassium interfécerant.

Caesar Crosses the Saône.

13. Hóc proeliò factò, reliquâs cópiâs Helvëtiôrum ut cónsequi posset, pontem in Arari faciendum cûrat atque ita exercitum trâdúcit.

The Helvetii Send an Embassy.

Helvëtiï repentinò èius adventù commôti, cum id quod ipsi dièbus xx aegerrimè cônfécerant, ut flümen trânsirent, illum unô diè fécisse intellegérent, légâtös ad eum mittunt; cûius légàtiônis Divíco princeps fuit, qui bellò Cassiânò dux Helvëtiôrum fuerat.

Divíco’s Speech.

Is ita cum Caesare ègit: 'Si pâcem populus Rómânum cum Helvëtiis faceret, in eam partem itûrös atque ibi futûrös Helvëtiüs ubi èos Caesar cônstituïsset atque esse voluisset; sin bellò persequi perseverâret, reminiscéretur et veteris incommodi populi Rómâni et pristinae virtûtis Helvëtiôrum. Quod impròvisûm unûm pâgum adortus esset, cum ei qui flümen trânsissent suis auxilium ferre nôn possent, nê ob eam rem aut suae màgnopere virtûti tribueret aut ipsös déspiceret; sê ita à patribus màiôribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtûte contiderent quam dolò aut ìnsidiis niterentur. Quâ ré nê committeret ut is locus ubi cûnstitissent ex calamitâte populi Rómâni et interneçione exercîtûs nûmen caperet aut memoriam prôderet.'

Cf. ¹ adventù, p. 6, l. 21. — ² cônficìendâs, 3, 11. — ³ intellegèbat, 8, 17. — ⁴ cônstitûtâ, 4, 7. — ⁵ auxilium, 9, 15.
Caesar's Reply.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: 'Eo sibi minus dubitatiōnis dari quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētii commemorassent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent; quī si alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod si veteris con-tumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Consuēsse enim deōs immortālis, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

He Proposes Terms, Which are not Accepted.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, utī ea quae pollicēantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduīs dē iniūriās quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.' Divicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis insti-tūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Campaign against the Helvetii.

Slight Reverse of Cæsar's Cavalry.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Cæsar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partis hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidīus novissimum agmen insēcūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

The Helvetii Move on; Cæsar Follows.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsīstere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs laccessere coepērunt. Cæsar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentīa hostem rapinis popūlationibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quindecim iter fēcērunt uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis mīlibus passum interesset.

The Hæduī Neglect to Furnish Grain.

16. Interim cotidiē Cæsar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent publicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus (ut ante dictum est) posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis māgnā cōpiā suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvēxerat propterēa minus āū poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Hæduī; conferrī, comportāri, adesse dicere.

Caesar Summons their Chiefs and Upbraids them.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit\(^1\) et diem instāre quō diē frumentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātīs eōrum principibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat,—in

his Diviciācō et Liscō, qui summō magistrātūi praeerat quem \(5\) vergobretum appellant Haedui, qui crēātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem,—graviter\(^2\) eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī\(^3\) posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn

Cf. \(^1\) intellegēbat, p. 8, l. 17. —\(^2\) gravius, 12, 14. —\(^3\) sūmptūrum, 7, 8.
sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepterit,¹ multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Liscus Explains the Situation: a Party Opposed to the Romans Prevents the Supply.

17. Tum dēnum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod antea tacuerat prōpōnit: ¹ Esse nōn nūllōs ² quōrum auctōri-tās apud plēbem ³ plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrāti-ōne multitūdinēm deterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant ⁴ quod dēbeant: praestāre, si iam principātum ⁵ Galliē obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; ¹⁰ neque dubitāre quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmāni, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī.⁷ Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiāri;⁸ hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.⁹

Liscus Privately Discloses the Ambition and Treachery of Dumnorix, who Favors the Helvetii.


The Gallic War.

reliquaque omnia Haeduorum vectigalia parvo pretiō redempta habère, propterea quod illō licente contra licēri audeat nēmō. Hīs rebus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātis ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habère, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātis largiter posse; atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus homīni illic nōbilissīmō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habère, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquis suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātīs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnītātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Divīciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgni obtinendī venire; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē ēa quam habeat grātīa, dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucī ante diēbus esset factum, initium [ēius] fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque ēius equitūs, — nam equitātūi, quem auxiliō Caesari Haeduī miserant, Dumnorīx praeerat; eōrum fugā reliquam esse equitātum perterritum.

Caesār Thinks that Dumnorīx should be Punished.

19. Quibus rebus cōgnitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, — quod per finis Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs currāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitātīs sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, — satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in

Fig. 11. — Gallic Remains.

Campaign against the Helvetii.

But Summons Diviciacus, Whom he does not Wish to Offend.

His omnibus rebus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, īustitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnīum rērum fidem habēbat, cum ēō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō [Gallōrum] dē Dumnorige sint dicta; et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē ēō apud sē dixerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse de ēō, causā cōgnitā, statuat vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

Diviciacus Pleads for his Brother's Pardon.

20. Diviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obscērāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: 'Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex ēō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiām sed paene ad perniciem suam īterētur; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgi commovērī. Quod sī quid ei ē Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem

existimātūrum¹ non suā voluntāte factum; quā ex re futūrum uti tōtius Galliae animī a sē āverterentur.'²

And for his Sake Dumnorix is Spared.

Haec cum pluribus verbīs flēns a Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prendit; cōnsōlātus rogat finem ārandi faciat; 5 tanti ēius apud sē gratiam esse ostendit uti et rei publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī ac precibus³ condonet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur,⁴ prōpōnit;⁵ monet ut in reliquum tempus omnis suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

Cāsār Prepares for a Battle.

21. Eōdem die ab explōrātōribus⁶ certior factus hostis sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, 15 quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, qui cōgnōscerent misit. Renūntiātum⁷ est facilem esse. Dē tertīa vigilīā⁸ T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus qui iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sūi cōnsili⁹ sit ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigilīā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, qui rei militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.¹⁰

Considius, being Panic-stricken, Delays the Plan.

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius\(^1\) mille et quingentis passibus abesset,\(^2\) neque, ut posteā ex captīvis comperit, aut

ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus\(^3\) esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupāri\(^4\) voluerit\(^5\) ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum\(^6\) collem subdücit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiāe prope hostium castra vīsa essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostis impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstīnēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et

Cf.\(^1\) longē, p. 8, l. 16. —\(^2\) absunt, i, 7. —\(^3\) cōgnōverat, 17, 5. —\(^4\) occupātis, 9, 5. —\(^5\) velint, i2, i5. —\(^6\) proximās, i0, i2.
Helvētiōs castra mōvisse\textsuperscript{1} et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sībi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō consuērat intervallō, hostis sequitur et mūlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

\textit{Cēsar Turns towards Bibracte to Get Supplies. The Helvetii, Emboldened, Follow him.}

5 23. Postridiē ēius diēi, quod omnīnō\textsuperscript{2} bīduum supererat cum exercitūī frūmentum metīrī\textsuperscript{5} oportēret,\textsuperscript{4} et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn ampliūs\textsuperscript{5} mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, rēī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; \textit{itaque} iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit\textsuperscript{6} ac Bibracte ire contendit.\textsuperscript{6} Ea rēs per fugītīvōs L. Aemili, decurīōnis equitūm Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod pridē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīssissent,\textsuperscript{7} sīve eō quod rē frūmentāriā\textsuperscript{8} interclūdī posse cōnsiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō\textsuperscript{9} agmine īnsequī\textsuperscript{10} ac lacesse\textsuperscript{11} coeperunt.

\textbf{Both Sides Prepare for Battle.}

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Cēsar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque qui sustinēret hostium impetum\textsuperscript{12} misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciēm instrūxit\textsuperscript{13} legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citerīōre\textsuperscript{14} proximē cōnscripserat et omnia auxilia conlocāri, [ac tōtum montem hominibus complēri, et intereā] sarcīnās in ūnum locum

\textit{Cf.\textsuperscript{1} movent, p. 13, l. 1. — \textsuperscript{2} omnīnō, 6, 18. — \textsuperscript{3} metīrī, 14, 2. — \textsuperscript{4} oportēret, 14, 2. — \textsuperscript{5} ampliūs, 13, 15. — \textsuperscript{6} contendit, 18, 21. — \textsuperscript{7} committeret, 19, 9. — \textsuperscript{8} frūmentāriīs, 8, 19. — \textsuperscript{9} novissimum, 13, 5. — \textsuperscript{10} īnsecūtī, 13, 5. — \textsuperscript{11} lacesse, 13, 11. — \textsuperscript{12} impetus, 19, 11. — \textsuperscript{13} instrūit, 19, 8. — \textsuperscript{14} citerīōris, 9, 6.}
conferri, et eum ab his qui in superiore aciē cōnstiterant\(^1\) mūnirī iussit. Helvētii cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī,

impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

Cf. \(^1\) cōnstitissent, p. 11, l. 23.
The Battle.


Cf. 1 conspectū, p. 9, l. 16. — 2 impēditōs, 10, 10. — 3 successē-runt, 21, 5. — 4 adgressus, 10, 10.
The Helvetii are Defeated with Great Loss. They Retreat.

26. Ita ancipit proelium diū atque ācriter pugnatum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetus nōn possent, alteri sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimentaē et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proelium, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnatum

Cf. ¹ sustinēret, p. 20, l. 19. — ² impedimenta, 21, 3.
The Gallic War.

Caesar

sit, áversum hostem vidére némó potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta púgnátum est, próptereá quod prò válló carrós obiécerant et é locó superióre in nostrós venientis télà coniciébant, et nón núlli\(^1\) inter carrós rédásque matarás ac trágulás subiciébant nostrósque volnerábant. Diū cum esset púgnátum, impedimentis castrisque nostrí potíti\(^2\) sunt. Ibi Orgetorígis filià atque únus é filiís captus est. Ex eó proelíó circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuérunt, eácque tótá nocte continenter\(^3\) iérunt: [núllam partem noctis itinere intermissó] in finís Lingonum diē quartó pervénérunt,\(^4\) cum et propter volnera militum et propter sepultúram occísórúm\(^5\) nostri [tríduum moráti] eós sequi nón potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litteráss núntiósque misit nē eós frúmentó něve alíā ré iuvárent; qui si iúvissent, sē eódem locó quō Helvétios habitúrum. Ipse tríduó intermissó cum omnibus cópiís\(^6\) eós sequi coepit.

Negotiations for Surrender.

27. Helvétii omnium rérum inopia aductí légátóes dé dèditíone ad eum misérunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convénissent sēque ad pedés próiécissent suppliciterque locúti flentés\(^7\) pácem petissent,\(^8\) atque eós in eó locó quō tum essent suum adventum\(^9\) exspectáre iussisset, párurunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervénit, obsídes,\(^10\) arma, servós qui ad eós perfúgissent poposcit.

Six Thousand Helvetii Flee, but Later are Captured.

Dum ea conquiritur et cónferuntur,\(^11\) [nocte intermissā] circiter hominum milia ví éius pági\(^12\) qui Verbigenus appellátur, sive timóre perterrití,\(^13\) nē armís tráditís supplició\(^14\)

Cf. \(^1\) nón nullós, p. 15, l. 5. — \(^2\) potíri, 2, 16. — \(^3\) continenter, 1, 10. — \(^4\) pervénit, 10, 8. — \(^5\) occísum, 7, 2. — \(^6\) cópiás, 19, 7. — \(^7\) fléns, 18, 3. — \(^8\) peteret, 18, 3. — \(^9\) adventú, 16, 12. — \(^10\) obsídés, 12, 18. — \(^11\) cónferí, 21, 1. — \(^12\) páguas, 10, 12. — \(^13\) perterritós, 20, 12. — \(^14\) supplició, 17, 6.
Campaign against the Helvetii.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per finis ierant, his uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgāti esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnis, obsidibus, armis, perfugis trāditis in dēditionem accēpit.

The Helvetii Forced to Return.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finis suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maxime ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī disceserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germāniī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finis trāsirent, et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduis, quod ēregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis conlocarent, concessit; 10

quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris libertātisque condicionem atque ipsi erant recēpērunt.

Census of the Tribes Before and After their March.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātæ, quibus in tabulis nōminātīm ratiō cōnfecta erat, qui numerus domō exīsset eōrum qui arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot pueri, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milium cclxiii, Tulingōrum milium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xcii. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eōrum qui domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium et x.

Gallic Chiefs Congratulate Cæsar.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgāti, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: ‘Intellegere sēsē, tametsi prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ĭsū terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmānī accidisse; propterēā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquissent, uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cópiā délicerent, quam ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructūsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitātis stipendiāriās habērent.’

They Request a Council.

25 Petiērunt uti sībi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre

Cf. reperiebat, p. 16, l. 17.— veteris, 12, 7.— accidisset, 17, 25.— relinquēbatur, 8, 1.— potiti, 24, 7.— dēligitur, 3, 14.— liceat, 6, 26.
Campaign against Ariovistus.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs civitātum qui ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petieruntque uti sibi sēcrētō [in occultō] dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs fentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiècērunt: 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et laborāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent; propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.'

Speech of Diviciacus the Hœduan. He Complains of the Encroachments of the Germans.

Locūtus est prō his Diviciacus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hi cum tantopere dē potentiātū inter sē multōs annōs contendērent, factum esse uti ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserunt. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trànsisse; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cópiās Gallōrum hominēs feri ac barbarī adamāssent, tràductōs plūris; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientīs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamītātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse. Quibus proelīis calamītātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicitīa plūrimum ante in Galliā.
The Gallic War.

potuissent, coāctōs¹ esse Sēquanis obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs
civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere² sēsē neque
obsidēs repetītūrōs⁸ neque auxilium a populō Rōmānō implō-
rātūrōs neque recūsāturōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum
diciōne atque imperiō essent. Unum sē esse ex omni civi-
tāte Haeduōrūm qui addūci nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut
liberōs suōs obsidēs dare. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte
profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium pos-
tulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus
tenērētur.⁴

The Hard Lot of the Sequani.

Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanis quam Haeduīs victīs acci-
disse, propterēa quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum
finibus cōnsēdisset⁵ tertiamque partem agri Sēquanī, qui
esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā
parte tertia Sēquanōs dēcedere iūbēret, propterēa quod pau-
cis mēnsibus⁶ ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiii ad eum
vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse
paucis annis uti omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque
omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōnferen-
dum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc
cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Tyranny of Ariovistus.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cópiās proeliō vice-
rit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et
crudēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque⁷ liberōs
poscere,⁸ et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque⁹ ēdere, si
qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit.
Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn
posse ēius imperia diūtiō sustinēri.

Cf. ¹ coāctus, p. 15, l. 15.—² obstrictās, 8, 9. —⁸ repetīssēt, 26, 17. —⁴ tenēri, 19, 6. —⁶ cōnsēdissē, 18, 14. —⁶ mēnsiūm, 4, 23. —⁷ quisque,
17, 13.—⁸ poposcit, 24, 23. —⁹ cruciātūm, 27, 12. —¹⁰ diū, 23, 1.
Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod Helvētīi fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium aliās sēdis remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaeccumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quin dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sīnt gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitus vel recenti victōriā vel nōmine Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē māior multitūdō Germanōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur,¹ Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.'

32. Hāc orātiōne ab Diviciacō habitā omnēs qui aderant māgnō flētū auxiliōm ā Caesare petere coepērunt.² Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs³ ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed tristīs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius reī quae causa esset mirātus ex ipsīs quae-sīt.⁴ Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem tristītiā tacītī permanēre. Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ėllum omnīnō vocem exprimere posset, ēdem Diviciacūs Haeduus respondit: 'Hoc esse miserīōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum,⁵ quod sōli nē in occultō quidem queri⁶ neque auxiliōm implōrāre audērent; absen-tisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut si cōram adesset, horrē- rent, proptereā quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās⁷ darētur, Sēquanis vēro, qui intrā finīs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruci-avitūs essent perferendi.'

Cæsar’s Reasons for Checking Ariovistus.

33. His rebus cognitís Caesar Gallórum animós verbis cõnírmávit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūrām; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum. Hāc ērāti-ōne habitā concilium dimīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suspiciendam putāret: imprīmis, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō a senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenēri, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrābatur. Paulātīm autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venire, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in İtaliam contenderent; [praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus divideret] ; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrīmē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spiritūs, tantam adrograntiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn viderētur.

He Requests an Interview with Ariovistus, Who Declines.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, qui ab eo postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utriusque conloquiō deligeret: velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Ei lēgātiōni Ariovistus respondit: ‘Si quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē
ad eum ventūrum fuisse; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportère. Praeterea sē neque sine exercitū in eās partīs Galliae venire audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negotī esset.'

**Cæsar Sends a Second Message Stating his Demands.**

35. His responsīs ad Cæsarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Cæsar lēgātōs cum ās mandātīs mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venire invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: primum, nē quam multitūdīnim homīnum ampliūs trāns Rhēnum in Galliām trādūceret; deinde obsīdēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quos illī habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve ās sociīisque eōrum bellum inferret. Si id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; si nōn impetrāret, sēsē, — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōnsulībus senātūs cēnsuisset utī quicumque Galliām prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicaē facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, — sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.'

**Ariovistus's Haughty Reply.**

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse bellī ut

Cf. 1 oportēbat, p. 4, 1. 6.— 2 audērent, 29, 21.— 6 vidērentur, 6, 9.— 4 commūnī, 27, 1.— 5 ampliūs, 20, 8.— 6 lacesserē, 13, 11.— 7 impetrātū, 27, 8.— 8 iūris, 26, 1.
celerrimē \(^1\) potuit comparātā, māgnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both Strive to Reach Vesontio.

38. Cum trīdui \(^2\) viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, \(^5\) [trīduique viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse]. Id nē accideret \(^3\) māgnopere sibi prae cavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsui erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nāturā locī sic müniēbātur ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem,\(^4\) propterēa quod flūmen Dubis, ut circīnō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingent. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem ēficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnis nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit,\(^5\) occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

The Roman Soldiers are Panic-stricken.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque\(^6\) causā morātur,\(^7\) ex percontātīōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, qui ingenti māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdībili virtūte atque exercitātīōne in armīs esse praedicābant,— saepenumerō sēsē cum his congressōs\(^9\) nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse,— tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocrer omnium mentis animōsque perturbāret. Hic prīmum ortus\(^10\) est ā tribūnis militum,

Cf. \(^1\) celeriter, p. 15, l. 20.—\(^2\) trīduum, 24, 12.—\(^3\) accīdat, 29, 4.—\(^4\) facultās, 29, 23.—\(^5\) contenderent, 30, 18.—\(^6\) commeātū, 31, 4.—\(^7\) morāti, 24, 12.—\(^8\) saepenumerō, 30, 8.—\(^9\) congrederētur, 32, 16.—\(^10\) oriuntur, 2, 5.
praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnum in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte1 discēdere licēret; nōnnūlli pudōre adducti, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent,2 remanēbant. Hī neque volūm fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poserant; abdītī3 in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus4 suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtīs castrīs testamenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam ei quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēisque quīque equitātūi praerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimāri volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitudīinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē5 supportāri posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nūlli etiam Caesāri nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientiū militēs neque propter timōrem sīgna lātūrōs.

Cæsar Makes Light of their Fears, and Proposes to Advance at Once.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset,6 convocātō cōnsiliō omni-umque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibītī7 centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīnum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitan- dum8 putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amīcitiam adpetisse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam9 ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret?10 Sibī quīdem persuādēri, cōgnitis suis postulātīs atque aequitāte condi-ciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populi Rōmānī

gratiam repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbri et Teutonis ā Gāliō Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus videbātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid

ūsus ac disciplina quam ā nōbis accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicāri posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstan-tiā, propterēā quod, quōs aliquāmdiū inermīs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe-numerō Helvētii congressi, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārīnt; qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quaererent, reperīre posse diūturnitāte belli défatigātis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsis castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestā-

tem fēcisset, dēspērantīs iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratīōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratīōni contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercītūs capī posse.

Qui suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem an-gustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praebībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mā-tūra; dē itinerē ipsōs brevi tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē ea rē commovērī; scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnām défuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.


Effect of Caesar's Speech. He Advances.

41. Hāc Ĝrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendi innāta est; princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs
militum ei grātiās\textsuperscript{1} ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicum fēcis
set, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissīmam cōnfir
māvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et
primōrum ārdinum centuriōnibus ēgérunt utī Cæsari satis
facerent:\textsuperscript{2} 'Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuīsse
neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicum, sed imperātōris esse
exīstimāvisse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere ex
quisiō per Diviciācum, quod ex aliis eī maximam fidem\textsuperscript{3}
habēbat, ut milium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs aper-
tis exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus
5 est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātō-
ribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milia pas-
suīm quattuor et vigintī abesse.

Ariovistus Requests an Interview. Cæsar's Precautions.

42. Cōgnitō Cæsaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum
mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō\textsuperscript{4} postulāsset, id per sē
fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine peri-
culō facere posse existimāret.' Nōn respuit condicionēm
Cæsar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābatur, cum
id quod anteā petenti\textsuperscript{5} dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; māg-
namque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī
in eum beneficiīs, cōgnitis suīs postulātīs,\textsuperscript{6} fore utī pertināciā
dēsisteret.

Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quintus. Interim
saepe cum lēgāti ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ari-
vistus postulāvit nē quem pedītem ad conloquium Cæsar
addūceret: 'Verēri sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur;
uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse
ventūrum.' Cæsar, quod neque conloquium interpositā
causā tollī\textsuperscript{7} volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equi-

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} grātiam, p. 31, l. 12.—\textsuperscript{2} satisfaciant, 12, 21.—\textsuperscript{3} fidem, 17, II.
—\textsuperscript{4} conloquiō, 30, 25.—\textsuperscript{5} petēbat, 34, 4.—\textsuperscript{6} postulārent, 30, 24.—
\textsuperscript{7} tolleret, 22, 2.
tātui committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallis equitibus dētractis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnīs decimae, cui quam maxīmē cōnfidēbat,1 impōnere, ut praesidium2 quam amīcissimum, si quid opus3 factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn in iridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnīs dixit plus quam polllicitus esset Cæsarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum;4 ad equum rescribere.

Cæsar Pleadēs with Ariovistus, but Renewēs his Demandēs.

43. Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē5 spatiō ab castrīs Ariovistī et Cæsaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Cæsar quam equīs dēvēxerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equītēs Ariovistī pari intervāllō cōnstitērunt.6 Ariovistus ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium adducerent postulavit. Ubi eō ventum est, Cæsāris initiō ērātōnīs sua senātūsque in eum beneficia cōmmemorāvit,7 quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnēra amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et prō māgnīs homīnīs officiīs cōnsuēsse tribū docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālītāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsis cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honorifica in eōs facta essent, ut omni temporē totius Galliae principātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiām adpetissent.8 Populi Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem8 ut sociōs atque amicōs nōn modo suī nihil déperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, 

honöre auctiörēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmānī adtulissent, id eis ēripī quis pati posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociis bellum īnferret; obsidēs red-deret; si nullam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

Ariovistus Arrogantly Repeats his Claims.

44. Ariovistus ad postulātā Caesaris pauca respondit; dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit.3 Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallī; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praeīmis domum propinquōsquē reliquisse; sēdīs habēre in Gallīā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūrē bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnīs Gallīae civitātis ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnis cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; si pāce ēti velint, inīquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.7

Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ornāmentō et praesidiō,20 nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, idque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditicii subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmāni amicitiam quam adpetierit.10

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliām trādūcat, id25 sē suī muniendi, nōn Gallīae impūgnandae causā facere: ēius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in

Cf. ēreptūrī, p. 15, l. 12.—2 redditūrūm, 32, 10.—3 praedicābant, 33, 23.—4 propinquās, 16, 10.—5 iūs, 31, 27.—6 iterum, 31, 8.—7 penderent, 32, 12.—8 praesidium, 38, 4.—9 dēditiciōrum, 25, 2.—10 adpetissent, 38, 27.
The Gallic War.


Quod frātēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proxīmō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in his contentiōnibus quās Haedui sēcūm et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmānī sūs esse.

Dēbēre sē suspicāri simulātā Caesarem amicitīā quem exercitum in Galliā habeat suī opprimendī causā habēre. Qui nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex his regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre quōrum omnium grātiam atque amicitiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemīō remūnerātūrum, et quae cumque bella geri vellet sine ullō ēius labōre et periculō cōnflectūrum.

Cæsar Does not Yield.

45. Multa ab Cæsare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quà rē negotiō désistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populi Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs désereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse

Ariovisti quam populi Römānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Römānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi Römānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium;\(^1\) si iūdicium senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliām, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.\(^7\)

The Germans Make a Treacherous Attack, and Cæsar Withdraws.

\[46.\] Dum haec in conloquīō geruntur,\(^2\) Cæsari nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovisti propius\(^3\) tumulum accēdere,\(^4\) et ad nos-trōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere.\(^5\) Cæsar loquendi finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostīs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine āllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostībus dicī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquīō circumventōs.\(^6\) Posteāquam in volgus militūm ēlātum est quā adrogantiā in conloquīō Ariovistūs ūsus omni Galliā Römānīs interdīxisset, impetumque\(^7\) in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium ut dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiūmque pūgnandi māius exercitūi iniectum est.

Cf. \(^1\) imperiō, p. 28, 1. 5. — \(^2\) gerantur, 15, 13. — \(^3\) propius, 37, 16. — \(^4\) accessisset, 37, 16. — \(^5\) coniciēbant, 24, 4. — \(^6\) circumvenīrētur, 37, 26. — \(^7\) impetum, 40, 6.
The Gallic War.

Seizure of Two of Caesar's Envoys by Ariovistus.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem légátōs mittit: 'Velle sē dē his rēbus quae inter eōs agi coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; uti aut iterum conloquiō diem cōnstitueret,¹ aut, si id minus vellet, e suis légātīs 5 aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendi Caesari causa visa, nōn est; et eō magis quod pridē² eius diēi Germānīi rēti-

nērī nōn poterant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum [ē sui] sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et homi-
nibus fēris obiectūrum existimābat. Commodissimum³ 10 visum est Gāium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Cabūri filium, summā virtūte et hūmanītāte adulēscēntem,—cūius pater ā Gāiō Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdīne utēbātur, et quod in eō 15 peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset,—ad eum mittere, et M. Mētium, qui hospitiō ⁴ Ariovisti utēbātur. His man-
dāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent.⁵ Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cō-

spēxisset, exercitū sū prae sente conclāmāvit: 'Quid ad sē 20 venirent? an speculandī causa?' Čōnāntīs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Manoeuvering and Skirmishing.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridē⁶ eius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxīt et milibus pas-

suum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō uti frūmentō commeātūque qui ex Sēquanīs et Haeduis supportārētur Caesarēm intercluderet.⁷ Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quinque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxīt et aciem iūnstrūctam⁸

Campaign against Ariovistus.

habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potes-

German Method of Fighting.

Genus hoc erat pūgnae quō sē Germāni exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimi

Cf. ^1 potestātem, p. 35, l. 18. — ^2 défuisse, 36, 15. — ^3 cotidiē, 13, 17.
ac fortissimi, quōs ex omni cōpiā singuli singulōs suae salūtis causā delēgerant; cum his in proelīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; ¹ hi, sī quid erat dúrīus, concurrēbant; sī qui graviōre ² volnere acceptō equō déciderat, ⁵ circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerrīus ³ recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iūbis sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Caesar Fortifies another Camp.

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibēretur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Ger-

Fig. 23. — Soldiers Attacked while Encamping.

10 māni cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab his, castris idōneum locum délēgit, aciēque tripliici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra munire ⁴ iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter

passus sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter homi-
num numerō sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitātū
Ariovistus misit, quae cōpiæ nostrōs terrērent 1 et mūni-
tiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sēcius Caesar, ut ante cōnstitu-
erat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere
iussit. Mūnitis castris duās ibi legiōnes reliquit et partem
auxiliōrum, 2 quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

More Skirmishing, but No General Engagement.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrisque 3
cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque à māiōribus castris prōgres-
sus aciem instrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. 10
Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre 4 intellēxit, circiter meridiē
exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēnum Ariovistus partem
suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra 5 oppūgnāret misit.
Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis
occāsū 6 suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs 7 et acceptīs 15
volneribus in castra redūxit.

Reason for the Germans' Delay.

Cum ex captīvis quaeueret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus
proelīō nōn dēcertāret, 8 hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud
Germānōs ea cōnsuetūdō esset ut mātṛs fāmiliae eōrum
sortibus et vāticinatioñibus dēclārarent utrum proelium 20
committī ex ūsū 9 esset necne; eās ita dicere: 'Nōn esse
fās Germānōs superāre, si ante novam lūnam proelīō con-
tendissent.'

Caesar Forces a Battle.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diē Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris
quod satis esse visum est reliquit, ālāriōs omnis in cōnspectū
hostium prō castris minōribus cōnstituit, 10 quod minus multi-

Cf. 1 perterriti, p. 24, l. 26. — 2 auxilia, 20, 23. — 8 uterque, 37, 27. —
4 prōdeundum, 44, 5. — 6 minōrem, 35, 5. — 6 occāsum, 2, 9. — 7 intule-
tūdine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat,1 ut ad speciem ālāriis uteō tur; ipse triplici instructā acie ē usque ad castra hostium accessit.2 Tum dēmum necessāriō Germāni suās cópiās castris ēdūxērunt generātimque cōn-
stituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tri-
bocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēvōs, omnemque aciem suam rēdis et carris circumsedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs3 imposuerunt, quae ad proelium proficiscentis, passis manibus flentēs, implūrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulis4 legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit,5 uti eōs testis6 suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri ēcriter in hostis signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatiōm7 pila in hostis coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectis pilis cóminus gladiis pūgnātum est. At Germāni celeriter ex consuetūdine suā phalange factā impētūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostri quī in phalangā8 īnsilīrent et scīta manibus revellerent et désuper volnerarent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō9 cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns,10 qui equitātui praerat, quod expeditior11 erat quam ei qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostri subsidiiō misit.

Fig. 24. — View from Ostheim, looking towards Zellenberg.
53. Ita proelium restitutum est atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitēruntquam ad flūmen

Cf. 1 désistere, p. 40, l. 26.
Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, 
pervēnērunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus cōnfisiō trānāre
contendērunt aut lintribus invenitis sībi salūtem repperē-
runt. In his fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad
ripam nactus ea profūgit; reliquōs omnis cōnsecūti equītēs
nostī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna
Suēva nātiōne, quam domō sécum dūxerat, altera Nōrica,
rēgēs Voccōnīs soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre
missam; utraque in eā fugā perīt. Duae filiae ārum
altera occisa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus,
cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnis catēnīs vincitus traheō-
tur, in ipsum Caesarem hostīs equītātū insequentem inci-
dit. Quae quidem ōs Caesari nōn minōrem quam ipsa
victōria voluptātem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum
prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē
manibus hostium, sībi restitūtum vidēbat; neque ēius calami-
tātē dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquām fortūna
dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum
dicēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus
reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolūmem. Item
M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. Cæsar Goes to Hither Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvi, qui ad
ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coēpērunt; quōs
Ubiī, qui proximi Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī
māgnun ex eīs numerum occidērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte
duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūriōs paulō quam
tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercītum
dēdūxit; hibernīs Labīēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem
Galliām ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

Cf. cōnfidentābat, p. 36, l. 25. — lintribus, 10, 4. — custōdēs, 18, 11.
BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY. B.C. 57.

All the Belgian Tribes Conspire against the Romans. Reasons for this.

UM esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebris ad eum rumores adferabantur, posterisque item Labieni certior fiabet omnis Belgas, quam ertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum coniurare obsidesque inter se dare. Coniurandis esse causas: primum quod vererentur ne omni pacatâ Gallias ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde quod ab non nullis Gallis sollicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos iutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia molestè ferabant; partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperii tudebant, ab non nullis etiam, quod in Galliâ a potentioribus atque eis qui ad conducendos homines facultatis habebant volgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperii nostrâ cõsecui poterant.

Cæsar promptly Moves against them.


The Remi Submit and Promise Aid.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque3 omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proxīmi Galliæ ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Icium et Andocombogium, primōs civitātīs, misē-15 runt, qui dicerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permettere; neque sē cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniū-rasse,4 parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque5 rēbus iuväre;6 reliquōs omnīs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, qui cis Rhēnum incolant,7 sēsē cum ħīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque8 suōs, quī ēōdem īūre et isdem lēgibus ītantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis 25 habeant, dēterrarē 9 potuerint quīn cum ħīs cōnsentīrent.'

Origin and Strength of the Belgæ as Told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab ħīs quaereret10 quae civitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quīd in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: plē-

Cf. 1 aestātē, p. 48. 1. 25. — 2 manūs, 32, 27. — 3 celerius, 44, 5. — 4 con-
Fig. 28. — Gaul with Trumpet (carnyx).
rōsque Belgās esse ortōs¹ ab Germānis, Rhēnumque anti-
quitus traductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse
Gallōsque qui ea loca incoherent expulisse, sōlōsque² esse
qui patrum nostrōrum memoria, omni Galliā vexātā,³ Teu-
tonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finis ingredi prohibuerint; quā
ex rē fieri uti cārum rērum memoria māgnam sībī auctōri-
tātem māgnōsque spīritūs⁴ in rē militāribi sūmerent.⁵ Dē
numeros eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant,
propterā quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniūncit,
quantam quisque multitudinem in commune Belgārum con-

Fig. 29. — Coin of Diviciacus, King of the Suessiones.
maximē feri inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint;\(^1\) quindecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem milia, Morinōs
xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Calētōs x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem milia;
Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine
Germānī appellantur,\(^2\) arbitrāri ad xl milia.

Cæsar Marches to the Aisne, and Encamps beyond it.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberālitērque ōratiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs
obsidēs ad sē addūci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter
ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum māgnopere\(^3\)
cohortātus docet quantō opere reī publicae commūnisque
salūtis\(^4\) intersit manūs\(^5\) hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā
multitudine ūnō tempore cōnfigendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās Haedui in finis Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint
et eōrum agrōs populāri\(^6\) coeperint. His dātis mandātīs eum
ā sē dimittit. Postquam omnis Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum
locum coāctās\(^7\) ad sē venīre [vidit] neque iam longē abesse
ab eis quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmis cōgnōvit,
flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmis Rēmōrum finibus,
exercitum trādūcere māturāvit\(^8\) atque ibi castra posuit.
Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripis flūminis mūniēbat
et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et com-
meātūs\(^9\) ab Rēmis reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad
eum portāri possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat.
Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūriōn
Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in
altitūdinem pedum xii vallō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum
mūniri iubet.

Cf. \(^1\) aberat, p. 45, l. 1. — \(^2\) appellātōs, 40, 8. — \(^3\) māgnopere, 33, 7.
—\(^4\) salūtem, 48, 3. —\(^5\) manūs, 50, 8. — \(^6\) populārentur, 32, 22. —\(^7\) cōgi,
50, 8. — \(^8\) māturandum, 32, 27. — \(^9\) commeātū, 42, 26.
The Belgæ Attack Bibrax, a Town of the Remi, Eight Miles Away.


Cf. ¹ aegerrīmē, p. 11, l. 8. — ² coeptae, 42, 2. — ³ dīūtius, 49, 9.

---

Fig. 30. — Slinger (sūnditor).
Caesar Sends Relief and the Belgæ Advance on his Camp.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ësus qui nūntii ab Iccio vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō¹ oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmis cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium² prōpūgnandi accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundi oppidi discissit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulāti, omnibus vicīs³ aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendeōntur et a milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērant; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar Strengthens his Position.

8. Caesar primō et propter multītūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit;⁴ cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent⁵ periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inīleriōres intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportunō⁶ atque idōneō,— quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē⁷ ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum loci acīes instructa occupāre poterat, atque ex utrōque parte lateris⁸ deiectus habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulātīm⁹ ad plānitiem redibat,— ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossas obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrūm et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantis suōs circumvenīre posseēt. Hoc factō duābus legiōnibus quàs proximē cōnscripserat¹⁰ in castris

relictis, ut, si quo opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās
sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās
cōplās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxcērunt.

The Belgae Try to Cross the Aisne to Attack him in the Rear.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium ex-
ercitum. Hanc si nostri trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium trānseundi fieret, ut impedi-
tōs adgrederentur1 parāti in armīs erant. Interim proeliō
equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trāns-

---

**Fig. 32—Battle on the Aisne (Axona).**

eundi initium faciunt, secundīōrē2 equitum proeliō nostrīs
Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtīnus ex eō locō 10
ad flūmen Axonam contendeārunt, quod esse post nostra
casta dēmōnstrātum3 est. Ibi vadīs repertīs4 partem suā-

Cf. 1 adgressī, p. 22, l. 16.—2 secundīōres, 12, 16.—3 dēmōnstrāvi-

---

---
Caesar Crosses, and Defeats them. They Decide to Disband.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem traducit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostis impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī māgnum eōrum numerum occiderunt; per eōrum corpora reliquīs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantis multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumvenēntōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnāndō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fellellīsī intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum iniōriōm prōgredi pūgnandi causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frumentāriā dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in finis primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenērent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiis reī frumentāriāe uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Hāeduōs finibus Beilovacōrum adpropinquāre cōgnōverant. His persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxiliīm ferrent non poterat.

On their Retreat, they are Pursued with Great Slaughter.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nullō certō ordine neque imperiō,
cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fœcœrunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim\(^2\) Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā,\(^3\) insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent\(^4\) nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuīt. Primā lūce cōnfirmaē rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum qui novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. His Q. Pedīum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefecit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussīt. Hī novissimōs adortī\(^5\) et multa milia passuum prōsecūtī\(^6\) māgnam multītūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt; cum ab extrēmō agrīne, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetus nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ullā necessitāte neque imperiō continērent,\(^7\) exaudītō clamōre perturbātīs ērdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Īta sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum multītūdinem nostri interfēcērunt quantum fuit dieī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

The Suessiones, Alarmed by Cæsar's Advance, Surrender.

12. Postridīē ēius dieī Cæsar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recipercerent, in finīs Suessionōrum, qui proximī\(^8\) Rēmis erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendīt. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre\(^9\) cōnātus,\(^10\) quod vacuum ab défēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrique altitūdinem paucīs défendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vineās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsui erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessionōrum multītūdō in oppidum proximā

The Gallic War.

nocte convénit. Celeriter víneís ad oppidum áctis, aggere iactó turribusque cónstitutís, máginitúdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritáte Rómânórum permóti, légátós ad Caesarem dē dēditióne mittunt et petentibus Rémis ut cónservárentur impetrant.

In Like Manner the Bellovaci Surrender.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptís prímis civítátis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidó trāditís in dēditióinem Suessionēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacoś dúcit. Qui cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidó Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quínque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidó ēgressī manús ad Caesarem tendere et vôce significāre coepérunt sēsē in ēius fidem ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs conten-dere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō móre pācem ab Rōmānis petiérunt.

Diviciacus, Leader of the Hædui, Pleads for the Bellovaci.

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dimissis¹ Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum revertērat — factī verba: 'Bellovacoś omni tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs² ab suiō principībus, qui dicerent Haeduōs à Caesare in servitūtem redēctōs³ omnīs indignitātīs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs défēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Qui ēius cōnsili principēs fuissent, quod intellegērent quantam calamitātem civitāti intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petēre nōn sōlum Bellovacoś sed etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmen-
tiā ac mãnsuetūdine in eōs ētātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Hae-
duōrum auctoritātem⁴ apud omnis Belgās amplificātūrūm, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus,⁵ sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre⁶ cōnsuērint.'

The Ambiani Surrender. Reports of the Nervii, Who are Waiting to Give Battle beyond the Sambre.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē 15 eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dixit, et quod erat civitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque homīnum multi-
tūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trādītis omnibusque armās ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in finīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suāque omnia sine morā dédi-
derunt. Eōrum finīs Nervīi attingēbant; quōrum dé nātūrā möribusque Caesar cum quaerēret, sīc reperīēbat: Nūllum adītum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīni reliquārūm-
que⁷ rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferī, quod ēs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimāre; esse 25 hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; increpīāre atque incū-
sāre⁸ reliquis Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dédīdissent

The Gallic War.

patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre

1 sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllum condicionem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finis triduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs non amplius milia

5 passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnīs Nervīōs cōnsē-
disse2 adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum
Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimis suīs (nam hīs utrisque3
persuāserant uti eandem belli fortūnam experīrentur4); exspectārī etiam ab eīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in

10 itinere; mulierēs quique per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs
vidērentur in cum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs5
exercitū aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii, on Information Given by Deserters, Decide to Attack Cæsar while Pitching Camp.

17. His rēbus cōgnitis explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae

mīttit qui locum castrīs idōneum6 dēligant.7 Cum ex

15 dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem
secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quidam ex hīs, ut postea ex captīvis
cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostri
exercitūs perspectā,8 nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnerunt; atque
hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrūm

20 māgnūm numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam ne-
gōti, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs
māgnūm spatium abessent,9 hanc sub carcinīs adorīri; quā
pulsā impedimentīisque direptis futūrum ut reliquae contra
cōnsistere nōn audērent. Aduivābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium

25 qui rem dēferēbant, quod Nervīi antiquitus,10 cum equitātū
nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student,11 sed
quicquid possunt pedestribus valent12 cōpiās), quō facilius

Cf. 1 cōnfīrmāvit, p. 37, l. 2. — 2 cōnsēdisse, 51, 2. — 8 utrāque,
7 délegerant, 44, 2. — 8 perspectam, 36, 17. — 9 absint, 52, 1. — 10 anti-
finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causae ad eos venissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis, et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effecerant ut instar muri haec saepes munimenta praebèrent, quod non modo non intrari sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

**Fig. 35. — Defeat of the Nervii.**

**Nature of the Ground.**

18. Loci nataura erat haec quem locum nostri castris delégerant. Collis ab summō aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nomināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eo flūmine pari acclivitāte collis nascēbātur adversus huic et contra rius, passus circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiore

The Gallic War.

The Nervii Make a Furious Assault and Throw the Romans into Confusion.

5 19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ārdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpro- pinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās totius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equi- tēs nostri cum funditōribus sagittārisque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs recuperērant ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentis insequi audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnire coepe-runt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitūs ab eis qui in silvis abditī latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendi proeli convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ārdīnēsque cōnsituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdībili celerītāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostris] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celerītāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occu- pāti erant contende-runt.

The Critical Situation. The Discipline of the Roman Army.

20. Caesari omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurri oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi militēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant arces- sendi, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandi, signum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impedēbat. His difficultātibus duae rēs erant

subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proelīs exercitātī quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescībīre quam ab aliis docēri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caes- sar discēdere nisi mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur admi- nistrābant.

Cāesar Addresses the Tenth; the Rest are Already Engaged.

21. Caesar necessāriis rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs militēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad

The Gallic War. [Caesar

legionem decimam devinit. Militês non longiore oratioe cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinèrent neu perturbarentur\(^1\) animô hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinèrent, quod non longius hostês aberant quam quo telum adici posset, proeli committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandî causâ profectus, pugnantibus occurrît. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam parâtus\(^2\) ad dimicandum animus ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeás induendâs scûtisque tegmenta détrahenda tempus défuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem càsû devënit, quaeque prima signa cônspëxit ad haec cônstitit,\(^3\) nê in quærendis suis pûgnandi tempus dimiteret.

The Varying Fortunes of the Battle.

22. Ínstructô exercitû magis ut locî nàtûra déiectusquê\(^4\) collis et necessitâtis temporis quam ut reî militâris ratió atque ordô postulâtat, cum diversae legiônês aliae alía in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque\(^5\) dênsissimis (ut ante dêmônstrâtivimus) interiectís\(^6\) próspectus impediëtur, neque certa subsidia conlocâri neque quid in quâque parte opus\(^7\) esset prôvidêri neque ab únô omnia imperia adminis-trâri poterant. Itaque in tantâ rërum iniquitâtè fortûnae quoque ëventûs variì sequëbantur.

Two Legions Force the Atrebates into the River; Two Pursue the Viromandui, but the Nervii Gain the Camp.

23. Legiônis nônae et decimae militês, ut in sinistrâ parte aciè cônstiterant, pilis ëmissis cursû ac lassitudine ex-anímâtos volneribusque cônfectos Atrebâtës — nam his ea pars obvënerat — celeriter ex locô superiôre in flûmen com-pulërunt, et trânsire cônantìs\(^8\) inseçuti gladiis màgnam

Cf. \(^1\) perturbâtis, p. 57, 1. 15. — \(^2\) parâtissimam, 37, 2. — \(^3\) cônstiti, 53, 9. — \(^4\) déiectus, 54, 20. — \(^5\) saepês, 61, 4. — \(^6\) interiectis, 61, 4. — \(^7\) opus, 55, 1. — \(^8\) cônâtus, 57, 23.
The Belgian Confederacy.

The Enemy have the Advantage. The Treveri, Panic-stricken, Withdraw to their Homes.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostri levisque armāturae peditēs, qui cum eis ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipierent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliām in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōnspezerant, prae- dandī causā egressi, cum respexissent et hostīs in nostrīs castra versāri vidissent, praecipiētēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliām in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Treveri, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est singularīs, qui auxillii causā a civitāte missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenēri, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditorēs,

Cf. 1 iniquiōrem, p. 56, l. 15.—2 núdātus, 53, 7.—3 cornū, 46, 22.—4 summam, 51, 20.—5 armāturae, 56, 7.—6 prae- dandī, 61, 1.—7 mandārunt, 10, 11.—8 opinīōnem, 54, 13.—9 premēbant, 46, 24.
Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnis partis fugere vidissent, dēspērātis\(^1\) nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum hostīs potītōs, civitāti renūntiāvērunt.

Cæsar Enters the Fight in Person and Inspires his Soldiers.

5 25. Cæsar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgēri signisque in ūnum locum conlātis duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs\(^2\) militēs sībi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō\(^3\) vidit, — quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsis,\(^4\) signiferō interfectō, signō\(^5\) 10 āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus fērē centuriōnibus

Cf. \(^1\) dēspērantīs, p. 36, l. 1. — \(^2\) cōnfertissimo, 65, 10. — \(^3\) impedimentō, 22, 6. — \(^4\) occidērunt, 56, 10. — \(^5\) signum, 63, 5.
aut volnerātis aut occisis, in his primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque volneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse tardiorēs et nōn nūllōs\(^1\) ab novissimis désertō proelīō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostīs neque a fronte ex inferiorē locō subeuntis intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī\(^2\) posset,—scūtō ab novissimis [ūnī] militī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō\(^3\) vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit; centurionibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs cohortātūs militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ītī possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā militībus ac redintegrātō\(^4\) animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operām nāvāre cuperēt, paulum\(^5\) impetus tardātūs est.

Meanwhile Labienus, having Taken the Enemy's Camp, Sends a Reinforcement to Cæsar.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxτā cōnstiterat, item urgerī ab hoste ēvidisset, tribūnōs militūm monuīt ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostīs inferrent.\(^6\) Quō factō, cum alius alīi subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācīus resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coeperunt. Interim militēs legiōnēm duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidio impedimentīs fuerant, proelīō nūntiātō, cursū\(^7\) incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potitus\(^8\) et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur\(^9\) cōspicātūs, decimam legiōnēm subsidīō nostrīs misīt. Quī, cum ex equitūm et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et

\(^{1}\) nōn nūllīs, p. 49, l. 8. — \(^{2}\) submittātur, 53, l. 13. — \(^{3}\) scūtīs, 64, l. 10. — \(^{4}\) redintegrātō, 65, l. 3. — \(^{5}\) paulum, 45, l. 9. — \(^{6}\) intulērunt, 22, l. 19. — \(^{7}\) cursū, 64, l. 24. — \(^{8}\) potiundī, 54, l. 5. — \(^{9}\) gerentur, 50, l. 6.
The Nervii Utterly Routd, and Most of them Slain.

28. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad internecionem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redactō, māiorēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedi-tum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt séque ei dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redactōs esse dixērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplīcēs ūsus misericordiā vidērē-
Fig. 41. — Citadel of Namur.
tur, diligentissimē cōnservāvit suīisque finibus atque oppidis ütī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōisque prohibērent.¹

The Aduatuci Withdraw to a Strongly Fortified Position.
Account of their Origin.

29. Aduatuci, dē quibus suprā diximus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nerviis venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūncitis oppidis castellisque² désertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contu-
lērunt.³ Quod cum ex omnibus ĵn circuitū partibus altissi-
mās rupis déspectūsusque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter⁴

Cf. ¹ prohibuerint, p. 51, l. 5. — ² castellum, 56, 2. — ³ contulissent, 58, 10. — ⁴ lēniter, 54, 21.
acclivis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum cc reliquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgni ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabis in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, qui, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedimentis quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidiōm sex milia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hi post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitāti, cum aliās bellum inferrent aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They Scoff at the Roman Siege Works.

30. Ac primō adventū ex exercitūs nostri crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīisque proeliis cum nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum xii, in circuitū xv miliūm, crēbrisquē castellis circummūnīti oppidō sēsē continēbant.

Ubi vīneis actis aggere exstrūctō turrim procūl cōnstitū vidērunt, primum inrīdere ex mūrō atque increpitāre vocibus quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: ‘Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praeſertim hominēs tantulae statūrae’—nam plērumque hominibus Gallis prae

Cf. 1 adventum, p. 60, l. 6.—2 crēbrī, 49, 2.—3 vīneās, 57, 26.—4 aggere, 58, 1.—5 viribus, 48, 2.
māgnitūdine corporum suorum brevitās nostra contemptui est — 'tanti oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē conlocāre confiderent?'

They Become Alarmed, and Offer to Surrender Conditionally.

31. Ubi vērō movēri et adpropinquāre1 moenibus2 vidē-runt, novā atque inūsitāta speciē commōti3 lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī: ‘Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, qui tantae altītūdinīs māchanātiōnēs tantā celeritāte4 pró-movēre possent; sē suae omnia eōrum potestāti permet-tēre’5 dīxērunt. ‘Ūnum petere ac dēprecāri: si forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine,6 quam ipsis ab aliīs audī-rent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibī omnīs fērē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūti invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. Sibī praestāre, sī in um cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō pati quam ab hīs per 15 cruciātum7 interfici inter quōs domināri cōnsuēssent.’

They Accept Cæsar’s Terms, but Treacherously Retain Part of their Arms.

32. Ad haec Cæsar respondit: ‘Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam merītō eōrum civitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam8 mūrum arīēs attingisset, sē dēdīdissent; sed dēditīōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod 20 in9 Nervīs fēcissent factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī inīuriām īnferrent.’ Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armō-rum māgnā multītūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altī-25 tūdimem acervī armōrum adaēquārent,10 et tamen circiter

They Make a Sally from the Town, but are Repulsed. More than 50,000 Sold as Slaves.

33. Sub vespérum Caesar portás claudi militésque ex oppidó exire iussit, né quam noctú oppidání a militibus iníúriam acciperent. Illí ante initó (ut intellectum est) consílió, quod déditióne factá nostrós praesidia déductúrós aut dénique indulgentiúne servátúrós crédiderant,—partim cum eis quae rétinuerant et céláverant armís, partim scútís ex cortice factís aut viminibus intextís, quae subító, ut tempóris exiguitás postulábat, pellibus indúxerant,—tertiá vigília, quà minimé arduus ad nostrás munitiónés ascénsus vidébátur, omnibus cópiís repente ex oppidó éruptíónem fécerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperárat, ignibus significatióne factá, ex proximís castellís eó concursúm est, púgnátumque ab hostibus ita ácriter est ut á viris fortibus in extrémá spé salútis, iniquó locó, contrá eós qui ex valló turribusque télá iacerent, púgnári débutit, cum in úná virtúte omnis spés cónsisteret. Occísís ad homínim milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum réiecti sunt. Postrídii éius dieí refrácitis portís, cum iam défenderet némô, atque intrómissis militibus nostrí, sectionem éius oppidi universam Caesar vêndidit. Ab eís qui émerant capitum numerus ad eum relátus est milium quinquáginta trium.

Crassus Subdues many Coast Towns.

34. Eódem tempore à P. Crasso, quem cum legióne uná miserat ad Venetós, Venellós, Osímos, Coriosolítas, Esuvios, Aulercós, Redonés, quae sunt maritimae civitátis Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnís eías civi-

Cf. 1 oppidánís, p. 54, 1. 3.—2 exiguitás, 64, 7.—3 concurrí, 63, 2.—4 valló, 52, 27.—6 débérét, 68, 14.
tātēs in dicionem potestātemque populi Rōmāni esse redāctās.¹

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. A Thanksgiving for Cæsar's Victories is Decreed at Rome.

35. Hīs rebus gestīs, omni Galliā pācātā,² tanta hūius belli ad barbarōs opinīō perlāta est utī ab eis nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incoherent lēgātī ad Cæsarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperātā³ factūrās pollicitur.⁴ Quās lēgātiōnēs Cæsar, quod in Italiam Iīlyricumque proparbat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussīt. Ipse in Carnūtēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hibernā dēductīs in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Cæsaris diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.


![Gallic Coins](image-url)
Galba is Sent to Guard the Passes of the Alps about the Upper Rhone.

Cum in Ætiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legione xii et parte equitatu in Nantuatis, Veragros Sedunosque misit, qui a finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flu-mine Rhodanō ad summās Alpis pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpis, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnīisque cum portōriīs mercātorēs ire consuērunt, patē-fieri volēbat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrārētur, uti in his locis legiōnem hiemandi causā conlocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūris eōrum expūgnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortis duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquis ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, qui appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; qui vicus positus in valle, nōn māgnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partīs flu-mine dividerētur, alteram partem ēius vīcī Gallis [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohor-tibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit.

Cf. 1 portōria, p. 15, l. 25. — 2 vacuum, 57, 24.
Having Gone into Winter Quarters, He is Threatened by Large Numbers of the Native Tribes, Who Occupy the Neighboring Heights.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrūm complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vici quam Gallis concesserat omnīs noctū discessisse, montisqüe qui impendērēnt ā maxima multitudīne Sedūnōrūm et Veragrōrūm tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legionisqüe opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum, quod legionem—neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, qui commeātūs petendi causā missī erant—propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant;¹ tum etiam quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurretent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem possē impetum suum sustinērī existimābant. Accēdēbat

Cf. ¹ dēspiceret, p. 11, l. 20.
The Gallic War.

quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolē-bant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam per-petuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnāri et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sībi persuāsum habē-bant.

Galba Calls a Council. He will Defend the Camp, if Possible.

3. His nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitionēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditioāne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existi-māverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirēre coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī periculi praeter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia fērē superiōra loca multītūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportāri interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae ēius modi sententiāe dīcēbantur ut, impedimentīs relictīs ēruptionē factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderit. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīri et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls Attack Vigorously.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōnstitu-issent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō décūrrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integrīs viribus fortiter prōpūgnāre neque ēllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēn-sōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hoc superāri quod diūturnitātē pūgnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, allī integrīs viribus succēdēbant: quārum

Cf. 1 doleant, p. 12, l. 15.— 2 repentīnō, 11, 7.— 3 sententiām, 56, 21.— 4 premī, 65, 27.— 5 dēfessī, 22, 11.
Fig. 47. — Gaius Iulius Caesar.
rērum a nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem ēius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

The Battle Rages for Six Hours. The Only Hope is in Making a Sortie.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pūgnārētur ac nōn sōlum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrīs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārēt languidiōrībusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīl centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsili māgni et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ēnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrent. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermittent proelium, ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labore reficerent; post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtīs in virtūte ponērent.

The Gauls are Defeated with Great Loss; but Galba Withdraws to the Province.

6. Quod iūssī sunt faciunt ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī condiōndi hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commutātā forūntūnā eōs qui in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plus tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōrībus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpīs fūsis armisque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō

The Gallic War.

The operations in Northwestern Gaul on the seacoast. Crassus sends messengers to collect supplies.


The messengers are seized by the Veneti, under whose lead the maritime tribes demand a return of their hostages.

8. Húius est civitátís longé amplíssima auctóritáts omnis órae maritimae regiónum eárum, quod et návis habent Veneti plúrimás, quibus in Britanniam návigáre cónsuérunt, et scientiá atque úsú rérum nauticárum céterós antecédunt, et in mágno impetú marís vásti atque apérti paucís portibus interíctis, quós tenent ípsi, omnis feré qui eó mari úti cón-suérunt habent vectígalís. Ab hís fit initium retinendi Sili atque Velání, quod per eós suós sé obsidés quós Crassó dedissent recuperátúrös existimábant. Hórum auctóritáte fínitiimi adductí (ut sunt Gallórum subita et repentina cón-

9. Quibus de rébus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, návis interim longás aedificári in flúmine Ligerí, quod influxit in Óceanum, rémigés ex pròvinciá insti-
tuí, nautás gubernátórësque comparári iubet. His rébus

Cf. ¹ sollicitárentur, p. 49, l. 8. — ² remittere, 39, 5.
CELERITER ADMINISTRATIS IPSE, CUM PRIMUM PER ANNI TEMPS POTUIT, AD EXERCITUM CONTENDIT. VENETI RELIGIAEQUE ITEM CIVITATES COGNITOS CAESARIS ADVENTUS [CERTIORERES FACTI], SIMUL QUOD QUANTUM IN SE FACINUS 1 ADMISISSENT INTELLEGEBANT, LEGA-

FIG. 49. — MAP OF THE VENETI NEIGHBORHOOD.

TOS — QUOD NOMEN AD OMNIS NATIONES SANCTUM INVOLATUM-QUE SEMPER FUisset — RETENTOS AB SE ET IN VINCELA CONIECTOS, PRO MAGNITUDINE PERICULI BELLUM PARARE ET MAXIME EA QUAE AD USCUM NAVIUM PERTINENT PROVIDERE INSTITUUNT, HOC MAIORE SPÆ QUOD MULTUM NATURÆ LOCI CONSIDEBANT. PEDIESTRIA ESE ITINERA CONCISA AESTUARIIS, NAVIGATIONEM IMPEDITAM PROpter INSCENTIAM LOCORUM PAUCITATEMQUE PORTUUM SCIÆBANT, NEQUE NOSTRÆS EXERCITUS PROPTER FRUMENTI INOPIAM DIUTIUS APUD SE MORÆRI POSSE CONSIDEBANT; AC IAM UT OMNIA CONTRA OPINIONEM

Cf. 1 FACINORE, p. 36, l. 15.
acciderent, tamen sē plurimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque āūlum facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrumbled ubi bellum gestūri essent vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclusīō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Oceanō perspicīēbant. His initiē cōnsilliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvis in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plurīmās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā ēās regionēs posita est, arcessunt.2

Caesar's Reasons for Prosecuting the War. His Strategy “Divide and Conquer.”

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendi quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post dēditionēm, dēfectīō datīs obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, imprīmis nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegēret omnis fērē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeritērque excītāri, omnis autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condicionēm servītūtis ōdisse,3 priusquam plurēs civitātēs cōnsiprārent, partīendum sibi ac lātiōs distribuen-dum exercitum putāvit.

Labienus Sent to the East, Crassus to the South, Sabinus to the North. Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat; Germānōsque, qui auxiliō ā Gallis arcessiti dicē-

Cf. 1 cōnstābat, p. 77, l. 25. — 2 arcessendi, 63, 4. — 3 ōdisse, 16, 11.
bantur, si per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs xii et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficiscī iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae 5 nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam\(^1\) cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscēntem classi Gallicīisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātīs regiōnibus convenire iusserat, praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficiscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

Situation of the Strongholds of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modī fērē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmis lingulis prōmuntūriisque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod [bis] accidit semper hōrārum xii spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente\(^2\) aestū nāvēs in vadis adiectārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediebātur; ac si quandō—māgnitūdine operis forte superāti, extrūsō mari aggere ac molibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequātīs—dēspērāre fortūnis suīs coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus isdēm opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātīs faciēbant, quod nostrae 25 nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō mari, māgnis aestibus, rāris ac prope nullīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Description of their Ships. Comparison with those of the Romans.

13. Namque ipsisōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātīaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum

Cf. \(^1\) distinērī, p. 52, l. 12. — \(^2\) minuendam, 17, 23.
nāvium, quō facilius vāda ac dēcessum aestūs excipere pos-
 sentient; prōræ admodum ērēctae atque item pūppēs ad māg-
 nitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātæ; nāvēs
 tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam per-
 ferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinēm trabibus cōn-
 fixā clāvis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō
 fūnibus ferreis catēnis¹ revinctae; pellēs² prō vēlis alūtaeque
tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter inopiam līnī atque ēius úsūs

Fig. 51. — Roman Battle Ship.

insulae sive eō (quod est magis vērisimile) quod tantās
 tempestātis Óceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac 10
 tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse
 arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssi ēius modī
 congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum prae-
stāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum, illīs
 essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae 15
 rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta in eīs erat firmitūdō — neque

Cf. ¹ catēnis, p. 48, l. 11. — ² pellibus, 72, 10.
propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur et eādem dē causā minus commodē cópulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vādīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtīs timērent; quàrum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Battle. How the Romans Overcame their Disadvantages.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmi, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidis reprimī neque eis nocērī posse, statuit exspectan-
dam classem.1 Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus visa est, circiter cccxx nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ērnātissimae profectae ex portū nos-
trīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, qui classi praeerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam rationem pūgnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī non posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigi possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs,—falcēs praecūtāe2 insertae adfixaeque longuriīs nōn absimili formā mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs qui antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsi adductique erant, nāvigīō rēmīs incitātō praeerumpēbantur. 25 Quibus abscisis antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armamentīisque cōnsis-
teret, his ēreptīs3 omnīs ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperē-
tur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesarīs atque omnīs exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum

Cf. 1 clāssī, p. 82, l. 8. — 2 praeacūtās, 70, 3. — 3 ēripī, 39, 2.
15. Disiectis (ut diximus) antemnis, cum singulās binae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vi trānscendere in hostium nāvis contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum ei rei nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subītō malacia ac tranquillitās exstītit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē IIII üsque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.  

Cf. 1 latēbant, p. 62, l. 19.
The Gallic War.  

The Veneti Surrender. Their Leaders are Put to Death, the Rest Sold as Slaves.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque òrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliqui neque quō sē reciperrēnt neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Cæsari dēdidērunt.

In quōs eō gravius Cæsar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus à barbaris iūs légātorum cōnservātūr. Imaque omnē senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Meanwhile Sabinus Goes among the Venelli, and is Challenged by them. He Avoids an Engagement.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum eis cōpiis quās ā Cæsare accēperat in finis Venellōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiis coēgerat; atque his paucis diēbus Aulercī, Eruovicēs, Lexoviīque senātū suō interfēctō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās claustrārunt sēque cum Viridovice coniunxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō labōre revocābat. Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milīum spatīō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiis pūgnandi potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptionēm Sabinus venīret sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opinīōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat
quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente qui summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūni-
tāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dimicandum nōn existimābat.

By a Stratagem he Induces Viridovix to Attack him.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opiniōne timōris idōneum quedam
hominem et callidum délēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxīli
causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōni-
busque persuādet utī ad hostis trānseat et quid fierī velīt
ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfūgā1 ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmā-
nōrum prōpōnit; quībus angustīs ipse Caesar ā Venetis
premātur docet; neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte 10

Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem
auxili ferendi causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est,
conclāmant omnēs occāsionem negotī bene gerendi ēmitten-
dam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc
cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabinī 15
cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei
parum diligenter ab eīs erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī belli, et
quod fērē libenter2 hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs
rēbus adductī nōn prīus Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex
conciliō dīmittunt quam ab eīs sit concessum arma utī 20
capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti ut
explōrātā victōriā, sanentis virgultīsque conlēctis quībus
fossās Rōmānōrum compleant,3 ad castra pergunt.

Complete Victory of Sabinus.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus4 et paulātim ab īmō ac-
clivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, 25

Cf.1 perfugīs, p. 25, l. 8. — 2 libenter, 39, 23.— 3 complēta, 76, 13.
— 4 ēditus, 54, 18.
The Gallic War.

ut quam minimum spati ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, examinātique pervēnērunt. Sābinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus prop-ter ea quae ferēbant onera, subītō duābus portīs ēruptionem 5 fieri iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium insci-entīā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pūgnā-rum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga vererent. Quōs integrīs1 viribus militēs nostri ċonsecūti māgium numerum eōrum occidē-
10 runt; reliquis equitēs ċonsectāti paucōs qui ex fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvāli pūgnā Sābinus et dē Sābīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus; civitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac promptus est 15 animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātīs per-
ferendās mēns eōrum est.

In Aquitania Crassus is Attacked by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquitāniām pervēnisset,— quae, ut ante dictum est, [et regiōnum lātitū-dine et multitudine homīnīm] est tertia pars Galliae [est 20 aestimanda],—cum intellegēret in eīs locīs sībi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercītū pulsō interfactus esset, atque unde L. Man-
lius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn medio-
crem sībi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē 25 frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne (quae sunt civitātēs Galliae prōvincae fīnitīmae [ex] his regiōnibus) nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium finīs exercitum intrō-
dūxit. Cūius adventū cognītō Sōtiātēs māgns cōpiis 30 coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīnum equestre proelium commīscē-

Cf. 1 integrīs, p. 76, l. 29.
run; deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostris, subitō pedestris cópiās, quās in convalle in insidiis coniocā-verant, ostendērunt. Hi nostrōs disiectōs adorti proelium renovārunt.\textsuperscript{1}

He Defeats them in Battle and Besieges their Stronghold. They Surrender.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātes superiōribus victōriis frēti in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent; nostri autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquis legiōnibus adulēscientulō duce efficere possent perspici\textsuperscript{2} cuperent; tandem cōnfecti volneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrisque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque actīs (cūius rei sunt longē peritissimi\textsuperscript{3} Aquitānī, propōterē quod multīs locis apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dili-15 gentiā nostrōrum nīhil his rēbus prōfīcī posse intellēxerunt, légātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere īussī, faciunt.

The Soldurii, or Brothers in Arms.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum dc dēvōtīs, quōs illī solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō utī omnibus in vitā commodīs\textsuperscript{4} ūnā cum eis fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint; si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sībi mortem conscient;\textsuperscript{5} neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam qui, eō interfectō cūius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum his Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitionis sublātō, cum ad

Cf.\textsuperscript{1} renovandī, p. 75, 1. 6. — \textsuperscript{2} perspicēbant, 81, 5. — \textsuperscript{3} peritissimus, 18, 22. — \textsuperscript{4} commodō, 31, 24. — \textsuperscript{5} conscīverit, 4, 15.
The Gallic War.

[Caesar

arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen utī eādem dēditionis condiōne üterētūr a Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus Proceeds against Other Aquitanian Tribes Who are Conspiring, and Decides to Give Battle.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finīs Vocā-
tium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbāri com-
mōti, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnitum paucīs
diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē
dare, cōpiās parāre coepeīrunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās
civitātīs lēgāti quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae
Aquītaniae; inde auxilia ducēsque accessuntur; quōrum
adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā hominum multītū-
dine bellum gerere cōnantar. Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur qui
ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnīs annōs fuerant summamque sci-
ettiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuētū-
dine populi Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātībus
nostros interclūdēre instituunt.1 Quod ubi Crassus animad-
vertit,—suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile didūci,
hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castris satis praesidi
relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum
commeātumque sibi supportāri, in diēs hostium numerum
augēri,—nōn cunctandum existimāvit quin pūgnā dēcēr-
tāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre
intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit.

The Enemy Keep to their Camp, Which Crassus Attacks.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiās, duplici aciē
institūtā, auxiliīs in median aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs
cōnsili caperent exspectābat. Ilii, etsi propter multitūdi-
nem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē
tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius2 esse arbitra-

Cf. 1 instituunt, p. 80, l. 8. — 2 tūtius, 84, 4.
bantur obsessis viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potiri; et, si propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in amīne et sub sarcinis īnfirmīōrēs animō adorīri cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis, sēsē castris 5
tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opinōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quin ad castra īrētur, colōrātus suōs omnibus cupiēntibus ad hostium castra contendit. 10

They Hold their Own for a Time.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlis coniectis défēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat) lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opinōnem pūgnantium prae- 15
bērent; cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter aē nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acci-
derent, equitēs circumītīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvē-
runt nōn eādem esse diligentiā ab decumānā portā castra
5 mūnīta facilemque adītum habēre.

But are Forced to Abandon their Camp and Flee.

26. Crassus equītūm praefectōs cohortātus ut māgnīs
praemīis pollicitātiōnibusque1 suōs excitārent, quid fēri
velit ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eīs cohōr-
tibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant
et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hostīum castrīs cōn-
spicii possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pūgnām
intentis, celerīter ad eās quās dīximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnē-
runt, atque hīs prōrūtis prius in hostīum castrīs cōnstitērunt
quam pānē ab hīs vidēri, aut quid rēi gerērūtur cōgnōsci
15 posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostri
redintegrātīs2 viribus, quod plērumque3 in spē vīctoriāe acci-
dere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coeppĕrunt. Hostēs
undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per
mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.

20 Quōs equitātūs apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātūs, ex mīlium
1 numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōn-
stābat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra
recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian Tribes Surrender to Crassus.

27. Hāc auditā pūgnā máxima pars Aquītāniāe sēsē
25 Crassō dēdīdit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō
fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnes, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs,
Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs;
paucae ultimae nātiōnēs anni temporē cōnfiāse, quod hiems
suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

Cf. 1 pollicitātiōnibus, p. 87, l. 6. — 2 redintegrātō, 67, 13. — 8 plē-
rumque, 70, 20.
In the North Caesar Advances against the Morini and Menapii, Who Take Refuge in Forests and Marshes.

28. Eōdem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapiique supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam légātōs dē pāce mīssissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā 5 ratione ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proelīō conten·dissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentīsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnire instituisset neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōisque in silvās repulērunt, et complūribus interfectīs longius impeditōribus locīs secūtī 15 paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

He Ravages their Territory, and then Goes into Winter Quarters.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere in·stituit et, nē quis inermībus 1 imprūdentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri possēt, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. 2 Incrēdibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae uti opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne īmbrium diūtius sub pellibus militēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agris, vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulerīcis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitātībus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs con·locāvit.

Cf. 1 inermēs, p. 68, l. 6. — 2 exstrūctō, 70, 16.
BOOK IV.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS.—FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN. B.C. 55.

German Tribes, Pressed by the Suevi, Cross the Rhine.

Ε ᾧ quae secūta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetes Germāni et item Tenc-teri māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa 5 trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēvis complūris annōs exagitāti bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Customs of the Suevi.

Suēvōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hi centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armātōrum bellandi causā 10 ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, qui domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt.1 Hi rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur. Sed privāti ac sēparāti agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanère ūnō in locō co- 15 lēndi causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnā- tionibus; quae rēs et cībi genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne

Cf. 1 alere, p. 16, l. 5.
et libertāte vitae, quod ā pueris nullō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil ominō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virīs alit et immānī corpus māgnitudīne homīnēs efficit. Atque in eam sē consuētūdinem addūxĕrunt ut locīs frigidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellīs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporīs pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their Intercourse with Other Tribes.


Their Cavalry Tactics.

Equestribus proelīs saepe ex equis dēsilīunt ac pedibus proelīantur, equōsqve eōdem remanēre vestīgiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōrībus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equītum quamvis pauci adīre audeant. Vinum omnīnō ad sē importāri nōn sinunt, quod ēa rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere homīnēs atque effēmināri arbitrantur.

The Ubīi, Tributaries of the Suevi.

3. Públicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significāri māgnum numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēvis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubīi, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānō-

Cf. 1 officiō, p. 81, l. 25.— 2 vēndidit, 86, 11. — 3 turpissimum, 30, 11.
The Usipetes and Tencteri, Expelled from Germany, Overcome the Menapii.

4. In eadem causâ fuérunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos supra diximus, qui complûris annós Suëvórum vim sustínuérunt; ad extremum tamen agrí expulsi et multis locís Germâniae trienníum vagáti ad Rhénum pervénérunt; quás regionés Menapii incolébant. Hí ad utramque ripam flúmi-

nis agrós aedíficía vícósque habèbant; sed tantae multítudínis adítu perterríti ex eis aedíficíis quae tráns flúmen habuerant démigráverant, et cis Rhénum dispositís præside diís Germânós tránsire prohibébant. Illí omnia exspectáti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam návium neque clam tránsire propter custódiás Menapiórum possent, revertí sé in suás sédís regionésque simulávérunt et triduí viam prósperí rúrsus revertérunt, atque omní hoc itínere úna nocte equitátú insciós inopínantíisque Menapióss oppressérunt; qui de Germânórum discessú per exploratórís

Cf. 1 infirmiōrēs, p. 91, l. 4. — 2 vagāri, 90, 19. — 3 simulátā, 40, 14. — 4 inopínantíis, 10, 10.
Campaign against the Germans.

6. Caesar distrusts the Gauls on account of their fickle character. He fears their alliance with the Germans.

5. His desire Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobilès et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuētūdinis uti et viātōrēs etiam invitōs 1 cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quīisque 10 eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quae rē; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestīgiō paenitēre 15 necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

He resolves to make war on the Germans.


Cf. 1 invitō, p. 12, l. 9. — 2 évocātīs, 88, 28.
They Send him a Defiant Message.

7. Ré frumentåriá comparåtå equitibusque déléctis, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locís esse Germånås audièbat. À quibus cum paucórum diérum iter abesset, lègåti ab eis vènèrunt, quôrum haec fuit öratiò: 'Germånås neque prióres populó Råmånò bellum inferre neque tamen recisåre, si lacesstantur, quod Germånòrum cånsuètådò [haec] sit à måiåribus trådita, quicunque bellum inferant, resistere neque dépréçåri. Haec tamen dicere, vènisse invitås, éiectås domò; si suam gråtiam Råmånì velint, posse eis útilis esse amicòs; vel sìbi agrås attribuånt vel patiåntur eòs tenère quòs armis possèderint: sësè unìs Suèvìs concèdere, quibus nè dii quidem immoråłås parås esse possìnt; reliquum quidem in terrìs esse nèmìnem quem nòn superåre possìnt.'

He Orders them to Withdraw from Gaul.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus fuit öratiònis: 'Sìbi nullam cum hìs amicitìam esse posse, si in Gallìà remanèrent; neque vèrùm esse quì suòs finìs tuëri nonò potuerint aliënòs occupàre; neque ûllòs in Gallìà vacåre agrås qui dari tantae pråseérim multitådìnì sine iniùrià possìnt; sed licère, si velånt, in Ubìòrum finìbus cånsìdere, quòrum sint lègåti apud sè et de Suèvòrum iniùriis queråntur et à sè auxiliùm petånt; hoc sè Ubìis imperåtûrum.'

They Delay.

9. Lègåti haec sè ad suòs relåtåròs dixèrunt et rè délibèråtå post diem tertìum ad Caesarem reversùròs; interåè nè propìus sè castrå movèret petìèrunt. Nè id quidem Caesar ab sè imperårì posse dixit. Cògnòverat enim mågnàm partem equåtåtùs ab eìs aliquòt dièbus ante praedåndì fråmen-

Cf. 1 lacesseret, p. 31, l. 19. — 2 vidèbantur, 63, 14.
Fig. 58. — Scenery on the Meuse.
Campaign against the Germans. 99

tandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs
expectāri equitēs atque eīus reī causā moram interpōnī
arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine Described.

10. Mosa prófluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus
Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel-
lātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batavorum [in Ōceanum in-
fluit] neque longius inde milibus passuum lxxx in Ōceanum
influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpis inco-
lunt, et longō spatiō per finīs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum,
Sēquanōrum, Mediomaticicicic, Tribocorum, Trēverōrum citā-
tus fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūris défluit
partīs multīs ingentibusque1 īnsulis effectīs, quārum pars
māgna a feris barbarīsque nātiōnibus incollitur, — ex quibus
sunt qui piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, —
multīsque capītibus in Ōceanum influit.

Cæsar Advances. More Parleying to Gain Time.

11. Cæsar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum xii mil-
ibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur;
qui in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius prōgrederētur
ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant uti ad eōs
equitēs quī agmen antecessissent2 praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā
prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs
mittendī; quōrum si principēs ac senātus sībi iūre iūrāndō
fidem fēcisset, eā condicionē quae ā Cæsare fērrētur sē ūsū-
rōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnfiendās sībi tridui spatium
daret. Haec omnia Cæsar ēōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābā-
tūri, ut tridui morā interposītā equitēs eōrum qui abessent
reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum 111
aquātīōnis causā prōcessūrum eō dīe dīxit; hūc posterō dīe
quam frequentissimi conveniērent, ut dē eōrum postulātis
cōgnōscēret. Interim ad praefectōs3 qui cum omni equitātū

Cf. 1 ingenti, p. 33, l. 21. — 2 antecēdunt, 78, 22. — 3 praefectōs, 92, 6.
antecesserant mittit qui nūntiārent nē hostīs proeliō lacesserent; et, si ipsi lacererentur, sustinerent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

The German Cavalry Treacherously Attack and Rout the Roman.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīnum nostrōs equītēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat v mīliōm numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius Dccc equītēs habērent, quod ei quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discésserant atque is diēs īndūtīs erat ab īhs petitūs, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus īhs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt,1 subfoßisīque equis complūrībusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs īn fugam conicērunt atque īta perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam īn cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

Gallant Conduct and Death of the Brothers Piso.

15 In eō proeliō ex equītibus nostrīs interficiuntur III et LXX; in īhs vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus īn civitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ā hostībus auxiliō ferret, illum īm periculō ēripuit, ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitīt; cum circumventus multīs volneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī īam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostībus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Envoyś Come to Cēsār, Whom he Detains. Vigorous Action Demanded.

25 13. Hāc facto proeliō Cēsār neque īam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eīs quī per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum

Cf. 1 dēsiliunt, p. 95, l. 15.
intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque revertērētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūti sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spati dandum existimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātis et quaestōre communicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē ēius diēi māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus māiōribusque nātū adhibītis, ad eum in castra vēnērunt: simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod (contra atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent) proelium pridīē commississent; simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinērī iussit; ipsē omnīs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterrītum esse existimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

Caesar Surprises the German Camp.

Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quōs consortandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

The Germans are Defeated and Flee; Many are Slain or Perish in the River.


Cæsar's Reasons for Crossing the Rhine and for Building a Bridge.


Cf. ¹ terga, p. 89, l. 10. — ² lassitūdine, 64, 24. — ³ impulsōs, 59, 4.
Fig. 59. — Pons a Caesare in Rheno factus.

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; bb, trabes bipedales; cc, fibulae;
dd, directa materia longuriis cratibusque constrata;
cc, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae;
ff, sublicae supra pontem immissae;
g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.
Campaign against the Germans.

invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr sui quicquam esse imperi aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? 1 Ubiī autem, qui ūnī ex Trānshēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant ut sībi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupātiōnibus reī publicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sībi ad auxilium spemque reliquit temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opinioinem eīus exercitūs Ariovistō pulso et hoc novissīmō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās 1 Germānōrum nātiōnēs, uti opinione et amicitia populi Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar his de causis quās commemorāvi Rhēnum trānsire decrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitrabātur, neque suae neque populi Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficūltās faciendi pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamēn id sībi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcēndum exercitum existimābat. Ratīōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab imō praeacūta, dimēnsa 2 ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervālō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, 25 — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, eis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervālō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contra vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedālibus trabibus 3 immissis, quantum eōrum

tignorum iunctura distabant, binis utrimque fibulis ab extram parte distinabant; quibus disclusis et in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudo atque ea rerum natura ut, quo maior vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc artius inligata tenèrentur. Haec diréctâ materiâ injectâ contextébantur ac longuriis crátibusque consternébantur; ac nihiló sècius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis obliquè agébantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omní opere conjunctae vim fluminis exciperent; et aliae item suprâ pontem mediocrî spatiô, ut, si arborum truncî sive navès déiciendi operis essent à barbaris immissae, his défénsóribus eârum rerum vis minuerétur, neu ponti nocèrent.

Caesar Enters Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus materiâ coepta erat comportâri omni opere effectô exercitus tráducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmô praesidiô relictô in finís Sugambrôrum contendit. Interim ā complúribus civitâtibus ad eum légâti veniunt; quibus pàcem atque amicitiam petentibus liberâlîter respondet obsidèsque ad sē addúcī iubet.

20 At Sugambri ex eō tempore quò pōns instituit coeptus est fugâ comparâtâ, hortantibus eis quōs ex Tenceteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suīs exscesserant suaque omnia exportâverant sēque in sólitúdinem ac silvâs abdiderant.

He Learns that the Suevi are Preparing to Resist him, and after Eighteen Days Returns to Gaul.

19. Caesar paucósp diēs in eōrum finibus morâtus, omnibus vicís aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisís, sē in finís Ubiorum recépit; atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēvis premerentur, haec ab eis cōgnovit: 'Suēvōs,
posteaquam per explôrâtôrês pontem fieri comperissent, môre suô concîliô habitô núntîos in omnis partis dimisses, uti de oppidis démigrâtrent, liberôs,uxôrês, suaque omnia in silvis dépônerent, atque omnês qui arma ferre possent únum in locum convenirent; hunc esse déleçtum medium ferê regîonum eârum quâs Suèvi obtinèrent; hic Rômânô- rum adventum exspectâre, atque ibi décertâre cônstituisse.'

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eîs rêbus cônfectîs quârum rêmùr causâ trâdûcere exercitum cônstituerat, ut Germânis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrôs ulciscerêtur, ut Ûbiôs obsidîône liberâtret, diêbus omnînô xviî trânś Rhênum cônsûmptíss, satîs et ad laudem et ad útilitâtêm prôfectum arbitrâtus, sê in Galliâm recêpit pontemque rescidit.

Caesar Determines to Invade Britain.

He Sends Volusenus on a Reconnoissance, then Commiuius.

21. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus, C. Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat ut exploratiss omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Hunc navis undique ex finitimis regionibus, et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum fecerat classem, iubet convenire. Interim consiliio eius cognitum et per mercatorum perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt qui pollicantur obsidés dare atque imperio populi Römāni obtemperāre. Quibus auditis liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in ea sententia permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis unā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis régem ibi constituerat, cuīus et virtūtem et consilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur cuīusque auctōritās in his regionibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātis, hortēturque ut populi Römāni fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusenus perspectīs regionibus quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, qui nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

The Morini Submit. A Fleet is Prepared.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinorum ad eum légātī vēnērunt qui sē dē superiōris temporis consiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbari et nostrae consuetūdinis imperītum bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satīs opportunē acci-

Cf. 1 perlāta, p. 73, l. 4. — 2 imperītum, 40, 9.
Fig. 60. — Cliffs of Dover.
disse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquire volēbat neque belli gerendi propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs.  

B. G. IV.  

23. First Invasion of Britain.  

Nāvibus circiter lxxx onerāriis coāctīs [contrāctīs], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praeterēā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōri, lēgātīs praefectīisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant xviii onerāriēs nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum viii ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equītibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabinō et Aurunculēiō Cottaē lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pagōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendūm dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō prae  

sidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.  

The Fleet Crosses the Channel, Finds Difficulty in Landing, and Comes to Anchor.  

23. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-dum tempestātem tertiā fērē vigiliā solvit, equitēisque in ulteriōrem portum prōgregī et nāvis cōnsendēre et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset admini- 

strārum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquaquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō conveniērent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque militum convo- 

cātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fieri vellet  

Cf. 1 occupātiōnibus, p. 103, 1. 7. — 2 nactus, 48, 5. — 3 adigēbātur, 84, 1.
The Gallic War.

Cæsar

ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut mari-
timae rēs postularent (ut quae celerem atque instābilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum 1 et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eis administrārentur. His dimissīs et ventum et aestum 5 ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs an-
coris, circiter milia passuum vii ab eō locō prōgressus; apertō ac plānō litore nāvis cōnstituit.

The Britons Resist the Landing of the Romans.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissī 10 equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliis utī cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficūltās quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis locīs, impeditis manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressis, simul et dē nāvi-
15 bus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hosti-
bus erat pūgnandum; cum illī aut ex aridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissīmis locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitā-
rent. Quibus rēbus nostri perterriti atque īnīus omnīnō 20 generis pūgnae imperītī nōn cādem alacritātē ac studīō quō in pedestribus utī proeliis cōnsuērunt nītēbantur.

Cæsar Manœuvres for an Advantage. Valor of a Roman Centurion.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvis longās, quārum et specīēs 2 erat barbarīs inūsitātor et mōtus ad īsum expeditiōn, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmis 3 incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstitui, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostīs prōPELLI ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō īsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrūm mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum pertōti barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem ret-

tulērunt. Atque nostrīs militibus cunctantibus,¹ maximē propter altitudinem maris, qui x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter éveniret, “Dēsilib，“ inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere;

ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvi prōiēcit atque in hostis aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, universi ex nāvi désiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs [primīs] nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūti hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

The Romans Effect a Landing, but, Having no Cavalry, Cannot Pursue the Fleeing Britons.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrisque äcriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ērōdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius alīā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore 15 aliqūōs singulāris ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circum-

Cf. ¹ cunctandum, p. 90, l. 22.
sistebant, aliī ab latere apertō in āniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium item speculātoria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit, et quās labōrantīs cōnspxerat his subsidia submittēbat. Nostri simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suis omnibus cōnsecūtis in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equītēs currum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristīnam fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

Conference with British Envoys, Who Sue for Peace.

27. Hostēs proelīō superlāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Unā cum his lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmonstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conīecerant: tum proelīō factō remisērunt; et in petendā pāce ēius rei culpam īn multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō īn continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvīt; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem īx longinquiōribus locīs arces sitam paucīs diēbus sē sē datūrōs dixērunt. Interea suōs re- migrāre īn agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitātisque suās Caesari commendāre coepērunt.

The Cavalry Transports Driven Back by a Storm.

28. His rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quartum quam est īn Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii dē quibus suprā

démonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum currum tenēre posset; sed aliae

**Fig. 62. — Anchor and Tackle.**

eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad infeōriōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō déiciertentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

The Fleet almost Wrecked by Storms and High Tides.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, qui diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Oceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvis, [quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat] quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat; et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātēs, tempestās adflītābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae

*Cf. 1 solvit, p. 107, l. 18. — 2 adflītārent, 82, 16. — 3 frāctōs, 27, 25.*
cum essent — fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis āmissis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod nēcessē erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent; et omnia deērant quae ad reficiendās nāvis erant ūsui; et, quod omnibus cōnśtābat hiemāri in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in his locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

The Britons Seize the Opportunity and Plan to Renew Hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnītīs principēs Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūti, cum et equītēs et nāvis et frūmentum Rōmānīs deēsse intellegērent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguítāte 1 cōgnōscerent,—quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trasportāverat,—optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellīōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod hīs superātīs aut rēditū interclūsis nēminem postea belli infe-rendi causā in Britanniam trānsītūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepe-runt.

Cāesar Suspects their Design.

20 31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. 2 Itaque ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gra-vissimē adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque acre ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad cās rés erant ūsui ex continentīi comporteāri iuβēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, xii nāvibus āmissis, reliquis ut nāvigāri satīs commodē posset effēcit.

Cf. 1 exiguítātem, p. 90, l. 18. — 2 suspicātus, 97, 20.
He Takes Measures to Thwart them. They Attack a Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiône ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur vii, neque ūllā ad id tempus belli suspicioṅe interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — eī qui prō portīs castrōrum in stationē erant Caesari nūntiāvē-runt pulverem māiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidēri quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod

erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsili, cohortīs quae in stationibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in stationem succēdere, reliquās 10 armāri et cōnfestim sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs proācessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā1 legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertīt. Nam quod omni ex reliquis par-tibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī 15

Cf. 1 cōnfertōs, p. 66, l. 7.
hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūros noctū in silvās délītuerant; tum dispersōs dépositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adorti, paucīs interfertīs reliquōs in certīs ārdīnibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

Mode of Fighting with War Chariots.

5 33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnīs partīs perequītātum et tēla coniciunt atque īpsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū1 rotārum ōrdīnēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equītum ārdīs insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedībus proeliantur. Aurīgae interīm paulātīm ex proelīō excēdunt atque īta currūs conlocant utī, si illī ā multitūdine hostīum premantur, expeditīum ā suōs receptūm habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equītum, stabilitātem pedītum in proelīs praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī ā dēclīvī2 ac praečipītī locō incītātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderāri ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē incurrūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērunt.

The Foragers Rescued. Large Numbers of Britons Assemble.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs nōvitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesār auxiliūm tuliī; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ā timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum3 esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuīt et brevī tempore intermissō ā castra legiōnēs redūxīt. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, qui erant ā agrīs reliqui discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs4 complūris diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrīs ā castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntīos ā omnīs partīs dimīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum

Cf. 1 strepitū, p. 56, l. 26.— 2 dēclīvis, 61, 9.— 3 aliēnō, 13, 6.— 4 continuōs, 42, 27.
suis praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandi facultās daretur, si Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

They Give Battle and are Defeated.

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat,—ut, si essent hostēs pulsi, celeritāte periculum effugerent,—tamen nactus equītūs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sécum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. 10 Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militūm impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūti quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūris ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnībus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

Cāser Returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Cæsarem dē pace vēnērunt. His Cæsar numerum obsidium quem anteā imperāverat duplicāvīt, eōsque in continentem addūci iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinōctī, īnfirmī nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exsistīmābat. Ipse idōneam 20 tempestātem nactus paulō post medium noctem nāvis solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eis onerāriāe due eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā délātae sunt.

Attack of the Morini on Cæsar's Troops.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter 25 ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quōs Cæsar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn īta māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interīcī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt.
Cum illi orbe factō sēsē défenderent, celeriter ad clámōrem hominum circiter milia vī convénērunt. Quārē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suīs auxiliō misit. Interim nostri militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius ĕōris iiiī fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucis volneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex his occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus nōster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

The Rebellious Morini Subdued. Thanksgiving at Rome.


FIG. 64.—GALIC COIN.
BOOK V.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—FRESH RISINGS OF THE GAULS. B.C. 54.

Caesar, Contemplating a Second Invasion of Britain, Orders a Suitable Fleet Built. Settles Disturbances in Illyricum.

DOMITIO Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discèdēns ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere cōnsuērat, lēgātis imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat uti quam plūrīmas possint hieme nāvis aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum formamque\(^1\) dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnīisque paulō facit humilīōres quam quibus in nostrō mari ĩtī cōnsuēvīmus; atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi flūctūs fēriō cōgnōverat; ad onera ac multitūdinēm iūmentōrūm trānsportandam, paulō lātiōrēs 10 quam quibus in reliquis ütimūs maribus. Hās omnis āctuāriās imperat fēriō, quam ad rem multum humilitās aďiuvat. Ea quae sunt üsui ā armandās\(^2\) nāvis ex Hispāniā adportāri iubet. Ipse conventībus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pirūstīs fīmitīmā\(^3\) partem 15 prōvinciāe incursiōnibus vāstāri audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitātībus militēs imperat certumque īn locum convenirē iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt qui doceant\(^4\) nihil ēārum rērum publicō fāctum cōnsilīō,

Cf. \(^1\) figūram. — \(^2\) ornāndās. — \(^3\) opp. ultīmam. — \(^4\) ostendānt.
sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā¹ orātione eōrum Caesār obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet: nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō civitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. 5 Eis ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitātīs dat quī litem aestimēnt poenamque cōnstituunt.

Returns to Gaul. Orders the New Fleet to Assemble at the Port Itius. Finds Trouble Brewing among the Treveri.

2. His cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citetōriōm Galliam revertitur² atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitis omnibus hibernīs, singulāri mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter dēius generīs, cūius suprā dēmōnstrāvīmus, nāvis et longās xxviii invēnit iestructās,³ neque multum abesse ab eō quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātis mīlitibus atque eīs qui nēgōtiō praefuerant, quid fieri velīt ostendī atque omnis ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quō ex portū commodissiīmum⁵ in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat cir-citer milium passuum xxx [trānsmissum] ā continentī. Huic reī quod satis esse visum est mīlitum reliquit; ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs iiiī et equitibus dccc in finis Trē-verōrum proficiscitur; quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperīō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhëna-nōs solli-citāre dicēbantur.

Indutiomārus and Cingetorīx, Rival Chiefs of the Treveri, Appeal to Cæsar.

3. Haec cīvitās longē plurīrum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet⁶ māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvīmus, tangit.⁷ In ea cīvitāte duo dē princi-pātī inter sē contendēbant,⁸ Indutiomārus et Cingetorīx: ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesāris legiōnumque ad-

Fig. 67. — Boulogne.
ventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suōsque omnīs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populi Rōmānī dēfectūrōs confirmāvit; quaeque in Trēveris gerentur ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, eīisque qui per aetātem in armis esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam abdītīs, quae ingenti māgnītūdīne per mediōs finīs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteāquam nōn nūlli principēs ex eā civitātē et auctōrītātē Cingetorigis adductī et adventū nostri exercītūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs privātīs rēbus ab eo petere coēpērunt, quoniam civitātī consululre nōn possent; veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur In- dūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: 'Sēsē icircō ab suīs discēdēre atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius civitātēm in officiō continēret, nē omnīs nōbilitātīs discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; itaque civitātēm in suā postestāte esse sēque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās civitātīsque fortūnās ēius fideī permissūrum.'

He Settles the Dispute in Favor of Cingetorix.

4. Caesar etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerentur quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēveris cōnsūmēre cōgerētur omnībus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs adductīs, in eis filiō propinquīisque ēius omnībus, quōs nōminātīm ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sēcius principībus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātīm Cingetorigī conciliāvit; quod cum meritō ēius ā sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgni interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōrītātem inter suōs quam plūrīmum

valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam\(^1\) in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus \[suam grātiam inter suōs minui\]; et qui iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.\(^2\)

Assembling of Troops at the Port Itius.

5. His rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LXX nāvis, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās\(^3\) cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profecta revertedisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instructās invenit.\(^4\) Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit, numerō milia III, principēsque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fīdem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat,\(^5\) quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum\(^6\) Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorīx, the Hāeduīan, Again Appears.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduīus, dē quō ante ab nōbis dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmis cōnstituerat,\(^7\) quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātīs cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haedūorum Dumnorīx dixerat sībi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātīs dēferri;\(^8\) quod dictum Haeduī graviter\(^9\) fērebant neque recūsandi aut dēprecandi causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnisbus prīmō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquere- 

25 partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri\(^1\) sēsē diceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negāri vidit, omnī spē impetrāndi adēmptā,

Cf. \(^1\) eximiam. — \(^2\) cōnīagrāvit. — \(^3\) repulsās. — \(^4\) reperit. — \(^5\) cōnstituerat. — \(^6\) tumultum, sēditionēm. — \(^7\) dēcrēverat. — \(^8\) trādī. — \(^9\) molestē. — \(^10\) dētinērī.
principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs, hortārique coeptī utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre nōn sine causā fieri ut Gallia omni nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquis interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Flight, Capture, and Death of Dumnorix.

7. Quā rē cōgnītā Caesar, quod tantum civitāti Haeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid sibi ac reī publicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigationēnem impediēbat, qui māgnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret; nihilō tamen sēcius omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equītēsque cōnsendere nāvis iubet. At omnium impeditīs animīs Dumnorīx cum equītibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs inscīente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, māgnam partem equītātūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; sī viōm faciat neque pāreat, interīci iubet; nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbi- trātus qui praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū défendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse

The Gallic War.

Caesar Sets Sail for Britain. The Natives in Alarm Withdraw from the Coast.

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum III legioniibis et equitum milibus duobus relictis, ut portus tuérétur et rei frumentàriae pròvidéret, quaèque in Galliâ gererentur cògnòsceret cònsiliumque prò tempore et prò ré caperet, ipse cum v legioniibis et pari numerò equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad sólis occásum návis solvit; et lènī Afríco pròvectus mediá circiter nocte ventò intermissi, curso nón tenuit; et longius délátus aestù ortā lúce sub sinistrâ Britanniam relictam cònspexit. Tum rúrsus aestús commùtâtìonem secútus rêmis contendit ut eam partem insulae caperat quà optimum esse égressum superiòre aestáte cògnòverat. Quà in ré admodum fuit militum virtús laudanda, qui vectòriis gravibusque návigiis nón intermissi rémigandi labòre longàrum návium curso adaequàrant. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus návibus meridiáno ferè tempore; neque in eó locó hostis est visus, sed, ut posteà Caesar ex captivís cògnòvit, cum mágnae manús eó convénnisset, multitúdine návium per territàe, quae cum annótìnís privâtìisque, quás sui quíisque commodí fécérat, amplius dccc únó erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac sè in superiòra loca abdiderant.

The Army Lands and Advances. The Natives Resist, but are Defeated.

9. Caesar expositò exercitù et locò castris idóneò captò, ubi ex captivís cògnòvit quò in locò hostium cópiiæ cónsé-dissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus cccc qui praesídii návibus essent, dè tertià vigilià ad hostis contendit,

Second Invasion of Britain.

--- eo minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore molli atque apertō delīgātās ad ancorās relinquent. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium præfēcit. Ipse noctū prógressus milia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cónspicātus est. Ili equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prógressi ex locō superiore nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt.

**Fig. 68. — Testudo.**

Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdīderunt, locum nactī egregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem domesticī belli (ut vidēbantur) causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisis omnēs introitus erant praeclusī. Ipsī ex silvis rāri prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnitōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs legiōnis vii, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt

eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucis volneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientis longius Cæsar prósequi vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi cōnsūmpťā mūniţiōnī castrōrum tempus¹ relinqui volēbat.

The Fleet Suffers from a Storm, is Hastily Repaired and Drawn up on Shore.

5 10. ²Postrīdiē ēius diēi māne tripartitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs qui fūgerant persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs à Q. Ātriō ad Cæsarem vēnērunt qui nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coōrtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvīs adflictās atque in lītus ēiectās esse; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātīs patr³ possent. Itaque ex eō concursū nāvīum māgnum esse incommodum² acceptum.

11. His rēbus cōgnitis Cæsar legiōnēs equitātumque 15 revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvīs rever- titur; eadem fērē quae ex nūntiis [litterīs] cōgnōverat cōrām perspicit, sic ut āmissīs⁵ circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen refici posse māgnō nēgōtiō⁶ vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēliget et ex continentī aliōs acersī iubet; Labiēnō scribit⁷ ut quam plūrinās possit eis legiōnibus quae sunt apud eum nāvīs instiuit.⁸ Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissīnum⁹ esse statuit omnis nāvīs subdücī¹⁰ et cum castrīs ūnā mūniţione coniungi. In his rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem tempōribus ad labōrem militum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnitis ēāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat pro- ficiscitur.¹¹ Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum

locum còpiae Britannòrum convènerant, summà imperì bellique administrandì commùni cònsiliò permissà¹ Cassivellauno; cùiùs finès à maritimis civitâtibus flùmen dividit, quod appellàtur Tamesis, à mari circiter milia passuum

FIG. 69.—SOLDIERS BUILDING CAMP, WITH GUARDS.

LXXX. Huic superióre tempore cum reliquis civitâtibus continentia² bella intercesserant; sed nostrò adventù permòti Britanni hunc tòti bellò imperiòque praefècerant.⁸

The Inhabitants of Britain and its Resources.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur quòs nátòs in insula ipsì memorià pròditum dicunt; maritima pars ab eis qui praedae ac bellì inferendi⁴ causà ex Belgìo tránsièrunt ¹⁰ (qui omnès ferè eis nòminibus civitâtum appellantur quibus

Cf. ¹ mandátæ. — ² perpetua. — ⁸ praeposuerant. — ⁴ gerendi.
126

The Gallic War. [Cæsar


Shape and Size of the Island.

13. Ænsula nātūrā5 triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, 15 quo ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sólem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat.6 Hōc latus pertinet circiter milia passuum d. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sólem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, Ínsula dimidiō minor (ut exīstīmātur) quam Britannia, sed pari 20 spatīō trānsmissūs7 atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est Ínsula quae appellātur8 Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae9 Ínsulae exīstīmantur; dé quibus Ínsulis10 nōn nūlli scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dé eō percontātiōni-25 bus11 reperiēbamus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctis vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitudō lateris, ut fert12 illōrum opiniō,13 DCC milium. Tertium est contrā septentrīōnēs, cui partī nūlla est objecta14 terra; sed ēius angulus lateris maximē ad Germā-

niam spectat. Hoc milium passuum DCCC in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu viciès centum milium passuum.

Customs of the Britons.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmaniissimi qui Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum à Gallicā differunt consuētūdine. Interiōrès plērique frūmena nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnis vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum colōrem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pūgnā adspectu; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omni parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent dēni duodēnique inter sē commūnis, et maximē frātres cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed qui sunt ex his nāti eōrum habentur liberī quō primum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Battle with the Britons, Who are Driven Back.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrès fuerint atque eōs in silvās collāisque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius insecutī non nūllōs ex suiās āmisērunt. At illi intermissī spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūniōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis eiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō qui erant in statione prō castrīs conlocāti, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus à Caesare, atque his primīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterrētis nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūperunt sēque inde incolumis recēpērunt. Eō die Q. Cf. — existimantur. — contenērunt. — tempore. — re-pente. — minimō. — modō. — tūtōs.
The Gallic War.

Laberius Dürus tribūnus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

Their Methods of Fighting.

16. Tōtō hoc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dimicārētur, intellexēctum est nostrōs propter 5 gravitātem armōrum, quod neque insequi cēdentisō possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōsē esse ad hūius generis hostem; equītēs autem māgnō cum periculō proelīō dimicāre, proptereā quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs 10 remōvissent, ex essedīs désilirent et pedībus disparī proelīō contenderent. [Equestrīs autem proeli ratīō et cēdentibus et insequentiūs pār atque idem periculum inferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnferitiō sed rāri māgnīque intervāllīs proeliārentur quattuor stationēsque dispositās habērent, 15 atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs défatigātīs succēderent.

They are Again Defeated.

17. 6 Posterō diē procūl ā castrīs hostēs in collībus consitiērunt, rārique sē ostendere et lēnius quam pridē nostrōs equītēs proelīō lacessere coepērunt. Sed meridiē, cum Caesar pābulāndī causā III legionēs atque omnem equitā- tum cum C. Trebōniō légātō misisset, repente ex omnībus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absisterent.9 Nostri àcriter in eōs impetū factō repulērunt, neque finem sequendi fēcērunt quoad 25 subsidiō cōnfisi equītēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecepiōtes hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō inter- fectō neque sui confligendi neque cōnsistendi aut ex essedīs

désiliendi facultatem\(^1\) dedérunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique\(^2\) convēnerant auxilia discessérunt; neque\(^3\) post id temporum umquam summis nōbiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

**Fig. 70. — Signa Militaria.**

**Cæsar Crosses the Thames.**

18. Caesar cōgnītō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finis Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omninō locō pedibus,\(^4\) atque hoc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit\(^5\) ad alteram flūminis ripam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium inōstrōtās; ripa autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixisque mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rebus cōgnitis\(^10\) ā captīvis perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim\(^6\) legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque ēō impetu militēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent ripāsque dēmitterent\(^7\) ac sē fugae mandarent.

Cf.\(^1\) potestātem. — \(^2\) ex omnibus partibus. — \(^3\) postēa. — \(^4\) vadō. — \(^5\) vīdit. — \(^6\) continuō. — \(^7\) relinquerent.
19. Cassivellaunus, ut supra dēmōnstrāvimus, omni dépositā spē contentiōnis, dimissis ampliōribus cōpiis, mili-
bus circiter iiiii essedāriōrum relictis itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditīs ac silvestri-
bus sēsē occultābat atque eis regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat pecora atque homīnēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandique causā sē in agrōs eiēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmi-
tīsque essedāriōs ex silvis émittēbat; et māgnō cum peri-
culō nostrōrum equitum cum eis cōnfīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagāri prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdi Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandis incendiōsque faciēndis hostibus nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī militēs efficere poterant.

20. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima eārum regi-
ōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat,— cūius pater in eā civitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectorque 20 erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat,— lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē ei dēditūrōs atque imperātā factūrōs: petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellauni défendat, atque in civitātem mittat qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs xi. 25 frumentumque exercitui, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illi imperātā celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum fru-
mentumque misērunt.

Cf. 1 sublātā. — 2 māiōribus. — 8 agēbat. — 4 dépōpulandī. — 6 pūg-
nāvit. — 8 permetteret. — 7 intereā. — 8 effūgerat. — 9 rogant. — 10 rēg-
num. — 11 cum celeritāte.
B. G. V. 22.] Second Invasion of Britain. 131

Other Tribes also Yield. A British "Oppidum."

21. Trinobantibus défėnxis atque ab omni militum iniūriā prohibitis, Cēnimāgni, Segontiāci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi lēgātiōnibus missis sēsē Caesari dedunt. Ab his cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis palūdibusque mūnitum, quō satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant cum silvās impeditās1 vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis2 hostium vitandae causā convenire cōnsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnisb; locum reperit3 ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnitum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre4 contendit. Hostēs paulisper morāti militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēnși5 atque interceptī.

Cassivellaunus at Last Submits.

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnisibus 1111 rēgēs praeerant, Cingtērorix, Carvíliaus, Taximagus, Segonax, nūntiōs mittit atque his imperat uti coāctis omnibus cōpiiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adorīntur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostri ēruptiōne6 factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbili ducē Lugotorīge, suōs incolumīs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs7 acceptīs, vāstātīs finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne8 civitātum, lēgātōs25 per Atrebatēm Commium dē dēditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs9 Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātīs superesse, atque id facile extrahi10 posse intellegēret, obsidēs

imperat, et quid in annós singulōs vectigālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit. Interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō né Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cāesar Returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvis 5 invenit refectās. His dēductīs, quod et captivōrum mág-
num numerum habēbat et nōn nullae tempestāte dēperierant

nāves, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre instituit.
Ac sic accidit uti ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigationi-
bus, neque hoc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis
10 quae militēs portāret désiderāretur; at ex eis quae inānēs

On Account of the Scarcity of Supplies, the Army is Widely Distributed for Winter Quarters.

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frumentum in Gallīa propter siccitātis angustius prōvenerat, coāctus est aliter ac superiōribus annis exercitum in hibernis conlocāre legiōnēsque in plurīs civitātibus distribuere; ex quibus ūnam in Morīnōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in confinio Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacīs conlocāvit; his M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscripserat, et cohortīs v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, qui sub imperiō Ambiōrigis et Catuvolci erant, mīsit. Hīs militibus Q. Titūrium Sabinum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praesesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē medēri posse existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnēm hiberna, praeter eam quam L. Rōsciō in ādādissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, milibus passuum c continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad

The Gallic War.

legiones conlocatās mūnītāque hiberna cōgnōvisset,1 in Galliā morāri cōnstituit.

Tasgetius, a Friendly Chief, Slain by the Carnutes.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō 2 nātus Tasgetius, cūius māiōres in suā civitātē rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic 5 Caesar prō ēius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā,3 quod in omnibus bellis singulāri ēius operā fuerat úsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimici palam multīs ex civitātē auctōribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur4 ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus,5 quod ad

FIG. 72.—COIN OF L. PLANCUS.

10 plūris pertinēbat, nē civitās 6 eōrum impulsū déficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs prōficiisci7 iubet ibiQue hiemāre; quōrumque operā cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātis quaestōribusque] quibus 15 legiōnēs trādiderat,8 certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernīs esse mūnitum.

Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus. Sabinus's Camp Attacked.

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultūs ac dēfeciōnis9 ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō; qui, cum ad finis rēgni sui Sabinō 20 Cottaeque10 praesto fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna com-

portāvissent,\(^1\) Indūtiomāri Trēveri nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subītōque oppressis lignātōribus māgnā manū\(^2\) ad castra oppūgnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cēpissent vāllumque adscendissent, atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitis ēmissis equestri proeliō \(^3\)superiōrēs fuissent, \(^4\)dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne reduxē-runt. Tum suō móre conclāmāvērunt uti aliquī ex nostrīs ad conloquium prōdiret:\(^5\) habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās\(^6\) minuī posse spērārent.

Ambiorīx Treacherously Advises Sabinus to Abandon his Camp and Join Cicero or Labienus.

27. Mittitur ad eōs conloquendī causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānūs, familiāris Q. Titūri, et Q. Iūnius ex His-pānīā quidam, qui iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre consuērat;\(^7\) apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est: 'Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrumīm ei \(^1\)cōnitēri dēbēre, quod ēius operā stipendiō liberātus esset quod Aduatucis, finitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et filiūs et frātris filiūs ab Caesare remissī essent quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūtē et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne \(^2\)castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcissē, sed \(^3\)coāctū civitātīs; suaque esse ēiusmodī imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō quam ipse in multitudīnem.

'Civitātī porrō\(^4\) hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentinae Gallōrum coniūrātiōni resistere nōn potuerit; id sē facile ex \(^5\)humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus\(^6\) rērum ut suīs cōpiis populum Rōmānum superāri posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commune cōnsilium; omnibus hibernīs Caesaris oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē

Cf. \(^1\)contulissent. \(^2\)cōpiis. \(^3\)superāssent. \(^4\)spē dēpositā. \(^5\)progrederētur. \(^6\)contentiōnis. \(^7\)solitus erat. \(^8\)a civitātē co-āctus. \(^9\)deinde. \(^10\)insciēns.
The Gallic War.

Caesar

quae legiō alteri legiōni subsidiō 1 venire posset; nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praeāerīm cum dē recupe-randā 2 commūni libertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur.

'Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem offici prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, ōrāre 3 Titūriūm prō hospitiō ut suae ac militum salūtī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trān-
isse; hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsiōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne prius quam finitimi sentiant, 4 ēductōs ex hibernis mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mília passuum circiter l, alter paulō amplius ab eis absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāre tūtum sē iter per suōs finis dātūrum; quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hibernis levētur, et Caesari prō ēius meritis 5 grātiam referre.' Hāc orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

Some of his Officers are Opposed to Such a Movement.

28. Arpīnēius et Iūnius quae audierant 6 ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illi repentinā rē perturbātī, 7 etsi ab hoste ea dice-
bantur, tamen nōn neglegenda 8 existimābant; maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt māgunaque inter eōs existit contrōversia. 9 L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque 10 tribūni militum et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex hibernis inīssū Caesariēs discēdendum existimābant; quantāsvis [māgnās] cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinēri 11 posse mūnitis hibernis docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultrō 12 volneribus inlātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premi; 13 interea

et ex proximis hibernis et à Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summis rēbus capere\(^1\) cōnsilium?

**But Sabinus Argues in Favor.**

**29.** Contrā ea Titūrius 'Sērō factūrōs' clamitābat, 'cum māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātīs\(^2\) in proximīs hibernīs esset acceptūm; brevem cōnsulendī esse occasiōnem.\(^3\) Caesarem sē arbitrāri profectum in Italiam; neque alīter Carnūtēs interficiēndī Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, si ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem sed rem spectāre; subesse\(^4\) Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolorī Ariovisti mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre\(^5\) Galliam tot contumēliis\(^6\) acceptis sub populi Rōmānī imperium redāc-tam, superiōre gloriā reī militāris extīnctā. Postrēmō, quīs hoc sībī persuādēret sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad eiusmodī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtām: si nihil esset durius,\(^7\) nūllo cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perversūrōs; si Galliā omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret,\(^8\) ūnam esse in celeritāte posītām salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum qui dissentiērent cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō si nōn prae-sēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.'

**Cotta Throws the Responsibility upon Sabinus.**

**30.** Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne\(^9\) habitā, cum \(25\) ā Cottā primisque ordinibus æcriter resisterētur, "Vincite," inquit, "si ita voltis," Sabinus, et id clāriōre\(^10\) voce, ut

---

\(^1\) Cf. \(1\) inire. — \(2\) incommodi. — \(3\) spatium. — \(4\) prope esse. — \(5\) cōnflagrāre. — \(6\) indignitātibus. — \(7\) gravius. — \(8\) cōnsiprāret. — \(9\) contrōversiā. — \(10\) māiōre.
magna pars militum exaudiret; "neque is sum," inquit, "qui gravissimē ex vōbis mortis periculō terrear: hi sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs tē rationem reposcet; qui, si per tē liceat, perendinō dīē cum proximīs hibernis coniūntī commūnem cum reliquis bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et rēlēgāti longē ab cēterīs aut ferrī aut fame intereat."

Sabinus Prevails, and the Army Marches Out of Camp.

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et orant 'Nē suā dissiōniō et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēducant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant suō proficiscantur, si modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissiōniō nūllam sē salūtem perspicere.' Rēs disputātiōne ad medium noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabini. Prōnūn-

They are Suddenly Attacked in a Narrow Defile.

32. At hostēs, posteaquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigili-

B. G. V. 33.] Fresh Risings of the Gauls. 139
demisisset,\(^1\) ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō \(^2\) sē ostendē-
runt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre adscēnsū atque iniquissimō \(^3\) nostrīs locō proelium committere coe-
pērunt.

Sabinus Loses his Self-possession. Cotta Does Nobly, but Makes a Fatal Mistake.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, qui nihil ante prōvidisset, tre-
pidāre et concursāre cohortisquē dispōnere,\(^4\) haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia déficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eis accidere\(^5\) cōnsuēvit qui in ipsō negotiō\(^6\)

cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, qui cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisse, nūlla in rè commūni salūti deerat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperātōris et in pūgnā militis officia\(^7\) praestābat. Cum propter longitudīnem ag-
minis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum\(^8\) esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiāri ut impedimenta reliquērent atque in orbem cōnsisterent.

Cf. 1 dēscendissent. — 2 exstītērunt. — 3 aliēnissimō. — 4 distribu-
ere. — 5 evenīre. — 6 discrimine. — 7 mūnera. — 8 agendum.
Quod cōnsilium, etsi in ēiusmodī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommōdē cecidit; nam et nostrīs militībus spem minuit et hostīs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut volgō militēs ab signīs discēderent, quaeque quisque ēorum cărissīma habēret ab impedimentīs petere et abripere properāret; clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

Policy of Ambiorīx.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiāri iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praeda atque illīs reservāri quaeque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita existimārent. [Ērant et virtūte et numerō pūgnandō parēs.] Nostri tametsi ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbant, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant; et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab ea parte māgnus numerus hos-tium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiāri iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant [levitāte armō-rum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil his nocēri posse], rūrsus sē ad signa recipientis insequantur.

The Fight Continues, the Romans Continually Worsted.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eis diligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe exsesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugībant. Interim eam partem nūdāri necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, et ab eis qui cesserant et ab eis qui proximi...
steterant circumveniēbantur; sin autem locum tenēre vel-
 lent, nec virtūti locus reliquēbātur neque ab tantā multi-
tūdine coniecta tēla cōnferti vitāre poterant. Tamen tot
incommodis cōnficētātī, multis volneribus acceptis resistē-
bant; et māgnā parte diēi consūmpā, cum ā primā lūce ad
hōram octāvam pūgnārētūr, nihil quod ipsīs esset indig-
num committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, qui superiōre annō
primum pilum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātīs,
utrumque femur trāgulā trācītūr; Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem
ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum circumventīō fillīō subvenīt,
interfīcītūr; L. Cotta lēgātus omnis cohortīs ōrdinēsque
adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā volnerātur.

Sabinus Seeks an Interview with Ambiorix.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procūl Ambio-
rigem suōs cohortāntem cōnspexisset, interpretem suum Cn.
Pompeium ad eum mittit rogātūm ut sībi militibusque par-
cat. Ille appellātus respondet: "Si velit sēcum conloquī,
licēre; spērāre ā multītūdīne īmpetrāri posse quod ad mili-
tum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īri, inque
eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere." Ille cum Cotta sa-
cīō communīcat, si videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum 20
Ambiorīge ūnā conloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac
militum salūte īmpetrāri posse. Cotta sē ad armātum ho-
stem itūrum negat atque in eō perseverāt.

He is Treacherously Slain. The Army Utterly Defeated. Few Escape.

37. Sabinus quōs in praesentīā tribūnōs militum circum
sē habēbat et primōrum ōrdinum centurīōnēs sē sequī iubet; et,
cum propius Ambiorīgēm accessisset, iūssus arma ab-
icere, 12 13 imperātūm facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat.

Cf. 1 occāsiō. — 2 exagitāti. — 8 repūgnābant. — 4 admissēbant.
6 trānsfigitur. — 6 auxilium fert. — 7 petitum. — 8 clēmentiā ītātūr in.
Interim, dum dē condicionibus inter sē agunt longiorque consultō ab Ambiorige instituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam concełamant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostrōs factō 5 ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressi; ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitūdine hostium premerētur,1 aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castris fortissimē pūgnāns occiditur. Illī 10 aegre2 ad noctem oppūgnātionem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs despērātā salūte sē ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proeliō ēlāpsi incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certōrem faciunt.

**Ambiorix Persuades the Aduatuci and Nervii to Join the Revolt.**

15 38. Hāc victōriā sublātus3 Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, qui erant ēius régnō finitimī,4 proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermissit5 peditātumque sē subsequi iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit, hortāturque nē sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō eis quās accēperint iniūriis occāsiōnem dīmittant;6 interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interīsse7 dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōti subitō oppressum legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interfici; sē ad eam rem profitētur 20 adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōratiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

A Large Force Attacks the Camp of Q. Cicero.

39. Itaque cōnfestim8 dimissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, qui omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt, 

et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nöndum ad eum fämä de Titüri morte perlätä. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut non nulli militēs, qui 2 lignationis mūnitioisque causa in silvās discessissent, repentinō equi- tum adventū interciperentur. His circumventis, māgnā

manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduatuci atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscedunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam 3 in perpetuum sē 10 fore victōrēs cōnfidēbant.

Cicero Makes Vigorous Preparations for Resistance.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae, māgnis prōpositīs praemiīs si pertulissent; obsessis

Cf. 1 properant. — 2 māteriandi. — 3 semper. — 4 cōnstitūtīs.
omnibus viis missī intercipiuntur. 1 Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant turres admodum cxx excitantur 2 incrēdibili celeritāte; quae deesse operi vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō dieī multō maiōribus coāctīs 5 cōpiōs castra oppūgnant, fossam complet. Ā nostrīs eādēm ratiōne 3 quā prīdiē resistitur: hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn volnerātīs facultās quiētīs datur. Quaecumque ad proximi diēi oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, māgnus mūrālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; 4 turres contabulantur; 5 pinnae lōricaque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā 6 valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sībi tempus ad quiētem relinqūebat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac 15 vōcibus sībi parcerē cōgerētur.

The Nervian Chiefs Try to Persuade Cicerō to Retīre. He Refuses.

41. Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviōrum, qui aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloqui sēsē velle dicunt. Factā potestāte, 7 eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: 'Omnem esse in armīs Galliām, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse, Caesāris reliquōrumque 8 hiberna oppūgnāri.' Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fideī faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dicunt, sī quicquam ab eīs praesidi spērent qui suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hoc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere 9 consuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illis per sē incolumibus 10 ex hibernis discēdere 11 et quāscumque in partīs velint sine metū proficisci. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: 'Nōn esse consuētūdinem 12 populi Rō-
They Lay Siege to the Camp.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsi Nervii vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum quindecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine a nōbīs cōgnōverant 2 et quōsdam dē exercitū nacti captiviōs ab his docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ĭsum idōnea, 3 gladiīs caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram 10 exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multītūdō cōgnōsci potuit; nam minus hōris tribus milium pascuum xv in circuitū mūnitioāmen 6 perfēcērunt. 6 Reliquīisque diēbus turris ad altitūdinem vālli, falcīs testūdinēsque, quās iīdem captivi docuerant, parāre ac facere coeārunt.

They Make a Furious Assault, Which is Gallantly Resisted.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē maximō coōrtō ventō ferventīs fūsilēs ex argillā glandis fundīs et ferverfacta iacula 7 in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coeārunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnītūdine in omnem locum 8 castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sic uti partā iam atque explōrātā vic-tōriā, turris testūdinēsque agere et scālis vāllum adscendere coeārunt. At tanta militūm virtūs 9 atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multītūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedi- menta atque omnis fortūnās cōnflāgrāre 10 intellegērent, nōn modo [dēmigrandi causā] dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed

paene\(^1\) nē respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnēs\(^2\) acerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē maximus numerus hostīum vōlerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstitūāverant\(^2\) recessumque prīmis ultīmī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammae et quōdam locō tūrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae

cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt\(^3\) suōsque omnīs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs si in troīre vellent vocāre coeptērunt, quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī\(^4\) turrisque succēnsa est.

Rivalry of Two Centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimi viri, centuriōnēs, qui iam prīmis ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorē-

Cf. \(^1\) fērē. — \(^2\) cōnfererant. — \(^3\) sē recēpērunt. — \(^4\) dépulsi.

Efforts to Inform Cæsar of the Danger.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūgnā-tiō, et maximē quod māgnā parte militum cōnfectā vol-

The Gallic War. [Cæsar

neribus rēs ad paucitātem défēnsōrum¹ pervēnerat, tantō crēbriörēs litterae núntiiique ad Cæsarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectō nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine 5 Verticō, locō nātus² honestō, qui ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfügerat³ suamque eī fidem⁴ praestiterat. Hīc servō spē libertātīs māgnīisque persuādet praemiīs ut litterās ad Cæsarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus ad 10 Cæsarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnīs legiōnis-que cōgnōscitur.⁵

Cæsar Immediately Sends Messages to his Lieutenants.

46. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter xi diēi statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte 15 legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit⁶ cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātīum finīs legiōnem addūcat, quā sībi iter faciendum scībat. Scribit Labiēnō, si rei públicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad finīs Nerviōrum veniat; reli- 20 quam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equītēs circiter cccc ex proximis hibernīs conligit.⁷

Crassus Meets him; Labienus Thinks it Best to Stay Where he is.

47. Hōrā circiter tertīā ab antecursōribus⁸ dē Crassi adventū certior factus, eō diē milia passuum xx prōgre- 25 ditur. Crassum Samarobrivae praeſcit⁹ legiōnemque ei attribuit,¹⁰ quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās públicās, frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat¹¹ relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperā-


The Gauls Abandon the Siege and March against Caesar, Who Avoids a Conflict.

49. Galli ré cognitā per explōrātorēs obsidiōnem reliquunt;¹ ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt; haec erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmonstrāvimus repetit qui litterās ad Caesarem dēferat;² hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litterīs hostīs ab sē discissīs omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certīōrēs cōisque ad dimicandum animō cōnfīrmat.³ Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra, et circiter milia passuum IIII progressus trāns vallem et rivum multitūdinem hostium conspicātur. Erat māgni periculi rēs tantulis cōpiis iniquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exsistimābat. Cōnsidit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium vii, praesertim nullīs cum impedimentis, tamen angustīs viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnīs partīs dimissīs explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

Caesar, Feigning Fear, Draws the Enemy on to his Own Ground.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliis ad aquam factīs utrique sēsē suō locō continent: Galli, quod amplīōres cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābant; Caesar, si forte timōris simulātiōne hostīs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum

periculō vallem rivumque trānsīret. Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesār cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīri portāsque obstrui atque in his administrandī rēbus quam maximē concursāri et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

In the Attack which Follows the Enemy are Routed.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitātī cōpiās trā-dūcunt aciemque iniquō locō consituent; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductis propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitionem ex omnibus partibus coniciant praeēōnibusque circummissis prōnūntiāri iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contemptērunt ut obstrūctis in speciem portīs singulīs ordinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesār omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostis in fugam dat, sic uti omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō; māgnunque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnis armīs exuit.

Caesār Reaches the Camp of Cicerōn and Congratulates him and his Men on their Gallant Defense.

52. Longius prósequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant [neque etiam parvulō dētrimentō illōrum locum relinqui vidēbat], omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institutās turris, testūdīnēs mūnitionēsque hostium admirātur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine

Cf. 1 trāngrederētur. — 2 adgreditur. — 5 pedem referre. — 4 gerendis. — 6 adlecti. — 6 exstrūctās.
volnere. Ex his omnibus iūdicat rébus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rés sint administrātāe. Cicerō-nem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōisque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cógnōverat. Dē căsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvis cógnōscit. Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs cónsolātur et confirmat; quod détrimentum culpā et temeritāte lēgāti sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtīna laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

Indutiomarus Defers his Intended Attack on Labienus. All Signs Point to a General Uprising of the Gaules, so that Cæsar Decides to Spend the Winter with his Army.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibīli celeritāte dē victōriā Cæsaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter sexagintā, eōque post hōram nōnam diēi Cæsar pervēnisset, ante medium noctem ad portās castrōrum clamor orīrētur, quō clāmōre significātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmis Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indutiomārus, qui posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverat, noctū profugit cópiāsque omnīs in Trēverōs reducit. Cæsar Fabium cum

suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse cum IIII legiōnibus circum Samarobrivam trīnis hibernīs hiemāre cōnstituit; 1 et, quod tānti mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommōdō 3 dē Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae civītātēs dē bellō cōnsultābant; 4 nūntīōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnīs partīs dīmittēbant; et quid reliquī cōnsili caperent atque unde initium belli fieret explōrābant, nocturnaque 5 in locīs dēsērtīs 6 concilia habēbant. Neque illum ferē tōtīus hiemīs tempus sine sollicitūdīne 7 Caesāris intercessit quin aliquem dē cōnsiliis ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In his ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī xiii praeferēt, certior factus est māgnās [Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum civitātūm quae Aemoricāe appellantur oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius miliibus passuum viii ab hibernīs suis aīuisse, 15 sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesāris, dicessisset adeō ut fugae similis discēssus 8 vidērētur.

The Senones and Other Tribes are Ready to Revolt.

54. At Caesar, principibus cūiusque civitātīs ad sē ēvocātīs, aliās territandō, cum sē scīre quae fierent 9 dēnūntiārēt, 10 aliās cohortandō, 11 māgnām partem Galliāe in officiō 20 tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitās 12 in primīs firma et māgnæ inter Gallōs auctōritātīs, Cavarinum, quem Caesār apud eōs rēgēm cōnstituerat (cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesāris, cūiusque māiōrēs rēgnum obtinerant), interficere públicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille prae- 25 sēnsisset ac profūgisset, úsque ad finīs īnsecūti rēgnō domōque expulērunt; 13 et missī ad Caesarēm satisfaciēndī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, 14 dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs

valuit esse aliquōs repertōs princīpēs belli inferendī, tan-
tamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit ut —
praetēr Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōrē
Cæsar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum
Rōmānōm fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī belli officiis
— nūlla ferē civitās fuerit non suspecta nōbis. Idque adeō
haud scī mirandum ne sit, cum complūribus aliis dē causīs,
tum maximē quod qui virtūte belli omnibus gentibus praef-
erēbantur, tantum sē ēius opinīonis dēperdidisse ut
populi Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Activity of Indutiomarus.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārūs tōtīus hiemīs nūl-
sum tempus interimiserunt quīn trāns Rhenum lēgātōs mi-
terent, civitātīs sollicitārent, pecūnīās pollicērentur, māgnā
parte exercītūs nostri interfectā multō minōrem superesse
dicerent partem. Neque tamen ēllī civitātī Germānōrūm
persuādērī potuit ut Rhenum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs
dicerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tencērōrūm trānsītū; nōn esse
amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lāpsus Indūti-
omiārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā finītimis
equōs parāre, exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māgnīs
praemiīs ad sē adlicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his
rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad
eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amicitiam pū-
blicē privātīmque penterent.

Many Tribes Join him, and he Decides to Attack Labienus.

56. Ubi intellēxit ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte
Senonēs Carnutēsque cōnscientiā facinoris īnstitīrī, alterā
Nervīōs Aduatucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi
voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore si ex finibus suis prōgredi coe-

Cf. 1 effecit. — 2 operā. — 3 prōponēbantur. — 4 famae. — 5 āmississe.
— 6 déiectus. — 7 conferre. — 8 comparēre. — 9 conlégerat. — 10 sceleris.
— 11 impelli.
Fresh Risings of the Gauls.

pisset, armātum concilium indicit. Hoc mōre Gallōrum est initium belli, quō légē commūnī omnēs pūberēs1 armātī conveniēre cōguntur; qui ex eis novissimus2 venit in cōnspectū multitūdinis omnibus cruciātibus aductus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorigem, alterius principem factiōnis, generum suum,3 quem supra dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discoxisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius pūblicat. His rēbus cōnfectīs in conciliō prōnūntiāt arcessītum4 sē ā Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque complūribus Galliāe civi-tātibus; hūc ītūrum per finis Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum;5 ac prius quam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppūgnāturum: quae fierī velit praecipīt.6

Labienus Acts Cautiously.

57. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manūs mūnitissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō ac legiōnis periculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsīōnem reī bene gerendae dīmitteret7 15 cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorige atque ēius propinquīs8 ōrātiōne Indūtiomārī cognitā quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad finitīmās9 civitātīs equitēsque undique ēvocat;10 his certam diem conveniendi dīcit. Interim prope cotīdiē cum omni equitātū Indūtiomārus sub castrīs ēius 20 vagābātur, aliās ut situm11 castrōrum cōgnōsceret,12 aliās conloquendi aut territandī causā: equitēs plērumque13 omnēs tēla intrā vāllum coniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitionēm14 continēbat timōrisque opinīōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

Indūtiomarus is Defeated by a Sudden Sally, and Slain.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indūtiomārūs ad castra accēderet,15 nocte ūnā intrōmissis equitibus omnium

Cf. 1 iuvenēs.—2 postrēmus.—3 ēius.—4 vocātum.—5 vastātūrum.—6 imperat.—7 praetermitteret.—8 necessāris.—9 proximās.—10 arcessit.—11 locum.—12 explōrāret.—13 ferē.—14 castra.—15 ad-grederētur.
finitimárum civitátum quós arcessendós cérāverat, tantá diligentiâ omnis suós custódiis intrá castra continuit ut nullâ ratione ea rès ēnūntiāri aut ad Trēverōs perferri posset. Interim ex cónsuétūdine cotidiānā Indūtiomárus ad castra accédit atque ibi māgnam partem diēi cónsūmit; equītēs tēla coniciunt et māgnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam évocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō responsō, ubi visum est sub vespérum dispersi ac dissipāti discēdunt. Subītō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdicit, prōterrītis hostībus atque in fugam coniectis (quod fore, sīcīt accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant Indūtiomárum; neu quis quem prius volnernet quam illum interfert viderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatum nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; māgnā prōpōnit eis quī occiderint praemia; submittit cohortīs equitibus subsidō. Comprobavit hominis cōnsilium fortūna; et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indūtiomárus interficitur caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntis equītēs quōs possunt consectantur atque occidunt. Hāc rē cōgnitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae convēnerant cōpiae discēdunt; paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

BOOK VI.

SECOND EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY. B.C. 53.

Caesar Increases his Forces in Order to Cope with the Rebellious Gauls.

MULTĪS dē causīs Caesar māiorem Galliae mōtum expectāns, per M. Silānum, C. Antistium Rēginum, T. Sextium lēgātōs délēctum habēre instituit; simul ab Cn. Pompeīō prōcōnsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperīō rei publicae causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpinā Galliā cōnsul sacrāmentō rogāvisset ad signa convenire et ad sē proficisci iubēret; māgni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinīōnem Galliae existimāns tantās vidēri Italiae facul-

Cf. 1 tumultum. — 2 décrēvit. — 3 iūre iūrandō.
tātis\textsuperscript{1} ut, si quid esset in bellō dētrimento\textsuperscript{2} acceptum, nōn modo id brevi tempore sarcīrī,\textsuperscript{3} sed etiam māiōribus augērī\textsuperscript{4} cōpiis posset. Quod cum Pompēius et rei pūblīcae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōnfectō per suōs dēlēctū, tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus, duplicātōque eārum cohortīum numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō āmiserat, et celeritāte et cōpiis docuit\textsuperscript{6} quid populi Rōmānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.

2. Interfectō Indūtiomārō, ut docuimus, ad ēius propin-quōs ā Trēverīs imperium\textsuperscript{6} dēfertur. Illī fīnītimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniām pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ā proxīmis impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptānt.\textsuperscript{7} Inventīs\textsuperscript{8} nōn nūllis civitātibus iūre iūrāndō inter sē cōnfīrmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambīriorīgem sībi societāte\textsuperscript{15} et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Ĉaesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Aduātucōs, Meṇapiōs, adiūntīs Ĉisrēnānīs omnibus Germānīs, esse in armīs, Senonēs ād imperātūm nōn venire ēt cum Carnutībus finitīmisque civitātibus cōnsiā commūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbris lēgātiōnibus sollicitāri, mātūriō sībi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

He Again Ravages the Nervian Territory and Marches against the Senones.

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōnfectā,\textsuperscript{9} proxīmis III coāctis legiōnibus\textsuperscript{10} dē imprōvisō in finis Nerviōrum contendit,\textsuperscript{11} et prius quam illī aut convenīre aut profugēre possent, māgnō pecoris atque homīnum numerō captō atque eā praeda mili-tibus concessā\textsuperscript{12} vāstātīisque agrīs, in dēditionēm venire atque obsidēs sībi dare coēgit. Ėō celeriter cōnfectō negotīō rūrsus\textsuperscript{13} īn hibernā legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliāe primō vēre, ut instituerat, indictō, cum reliqui praeter Senonēs,

Carnutes, Trèverosque vēnissent,\textsuperscript{1} initium belli ac dēfec-
tiōnis\textsuperscript{2} hoc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concili
um Lutetiam Parisiōrum trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs\textsuperscript{3} erant 
hi Senonibus civitātemque patrum memoriā coniūn
xerant; sed ab hoc cōnsiliō āfuisse existimābantur. Hāc rē prō 
suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs 
proficīscitur māgnīisque itineribus eō pervenit.

The Senones and Carnutes Submit.

4. Cōgnitō ēius adventū Accō, qui princeps ēius cōnsiliī 
fuera, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre; cōnantibus, 
pius quam id effici posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. 10 
Necessāriō sententiā\textsuperscript{4} dēsistent lēgātōsque dēprecandī 
causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Haeduōs, quōrum 
antiquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus 
Haeduīs dat veniam excūsātiōnemque\textsuperscript{5} accipit, quod\textsuperscript{6} aesti-
vum tempus īnstantis belli, nōn quaeśtiōnis esse arbitrābātur; 15 
obsidibus imperātīs c, hōs Haeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. 
Eōdem Carnutes lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt, ūsi dēprecā-
tōrībus Rēmis, quōrum erant in clientēlā; eadem ferunt 
respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equītēsque imperat 
civitātibus.

Next he Goes against the Menapii; he Forbids them to Harbor Ambiorix.

5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō in 
bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgīs ĭn sistit.\textsuperscript{7} Cavarinum cum 
equitātū Senonom sēcum proficiisci iubet, nē quis aut ex 
hūius ēraccundiā,\textsuperscript{8} aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō, cīvitātēs 
mōtus exsistat. His rēbus cōnstitūtīs, quod prō explōrātō\textsuperscript{9} 25 
habhēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum,\textsuperscript{10} reliqua 
ēius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapii propin-

Cf.\textsuperscript{1} convenissent. —\textsuperscript{2} mōtūs. —\textsuperscript{3} proximi. —\textsuperscript{4} cōnsiliō. —\textsuperscript{5} satisfac-
tiōnem. —\textsuperscript{6} aestivalis. —\textsuperscript{7} incubuit. —\textsuperscript{8} acerbītāte. —\textsuperscript{9} certō. —\textsuperscript{10} concertātūrum.
qui Ex Eburōnum finibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvisque mūniti, qui ūnī ex Galliā dé pāce ad Caesarem légātōs numquam miserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambiorīgi sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs in amīcitiam cōgnōverat. Haec prius illī dētrahenda auxilia existimābat quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhenānis congrētūr. Hoc initō cōnsiliō tōtius exercitūs impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque quīnque in Menapiōs proficiiscitūr. Illī nūlla coāctā manū, locī praesidiō frēti, in silvās palūdēsque cōnfugīunt suaque eōdem cōnferunt.


Labienus among the Treveri.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnīs coāctīs peditātūs in quae in eōrum finibus hiemābat adorīri parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Posītis castrīs ā milibus passuum xv auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dimicandi facultātem, prae-

FIG. 79. — ANCIENT STATUE OF GALlic CHIEF.
After Much Manœuvring he Brings on an Engagement and Utterly Defeats them.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnitionēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī—cohōrtāti inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dēmitterent; longum esse perterritīs Rōmānīs Germanōrum auxilium exspectāre; neque suam patī dignitātem ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguām manum praeertim fugientem atque impeditām adorīrī nōn audeant—flūmen trānsīre et iniquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnīs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbat. Tum praeemissīs paulum impedimentīs atque in tumulō


Cæsar Again Crosses the Rhine.

9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duā-bus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsire cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs miserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō supra eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxe-rat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā atque institūtā ratione, māgnō militum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficītur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab ēis subitō mōtus orīrētur, reliquās cópiās equitātūmque trādūcit. Ubī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditionem vēne-

rant, pûrgandi ¹ sui causâ ad eum lègátos mittunt qui doceant neque auxilia ex suâ civitâtē in Trèverôs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam : ² petunt atque òrant ut sibi parcat, nè com- mūni odiô Germânôrum innocentês prō nocentibus poenās pendant ; ³ sì amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cōgnitâ Caesar causâ reperit ab Suëvis auxilia missa esse; Ubiôrum satisfactionem ⁴ accipit ; aditūs viâsque in Suëvôs perquirit.⁵

He Learns from the Ubii that the Suevi have Retreated to the Forest Bacenis.

10. Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior Suëvôs omnis in ūnum locum côpiās cōgere, atque eis nātiōnibus ¹⁰ quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnuntiâre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cōgnitis rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castris idōneum ⁶ locum dēligit, Ubiis imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida cōnferant, — spērâns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs inopiā cibāriō- rum ⁷ adductōs ad iniquam pūgnāndi condicioānem posse dēdūci; mandat ut crēbrôs ⁸ explōrātōrēs in Suëvôs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant.⁹ Illi imperāta faci- unt et paucis diēbus intermissis referunt: ¹⁰ 'Suëvōs omnis, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntīi dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēne- rint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque côpiās quās coēgissent, penitus ad extremōs ¹¹ finis sē recēpisse; ¹² silvam esse ibi infinitā māgnitudine, quae appellātūr Bācenis; hanc longē intrōrsus ¹³ pertinēre, et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suëvōrum Suëvōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriis incursiōni- busque prohibēre; ad eīus silvae initium Suëvōs adventum ¹⁴ Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.'

The Gallic War.

Customs of the Gauls. The Two Parties among them.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō diōferant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnerē.

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus civitātibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt qui summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdīciō habēre existīmantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius reī causā antīquitātem institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plebe contrā potentiōrem auxili egēret; suōs enim quisque opprīmi et circumvenīri nōn patitūr, neque, aliter si faciāt, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtīus Galliāe; namque omnēs civitātēs divisae sunt in duās partīs.

Influence of the Romans upon the Relations of the Parties in Gaul.

They Favor the Haedui.

12. Cum Čaesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē minus valērent (quod summā auctōritās antiquītūs erat in Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs atque Ariovistum sībi adīūnxeerant eōsque ad sē māgnī iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perduxeerant. Proelii vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omni nōbilitāte Haeduīrum interfēctā, tantum potentiā auctōritātem antecesserant ut māgnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcērēnt obsidēsque ab hīs principum filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsili initūrōs, et partem finītīmi agrī per vim occupātām possidērēnt, Galliāeque tōtīus principātum obtinērēnt. Quā necessitātē adductus Diviciācūs

auxili petendi causā Rōمام ad senātum prefectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduis redditis, veteribus clientēlis restitūtis, novis per Caesarem comparātīs, quod ei qui sē ad eōrum amicitiam adgregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequōre imperiō sē ūti vidēbant, reliquis rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitātēque amplificātā, Sēquani principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī qui propter veterēs inimiciēs nūllō modō cum Haeduis coniungi poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitātīs Rēmī obtinērent.

Two Classes of Gallic Nobility, Druids and Knights. The Druids and their Power.

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliquō sunt numeros atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūlli adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut inīriā potentīōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generebus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus divīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pública ac privāta prōcūrant, religionēs interpretantur. Ad eōs māgnus adulēscēntium numeros disciplīnae causā concurrit, māgnōque hi sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs publicīs privātīisque cōnstituunt; et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedēs facta, dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrō-

The Gallic War.

versia est, idem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; si qui aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravis-sima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, his omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt; nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiant, neque eis petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs

ullus commūnicātur. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, qui summam inter eōs habet auctoritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, si sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt. Hi certō anūi tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsidunt in locō cōnsecrātō; hūc omnēs undique qui contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīisque pārent. Disciplina in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslātā existimātur; et nunc qui diligen-tius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendi causā proficiscuntur.

Their Privileges and Immunities. Their Education and Beliefs.

14. Druides ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquis pendunt; [militiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem]. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et

suā sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi numerum versuum édiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nón nūlli vicēnōs in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, públicis privātisque rationibus, Graecis litterīs ūtāntur. Íd mihi duābus dé causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in volgus disciplinam efferri velint neque eōs qui discunt litterīs cónfisōs minus memoriae studère,—quod ferē plērisque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum diligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In prīmis hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitāri putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praeterea dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nāturā, dē deōrum immortālium vi ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

**The Knights are the Fighting Men.**

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesāris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cópiisque amplissimus, ita plurīmōs circum sē ambactōs clientīisque habet. Hanc ūnam gratiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

**Human Sacrifices.**

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam qui sunt adfectī graviōribus morbīs, quīque in proelīs periculīisque versantur, aut prō victimīs homiēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent,

administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ütuntur, — quod, pro víta hominis nisi hominis vita reddátur, nón posse deórum immortálium númer plácári arbitrantur; públicèque eiusmodem generis habent institúta sacrificia. Alii immáni

5 mágnitúdine simulácre habent, quórum contexta víminibus membra vívis homínibus complént; quibus succénsis 2 circumventi flammá exanimantur homínés. Supplicia eórum qui in fúrtó aut látrócinió aut aliá noxiá 3 sint comprehénsi grátióra dis immortálibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eiusmod generis cópia déisícit, 4 etiam ad innocentium supplicia déscendunt.

Gallic Deities. Consecration of the Spoils of War to Mars.


tōs cumulōs locis cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollēre audēret; gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

They Claim Descent from Pluto. Peculiar Treatment of Boys.

18. Gallī sē omnis ab Dite patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālis et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquis vitae īnstitūtīs hoc ferē ab reliquis differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum 1c adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustīnēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerīlī aetāte in públicō in cōnsp ectū patris adsistere turpe dīcunt.


19. Vīri, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtīs nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōti- bus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniāe coniūnctīm ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Vīri in uxōrēs sīcūt in liberōs vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae industriōre locō nātus dēcessit, ēius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, si rēs in suspicionem vēnit, dē uxoribus in servīlem modum quaestōnem habent, et si compertum est, ignī atque omni- bus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivis cordī fuisses arbitrantur in īgnem ūnerunt, etiam ani- mālia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs,

quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstis fūnebris cōn-
fectis ūnā cremābantur.

All Rumors from Outside to be Reported to the Magistrates.

20. Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sāntum, si quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō communicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmō-
ribus terrēri et ad facinās impelli et dē summis rēbus cōn-
silium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae visa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdīni prō-
dunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loqui nōn conce-
ditur.

Customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent qui rēbus divinis praeśint neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuventas, Sōlem et Volcā-
um et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpérunt. Vita omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōnsistit; ā parvis labōri ac dūritiae student. Qui diūtissimē impu-
berēs permānsērunt maximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc ali statūram, ali virīs nervōsōque cōnfīrmāri putant. Intrā annum vērō vīcēsimum fēminaē nōtītiam habuisses in turpissi-
mis habent rēbus: cūius rei nūlla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvis rēnōnum tegimentīs ūtuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

No Agriculture or Private Ownership of Land.

22. Agri cultūræ nōn student, màiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agri mo-

dum certum aut finis habet proprios; ¹ sed magistrātus ac principēs ² in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quique ūnā coīerunt, quantum et quō locō visum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre ³ cōgunt. Ėius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā ⁴ cōnsuētūdine captī studium belli gerendī agrī cultura commūtēnt; nē lātōs finis parāre ⁵ studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accurātius ⁶ ad frigora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupidītās, quā ex rē factōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut ⁷ animī aequitātē 10 plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequāri videat.

Their Isolation. How Chiefs are Appointed; their Power. Freebooting no Disgrace. Rites of Hospitality Observed.

23. Civitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlītūdīnēs ⁸ habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam ⁰ prope sē audēre cōnsistere: ⁹ simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnēs timōre sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātus qui eī bellō praesint, et vitae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed ² princīpēs regiōnūm atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.¹⁰ Lātrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam ¹¹ quae extrā finis cūiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac désidiae minuendae causā fieri praedīcānt. Atque ubi quis ex princīpibus in conciliō dixit ²⁵ 'sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,'—cōnsurgunt eī qui et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multītūdine conlaudantur; qui ex his

secuti nón sunt in désertórum ac pròditórum numeró dúcuntur omniumque his rērum posteā fidēs dérogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nón putant; quī quācumque de causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sāncṭōsque habent. Hisque omnium domūs patent victusque communicātur.

Migration of Certain Gallic Tribes to Germany.


The Hercynian Forest and its Fauna. The Reindeer (?).

25. Huīus Hercyniae silvae, quae supra dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō viii diērum iter expedītō patet; nōn enim alīter finīri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētīorum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānūvi regiōne pertinet ad finīs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus diversis ab flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finīs propter māgnītūdi-

The Elk and its Habits.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis capris figūra et varietās pellium; sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdis articulisque habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, si quō adflectae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē āc sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē advincunt et ita paulum modo reclinātæ quītem capiunt. Quārum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādicibus subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Huc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclināvērunt, insīrmās arborēs pondere adfligunt atque ūnā ipsae concīdent.

The Wild Ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum qui ūri appellantur. Hi sunt māgnitūdine paulō infrā elephanto; speciē et colōre

10 conquisīta ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimis 4 epulis prō pōculīs ultuntur.

Caesar Returns to Gaul and Proceeds against Ambiorix.

29. Caesār, postquam per Ubīōs explōrātōrēs comperī 5 Suēvōs sēsē in silvās recēpissē, inopiam 6 frūmentī veritus (quod, ut supra dēmōnstrāvimus, minime 7 omnēs Germānī

agri cūltūrae student), cōnstituit nōn prōgredi longius; sed, nē omnīnō metum redītūs sui barbarīs tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, 8 reductō exercītū partem ultimam 9 pontis, quae ripās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum cc rescindīt, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātūrōm IIII cōnstituit 10 praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendi causā pōnit māgnisque eum locum mūniōnibus fir-

mat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcātium Tullum adulēscen-
tem prae fecit; ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus, per Arduennam silvam—

25 quae est tōtius Galliae maxima atque ab ripīs Rhēnī fini
busque Trēverōrum ad Nervīōs pertinet, milibusque amplius d in longitūdinem patet — L. Minucium Basilum cum omni equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritāte itineris atque opportū-nitāte 11 temporis prōficere possit; monet ut ignīs in castris

Cf. 1 diligenter. — 2 pariunt. — 3 cupidē. — 4 māgnificēntissimīs. —
Fig. 83. — Statue of Ambiorix.
fieri prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs procul significātiō fiat; sēsē cōnfestim subsequi dicit.

Ambiorix Has the Good Luck to Escape.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opiniōnem cōnfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopinantis dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equītibus esse dicēbātur. Multum cum in omnīs rēbus tum in rē militāri potest fortūna. Nam ut māgnō accidit cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque ēius adventus ab omnībus vidērētur quam fāma ac nūntius adferrētur, sic māgnae fuit fortūnae, omnī militāri instrumentō quod circum sē habēbat ēreptō, rēdis equīisque comprehēnsīs, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod, aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, qui vitandī aestūs causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propinquitātīs, comitēs familiārēsque ēius angustō in locō paulisper equītum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. His pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suīs intulit; fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sīc et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortūna valuit.

His Forces Disband and Withdraw to the Forest and Marshes. Catuvolcus Commits Suicide.

31. Ambiorīx cōpiās suās iūdicīōne non condŭxerit, quod proeliō dimicandum non existimāret, an tempore exclusūs et repentinō equītum adventū prohibītīs, cum reliquum exercītum subsequi crēderet, dubium est. Sed certē dimissīs per agrōs nūntīs sībi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentīs palūdēs
profugit; qui proximi Öceanô fuérunt hi insulis sēsē occult-
tāvērunt1 quās aestūs efficere consuērunt; multi ex suis
finibus egressi sē suaque omnia alienissimis crēdiderunt.2
Catuvolcus, rēx dimidiae partis Eburōnum, qui ūnā cum
Ambiorīgē cōnsilium inierat,3 aetāte iam cōnfectus, cum
labōrem belli aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus
dētestātus Ambiorīgēm, qui ēius cōnsili auctor fuisset, taxō
(cūius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est)4 sē exani-
māvit.

Caesar Proceeds to Aduatuca and Puts Q. Cicero in Command there.

10 32. Sēgni Condrūisque, ex gente et numerō Germānōrum,
qui sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem
mīsērunt ὀrātum5 'nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret nēve
omnia Germānōrum qui essent citrā Rhēnum ūnā6 esse
causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambi-
origī auxilia misisse.' Caesar explōrātā7 rē quaestīōne cap-
tivōrum, sī qui ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē
ut redūcērentur imperāvit; sī ita fēcissent, finis eōrum sē
violātūrum8 negāvit. Tum cōpiis in trēs partīs distribūtīs
impedimenta omnium legiōnum Aduatucam contulit. Id
castelli nōmen est. Hoc ferē9 est in mediis Eburōnum
finibus, ubi Titūrius atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā
cōnsēderant. Hunc cum reliquis rēbus locum probābat,
tum quod superiōris annī mūnitōnēs integrae manēbant, ut
militum labōrem sublevāret.10 Praesidiō impedimentis legi-
ōnem xiii reliquit, ūnām ex his tribus quās proximē cōn-
scriptās ex Ītaliā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrīisque Q. Tul-
lium Cicerōnēm praefēcīt ducentōsque equītēs attribuīt.

Cf. 1 abdidērunt. — 2 commīsērunt. — 3 cēperat. — 4 sibi mortem
cōnsīvit. — 5 petitum. — 6 eandem. — 7 perquisītā. — 8 vāstātūrum.
— 9 prope. — 10 minueret.
Divides his Forces and Proceeds in Search of Ambiorix.

33. Partitō ¹ exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eās partis quae Menapiōs attingunt profiscīscī iūbet; C. Trebōnium cum pari ² legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Aduatucis adiacet dēpopulandam ³ mittit; ipse cum reliquis iii ad flūmen Scaldim, quod īnfluit in Mosam, extrēmāsque ⁴ Arduennae partīs īre cōnstituit, quō cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdens post diem vii sēsē reversūrum ⁵ cōnfirmat; quam ad diem ei legiōni quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur frūmentum dēbēri sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, si ¹⁰ reī publicae commodō facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur; ut, rūrsus communīcātō cōnsiliō explōrātīisque hostium rationibus, aliud initium bellī capere possint.

The Difficulties of the Situation Explained. Cæsar Seeks Alliance with Gallic Tribes against the Eburones.

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, non oppidum, nōn praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet, sed in omnis partis dispersa ⁷ multītūdō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs abdita ⁸ aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedīta sēm praesidiō aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat. Haec loca vicīnitātibus ⁹ erant nōta, māgnamque rēs diligentiam ¹⁰ requīrēbat, nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversis ā perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus cōnservandīs; quae tamen ¹¹ ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercītūs pertinebant. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvōcābat, et silvae incertīs occultīs itineribus confertōs adire prohibēbant. Si ²⁵ negotiōnem ¹² cōnfici stirpemque ¹³ hominum scelerātōrum interfīci vellet, dimittendae plūres manūs diducendiqūe ¹⁴ erant

The Gallic War.

militēs; si continēre ad signa manipulōs vellet, ut institūta ratiō et consuetūdō exercitus Rōmāni postulābat, locus ipse erat præsidiō barbaris, neque ex occultō insidiandi et dispersedō circumveniendi singulis deerat audācia. Ut in ēius 5 modi difficultātibus, quantum diligentīā prōvidērī poterat prōvidēbātur; ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterē-

tur, etsi omnium animī ad ulciscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō militum dētrimentō nocērētur. Dimittit ad fīnitīmās civitātis nūntiōs Caesar; omnis ēvocat spē praedae ad diripiendōs 2 Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vita quam legiōnārius miles periclitētur; simul ut māgnā multitūdine circumfūsā prō tāli facinore stirps ac nōmen civitātis tollātur. 3 Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Cf. 1 requīrēbat. — 2 dēpopulandōs. — 8 dēleātur.
35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēisque adpetēbat\(^1\) vii, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legiōnemque revertī cōstituerat. Hic quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs adferat cāsūs cōgnōsci potuit. Dissipātīs\(^2\) ac perterrītis hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo causam timōris adferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit\(^3\) fāma diripi Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnis ad praedam ēvocāri.\(^4\) Cōgunt equītum duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt proximi Rhēnō, a quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque xxx milibus pas-suum īnfrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus\(^5\) praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum. Primōs Eburōnum finis adeunt; multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt,\(^6\) māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitāti\(^7\) praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō latrōciniisque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur.\(^8\) Quibus in locīs sit Caesar ex captīvis quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvis: "Quid vōs," inquit, "hanc miseram ac tenuem sectāmini praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunātissimōs? Tribus hōris Aduatucam venire potestis; húc omnis suās fortūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit. Praesidī tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingi\(^10\) possit, neque quisquam ēgredi extra mūniōnēs audeat." Hāc oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī\(^11\) erant praedam in occultō relinquent; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cūius haec indiciō cōgnōverant.

Cf. \(^1\) accēdēbat. — \(^2\) disiectīs. — \(^3\) perfertur. — \(^4\) arcessī. — \(^5\) factus. — \(^6\) dēprehendunt. — \(^7\) inductī. — \(^8\) tardant. — \(^9\) rēs familiāris. — \(^10\) dē-fendī. — \(^11\) invēnerant.
Cicero Unwisely Sends Large Numbers out to Forage.

36. Cicero (qui omnis superiōrēs diēs praeceptis 1 Caesariis summā diligentiā militēs in castris continuisset, ac nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūniēionem ēgredi passus 2 esset) vii diē, diffidēns 3 dē numerō diērum Caesarem 5 fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum audiēbat neque ūlla dē rēditū ēius fāma 4 adferēbātur; simul eōrum permissus vōcibus 5 qui illius patientiam paene obsessiōnem 6 appellābant, si quidem ex castris ēgredi nōn licēret; nūllum ēius modē cāsum exspectāns quō, viii oppositi legiōnibus maximōque equitātū, dispersis ac paene dēlētis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset, — v cohortis ūnus omnino collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castris ex legiōnibus aegri relictī; ex quibus quī 8 hōc spatīō diērum con- 15 valuerant, circiter ccc, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur; māgna praeterea multitūdō cālōnum, māgna vis 9 iūmentōrum, quae in castris subsēderat, factā potestate sequitur.

The Germans Assault the Camp. Panic Within.

37. Hōc ipsō tempore 10 [et] cāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt, prōtinusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab de- 20 cumānā portā in castra inrumpere cōnantur; nec prius sunt visī, obiectīs ab ēa parte silvis, quam castris adpropinquarent, ūisque eō ut quī sub vāllō tenderent 11 mercātōrēs reci- piendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Inopīnantēs nostri rē novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in stati- 25 ōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur hostēs ex reliquis partibus, si quem aditum 12 reperire possint. Aegrē 13 portās nostri tuentur, 14 reliquis aditūs locus ipse per sē mūniēionēque dēfen- dit. Tōtīs trepidātūr castrīs atque aliō causam

tumultus quaerit; neque quò signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnuntiat; alius dēlētō exercitu atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērique novās sībi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt, Cottaeque et Titūri calamitātem, qui in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tāli timōre omnībus perterritīs cōnfīrmātur opinīō barbarīs, ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllem esse intus praesidium. Per-rumpere nituntur sēque ipsi adhortantur nē tantam fortŭnam ex manibus dīmittant.

P. Sextius Baculus again Distinguishes Himself.

38. Erat aēger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum apūd Caesarem dúxerat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proelīis fēcimus, ac diem iam quintum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffīsus suae atque omnīm salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdīt; videt imminēre hostīs atque in summō rem esse discrimine; capīt arma ā proximīs atque in portā cōnsistit: cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs ēius cohortis quae in statione erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustīnt. Relinquīt animus Sextium gravibus acceptīs vulne-ribus; aegrē per manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōnfīrmanūs tantum ut in mūnitiōnibus cōnsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebant.

The Foragers Return and Reach the Camp with Some Difficulty and Loss.

39. Interim cōnfectā frūmentātiōne militēs nostri clāmō-rem exaudīunt; praecurrunt equītēs; quantō rēs sit in periculō cōgnōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnitiō est quae perterritōs recipiat; modo cōnscripī atque ēūsīs militāris imperīti ad tribūnum militum centuriōnēsque ōra convertunt; quid ab his praecipiātur exspectant: nēmō est tam fortis quin rei

novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī signa procūl cōnspicāti oppug-
ṇātiōne désistunt:¹ redisse primō legiōnēs crēdunt quās
longius discessisse ex captīvis cōgnōverant; posteā dēspectā²
paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.
únum omnès in castra perveniunt. Hös subsecúti cälönès equitèsque eödem impetū militum virtùte servantur. At ei qui in iugō cönstiterant, nüllō etiam nunc úsù rei militāris perceptō, neque in eō quod probāverant cōnsiliō permanère, ut sē locō superiōre défenderent, neque eam quam prōfuisse aliis vim celeritātemque viderant, imitāri potuérunt; sed sē in castra recipere cōnāti iniquum in locum démiserunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nüllī ex inferiōribus órdinibus reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant órdinēs hūius legiōnis trāducti, nē ante partam rei militāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pügnantēs concidērunt. Militum pars, hōrum virtūte submotīs hostibus, praeter spem incolmis in castra pervēnīt; pars ā barbaris circumventa perīt.


42. Reversus ille, — ēventūs belli nōn ignōrāns, únnum quod cohortēs ex stātiōne et praesīdiō essent ēmissae questus, nē minimum quidem cásuī locum relinqui débuisse, — multum fortūnam in repentīnō hostium adventū potuisses iūdicāvit; multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō...
BOOK VII.

UPRISING OF GAUL UNDER VERCINGETORIX. B.C. 52.

General Movement among the Gauls for Independence.

QUIÉTÀ Gallià Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Ítaliam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P. Clōdi caede; dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus ut omnēs iūniōres Ítaliae coniurārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliām Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsi et adfingunt rūmōrībus Galli (quod rēs poscere vidēbātur) retinēri urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne qui iam ante sē populi Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent liberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliāe conciliis silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliāe fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiis déposcunt qui belli

The Carnutes Begin the Revolt. Rapid Spread of the News.

2. His rébus agitâtís 5 profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum periculum commūnis salútis causâ recúsâre, principēsque 6 ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanciātur 7 petunt, conlātīs militāribus signīs (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō belli ab reliquis déserantur. Tum 15 conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore ēius rei cōnstitūtō, ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cotuatō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, déspēratīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt, 8 civīisque Rōmānōs qui negociāndi causā ibi 20 cōnstitenter, in his C. Fūsium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, qui rei frumentāriāe iūessū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnis Galliae civitātis fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque industriō incidit 9 rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regionēsque signi- ficant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabi oriente 10 sōle gesta essent ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

Vercingetorix, Chief of the Arverni, Takes the Lead, and Induces Many Tribes to Join him. Severity of his Rule.

4. Similī ratioēne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summæ potentiæ\(^1\) adulēscēns, — cūius pater principātum tōtius Galliæ obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod rēgnum adpetēbat\(^2\) ā civitāte erat interfectus, — convocātīs suis 5 clientibus facile incendit.\(^3\) Čognītō ēius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibēitur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn existimābant; expellitur \(^4\) ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet délēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant; māgnīisque coāctīs cōplīs adversāriōs\(^5\) suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ējectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suis appellātur. Dimittit quōque versus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur\(^6\) ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnīs qui Ōceanum attingunt adiungit\(^7\); omnīm cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblatā\(^8\) potestāte omnibus his civitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūci iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domī, quodque ante tempus efficiat,\(^9\) cōnstituit; in prīmis equitātuī studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; māgnitūdine supplicī dubitantis cōgit\(^10\): nam māiōre commissō délīctō\(^11\) īgni atque omnibus tormentis necat; levīōre dē causā auribus désectis aut singulis effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documentō\(^12\) et māgnitūdine poer.:ae perterreant aliōs.

Cf. \(^1\) potestātis. — \(^2\) cupiēbat. — \(^3\) incitāvit. — \(^4\) ēcitur. — \(^5\) inimīcōs. — \(^6\) obsecrātur. — \(^7\) adsciscit. — \(^8\) trāditā. — \(^9\) paret. — \(^10\) perdūcit. — \(^11\) facinore. — \(^12\) exemplō.
He Goes among the Bituriges, Who Appeal to the Hæduis for Help. Being Refused, They Join him.

5. His suppliciis celeriter coactō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturigēs proficiscitur. Eius adventū Biturigēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fide) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haedui dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Haeduis dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausi, domum revertuntur, lēgātīisque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturigum perfidiam verītōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsili fuisse cōgnōverint ut, si flūmen trānsissent, ūnā ex parte ipsi, alterā Arverni sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quām lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt an perfidīa adducti fēcerint, quod nihil nōbis cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturigēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernis iungunt.

Caesar's Difficulty in Reaching his Army. He Proceeds to Narbo to Counteract the Plans of Lucterius.

6. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompeī commodīōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegēret, in Trānsalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte adficiēbatur, quā ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absentē in itinere proelīo dimicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eis quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.


Cæsar Crosses the Cevennes Mountains through the Snow. Vercingeritorix Goes to Protect the Arverni.

8. His rēbus comparâtis, repressō iam Lucterîo et remôtō, quod intrâre intrâ praesidîa periculôsum putábât, in Helviös proficîscitur. Etsi mōns Cevenna, qui Arvernös ab Helviis disclûdit, dûrissimō tempore anni altissimâ nive iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā nive in altûtûdinem pedum vi atque ita viis patefactis, summō militum labôre ad finis Arvernôrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressis inopînantibus, quod sē Cevennâ ut mûrō mûnitôs existimâtânt, ac nē singulâri quidem umquam homîni eō tempore anni sêmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lâtissimē possint va-gentur et quam maximum hostibus terrôrem inferant. Celeriter haec fâma ac nûntii ad Vercingenotorigem perfe-runtur; quem perterrîtī omnēs Arvernî circumsistunt atque obsercant ut suis fortûnīs cõnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus diripī patiâtur; praeserratim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trâns-lâtum. Quōrum ille precibus permôtus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernös versus.

Caesar Leaves Brutus in Command and Seeks Reënforcements. Vercingetorix Moves towards Gorgobina, a Town of the Boii.

9. At Caesar biduum in his locis morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorige ūsū ventūra opiniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī 1 equitātūsque cōgendī ab exerciṭū discēdit; Brútum adulēscentem his cōpiis praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnis partīs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur 2; datūrum 5 sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suis inopinantibus, quam maximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus 3 recentem equitātum, quam multis ante dīēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finis Haeduōrum in Lingō- 10 nēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant; ut, si quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur 4 cōnsili, celerītāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnīs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiāri posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā 5 Vercin- 15 getorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde prefectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proelī victōs 6 Caesar conlocāverat Haeduīisque attribuerat, 7 oppūgnāre instituit.

Caesar, though Much Perplexed, Determines to Relieve the Boii.

The Gallic War.

legionēs continēret, nē stipendiāriiś Haeduōrum expūgnātis cūnctā Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcis in eō praesidiōm posītum vidēret; si mātūriūs ex hibernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvectionibus labōrāret. Praestāre visum est tamen omnis difficūltātis perpetī quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātīs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportando commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortentūrque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdīncī legionibus atque impedimentīs tōtius exercītūs relictis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

Caesar Takes Two Towns near the Loire.

11. Alterō dīē cum ad oppidum Senonum, Vellaunodūnum, vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expeditiōre rē frūmentāriā āuterētur, oppūgnāre instituit, eōque biduō circumvāllāvit; tertiō dīē missis ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēdītiōne, arma cōnferri, iūmenta prōdūcī, sexcentōs obsidēs dari iubet. Ea qui cōnferet C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse ut quam prīnum īter cōnferet, Cēnabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui tum prīnum adlātō nūntiō dē oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longiōs eam rem ductum īri existimārent, praesidiōm Cēnābī tuendī causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant.

Hūc biduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positis, diēi tempore exclūsus in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt, quaeque ad eam rem īsui sint militibus imperat; et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs, paulō ante medium noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressi flūmen trānsire coepērunt. Quā rē per explō-
rātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditās esse iusserat, portīs incēnsis, intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur, perpaucīs ex hostiīm numerō désiderātīs quīn cūntī caperentur, quod pontīs atque itinerum angustiāe multitūdīnī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus dōnat; exercitum Līgerim trādūcit atque in Biturīgum finīs pervenit.

Noviodunum Surrenders, but the Inhabitants, Seeing Vercingetorix Approaching, Prepare for Defense.


Caesar Takes Noviodunum and Marches towards Avaricum.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iām suīs Germānōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum habēre insti-
tuerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinēre nōn potuērunt,

Cf. 1 exūstīs. — 2 impediērant. — 3 obsecrātum. — 4 parceret. — 5 cōn-
atque in fugam coniecti¹ multis amissis se ad agmen receperrunt; quibus prōfīgātis² rūrsus³ oppidāni perterriti comprehensōs eōs quōrum opera plēbem concitātam existimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque ei dēdidērunt. Quibus

5 rebus cōnfectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum mūnitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertilissimā regiōne, praefectus est; quod eō oppidō receptō⁴ civitātem Biturigum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfidēbat.

Ct¹ conversī.—² dépulsis.—³ iterum.—⁴ opp. amissō.
Vercingetorix Advises the Gauls to Lay Waste their Country, and thus Keep the Romans from Supplies.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuís incommodis Vellaunodunii, Cenabi, Noviodunii acceptis suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet 'longē alīa ratione esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit; omnibus modis huic reī studendum ut pābulatīōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur: id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundant et quod anni tempore subleventur; pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessāriō dispersōs hostis ex aedificiis petere; hōs omnis cotidīē ab equitibus delērī posse. Praetereā, salūtīs causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vicīs atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatiō [ā Boīā] quōque versus, quō pābulandi causā adire posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in finibus bellum gerātur eōrum opibus subleventur: Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō longius ā castris processūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedimentīs exuant, quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn possibilit. Praetereā, oppida incendi oportere quae nōn mūnitiōne et locī nātūrā ab omni sint periculō tūta; nē suīs sint ad dētrectandam militiam receptācula, neu Rōmānīs próposita ad cōpiam commētūs praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimāri dēbēre, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahi, ipsōs interfici; quae sit necessē accidere victis.'

They Burn Many Cities, but Spare Avaricum.

15. Omnium consēnsū hāc sententia probātā ūnō die amplius xx urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc idem fit in reliquis civitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia cons-


Although Suffering from Lack of Supplies, the Roman Soldiers Maintain a Resolute Spirit.

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidi positīs Caesar quae intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditus, ut suprā diximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre, vineās agere, turris duās cōnstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōīōs atque Haeduōs adhor-tāri nōn dēstitit: quōrum alteri, quod nullō studiō agēbant,

nōn multum adiuvābant; alteri nōn māgnis facultātibus, quod civitās erat exigua et infirma, celeriter quod habē-runt cōnsumpsērunt. Summā diffīcūtātē rei frūmentāriae adfectō exercitū, tenuitātē Bōiōrum, indigentīā Haeduo-rum, incendiās aedificiōrum, —ūsque eō ut complūris dīēs frūmentō militēs caruerint, et pecore ē longinquiōribus vicīs adactō extrēmam famem sustentārīnt, —nulla tamen vox est ab eīs audita populī Rōmānī māiestātē et superiō-ribus victōriīs indigna. Quīn etiam Cæsar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, si acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dimissūrum oppūgnātiōnem diceret, universī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: 'Sic sē complūris annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, numquam infectā re fūrunt — discēderent; hoc sē ignōminiae lātūrors locō, si inceptam oppūgnātiōnem reliquisserant: praestāre omnēs perferre acer-biātīs quam nōn civibus Rōmānis qui Cēnabi perfidiā Gallōrum interīssent parentārent. Haec eadem centuriōni-bus tribūnisque militum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Cæsarem déferrentur.

Cæsar Marches towards Vercingetorīx.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāssent, ex captīvis Cæsar cōgnōvit Vercingetorīgem cōnsumptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expeditīisque quē inter equitēs proeliāri cōnsuēssent, insidi- andī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrors arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnītī media nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnīt. Illī, celeriter per explōrātorēs adventū Cæsaris cōgnītō, carrōs impedimentaque sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās
omnis in locō ēditō\(^1\) atque aperto instruxérunt. Quā re nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōnferri, arma ex-
pedīri iussit.

\textbf{He Finds him too Strongly Intrenched to Warrant an Attack.}

\textbf{19.} Collis erat lēniter ab ĭnīmō acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus fērē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita cingē-
bat, nōn lātior pedibus \(L\). Hōc sē colle interruptīs\(^2\) ponti-

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{sibgaworks.png}
\caption{View of Siege Works.}
\end{figure}

bus Galli fidūciā locī continēbant, generātīmque distribūtī [in civitātīs] omnia vada [ac saltūs] ēius palūdis obtinēbant, sic animō parāti ut, si eam palūdem Rōmāni perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantīs\(^3\) premerent ex locō superiōre; ut, qui propinquitātem locī vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dimicandum existimāret; qui iniquitātem\(^4\) condicionis perspiceret, ināni simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indignantis militēs Caesar, quod cōnspexitum suum hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et signum proeli

\textit{Cf.} \(^1\) excelsō. \(^2\) rescissis. \(^3\) impeditōs. \(^4\) opp. aequitātem.
exposcentis,\textsuperscript{1} edocet quantō detrimentō\textsuperscript{2} et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam; quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude\textsuperscript{3} periculum recūsent, summæ sē iniquitātis condemnāri dēbēre, nisi eōrum vitam laude suā habeat\textsuperscript{4} cāriōrem. Sic militēs cōnsōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra; reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnēm oppidi pertinēbant administrāre\textsuperscript{5} instituit.

**Fig. 93. — Plan of Siege Works.**

Suspicions against Vercingetorix, Who Makes a Successful Defense and Appeal to his Countrymen.

20. Vercingetorix cum ad suōs redisset, prōditionīs insimulātus,\textsuperscript{6} — quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discississet, quod sine imperiō\textsuperscript{7} tantās copiās reliquisset, quod ēius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportūnitāte\textsuperscript{8} et celeritāte vēnissent; nōn haec omnia fortuitō\textsuperscript{9} aut

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} petentīs. — \textsuperscript{2} damno. — \textsuperscript{3} gloriā. — \textsuperscript{4} existimet. — \textsuperscript{5} comparāre. — \textsuperscript{6} accusātus. — \textsuperscript{7} imperātōre. — \textsuperscript{8} occasīōne. — \textsuperscript{9} forte, cāsū.
sine consiliō accidere potuisse; régnum illum Galliae māle Caesaris concessū₁ quam ipsōrum habère beneficiō, — tāli modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: 'Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopīā pābuli, etiam ipsīs hortantibus₂; quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum locī opportūnitāte, qui sē ipse sine mūniōne défenderet; equitum vērō operam₃ neque in locō palūstri dēsiderāri débuisse, et illic fuisse útilem quō sīnt profectī. Summam imperī sē cōnsultō nūlli discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitūdinis studiō ad dimican-dum impellerētur; cui rei propter animi mollitiem₄ studēre omnīs vidēret, quod diūtiūs labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī si cāsū₅ intervēnerint, fortūnae; sī alicīuius indicī vocāti, huic habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere₆ potue-rint, quī dimicāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōdictiōnem nūllum dēsiderāre,₇ quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omni-bus Gallis explōrāta: quīn etiam ipsis remittere, si sībī magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere vide-antur.' "Haec ut intellegātis," inquit, "ā mē sincerē prō-nūntiāri, audite Rōmānōs militēs." Prōdēcīt servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat,₈ et famē vinculisque excrucīaverat. Hi, iam ante ōdocti quae interrogaţi prōnūntiārent, militēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dicunt; famē et inopīā adductōs clam₉ ex castris exisse, si quid frūmenti aut pecoris in agris reperire posse; similī omnem exercitum inopīā premī, nec iam virīs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuisset imperatōrem, si nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidi prōfēcessent, triduo exercitum dédūcere. "Haec," inquit, "ā mē," [Vercingetorix] "beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis insimulātis; cūius operā sine vestrō san-

guine tantum exercitum victörem famë cônsümptum vidëtis; quem turbiter sē ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua civítās suis finibus recipiat, à mē próvisum ¹ est."

21. Conclāmat omnis multitudō et suō môre armis concrepat,—quod facere in eō cônsuérunt cūius óratiōnem adprobant: 'Summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne ² bellum administräri ³ posse.' Statuunt ut x milia hominum délēcta ex omnibus cōpiis in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlis Biturigibus commūnem salūtem committendam ⁴ cēnsent; quod paene ¹⁰ in eō, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victöriāe cōnstāre intellegēbat.

The Gauls Make a Most Skilful Defense against the Roman Works.

22. Singulāri ⁶ militum nostrōrum virtūti cônsilia cūiusque modi Gallōrum occurrēbant, ⁶ ut est summae genus sollertiae, atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae à quōque trā- ¹⁵ duntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcis āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant, ⁷ tormentis intrōrsus reducēbant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahēbant, ⁸ eō scientius quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae, atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque üsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī ²⁰ parte turribus contabulāverat atque hās coriis intēxerant. Tum crēbris diurnis nocturnisque erūptionibus aut aggeri ignmente in­ferēbant ⁹ aut militēs occupātōs in opere adoriē­ ²⁵ bantur; et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger expresserat, ¹¹ commissis suārum turrium mālis adaequābant; et apertōs cuniculōs praeūstā et praeacentūtā màteriā et pīce ferverfactā et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque ¹² adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

Description of a Gallic Wall.

23. Mūri autem omnēs Gallici hāc fērē formā sunt. Tra-bēs dirēctae, perpetuae\textsuperscript{1} in longitūdinem paribus intervāllis, distantēs inter se binōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur\textsuperscript{2}; ea autem quae diximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxis effarcientur.\textsuperscript{3} His conlocāritis et coagmentāritis\textsuperscript{4} alius insuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter se contingent trabēs, sed, paribus intermissis spatiis, singulae singulis saxis interiectis artē contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contextur dum iūsta mūri altitūdō expleātur. Hoc cum in speciem varietātemque opus déformē non est, alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rēctis lineis suōs ōrdinēs servant, tum ad utilitātem et défensionem urbium summam habet opportūnitātem; quod et ab incendió lapis et ab ariete māteria défendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrā-

\textsuperscript{1} Cf. opp. intermissae. \textsuperscript{2} integuntur. \textsuperscript{3} compleuntur. \textsuperscript{4} confīxis.
The Gauls Set Fire to the Roman Works and Make a Sortie.

24. His tot rēbus impeditā oppūgnātiōne militēs, cum tōtō tempore frigore et adsiduis imbris tardārentur, tamen continenti labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs lxxx extrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hor-tārētūr nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētūr, — paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre aggerem, quem cuniculō hostēs succederant; eōdemque tempore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fīēbat. Allī faciēs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ōminus iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque rēs quibus ignis excitāri petest fundēbant; ut, quō prīmum occurrerētūr aut cui reī ferrētūr auxilium, vix ratiō inīri posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant, plūrēsque partītis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut allī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, allī turris redūcerent aggerem-que interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum concurret.

Heroism of the Gauls.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōnsūmpṣa iam reliquā parte noctis, pūgnārētūr semperque hostibus spēs victōriāe redintegrārētūr, — eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant, nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant, — semperque ipsi recentēs défessīs succēderent,

The Gauls Prepare to Abandon the Town, but are Dissuaded by the Women.

26. Omnia experti Galli, quod 5 rés nulla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā 6 suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbunt, Rōmānōs ad Insequen-

B. G. VII. 28.] Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix. 205
dum tardābat. Iamque hoc facere noctū adparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque, prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum, omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnis liberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendum fugam nātūrēae et virīrum infirmitās impe-
diret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vidērunt, quod plē-
rumque in summō periculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterriti Gallī, nē ab equitūtū Rōmānōrum viae pra-
occupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstītērunt.

Storming of the Walls.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turri directisque oper-
ibus quae facere instituerat, māgnō coōrtō imbrī, nōn inūtilem
hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbitratūs, quod
paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs
quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit. Legiōnibusque [intrā vineās] in occultō expeditis,
cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantis labōribus fructum victo-
riae perciperent, eis qui primī mūrum adscendissent praemia
prōposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illī subitō ex omni-
bus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrūmque celeriter complēvērunt.

The Town is Taken, and Most of the Inhabitants are Butchered.

28. Hostēs ré nova perterriti, mūrō turribusque dēiecti,
in forō ac locis patentiōribus cuneātim cōnstitērunt, hoc
animō ut, si quā ex parte obviam venīrētur, aciē
instruētā dēpuignārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē
dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundi vidērunt, veriti nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ulti-
mās oppidi partis continentī impetū petivērunt; parsque

Cf. 1 morābātur. — 2 obsecravērunt. — 3 cōnsiliō. — 4 permanere.
— 5 opp. fortitudō. — 6 opp. reductā. — 7 opp. omittendum. — 8 prae-
mium. — 9 apertiōribus. — 10 cōnsiliō. — 11 dēscendere. — 12 opp. prox-
mās.
206

The Gallic War.

ibis, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, a militibus, pars iam egressa portis ab equitibus est interflecta; nec fuit quisquam qui praedae studēret. Sic et Cēnabēnsi caede et labōre operis incitāti non aetāte cōnfectis, non mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercėrunt. Dēnique ex omni numerō, qui fuit circiter milium XL, vix dccc, qui primō clamōre auditō sē ex oppidō ūiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorigem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multāiam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castris ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā volgī sēditiō orerētur, [ūt,] procul in viā dispositūs familiāribus suis principibusque civitātum, disparandō dēđucēndōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique civitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō obvēnerat.

Vercingetorix Appeals to the Gauls to Continue the War.

29. Posterō die conciliō convocātō cōnsōlātus cohōrtā-tusque est: 'Nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent, nēve perturbārentur incommōdō; nōn virtūte neque in aciē vicisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis, cuius rei fuerint ipsī imperītī; errāre, sī qui in bellō omnis secundōs rērum prōventūs exspectent; sībī numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendi, cuius reī testis ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprūdentīa Biturigum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum uti hōc incommōdum acciperētur; id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodis sānātūrum. Nam, quae ab reliquis Gallis civitātēs dissentiērent, hās suā diligentiā adiūnctūrum atque ūnum cōnsiliūm tōtius Galliae effectūrum, cuius cōnsēnsui nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Interea aequum esse ab eis commūnis salūtis causā impetrāri ut castra mūnire instituerent, quō facilius repentinōs hostium impe-tūs sustinēre possent.'

They are Inspired by his Appeal to Renewed Efforts.


He Leives New Troops.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorix animō labōrābat ut reliquiās civitātīs adiungeret, atque eārum prīn-cipēs dōnīs pollicitātiōnibusque adliciēbat.7 Huic rē iđō-neōs8 hominēs délīgēbat, quōrum quisque aut ērātiōne subdolā9 aut amīcitīā facillīmē capere posset. Qui Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestiendōsque cúrat. Simul, ut dēminūtæ10 cópiae redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitātibus, quem, et quam ante diem, in

Fig. 96. — Coin of the Bituriges.

The Gallic War.

Castra addiici velit; sagittāriōsque omnis, quorum erat permagnus in Galliā numerus, conquiri et ad sē mitti iubet. His rēbus celeriter id quod Avarici dēperierat explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis filius, rēx Nitiobrigum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus, cum māgnō numerō equītum suōrum et quōs ex Aquitāniā conduξerat ad eum pervēnit.

The Hsedui Appeal to Cæsar to Settle a Dispute.

32. Caesar Avarici complūris diēs commorātus summam-que ibi cópiam frūmenti et reliquī commeātūs nactus, exer- citum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cônfectā, — cum ipsō anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem profricisci cōnstituisset, sive eum ex palūdibus silvisque ēlicere sive obsiōne premere posset, — lēgāti ad eum principēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum ut maximē necessāriō tempore civitāti suōrum commodum sit; quod, cum singuli magistrātus antiquissimā familiā nātum, atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cōgnātiōnis, cūius frāter Valetiācūs proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Civitātem esse omnem in armis, divisum senātum, divisum populum, suās cūiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod si diūitus alātūr contra versius, fore uti pars cum parte civitātis cōnfligat; id nē accidat positum in eīus diligentia atque auctōritātē.

He Goes to them in Person and Decides the Case.

33. Caesar etsi a bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrimentō-sum esse existimābat, tamen nōn ignōrans quanta ex dissēn-siōnibus incommoda oriri consuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō civitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāset, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus sībi cōnfideret auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praevertendum existimāvit; et quod lēgibus Haeduōrum eis qui summum magistrātum obti-nērent excēdere ex finibus nōn licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse vidērētur, ipse in Haeduōs proficisci statuit, senātumque omnem et quos inter contrō-versia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis civitās eō convēnisset, docērēturque, paucīs clam convocātīs, aliō locō, aliō tempore atque oportuerit, frātrem a frātre renūntiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vivō utroque nōn sōlum magistrātūs creāri vetārent, sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, — Cotum imperium dépōnere coēgit; Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdōtēs mōre civitātīs intermissīs magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

Cæsar Sends Labienus Northward and himself Proceeds towards Gergovia.

34. Hoc dēcrētō interpositō, — cohortātus Haeduōs ut contrōversiārum ac dissēnsiōnis oblīviscerentur atque omni-bus ommissī 11 [his] rēbus huic bellō servīrent, eaque quae meruiissent praemia ab sē dēvictā Galliā exspectārent, equi-tātumque omnem et peditum milia decem sībi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frūmentāriae causā dispō-neret, 12 — exercitum in duās partis divisit: quattuor legiōnēs in Senōnēs Parīsiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās dedit; sex ipse

in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illi attribuīt, partem sībi reliquit. Quā rē cōgnītā Vercingetorix, omnibus interruptīs ēius flūminis pontibus, ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

He Succeeds in Crossing the Allier River.

35. Cum uterque utrimque exīsset exercitus, in cōnspectū fērēque ē regiōne castrīs castra pōnēbant. Dispositīs explōrātōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās trādūceret, erat in māgnīs Caesari difficultātibus rēs nē māiōrem aestātīs partem flūmine impedirētur; quod non fērē ante autumnum Elaver vadō trānsiri solet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestri locō castrīs postīs, ē regiōne unīus eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorīx rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restītit; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedīmentīs, ut cōnsuērat, misit, dis-trāctīs quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus legiōnum cōn-stāre vidērētur. His quam longissimē possent prōgressī iūssīs, cum iam ex diēi tempore coniectūram caperet in castra perventum, īsdem sublicis, quārum pars inferior integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlēctō, reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorīx rē cōgnītā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dimicāre cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus antecessit.

At Gergovia he Gains an Advantage of Position over Vercingetorīx.

36. Caesar ex eō locō quintīs castrīs Gergoviam per-vēnit, equestriqūe eō diē proelīō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnis aditūs difficīlis habēbat, dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē obsessione nōn

B. G. VII. 37.] Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix. 211

prius agendum cōnstituit quam rem frūmentāriam expedīset. ¹ At Vercingetorix castrīs prope oppidum in mortis mediocribus circum sē intervāllīs sēparātim singulā-rum civitātum cōpiās conlocāverat; atque omnibus ēius iugi collibus occupātīs quā dēspīci poterat, horribilem speciem praebēbat ²; principēisque ēarum civitātum, quōs sībi ad cōnsilium capiendum dēlégerat, primā lūce cotidiē ad sē convenire iubēbat, seu quid communicandum seu quid administrandum ³ vidērētur; neque ēllum ferē diem inter-mittēbat quīn equestri proelīō, interiectis sagittāriīs, quid in quōque esset animī ac virtūtīs suōrum perīclitārētur. Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsis rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnitus atque ex omni parte circumcisus, ⁴ quem si tenērent nostrī, et aquae māgnā parte et pābulātiōne liberā prohibi-tūrī hostis vidēbantur; sed is locus praesidiō ab ēis nōn īnfirmō ⁵ tenēbātur; tamen silentiō noctīs Ĉaesar ex castrīs ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīri posset, dēiectō praesidiō potitus locō, duās ībi legiōnēs conlocāvit ⁶ fossam-quē duplicem duodēnum pedum a maioribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxīt, ut tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū ⁷ etiam singulī comoerē possent.

Some of the Hāedui Organize a Revolt.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Haeduus, cui magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Ĉaesare dēmōn-strāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscenētibus conloquitur, quōrum erat prīnceps Litavicus atque ēius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī ⁸ adulēscenēs. Cum ēis praemium communica-t ⁹ hortāturque ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint: 'Ūnam esse Haeduōrum civi-tātem quae certīssimam Galliae victŏriam distīneat; ēius

auctoritāte reliquās continērī; quà traductā locum consīstendī Rōmānis in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōn nūllō sē Cae-
saris beneficiō adfectum, sīc tamen ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus commūni libertātī tribuere.

5 Cūr enim potius Haeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesa-

Litavicus at the Head of the Hāeduan Contingent Stops at Some Distance from Gergovia, and Incites his Troops to Abandon the Roman Cause.

15 38. Litavicus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circi-
ter xxx à Gergovia abesset, convocātīs subitō miliibus lacrimāns, Ὁ Quō proficiscimur, inquit, Ὁ militēs? Omnis nōster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; principēs cīvitātis, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, īnsimulāti prodictiōnis, ab Rō-

20 mānis indirectā causā interfecit sunt. Haec ab hīs cōgnōscite qui ex īpsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego, frātībus atque omni-
bus meis propinquōs interfecīs, dolōre prohibeō quae gesta sunt prōnūntiāre.” Prōdūcuntur eī quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīci vellet, atque eadem quae Litavicus prōnūntiāverat multītūdinī expōnunt: ‘Omnēs equītēs Haeduōrum interfec-
tōs, quod conlocūti cum Arvernis dicerentur; īpsōs sc inter multītūdinem militum occultāsse atque ex mediā caede effūgisē.’ Conclāmānt Hāedui et Litavicum obsecrant ut

Cf. 1 opp. maleficīo. — 2 opp. servitūtī. — 3 arbitrum. — 4 pollicē-
rentur. — 5 cōnsilium. — 6 cōnstitūtum est. — 7 flēns. — 8 accusātī. —
9 opp. dicta. — 10 opp. nōllet. — 11 abdidisse.
sibi cōnsulat. "Quasi vērō," inquit ille, "cōnsili sit rēs, ac nōn necesse sit nōbis Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere! An dubitāmus quin nefāriō faci-nore admissō Rōmāni iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, si quid in nōbis animī est, persequāmur eōrum mortem qui indignissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus!" Ostendit cīvis Rōmānōs qui ēius praesidi fidūciā ānā erant; continuō māgnum numerum frūmentī commeātūsque dīripit; ipsōs crūdēliter excruciatōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā civitāte Haeduōrum dīmittit; eōdem mendāciō dē caede equitum et principum permovet; hortātur ut simili ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās persequantur.

Eporedorix Conveys the News to Cæsar.

39. Eporedorix Haeduus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns et summæ domī potentiae, et ānā Viridomārus, pari aetāte et grātiā sed genere dispari, quem Cæsar ab Diviciācō sibi traditum ex humili locō ad summam dignitātem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convenerant nōminātim ab eo ēvocātī. His erat inter sē dē principātū contentīō; et in illā magistrā-tuum contrōversiā alter prō Convictolitave alter prō Cotō, summis opibus pūgnāverant. Ex eis Eporedorix cōgnitō Litavici cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Cæsarem défert; ōrat nē patiātur civitātem prāvis adulēscēntium cōnsiliōs ab amicitā populi Rōmānī dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, si sē tot hominum milia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salūtem neque propinquī neglegere neque civitās levi mōmentō aestimāre possit.

Cæsar Immediately Goes to the Hādui andSuppresses the Revolt.

40. Māgnā adfectus sollicitūdine ĕoc nūntiō Cæsar, quod semper Haeduōrum civitāti praecipuē indulserat,
nulla interposita dubitatio ne legiōnes expeditas quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris edūcit; nec fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod ēs posita in celeritate vidēbātur. C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castris praesidiō reliquit. Frātres Litavicī cum compre- hendi iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostis profūgisse. Adhortātus militēs nē necessāriō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus prōgressus mīlia passuum xxv, agmen Haeduōrum cōspicātur, immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit; interdicītque omnibus nē quemquam interficīant. Eporēdorīgem et Viridomarum, quōs illī interfectōs existinābant, inter equitēs versāri suōsque appellāre iubet. Hīs cōgnītis et Litavicī fraude perspectā, Haedui manūs tendere, et dēditionēm significāre, et prōiectīs ārmīs mortem dēprecāri incipient. Litavicīs cum suis clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā dēserēre patrōnōs, Gergoviām profugīt.

Hastens Back to Gergovia to Relieve Fabius.

41. Caesar nūntiis ad civitātem Haeduōrum missis qui suō beneficiō cōnservātōs docērent, quōs iūre belli interficere potuisset, tribusque hōris [nōctis] exercitū ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō fērē itinerē equitēs ā Fabiō missī quantō ēs in periculō fuerit expōnunt; summis cōplīs castra oppūgnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integri dēfessī succēderent nostrōsque adsiduō labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter māgnitūdinem castrōrum perpetuō esset isdem in vāllō permanendum; multitudine sagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōs volnerātōs; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ēsui fuissent tormenta; Fabium discēssū

eōrum, duābus relictis portis, obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllo addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum adparāre. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar summō studiō militum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

Further Plots among the Gauls.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haedui prīmis nūntiis ab Litavicō acceptīs nūllum sībi ad cōgnōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs irācundia et temeritās, quae maximē illī hominum generi est innāta, ut levem auditōnem habēant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum diripiunt, caedis faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātam Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem reverti pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum militum, iter ad legiōnēs facientem, fidē datā ex oppido Cabillōnō edūcunt; idem facere cōgunt eōs qui neōtiandi causā ibi cōnstiterant. Hōs continuō in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentīs exuunt; repūgnantis diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectīs māiōrem multitūdinem ad arma concitant.

The Haedui Seek Reconciliation with Cæsar, but do not Cease Plotting.

43. Interim nūntiō adlātō omnīs eōrum militēs in potestāte Caesaris tenēri, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil pūblicō factum cōnsiliō dēmonstrant; quaestīōnem dē bonīs direptīs dēcernunt; Litavici frātrumque bona pūlicant; lēgātōs ad Caesarem purgandi suī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contāmināti facinore et captī compendiō ex direptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipienda civitātīisque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant.
Quae tametsi Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mitissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: 'Nihil sē propter inscientiam levitā-temque volgi gravius dē civitāte iūdicāre, neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentiā dēminuere.' Ipse māiōrem Galliae

mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus civitātibus circumsisterē-tur, cōnsilia inibat quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre defectionīnis similisquē fugae vidērētur.

Cf. 1 lēnissimē.—2 quà ratiōne.
Caesar now Devotes himself to the Capture of Gergovia.

44. Haec cōgitanti accidere visa est facultās bene geren-
dae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendi
causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem qui ab hostibus tenēbā-
tur nūdātum hominibus, qui superiōribus diēbus vix prae
multitudine cerni poterat. Admirātus quae rer ex perfugis
causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotidiē numerus cōnfluēbat. Čōnstābat inter omnīs, quod iam īpse Caesar per explōrā-
tōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum esse ēius iugī prope aequum,
sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram par-
tem oppidi; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre, nec īam aliter
sentire, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātī, si alterum āmisī-
sent, quin paene circumvāllātī atque omni exitū et pābulā-
tione interclūsi vidērentur; ad hunc mūniendum omnīs ā
Vercingetorīge ēvocātōs.

He Skilfully Arranges his Troops.

45. Hac rē cōgnītā Caesar mittit complūris equitum tur-
mās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut pāulō tumultuosius
omnīs locīs pervagentur. Primā lūce māgnum numerum
impedimentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōduci dēque his
strāmenta dētrahi mūliōnēsume cum cāsidibus, equītum
speciē ac simulātiōne, collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs pa-
cōs addit equītēs qui lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur.
Longō circuitū easdem omnīs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec
procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus
in castra; neque tantō spatīō, certī quid esset, explōrāri
poterat. Legiōnem x eōdem lūce mittit et paulum prōgres-
sam inferiōre cōnstituit locō silvisque occultat. Augētur
Galliō suspiciō atque omnēs illō ad munitionem cōpiāe trādū-

Cf. 1 vacuum. — 2 concurrebat. — 3 reppererat. — 4 summum iugum.
— 5 opp. lātum. — 6 circumdati. — 7 opp. indui. — 8 speciēi. — 9 conspi-
The Gallic War.

He Makes a Sudden Attack and Captures the Enemy's Camp.

46. Mūrus oppidi ā plānitīē atque initīō ascēnsūs réctā regiōne, si nūllus ānfrāctus intercēderet, mCC passūs aberat; quicquid húc circuitūs ad moliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō fērē colle in longitudinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxis vi pedum mūrum qui nostrōrum temptūm tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, inferiorōrem omnī spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis ūsque ad mūrum oppidi dēnsīssimīs castrīs complēverant. Mīlitēs datō signō celerēt ad mūnitōnem pervenīunt eamque trāngressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur. Ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celerītās ut Teutomatus, réx Nitio-brigum, subītō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut meridiē conquiēverat, superiōre parte corporis nūdā, volnerātō equō vix sē ex manibus praedantīum mīlitum ēripērēt.

The Troops are Eager to Assault the Town.

47. Cōnsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar receptūi canī iussit, legiōnisque x, quācum erat, contiōnātus, signa cōnstituit. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlitēs nōn auditō
The Gauls are Reënforced.

48. Interim ei quī ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra\(^1\) démonstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā convēnerant, primō exau-
ditō clāmōre, índē etiam crēbris nūntiis incitāti oppidum ab 
Rōmānis tenērī, praemissis equitibus \(^3\) māgnō cursū eō con-
tendērunt. Eōrum ut quīsequi primus vēnerat, sub mūrō 
cōnsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium numerum augēbat. Quō-
rum cum māgna multitūdō\(^6\) convēnisset, mātrēs familiae, 
quaē paulō ante Rōmānis dé mūrō mānūs tendēbant,\(^2\) suōs 
obtestāri et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre liberōs-

Cf. \(^1\) mandātum. — \(^2\) opp. adversis. — \(^3\) difficile. — \(^4\) adipisci. — \(^5\) sub-
iērunt, w. acc. — \(^6\) opp. extrā. — \(^7\) apertō. — \(^8\) dēdēbant. — \(^9\) sublātus. — 
\(^10\) opp. infrā. — \(^11\) summa celeritāte. — \(^12\) numerus. — \(^13\) pandēbant.
que in conspectum proferre coepérunt. Erat Rōmānis nec locō nec numerō aqua\(^1\) contentió; simul et cursū et spatiō\(^2\) pūgnae défatigātī nōn facile recentīs atque integrōs sustinē-bant.

Close and Doubtful Struggle. Gallant Exploit of Petronius.

5 49. Caesar cum iniquō\(^3\) locō pūgnāri hostiumque cōpiās augēri vidēret, prāemetuēns suis ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castris praesidiō reliquerat, mīsit ut cohortis ex castris celeriter\(^4\) éducet et sub īnfimō\(^5\) colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret; ut, si nostrōs locō dépulsōs\(^6\) vidisset, quō minus liberē hostēs insequerentur terrēret. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne progressus ubi cōnsi-

10 terat, ēventum pūgnae exspectābat.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus\(^7\) pūgnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostri virtūte confiderent, subitō sunt Haedui visi ab latere nostrōs apertō,\(^8\) quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā miserat. Hi similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt; ac, tametsi dextrīs umeris exsertīs\(^9\) animadvertēbantur, quod insigne pāctum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendi causā militēs ab hostibus factum existimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quique ūnā mūrōm ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur.\(^10\) M. Petrōnius, ēiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excidere\(^11\) cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus ac sībi dēspērāns, multitās iam volneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs qui illum secūti erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "mē ūnā vōbis cum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam, quōs cupidi-

15 tātē\(^12\) glōriae adductus in periculum dēdūxī. Vōs data facultātē\(^13\) vōbis cōnsulite." Simul in mediōs hostīs inrūpīt

Cf. \(^1\) pār, opp. dispār. — \(^2\) diūturnitātē. — \(^3\) aliēnō. — \(^4\) opp. tardē. — \(^5\) opp. summō. — \(^6\) eiectōs. — \(^7\) opp. ēminus. — \(^8\) nūdō. — \(^9\) nūdīs. — \(^10\) dēiciēbantur. — \(^11\) rescindēre. — \(^12\) studiō. — \(^13\) occāsiōne.

The Romans are Driven Back.


Caesar Reproves his Soldiers for too Great Eagerness, but Praises their Courage.

52. Posterō diē Caesar contiōne advocātā temeritātem 8 cupiditātemque militum reprehendit, 9 quod sībi ipsī iūdicā- vissent quō prōcéndendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque signō recipiēndi datō cōnstitissent neque ā tribūnīs militum 20 légātisque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid iniquitās loci posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitū déprehēnsis hostibus explōrātam 10 victōriam dimisisset, nē parvum modo dētrimentum in contentiōne propter iniquitātem loci accideret. Quantō opere eōrum 25 animi māgnitudinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum muni- tionēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidi tardāre potuis-

set, tantō opere licentiam¹ adrogantiamque² reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentire existimāre; nec minus sē a milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque³ animi māgnitūdinem désiderāre.

After Some Skirmishing, Cæsar Moves towards the Hædui.

53. Hāc habitā contiōne et ad extrēmam⁴ orātiōnem cōnfirmātis militibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur, neu, quod iniquitās loci attulisset, id virtūtī⁵ hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castris ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestri proeliī atque eō secundō, in castra exercītum redūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō dīē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem⁶ minuendam militumque animōs cōnfirmandōs factum existimāns, in Hāeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem insecūtis hostibus, tertiō dīē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontis refēcit atque exercītum trādūxit.

He is Confirmed in his Suspicion that the Hædui Mean to Revolt, but Tries to Dissuade them.

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorīge Hāeduōs appellātus, discit cum omni equitātū Litavicum ad sollicitandōs Hāeduōs prefectum; opus⁷ esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōnfirmandum civitātem. Etsi multis iam rēbus perfidiam Hāeduōrum perspectam habēbat, atque hōrum discessū māturāri⁸ dēfectiōnem⁹ civitātis existimābat; tamen eōs retenendōs¹⁰ nōn cēnsuit, nē aut īnferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciōnem. Discēdentibus eis breviter sua in Hāeduōs merita exposuit; quōs et quam

humilis¹ accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs² agrīs, omnibus ēreptīs cōpiās, impositō stipendiō, obsidibus summā cum contumēliā extortīs; et quam in fortūnam quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in pristīnum³ statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitātem et grātiam ⁵ antecessisse⁴ vidērentur. His datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē dimisit.

Eporedorix and Viridomarus Kill the Roman Garrison at Noviodunum, Seize and Destroy Cæsar’s Stores, and Burn the Town.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad ripās Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Cæsar omnīs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniām pūblicam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedimentōrum māgnam partem contulerat; hūc māgnum numerum equōrum, hūius bellī causā in Ītaliā atque Hispanicā coēptum, mīserat. Eō cum Eporēdorīx Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē statū civitātīs cōgnōvissent, Lītavicum Bibracte ab Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum ¹° apud eōs maxīmae auctōritātīs, Convictolitavīm magistrātum māgnamque partem senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorigem dē pāce et amīcitiā conciliāndā pūblicē missōs; nōn praetermittendum⁵ tantum commodum⁶ existimāvērunt. Itaque interfecīs Noviodūnī custōdībus⁷ quīque ²° eō negotiandi causā convēnerant, pecūniām atque equōs inter sē⁸ partītī sunt; obsidēs civitātīs Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī⁹ nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsui Rōmānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvexērunt, ²⁵ reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex finiti- mis regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere,¹⁰ praesidia custōdiāsque ad ripās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locīs inclināvērunt.

endī timōris causā ostentāre coepercunt; si ab rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs exclūdere [aut adductōs iniōpiā in prōvinciam expellere] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trānsirī vidērētur.

Cæsar Makes a Successful Crossing to the North Side of the Loire.

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Cæsar mātūrandum sibi cēnsuit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae dīmicāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō īter in prōvinciam converteret, ut nōn nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciundum existimābat, cum infāmia atque indiginitās reī et oppositus mōns Cevenna viārumque difficūltās impediēbat; tum maximē quod abiūncē Labiēnō atque eis legiōnibus quās ūnā miserat vehementer timēbat.' Itaque admodum māgnīs diūnīs nocturnīs itineribus cōnfectīs, contra omnīm opiniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit; vadōque per equītēs inventō prō rei necessitāte opportūnō, ut bracchia modo atque umerī ad sustīnendar ārma liberābābā, cum quattuor legiōnibus infectīs, atque hostibus prīmō adspectū perturbātīs, incolūmēm exercitūm trādīxīt; frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus, replētō hīs rēbus exercitū ā iter in Senōnēs facere instituīt.

Labiēnus Marches towards Lutetia. Camulogenus Opposes īm.

57. Dum haec apud Cæsarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmentō quod nūper ex Ītalīā vēnerat relictō Agēdīncī, ut esset impedimentīs praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiōrūm positum in insulā flūminus Sēquanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus

cōgnitō māgnae ex finitimis civitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperi trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, qui prope cōnfectus¹ aetāte tamen propter singulārem scientiam rei mili-

tāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus.² Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem, quae influeret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum māgnopere impediret, hic cōnsēdit nōstrōsque trānsitū prohibēre instituit.

Cf.¹ cōnsūmpτus. —² sublāτus.
Labienus Falls back to Metiosedum, Which he Captures. The Enemy
Follow him.

58. Labiēnus primō vineās agere, crātibus atque aggere
palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam
id difficilius fieri animadvertit, silentiō ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā
ēgressus, eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit.

5 Id est oppidum Senonum in īnsulā Sēquanae positum, ut
paulō ante dē Lutetiā diximus. Dēprehēnsis nāvibus cīr-
citer ē celeriterque coniunctīs atque eō militibus impositīs
et reī novitāte perterritī oppidānīs, quōrum māgna pars
erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potitur.

10 Refectō ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant,
exercītum trādūcīt et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter
facere coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnītā ab eis qui ē Metiosēdō
profugerant, Lutetiam incendiā; ipsī profectī ā pulāde in ripā Sēquanae ē
15 regiōne Lutetiae contra Labiēnī castra cōnsidunt.

Labienus Learns of Cæsar’s Repulse at Gergovia and of the Spread of
the Gallic Revolt.

59. Iam Cæsar ā Gergoviā discississe audiēbātur; iam
dē Haeduōrum dēfeciōne et secundō Galliāe mōtū rūmōrēs
adserēbantur; Gallīque in conloquiīs interclūsum itinere et
Ligerī Cæsarem, inopīa frūmentī coāctum, in prōvinciam
contendisse cōnfirmābant. Bellovaci autem dēfeciōne
Haeduōrum cōgnītā, qui iam ante erant per sē inīdēlēs,
manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum
Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiēndum
cōnsilium atque anteā sēnserat intellegēbat; neque
iam ut alicquid acquireret proeliōque hostīs lacesseret, sed
ut incolūmem exercītum Agēdincum redūceret cōgitābat.

Cf. 1 efficere. — 2 captīs. — 8 iniectīs. — 4 perturbātīs. — 5 opp. re-
scissō. — 6 opp. adversō. — 7 succendi. — 8 exclūdō, with ab and the abl.
Namque altera ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabat; alteram Camulogenus parato atque instructo exercitu tenebat; tum legiōnēs a praesidiō atque impedimentīs interclūsās maximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantis subito diffīcultātibus objectīs ab animī virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

Successful Stratagem of Labienus.

60. Itaque sub vesperum cōnsiliō convocātō, cohortātus ut ea quae imperāsset diligenter industriēque administrarent, nāvis quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus Rōmānis attribuīt; et primā cōnfectā vigiliā IIII mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentīō prōgressī ibique sē exspectāre iubēbat. V cohortīs quās minimē firmās ad dimicandum esse existimābat castrīs praesidiō relinqui; v ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedimentīs adversō flūmine māgnō tumultū proficiscī imperat. Conquirit etiam lintrīs; hās māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentīō egressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvis adpelli iussērat.

The Enemy Divide their Forces, as Labienus Desired.

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explorātorēs hostium, ut omni flūminis parte erant dispositi, inopīnantēs, quod māgnā subito erat coērta tempestās, ā nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitātusque, equitibus Rōmānis administrantibus quōs ei negotiō praefecerat, celeriter trānsmittitur. Únō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostībus nūntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter consuētūdinem tumultuāri, et māgnum īre agmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudiri, et paulō infrā militēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus

rēbus auditis, quod existimābant tribus locis trānsīre legiōnēs, [atque omnis perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre], suās quoque cópiās in trēs partis distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō 1 ē regiōne castrōrum relictō, et parvā manū
Metiosēdum versus missā quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cópiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

Labienus, having Attacked and Routed the Gauls, Joins Cæsar.

62. Prīmā lūce et nostri omnēs erant trānsportāti et hos-
tium acīs cernēbātur. 2 Labiēnus, militēs cohortātus ut suae pristinae virtūtīs et tot secundissimōrum proelīōrum retīnērent memoriam, atque ipsum Cæsarem, 3 cūius ductū saepe numerō hostīs superāssent, praeentem adesse existi-
mārent, dī signum proelī. Primō concursū 4 ab dextrō
cornū, ubi septima legiō cōnstiterat, hostēs pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur 5; ab sinistrō, quem locum xii legiō
tenēbat, cum prīmi ordinēs hostium trānsfixī pilīs concidie-
sent, tamen ācerrīmē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspiciō-
nem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis
aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At incertō 6 etiam nunc exitū victōriāe, cum vii legiōnis tribūnis esset nūntiātum quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiō-
nem ostendērunt 7 signaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem
temore quisquam 8 locō cessit, sed circumventi omnēs inter-
fectīque sunt. Eandem fortūnam 9 tulit Camulogenus. At eī qui in praesidiō 10 contrā castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidiō suiē ērunt collem-
que cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum militum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixti,
quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitātū sunt inter-

Cf. 1 adversus, w. acc. — 2 perspiciēbātur. — 8 quō duce. — 4 im-
petū. — 6 dantur. — opp. explōrātō. — 7 īmpetum fēcērunt. — 8 pedem
retulit, sē recēpit. — 9 cāsum. — ē regiōne castrōrum.
feci. Hoc negotio cōnfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agēdin-
cum, ubi impedimenta tōtius exercitūs relictā erant. Inde
cum omnibus cōpiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

Further Spread of the Revolt. Vercingetorix Appointed Commander-
in-chief by a General Vote. The Hædui Dissatisfied.

63. Defectione Haeduorum cōgnitā bellum augētur. Lē-
gātiōnēs in omnīs partīs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, 5
auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās civitātīs nītuntur.
Nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum sup-
pliciō dubitantīs terrītant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī 
ut ad sē veniāt rationēsque bellī gerundī commūnicet. Rē 
impetrātā 4 contendunt 5 ut ipsis summa imperi trādātur; et 10 
rē in contrōversiām dēductā, tōtius Galliāe conciliā Bibracte 
indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. 6 Multitudinis 
suffrāgiis rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem 
probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingones, 
Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequē-
bantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premē-
bantur, quae fuit causa quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutris 
auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs 
principātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesarīs 
in sē indulgentiam requīrunt 7; neque tamen susceptō bellō 20 
suum cōnsilium ab reliquis sēparārē 8 audent. Inviti sum-
mae spei adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercinge-
torīgī pārent.

Vercingetorīx Lays Extensive Plans to Extend the Revolt and Weaken 
the Romans.

64. Ipse imperat reliquis civitātibus obsidēs; dēnique ei 
rei cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnīs equīōs, xv milia numerō, 25 
celeriter convenīre iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē 
fore contentum dicit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut acī
The Gallic War.

Caesar Sends to Germany for Cavalry.

65. Ad hōs omnīs cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vigintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvincia ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnis partis oppōnēbantur. Helvīi suā sponte cum finitimis proeliō congressi pelluntur, et C. Valerio Donnotaurō, Cabūri filiō, principe civitātis, complūribusque aliis interfēctis, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidīis māgnā cum cūrā et diligentia suōs finēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostis equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūlā re ex prōvincia atque Ītālia sublevāri poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās civitātēs quās suēriōrēs annīs pācāverat; equitēsaque ab his arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, qui inter eōs proeliāri cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneis equis
Fig. 100. — Defeat of Vercingetorix at the Vingeanne.

A. Cæsar's camp the day before the battle.
B. The three camps of Vercingetorix.
C. Roman column of march at the time the attack was made.
D. Gallic lines of infantry.
E. Cæsar's camp the night after the battle.
   a. Roman cavalry.
   b. German cavalry.
   c. Gallic cavalry.
útbantur, á tribúniis militum reliquisque [sed et] equitibus Rómānīs atque évocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

Vercingetorix Addresses a Council of Cavalry Officers, Urging an Attack upon the Romans. They Eagerly Assent.

66. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs, equitāsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finis iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium provinciae ferrer posset, circiter milia passuum x ab Rómānīs trīnis castrīs Vercingetorīx cónsēdit; convocātīisque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equītum vēnissem tempus victōriāe dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praeuentum obtinendum libertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporīs pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; māioribus enim coāctīs cōpiis reversūrōs neque ēnim bellandi factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impeditōs adoriantur. Si peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eo morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōndidat, relīctīs impedimentīs suae salūtī consulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dīgnitāte spoliātum irī. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quàm nēmō eōrum prōgregī modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō maiōre faciunt animō, cōpiās sē omnīs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōri hostibus futūrum.' Conclāmant equitēs: 'Sāncitissimō iūre iūrāndō cōnfīrmāri oportere nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequītārit.'

The Attack is Made, and the Gauls are Defeated with Considerable Loss.

67. Probātā ré atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partīs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs

ab duobus lateribus ostendunt, una a primo agmine iter impedire coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar suum quoque equitatum tripartito divisum contra hostem ire iubet. Pugnatur una omnibus in partibus. Consistit agmen; impedimenta intrà legiônès recipiuntur. Si qua in parte nostri labörae aut gravius premi vidëbantur, eò signa inferri Caesar aciemque còverti iuëbat; quae res et hostis ad insequendum tardabat et noströs spë auxili confirmabat. Tandem Germàni ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostis locō dépellunt: fugientis usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus cópiis cònsèderat, persequentur complūrisque interficiunt. Qua re animadversa reliqui, né circumvenirentur veritë, së fugae mandant. Omnibus locís fit caedes. Très nöbilissimi Haedui captī ad Caesarem pertūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui contròversiam cum Convictolitavi proximis comitii habuerat; et Cavarillus, qui post défectiônem Litavici pedestribus cópiis praefuerat; et Eporedorix, quò duce ante adventum Caesaris Haedui cum Séquanis bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix Retires to Alesia, Which Caesar Determines to Invest.

68. Fugató omni equitātū Vercingetorix cópiàs suàs, ut prò castris conlocăverat, redúxit pròtínusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiiòrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedimenta ex castris édūcī et së subsequi iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximō collem ductīs, duàbus legiônibus praesidiô relictis, secútus hostis quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter ii milibus ex novissimò agmine interfectis, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fécit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterrítisque hostibus, quod equitātū (quà maximë parte exercitus cònfidébant) erant pulsi, adhortātus ad labörem militēs Alesiam circumvallāre instituit.

Description of Alesia and its Defenses.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō 1 admodum editō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnāri nōn posse vidēretur. Cūius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter milia passuum III in longitudīnem patēbat 2; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediōcri interiectō spatīō, parī altitūdinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam 3 in altitūdinem vi pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnitionēs quae ab Rōmānis instituēbātur 10 circuitūs XI milia passuum tenēbat. 4 Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū 5 stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō 6 fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus 7 ac firmīs praesidīis tenēbantur.

A Cavalry Battle in the Plain. The Gauls Defeated with Great Slaughter.


minus qui intrā mūnitionēs erant Gallī perturbantur; veniri
ad sē cōnfestim¹ existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn
nullī perterriti in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet
portās claudi,² nē castra nūdentur. Multis interfectis, com-
pluribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix Sends Away his Cavalry and Calls for Help from
Without.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitionēs ab Rōmānīs
perficiantur, cōnsilium capit³ omnem ab sē equitātum noctū
dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quīsque eōrum
civitātem adeat omnīisque qui per aetātem arma ferre possint
ad bellum cōgant.⁴ Sua in illōs merita⁵ prōpōnīt, obtes-
tāturque ut suae salūtis rationem habeant, neu sē optimē dē
commūnī libertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant.
Quod si indiligentiōrēs⁶ fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta
lxxx ūnā secum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne inītā fru-
mentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam
longius tolerāre⁷ posse parcendō. Ḥis dātīs mandātīs, quā
nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum
dimittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poe-
nam eīs qui nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecūs, cūius māgna
erat cōpia ā Mandubiis compulsa, virītim distribuīt; frū-
mentum parcē et paulātīm mētīri ĭnstituit; cōpiās omnis
quaś prō oppidō conlocāverat⁸ in oppidum recipit. Ḥis
ratiōnibus⁹ auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre
parat.

Description of Cæsar’s Works of Circumvallation.

72. Quibus rebus cōgnitis ex perfugīs et captīvīs Cæsar
haec genera mūnitionīs ĭnstituit: fossam pedum vigintī
dirēctīs¹⁰ lateribus dūxit, ut ēīs fossae solum tantundem

Cf.¹ prōtīnus. —² opp. aperīrī. —³ init. —⁴ conquīrant. —⁵ officia.
—⁶ neglegentiōrēs. —⁷ sustīnērī. —⁸ cōnstituerat. —⁹ modīs. —¹⁰ di-
rēctē ad perpendiculum.
patēret quantum summa labra distārent. Reliquās omnīs mūnitionēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit: [id] hoc cōn-
siliō (quia tanta res necessariō spatiō complexus, nec facile tōtum opus cōrōnā militum cingerētur), nē dē
imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitionēs multitūdō hostium advo-
lāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operi dēstinātōs conicere
possent. Hōc intermissō spatīo duās fossās xv pedēs lātās,
eādem altitūdīne perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestrībus
ac dēmissis locīs aquā ex flūmine dērivātā complēvit.
Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum extrūxit: huic lōricam
pinnāsque adīcēcit, grandibus cervīs éminentibus ad
commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggerīs, quī ascēnsum hostium
tardārent; et turrīs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX
inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriāri et frūmentāri et tan-
tās mūnitionēs fieri necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae
longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera
nostra Gallī temptārē atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus
portīs summā vi facere cōnābantur. Quā rē ad haec rūrsus
opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum mūnitionēs
dēfendī possent. Itaque trunci arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmis abscessī, atque hōrōm dēlibrātīs ac
praecātūs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae
ducēbantur. Hūc illī stipités dēmissī et ab īnfimō revinctī,
nē revelli possent, ab rāmis ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdi-
nēs coniūncī inter sē atque implicātī; quō qui intrāverant,
sē īpsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellā-
bant. Ante hōs obliquīs ōrdīnibus in quincüncem dispo-
sītīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātīm
angustiōre ad īnfīnum fastigīō. Hūc teretēs stipités femi-
nīs crassitūdīne ab summō praecātū et praewīstī dēmittēban-

Cf. 1 in opere occupātōs. — 2 humilībus. — 3 dēductā. — 4 impedi-
rent. — 6 opp. propius. — 6 adorīri. — 7 exūtīs. — 8 īfīxi. — 9 extā-
tur, ita ut nōn amplius digitis III ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfirmandi et stabilīendi causā singulī ab īnfīmō solō pedēs terrā excultābantur; reliqua pars scrōbis ad occultāndās insidias vīminibus ac virgultīs integebātur. 5 Hūius generis octōnī ordinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris lilium appellant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreis hāmis īnfixīs tōtae in terram infodiēbantur, mediocrībusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs dissipābantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant. 10 74. His rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, xiv milīa passuum complexus paris ēiusdem generis mūniōnēs, diversās ab hīs, contrā exterīōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitūdine [si ita accidat ēius discessū], mūniōnum praesidia circum-
15 fundī possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castrīs ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnīs convectum iūbet.

Levy of Troops from All Gaul for the Relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipīm indictō nōn omnis qui arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitātī imperandum; nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderāri nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habere possent. Imperant Haeduis atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis, Brannovicibus, [Blanno-
25 viis.] milīa xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūncīs Eleutetis, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāviis, qui sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonībus, Biturigibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutībus duodēna milīa; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovicibus; octōna Pictonībus et Turonīs

Fig. 103.—View of Cæsar’s Line of Works before Alesia.

a, vallum; b, cervi; c, fossa; d, fossa cum aqua; e, cippi; f, lilia; g, stimuli; h, pinnae; i, turres; k, lorica.
et Parisiis et Helvētiis; sēna Andibus, Ambiānis, Mediomatričis, Petrocoriis, Nerviis, Morinēs, Nitiobrigibus; quinā milia Aulerēs Cēnomānis; totidem Atrebātibus; iii Veliocassī; [Lexoviis, et] Aulerēs Eburowicibus iii; Rauracēs et Bōis bīna; x universīs civitātibus quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantūr, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolites, Redones, Ambibariī, Caletes, Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venelli. Ex his Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contuierunt, quod sé suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent, neque cūiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs¹; rogāti tamen ā Commīō prō ēius hospitiō duo milia mīsērunt.

The Gauls under Commius Approach Alesia with High Hopes.

76. Hūius opera Commī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēli atque utili superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britannīā Caesar; prō quibus meritī cīvitātem ēius immūnem² esse iussērat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morīnōs attribuerat. Tānta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō³ fuit libertātīs vindicandae et prīstīnae bellī laudīs⁴ recuperandae ut neque beneficīs neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.⁵ Coāctīs equītum milibus viii et peditum circiter ccl, haec in Haeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibātur, praefectī⁶ cōnstituēbantur; Commīō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōsobrinō Vercingetōrigīs, summa imperī trādītur. Hīs dēlēctī ex civitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōnsilīo bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficiscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam qui adspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti proelīō, cum ex oppidō éruptīōne pūgnārētur, foris tantae 30 cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernērunt.

A Council is Held in Alesia. Speech of Critognatus and his Desperate Proposal.

77. At ei qui Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, consūmpto omni frūmentō, insciī1 quid in Haeduīs generētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs2 dictis senten- tiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent,3 ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, non praetereunda4 orātiō Critōgnāti vidētur propter ēius singulārem ac nefāriam crūdēlitātem.5

Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus6 locō et māgnae habitus auctōritātīs: "Nihil," inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum qui turpissimam servītūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civīum locō neque ad conciliō adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum ēs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsensū pristīnae residēre7 virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animi est ista mollitia, non virtūs, paulisper inopiam8 ferre9 non posse. Quī sē ultrō morti offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiām probārem (tantum apud me dignitās potest), si nūlīm praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūram fieri vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capi- endō omnem Galliām respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxiliōm concitāvimus.10 Quid, hominum milibus lxxx ūnō locō interfectis, propinquīs cōnsanguineīisque nostrīs animī fore ēxistimātīs, si paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre qui vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxerunt; nec stultītiā ac temeritāte12 vestrā, aut animī imbacillitātē, omnēm Galliām prōsternere et perpetuae servītūti subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnerunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque13 dubitātīs?

Quid ergô? Rômânōs in illis ulteriōribus munitionibus animine causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Si illorum nūntiis confirmāri non potestis omni aditū praeseptō, his útimīnī testibus adpropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius rei timōre exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur.

“Quid ergō mei cōnsili est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam pari bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac simili inopīa subācti, eōrum corporibus qui aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vitam tolerāvērunt, neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūius rei si exemplum nōn habēremus, tamen libertātis causā institūi et posteris pródi pulcherrimam iūdicērem. Nam quid illi simile bellō fuit? Dépopulāta Galliā Cimbri, māgnāque inlātā calamitāte, finibus quidem nostrīs aliōquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, légēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbis reliquērunt. Rômāni vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilis potentiisque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs civitātibusque cōnsiderēre atque his aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condi- cione bella gessērunt. Quod si ea quae in longinquis nātiō- nibus geruntur ignōratīs, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et légibus commūtātis, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte!”

The Mandubii are Compelled to Leave the Town. Cæsar Declines to Receive them.

78. Sententiis dictīs cōnstituent ut ei quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critōgnātī sententiam descendent: illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, si rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condicionem. Mandubii, qui eōs oppidō recēperant,

cum liberis atque uxoribus exire cōguntur. Hi cum ad mūnitionēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus pre-

cibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cībō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custōdiis recipī prohibēbat.

Arrival of Commius with the Army of Relief. Joy of the Besieged.

5 79. Interea Commius reliquique ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiās ad Alesiam per-

veniunt, et colle exterīōre occupātō nōn longius mille passi-

bus à nostris mūnitionibus cōnsidunt. Posterō dīcē equītātū

ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdi-

nem milia passuum III patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent;

pedestrīsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs

superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspects

in campum. Concurrunt his auxilliis visīs; fit grātulātiō

inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Ita-

que prōductīs cōpiās ante oppidum cōnsistent, et proxīmam

fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent, sēque ad

ēruptiōnem atque omnis căsūs comparant.

A Fierce Engagement Takes Place in the Valley. The Gauls are

Defeated.

80. Caesar omni exercītū ad utramque partem mūnitiō-

num dispositō, ut, si ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat

et nōverit, equītātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committi

iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique

iugum tenēbant, dēspects; atque omnēs militēs intenti

pūgnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equītēs rārōs

sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūræ interiēcerant, qui

suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum

impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō volne-

rāti proelīo excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse

Cf. praefectī. — commissa. — conspectīs. — terrā. — opp. dé-

serat. — ēventum. — opp. dénsōs.
Galli confiderent et nostrīs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et ei qui mūnitioñibus continēbantur et ei qui ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs confīrmābant. Quod in conspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur, neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlāri poterat; utrōsque et laudīs cupidītās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitabat. Cum a meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubīa victōriā pūgnārētur, Germāni ūnā in parte cōnfertis turmis in hostīs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt. Quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostri cēdentīs ĩsque ad castra īnsecūti sui conligendi facultātem non dedērunt. At eī qui Alesiā prō-

Cf. 1 crēderent. — 2 occultāri.
The Gauls Make a Night Attack.

81. Uno die intermissō Galli atque hoc spatio māgnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestris mūnitionēs accē-
dunt. Subītō clāmōrē sublātō, quā sīgnificātiōne qui in oppidō obsidēbantūr dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātīs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent parant administrārē. Eōdem tempore clāmōrē exaudītō dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostri, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attri-
būtus, ad mūnitionēs accēdunt; fundīs librilibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōtérrent. 15 Prōspectū tenebris adēmptō multa utrimque volnera accipi-
untur; complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnīus et C. Trebōnīus lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, his auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

They Retire Discomfited.

82. Dum longius ā mūnitione aberant Gallī, plūs multī-
dine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; postēquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopinantēs induēbant aut in scrobis dēlāti trānsfodiēbant aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pilis múrā-
libus interībant. Multīs undique volneribus acceptīs, nūllā 25 mūnitionē perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret, verītī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercin-
getorige ad ēruptiōnem praeparātā erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in his rébus administrandīs morātī,

Cf. 1 trīstēs. — 2 prōpellere. — 3 opp. lūce. — 4 adīret.
83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō¹ repulsi Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt. Locōrum perītōs² adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitionēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentrōniōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs³ opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostri; necessāriōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēcīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnītīs per explōrātōrēs regionibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō déligit, eārum civitātum quae māximam virtūtis opinionem habēbant; quid quōque pācto agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; ade undī tempus dēfīniunt cum meridiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex iiii ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeferiunt. Ille ex castrīs primā vigilīā ēgressus, prope cōnfecō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam meridiēs adpropinquāre vidē retur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātūs ad campestrīs mūnitionēs accē dere et reliquae cōpiāe prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur: crātīs, longuriōs, músculōs, falcīs, reliquae quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitionibus distinētur nec facile plurībus locīs occurrīt. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, qui post

The Army of Relief Makes Another Attempt.

Vercingetorix Coōperatēs. Difficulties of the Romans.

Cf. ¹ caede. — ² opp. imperītōs. — ³ circumvāllāre.
The Gallic War.

Fighting Continues with Energy on Both Sides.

85. Caesar idōnēum locum nactus quid quāque ex parte 5 gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utris-
que ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendi conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūniōnēs, dé omni salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, si rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs muni-
tiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrā-

vīmus. Iniquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastīgium māgnūm habet mōmentum. Allī tēla cōniciunt, alīi testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātis in vicem integri succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūniōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallis, 15 et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

Caesar Personally Encourages his Troops.

86. His rēbus cōgnītīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus vi subsidīō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, si sustinēre nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id nisi neces-

20 sāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōri succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmīcatiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs, dēspērātis campestribus locīs propter māgnītūdinem mūniōnīm, loca praeerupta [ex] ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant 25 cōnferunt. Multītūdine tēlrōm ex turībus propūgnantis dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam rescindunt.

His Activity in Various Parts of the Field.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse,
Fig. 106.—Statue of Vercingetorix.
Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix.

88. Ėius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, [quo īnsignī in proelīs úti cōnuērat], turnīisque equītum et cohortibus visīs quās sē sequī iussērat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvēxa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūniṭiōnibus clāmor. Nostī omissīs pilīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equītātus cernitūr; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equītēs occurrunt; fit māgna caedes. Sedulius, dux et princeans Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria LXXIII ad Caesarēm referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē incolmēs in castra recipiunt. Ĉōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūniṭiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtīnus hāc rē auditā ex castrīs Gallōrum fugā. Quod nisi crēbris subsidīs ac tōtius dieī labōre militēs essent dēfessi, omnēs hostiīm cōpiae dēlērī potuisserēnt. Dē mediā nocte missīs equitātūs novissīmum agmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in civitātīs discēdunt.
Vercingetorix Surrenders.

89. Posterō die Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bel-

lum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis
libertātis causā dēmonstrat; et quoniam sī fortūnae cēden-
dum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmā-
nis satisfacere seu vivum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē his
rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādi, principēs prō-
ducī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castrīs cōnsidit; eō ducēs
prōducuntur. Vercingetorix dēditur; arma prōiciuntur.
Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs civitātīs recu-
perāre possēt, ex reliquis captīvis tōtī exercituī capita singula
praedae nōmine distribuit.

Cæsar's Distribution of his Forces for the Winter. A Twenty Days' Thanksgiving Decreed at Rome.

90. His rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduīs proficiscitur; civitā-
tem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē
factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidīum.
15 Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit; captīvōrum circiter xx milia
Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddīt. T. Labiēnum cum duābus
legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquānōs proficisci iubet; huic
M. Semptōrium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et
L. Minucium Basīlum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmis
conlocat, né quam ā fīnītimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipi-
ant. C. Antistium Rēginum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in
Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs, cum singulis
legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium
Cabillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim reī frumentā-
20 riae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit.

His rēbus ex Cæsaris litterīs cōgnītīs Rōmae diērum vigintī
supplicātiō reddītur.
Fig. 107. — The Legionary.
Fig. 108.—Coin of Caesar.

Book First.—b.c. 58.

The Helvetian War.—Early in the year 58 B.C. the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of becoming masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura Mountains on the south and west, and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise that his flight and death—when he was charged with guilty conspiracy and put on trial for his life—caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Caesar, during a fortnight’s parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance across the river; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier when they were overtaken by Caesar, who, by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced them back to their own territories with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign, lasting only from March to June, is called the Helvetian War.

Reading References on the Helvetian War

Dodge’s Caesar, pp. 50-81.
Froude’s Caesar, pp. 214-231.
Trollope’s Caesar, pp. 35-38.
Fowler’s Julius Caesar, chap. 8.
Holmes’s Caesar’s Conquest of Gaul, pp. 26-36.
Napoleon’s Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 3.
Plutarch’s Lives, Cæsar.

N.B. The grammars cited are those of Allen and Greenough (§), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), Harkness (H.), and Hale and Buck (H-B.). References in parentheses are to the old editions. Cf. (confer) = compare; sc. (scilicet) = supply; ff. = and following; subjv. = subjunctive; inv. = imperative; fn. = footnote.
Page 1. Line 1. Gallia: that is, Transalpine Gaul, excluding the Roman province (Provincia) in the southeast, as well as Gallia Cisalpina, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including the country to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see map, Fig. 2).—omnis (predicate), as a whole.—est divisa, is divided: the adjective use of the participle, not the perfect passive; § 495 (291. b); B. 337. 2; G. 250. R.²; H. 640. 3 (550. N.²); H-B. 320. iii.—unam: sc. partem.

12 incolunt: in translation (not in reading the Latin to make out the sense) change the voice to the passive in order to preserve the emphasis in the English idiom. It is well to acquire the habit of making such changes. The natural English form would be: of which one is inhabited by the Belgians, etc., but the Latin uses the active voice. The moment you find an accusative beginning a sentence, if it seems from its meaning to be a direct object, you can at once think of it as a subject in the nominative (at the same time noticing that the Latin does not make it such). The verb can then be instantly thought of as a passive and the subject as agent. This inversion is so common in Latin for purposes of rhetoric that such a device is a very helpful one, and if properly used from the start need not obscure the Latin construction. The Latin plays upon the position of words to produce all sorts of shades of rhetorical expression, and it is never too early to observe these shades and try to render them in our own idiom.—Belgae: probably of the Cymric branch of the Celtic race, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh; they inhabited the modern Belgium and northern France, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see Bk. ii. ch. 1).—Aquitani: of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques) inhabiting the districts of the southwest (see Bk. iii. ch. 20).—aliam: here alteram would be more usual as meaning the second in the list.—qui...appellantur: notice that in Latin any relative may suggest its own antecedent, as with the indefinite relative (whoever) in English. In English we have to supply a demonstrative (those) who. So here tertiam qui = tertiam partem ei incolunt qui; see § 307. c (200. c); B. 251. 1; G. 619; H. 399. 4 (445. 6); H-B. 284. 1.—ipsorum, etc.: notice that the position of words is so significant in Latin, through its indicated emphasis, that it may allow words to be omitted which must be supplied in the thought. In this case the English idiom is the same: in their own tongue...in ours.

13 Celtae: probably of the Gælic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch.—lingua: abl. of specification; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

14 different: the language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, another dialect of Celtic mixed with German.
14 inter se, from one another: the preposition inter may be used to show any reciprocal relation; § 301. f (196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — Gallos: see note on incolunt, l. 2.

15 dividit: the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary; § 317. b (205. b); B. 255. 3; G. 211. r.1; H. 392. 4 (463. ii. 3); H-B. 331. 3.

16 horum: part. gen. with fortissimi; § 346. a. 2 (216. a); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346. — propterea quod, because; lit. because of this, that, etc. The difference between this and the simple quod is only one of greater emphasis — almost as strong as and the reason is or and it is because.

17 cultu, civilization, as, shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — humanitate, refinement, of mind or feeling. — provinciae: the province of Gallia Narbonensis, organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were Massilia (Marseilles), an old Greek free city, and the capital, Narbo (Narbonne), a Roman colony. The name Provincia has come down to us in the modern Provence.

18 mercatores: these were traders or peddlers, mostly from the seaport of Massilia; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and wagons. A very common article of traffic, as with our Indian traders, was intoxicating drinks, — wines from the southern coast, which, especially, as Caesar says, "tend to debauch the character." These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine. — commeant: this verb means, especially, to go back and forth in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river Liger (Loire). — ea: object of important.

19 effeminandos: § 506 (300); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 628 (544); H-B. 612. iii. — proximi: notice how the three superlatives, longissime, minime, and proximi are arranged. After the emphatic idea of cultu, etc., is completed, the superlatives begin each its own phrase.

10 Germanis: dat. with an adjective of nearness; § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. 1); H-B. 362. iii. — trans Rhenum: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between the Gauls and the Germans, and has so remained till modern times. — continenter (adverb from the participle of contineo, hold together), incessantly; strictly, without any interruption. The pupil should begin at once to notice the way in which words develop into groups expressing the same idea in the forms of the various parts of speech. See p. 449.

11 qua de causa, and for this reason: § 308. f (180. f); B. 251. 6; G. 610; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8; referring back to proximi, etc., and further explained by quod . . . contendunt. — Helvetii: here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls. — quoque: i.e. just as the Belgians.
12 reliquos, the rest of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N. 1. 2); H-B. 346. c; notice the emphasis of position; the others as opposed to the Helvetii.—virtute, not virtue, but courage; for construction, see note on Helvetii.

13 proelii: abl. of means; finibus: abl. of separation.—cum prohibent, while they keep them off (pro-habeo).

14 ipsi (emphatic), themselves, the Helvetians; eos and eorum refer to the Germans.

21 eorum una pars, one division of them (the Gauls or Celts), the people being identified with the country.—quam...dictum est, which, it has been (already) said, the Gauls hold. Notice that in direct discourse it would be Galli obtinent: the subject nom. is changed to acc. and the indic. to the ininf. after the verb of saying, dictum est; § 561. a (272. R.); B. 330; G. 527; H. 613. 2 (535. 1); H-B. 534. 1, 590. 1. Here quam is the object and Gallos the subject of obtinere, while the clause is the subject of dictum est; § 560, 561, 566. b (329, 330. a. 2); B. 330; G. 528; H. 615 (538); H-B. 238, 590. 1. a.—obtinere (ob-tendo), not obtain, but occupy; strictly, hold against all claimants. Ob in composition almost always has the sense of opposing or coming in the way of something. This is one of the many words which have entirely changed their meaning in their descent from the Latin. Always be on your guard against rendering Latin words by the English one corresponding. Obtineo does not mean obtain, nor occupo, occupy. The corresponding word is often suggestive as a guide to the meaning, but must not be used without careful examination.

23 ab Sequanis, on the side of, etc., regarded from the point of view of the Province; a very common use of ab; § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 2. N. 6; H. 490 (434. 1); H-B. 406. 2.

24 vergit, etc., slopes to the north: the highlands (Cévennes) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly.—septentriones (septem triones, "the seven plough-oxen"): i.e. the constellations of the Great and Little Bears. The word is used both in the singular, as below, and in the plural, as here.

25 Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul, the country just described, not Gallia omnis.

26 spectant: i.e. considered from the Province, it lies in that direction.

28 ad Hispaniam, next to Spain, i.e. the Bay of Biscay: § 428. d (259. f); H. 420. 1 (433. 1).
29 spectat: cf. spectant above. — inter occasum, etc., northwest, i.e. from the Province.

211 Chap. 2. nobilissimus, of highest birth. Popular revolutions had, among the Gauls as among the Greeks and Romans, mostly dispossessed the old chiefs, or kings; and they had established an annual magistrate called Vergobret (ch. 16). But the heads of the ruling families would naturally be ambitious to recover what they could of the old class power, and Orgetorix is represented as aspiring to create a monarchy in Gaul.

212 M.—Marco. Always read and translate these names without abbreviation.—Messala, etc.: this was B.C. 61, three years before Caesar's first campaign in Gaul. This construction of consulibus was the usual way of denoting the year; not so formal in English as while Messala and Piso were consuls, but merely in the consulship of; abl. abs., § 419. a (255. a); B. 227. 1; G. 409, 410; H. 489 and 1 (431 and 2); H-B. 421. 1.

213 cupiditate: abl. of means; § 409 (248. e); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. —coniurationem, a league sworn to fidelity by oath (iuro).—nobilitatis: from the account given in ch. 4, we see how immense was the class power still held by the nobles, and why they would naturally join in such a combination.

213 civitati persuasit: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. ii); H-B. 362. ftu. and 1; the direct object of persuasit is the clause ut...exirent; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. i (498); H-B. 502. 3. a; translate the latter by the infinitive according to the English idiom. Votes were easily "persuaded" by such means as Orgetorix possessed. For the sequence of tenses in exirent, see § 484 (286. r.); B. 267; G. 510; H. 545. ii. 1 (493. 1); H-B. 476; and for the plur., see § 280. a (182. a); B. 254. 4; G. 211. r.1; H. 389 (636. iv. 4); H-B. 325.

215 perfacile: predicate with esse, while its subject is the infin. clause with potiri; § 289. d' (189. d'); G. 422. 3; H. 394. 4 (438. 3); cf. H-B. 325. b; showing that it was quite easy, since they exceeded all men in valor, to win the empire of all Gaul.—esse: indir. disc., depending on some word implied in persuasit; § 580. a (336. 2. N.2); B. 314. 2; G. 546. r.1, 649. r.2; H. 642. 1 (523. i. N.); cf. H-B. 534. i. a. Notice that the Latin has the power of putting various dependent clauses after a single verb. Here the idea of persuading takes the thing that was to be done in an ut-clause. The facts of which they were persuaded take the indir. disc. Careful attention to this usage will make many difficult passages easy. It is not the verb used, but the meaning, that decides the construction.—cum praestarent: subjv. after cum meaning since; § 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 526.

216 imperio: § 410 (249); B. 218. i; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
217 hoc facilius, all the easier; originally degree of difference, as in all ablatives with comparative; but hardly different in sense from the abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 424. a. — id: object of persuasit; § 369 (227.f); B. 176. 2. a; G. 345; H. 426. 6 (384. 2); H-B. 364. 4: we should say, persuaded them of it. Usually with persuadere the dat. and acc. are both used only when the latter is a pron. — loci natura, by the nature of the country.

218 una ex parte, on one side: cf. ab Sequanis above, so undique, on (lit. from) all sides; hinc, on this side, etc. The effect on the senses is supposed to come from the direction referred to. — latissimo, very broad.

219 qui takes its gender not from flumine, but from Rheno; § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. b; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326.

223 his rebus, etc.: lit. from these things it was coming about that they roamed about less widely and could less easily make war, etc. But this is obviously not an English mode of thought, nor a form which any English-speaking person would ever naturally use. So here, as always, you must see from this clumsy expression what is meant and then express it in the natural vernacular, something like, from all this they were getting less free to wander and having less opportunity to make war, etc. Several other ways of expressing this may be imagined. One of the greatest advantages of classical study is to set the mind free from forms, and bring into prominence the possibility of saying the same thing in fundamentally different ways. — fiebat: the imperfect expresses the continued effect of the causes; § 470 (277); B. 260. 1; G. 231; H. 534 (468, 469); H-B. 468. 2; the subject of fiebat is the clause ut... possent; § 599 (332. a); B. 297. 2, cf. 284. 1; G. 553. 3, 4; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. a.

224 qua ex parte: here in which respect hardly differs from from which cause. — homines (a sort of apposition) = being (as they were) men eager for war.

31 bellandi: § 349. a (218. a); B. 338. 1. b; G. 374. 5; H. 626, 451. 1 (542. 1, 399. i. 1); H-B. 612. 1. — adficiebantur = afficiebantur: for the assimilation of consonants, see § 16 (11); B. 8. 4; G. 9; H. 374. 2 (344. 5); H-B. 51. 2. In this edition the unchanged form of the preposition is usually preferred. — pro, in proportion to; cf. our force of for.

32 multitudine: their numbers, including some small dependent popula. tions, were 368,000 (see ch. 29).

33 angustos finis, too narrow limits. So in English such words often suggest a negative idea; cf. a “scant pattern.”

34 milia passuum, miles (1000 paces), the regular way of stating this measure, milia being acc. of extent of space, and passuum part. gen. The passus was the stretch from heel to heel, i.e. from where one heel is raised
to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile (*mille passuum*) was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in a thousand double paces. — **CCXL = ducenta quadraginta.**

Always give the Latin words for numerals in reading the text.

3 5 *patebant*: throughout the latter part of this chapter notice the use of the imperfect of *description* or *general statement*, compared with the perfect of *simple narrative* in *persuasit* above and *constituerunt*, etc., below. This distinction is very marked in Latin, and must always be noticed, though not always translated. Our progressive imperfect is much more limited in its use than the Latin imperfect. But the latter always describes a situation and never advances the narrative of occurrences.

3 7 *Chap. 3. quae ... pertinere*nt: dependent clause in indir. disc.; § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1 and a. The mood shows that its clause expresses not the writer's statement, but that of the speaker or actor or some other person concerned. Always bear in mind that Caesar uses the subjunctive to express something different from the indicative, whether you can find the technical rule for it or not. — **comparare ... confirmare**: these infinitives correspond exactly with our idiom *to prepare*, etc., but the same meaning is oftener expressed by a subjunctive clause with *ut*; § 457 (271. a); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 1 (533. i. 1); H-B. 586. e.

3 8 *iumentorum, beasts of burden*; properly, *yoke-animals* (kindred with *iungo, join, and inungum, yoke*): *carorum*, a Celtic word, two-wheeled *carts*. See Fig. 55, p. 94. — **quam maximum, as great as possible**: § 291. c, 321 (93. b, 207); B. 240. 3, 177. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4.

3 9 *coemere ... facere ... confirmare*: notice that the Latin more easily dispenses with connectives than we do.

3 11 *conficiendas, completing: con* in composition may mean *together*; or, as here, may be simply intensive (cf. *do a thing up*). This word is shown to be a gerundive by having a noun with which it agrees. Cf. *proficiscendum, 3 7*, where there is no noun; § 503 (296); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 623 (544. 1); H-B. 613. 1.

3 13 *lege*: probably a resolution passed in a public assembly.

3 12 *in tertium annum confirmant, fix for the third year.*

3 14 *sibi ... suscipit, took on himself*: for construction, see § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; II. 429 (386); H-B. 376. Observe the force of *sub*, as if he put his shoulders *under* the load.
3 15 civitatis, clans, such as the Hœdui, Sequani, etc., each constituting a commonwealth (civitas), — about 60 in all. Their territory had no local name, but was known only by that of the clan, which was sovereign and wholly independent, except for voluntary alliances (see ch. 30). The name Gallia itself — as was said of Italy a few years ago — was only "a geographical expression," implying no united political sovereignty. — persuadet, prevails on: suadet would be simply urges.

3 16 filio, Sequano: appositives with Castico.

3 17 obtinuerat, had held: see note on obtinere, 21. The pluperfect implies that he had held it formerly, but had been ousted by some popular movement.

3 18 amicus: an honorary title given by the Roman Senate to friendly powers; § 283, 284, 393. a (185, 239. 1. n. 2); B. 168. 2. b; G. 206; H. 393. 8 (362. 2. 2); H-B. 319. ii, 392. b. — ut . . . occuparet, to lay hands on: this clause is the object of persuadet; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 565 (498. ii); H-B. 502. 3. a; for the sequence of tenses, see § 485. c (287. c); B. 268. 3; G. 511. r. 1; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491. 2; in English it would be expressed by the infin. — regnum: here, not hereditary authority, but personal rule, — what the Greeks called tyranny.

3 19 quod: the relative. — ante: i.e. before the popular movement. — Dumnorici (dat. after persuadet): Dumnorix, a younger brother, restless, ambitious, and strongly attached to the old aristocracy of the clan; therefore a bitter enemy of the Roman supremacy. He afterwards headed a desertion of Caesar's cavalry just before the second invasion of Britain, but was pursued and killed (Bk. v. ch. 6). It is implied that in the popular movement Dumnorix had come into prominence. It must be borne in mind that the personal rule of a chief (regnum) was an entirely different thing from the prominence (principatum) which one man or another might have in the national councils, as the latter had no constitutional or official power.

3 20 Diviciaci: this Hœduan chief was of the order of Druids (see pp. 165–168); he had been in Rome where he made the acquaintance of Cicero and other eminent Romans. He was thoroughly impressed with the power and superiority of the Romans, and was a faithful friend and ally of Caesar. The party of Druids, represented by Diviciacus and Liscus (ch. 16), was in a manner the popular party, strong especially in the large towns; it was opposed to the old clan feeling kept up for ambitious purposes by military or tribal chiefs (principes) such as Orgetorix and Dumnorix. The former, or popular party, was headed by the Hœdui; the latter, or aristocratic, by the Sequani and Arverni. The Druids were a religious or priestly order, jealous of the aristocracy (equites) of the tribe or clan, which latter
represented what may be called the patriotic or "native-Celtic" party (see Bk. vi. chs. 12-17). A knowledge of this division helps to clear up many of the events of Cæsar's campaigns. In fact, Gaul was conquered by the strategy underlying the maxim "divide et impera." — qui: i.e. Dumnorix. The regular rule is that the relative should refer to the last person named. But this in all languages is often overborne by the prominence of some preceding person. — principatum, highest rank, as distinct from political power (see above).

3 21 plebi acceptus, a favorite with the people (acceptable to the people). — ut idem conaretur: i.e. put down the constitutional authority, and establish a rule of military chiefs. The expression here is a striking example of the tendency of the Latin to say things by verbs which we say by nouns; Lat. attempt the same thing, Eng. make the same attempt.

3 23 perfacile factu: § 510. N.² (303. r.); B. 340. 2; G. 436. N.¹; H. 635 (547); H-B. 619. 1; in predicate agreement with conata perficere, which is subject of esse, depending on probat. — illis probat, undertakes to show them, i.e. Casticus and Dumnorix: conative present; § 467 (276. b); B. 259. 2; G. 227. N.²; H. 530 (467. 6); H-B. 484. — propterea quod: see note on 1. 6.

3 24 ipse, etc., i.e. and so they could count on him for a powerful ally. — non esse dubium quin, there was no doubt (he said) that: here esse is infin. of indir. disc.; for the construction of quin, see § 558. a (319. d'); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b. For purposes of analysis we may consider the quin clause a subject of esse, and dubium as a predicate adjective in the neuter to agree with the subject.

3 25 Galliae: part. gen. with plurimum; § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

3 26 se suis: begin as soon as possible to master the use of the reflexive in Latin, to which we have nothing that exactly corresponds in English. Our forms with self are emphatic and not ordinarily reflexive. The forms of se and suus refer (without emphasis) to the subject of their clauses, and in indir. disc. to the speaker. They take the place of an I or mine of the direct. Where no ambiguity would arise in English translate them by he and his. In case of ambiguity some device must be used to avoid it. Here there is an emphasis on se, but it comes from position. — regna: translate by the singular. To a Roman each man's power would be a separate regnum, hence the plural here. — conciliaturum: sc. esse, which is often omitted with the fut. infin.

4 1 oratione, plea, or argument (abl. of means). — fidem et iusiurandum: i.e. assurance confirmed by oath; hendiadys; § 640 (385); B. 374. 4; G. 698; H. 751. 3. N.¹ (636. iii. 2); H-B. 631. 5.
4 2 regno occupato: abl. abs., expressing condition; § 419. 4, 521. a (255. 4, 310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 409, 593. 2; H. 489. 1, 638. 2 (431. 2, 549. 2); H-B. 421. 6, 578. 6; in case they should get in their hands the royal power = si occupaverimus in the direct. — per tres ... populos: i.e. Helvetii, Hædui, and Sequani; a league between these, they hope, will secure their power over all Gaul. — firmissimos, most stable.

4 3 Galliae: governed by potiri; § 410. a (249. a); B. 212. 2; G. 407. d; H. 458. 3 (410. v 3); H-B. 353. — posse: equivalent to a fut. infin.; § 584. b; B. 270. 3; G. 248. r.; H. 618. 1 (537. n.1); H-B. 472. d.

4 4 CHAP. 4. ea res, this (i.e. the conspiracy). The word res is constantly used in Latin where we use some more specific word in English, as action, fact, event, estate, etc., according to the passage. The conduct of Orgetorix was treated as criminal because, though the Helvetians were prepared to emigrate in a body and subdue the rest of Gaul, they would not give to Orgetorix the power thus acquired. — moribus suis, according to their custom: abl. of spec.; § 418. a and N. (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 441, cf. 414 and a.

4 5 ex vinculis, out of chains, i.e. (standing) in chains; a Latin idiom; cf. ex equo, on horseback. — causam dicere: a technical expression for being brought to trial. — damnatum (sc. eum, object of sequi), if condemned = si damnatus esset. The Latin may almost always omit a pronoun of reference, if there is a participle or adjective to show what its form would be if expressed. In this sentence the subject of oportebat is the clause damnatum ... sequi; the subject of sequi is poenam; and ut ... crematur is in apposition with poenam, defining the punishment: § 562. 1, 571. c (329. 2, 332. f); B. 294, cf. 297. 3; G. 557; H. 571. 4 (501. iii); H-B. 502. 3. a. n. Translate, he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned by fire (lit. it must needs be that the penalty should overtake him, condemned, of being burned with fire). For the abl. in i, see § 76. b. 1 (57. b. 1); B. 38; G. 57. 2; H. 102. 4 (62. iv); H-B. 88. 2. c.

4 7 die constituta, on the day appointed: § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. For the gender of die, see § 97 (30. a, 73); B. 53; G. 64; H. 135 (1-3); H-B. 101. — causae dictionis, for the trial (it would be more usual to say dicendae); dictionis depends on die, and causae is the objective gen. after dictionis.

4 8 familiam, clansmen: ordinarily this word means slaves; but it is more probable that it here means all who bore his name or regarded him as their chief. — ad (adv.) ... milia decem (in apposition with familiam), to (the number of) ten thousand.
409 clientis, retainers: volunteer or adopted followers.— obaeratos, debtors: the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul; see Bk. vi. ch. 13.

410 eodem: an adverb.— per eos, by their means: § 405. b (246. b); G. 401; H. 468. 3 (415. i. 1. n.1); H-B. 380. d. — ne . . . diceret: a purpose clause.

412 cum . . . conaretur, when the state attempted. The force of the subjv, here cannot easily be made apparent in translation, and may be disregarded as too subtle for this stage of the pupil's advancement. It is perfectly manifest, however, and can be learned later; § 546 (323); B. 288. 1. b; G. 585; H. 600, ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.

415 quin . . . consciverit (conscisco), that he decreed death to himself (his own death), i.e. committed suicide. The construction of the clause is analogous to that with non dubito, etc.; § 558 (319. d'); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b. Observe that ipse, self, agrees in Latin rather with the subject; not, as in English, with the object.

416 Chap. 5. nihilominus (often written in one word, as in English), nevertheless.— constituerant, had resolved: observe the pluperfect, as following not a real but a historical present.

417 ut . . . exeat, in apposition with id: as we should say, "namely, to go forth." Clauses thus used in apposition with a noun or pronoun take the form required by the verb on which the appositional word depends. Here facere would take a result clause with ut, and so this clause has that form.— ubi . . . arbitrati sunt, when they judged: observe the regular use of the perfect indic. with ubi, postquam, etc., and cf. cum . . . conaretur above; § 543 (324); B. 287. 1; G. 561; H. 602 (518. n.1); H-B. 537.

418 rem, enterprise; cf. note on ea res, l. 4.— oppida, towns, fortified and capable of defence.

419 vicus, village, i.e. groups of houses about a single spot. The villages and houses were burned; partly to cut off hope of return, partly to prevent their being occupied by the Germans.— ad: cf. l. 8 above.— reliqua, etc.: i.e. isolated farmhouses not collected in villages.

421 portaturi erant, intended to carry: § 194. a (129); B. 115; G. 247; H. 236 (233); H-B. 162. — domum: following the verbal noun reditionis; § 427. 2 (258. b); B. 182. 1. b; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2. 1); H-B. 450. b.

423 molita cibaria, meal. Food for 368,000 people (cf. 26 11) for three months required five or six thousand wagons and about twenty-five thousand draught animals. This would make a line of march of over thirty miles.— domo: § 427. 1 (258. a); B. 229. 1. b; G. 390. 2; H. 462. 4 (412. ii. 1); H-B. 451. a.
5 1 Rauraci, etc.: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385, ii); H-B. 362 and i: German tribes from the banks of the Rhine.

5 2 uti: the older form for ut, common in Caesar. — eodem usi consilio, adopting the same plan: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407. N. 3; H. 477 (421. 1); H-B. 429.— una cume is, along with them. The use of eis avoids ambiguity, though secum would be more regular, referring to the subject of the main clause; cf. note on se, 3 26. — oppidis . . . exustis, having burned, etc.: § 493. 2 (113. c. N.); B. 356. 2. b; G. 410. R. 1; H. 640. 4 (550. N. 4); H-B. 602. 1.

5 3 Boios (from whom the name Bohemia is derived): a Celtic tribe, whom the great German advance had cut off from their kinspeople towards the west, and who were now wandering homeless, some of them within the limits of Gaul.

5 4 Noricum, etc.: now eastern Bavaria and upper Austria. — oppugnabant = oppugnaverant: § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

5 5 receptos . . . adsciscunt: in English, in a sentence like this, we should use a separate verb instead of the participle; § 496. N. 2 (292. R.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. R. 1; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 604. 1. Translate, they receive the Boii into their own number (ad se), and vote them in as their allies. They do not merely unite with them, but incorporate them into their own body as a homeless people.

5 6 Chap. 6. erant omnino, there were in all, i.e. only. — itinera . . . itineribus: observe the form of this relative sentence, common in Caesar, which gives the antecedent noun in both clauses. It is usually omitted in one or the other; in English, almost always in the relative clause; in Latin, quite as often in the other; § 307 (200); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399. 5 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.

5 7 possent: subjv. in a relative clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 1; i.e. not merely by which they could, but of the sort by which they could. In such clauses, which describe something by its qualities, the subjv. is regular in Latin. — Sequanos: i.e. the region now called Franche-Comté, north of the Rhone.

5 8 inter . . . Rhodanum: the pass now guarded by the Fort l'Ecluse, about nineteen Roman (seventeen and a half English) miles below Geneva (see note on 7 13). The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman province. The choice was either to cross the river and go through the country held by the Romans, or to proceed along its northern bank through the friendly Sequani. — vix qua, etc., where carts could scarcely be hauled in single file: § 137. a (95. a); B. 81. 4. a; G. 97; H. 164. 1 (174. 2, 1); H-B. 133. See Fig. 55, p. 94.
5 9 ducerentur: the same "characteristic subj.\) as in possent. The distinction is one that we rarely express in English; but a little study will make it appear in most cases. — autem, then again.

6 1 possent: § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2.
6 2 multo facilius (cf. nihilo minus, 4 16), much easier in itself; but it required them to crush the Roman legion at Geneva, and force their way through about fifty miles of territory occupied by the Roman arms. — propterea quod: see note on 1 6.

6 3 nuper pacati erant: a rebellion "of despair" (b.c. 61) had been subdued by C. Pomptinus.

6 4 locis: loc. abl.; § 429. 2 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N. 1; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. — vado: by ford (wading, vadendo). The bed of the Rhone must have changed somewhat since Caesar's time. There is now but one ford between Geneva and the Pas-de-l'Ecluse.

6 8 sese persuasuros [esse]: notice that in the fut. infin., used in indir. disc., esse is usually omitted (cf. conciliatum, 3 96; in dir. disc. we should have persuadebimus), they thought they should persuade; its object is Allobrogibus (cf. Rauracis, etc., 5 1). — bono animo, well disposed; § 415 (251); B. 224. 1; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443. Five years before, their envoys in Rome had intrigued with Catiline's agents, whom they at length betrayed (see Cicero, Cat. iii. ch. 9).

6 9 viderentur: § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2.

6 10 eos: again the demonstrative to avoid ambiguity; see note on eis, 5 2. — paterentur: the subjv. with ut is the regular form of object clause after all verbs of commanding, inducing, and the like; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. 1 (498, ii); H-B. 502. 3. a.

6 11 diem . . . die: cf. itineria . . . itineribus, 5 6 and note.

6 12 conveniant: the subjv. is used because diem dicunt has the force of a command. The indic. would mean "on which they do assemble"; this means "on which they should." Technically, the clause is a purpose clause; § 529 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544. ii; H. 590 (497. 1); H-B. 502. 2. — a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis): nominally March 28; § 631, 424. g (376, 259. ε); B. 371 and 6, 372; G. App.; H. 754, 755 (642-644); H-B. 664, 667. But the calendar was in a state of great confusion at this time, and till Caesar's reform twelve years later. — L. Pisone, etc.: notice again the regular Roman method of giving dates; see note on Messala, 2 12. Piso was Caesar's father-in-law.
Notes: Caesar.

6 14 Chap. 7. Caesar: the tendency is so strong in Latin to put the most emphatic word first that it is so placed even when the first clause is a dependent one, as here. We should say: Caesar, when it was reported, etc., hastened; the Latin says: to Caesar, when it was reported, etc., [he] (which in such cases is unnecessary, having already been expressed in a different form) hastened. He was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship, preparing to set out for his province. Every consul was entitled to the governorship of a province for one year after his term of office, and, by a special law, Caesar’s government (consisting of the three provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum) had been conferred for a term of five years. The news of the emigration hastened his movements. — nuntiatum esset: the same idiomatic use of the subjv. with cum as in 4 12. The relation here, however, is more apparent. The clause gives not the time merely, but the circumstances, “upon this being,” etc.— id in apposition with eos . . . conari (the real subject of nuntiatum esset), that they were attempting.

6 15 maturat: travelling, his biographers say, one hundred miles in a day, and reaching the Rhone in a week, according to Plutarch. — ab urbe: this word, unless some other place is indicated, always means Rome, the city. Caesar was near, but not in the city, not being permitted to enter it while holding the military authority (imperium) of proconsul. Hence he says ab, not ex. — proficisci: the so-called complementary infin., used like our own with verbs which require another action to complete their sense.

6 16 quam maximis potest itineribus: § 291. c (93. b); B. 240. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4; potest is usual with Caesar in this phrase, which is elliptical. In full it would be tam magnis quam maximis, as great as the greatest, i.e. the greatest possible.— ulteriorum: i.e. beyond the Alps. The northern part of modern Italy was still called Gallia Cisalpina, and was a part of Caesar’s province.

6 17 ad, near to, as far as.— provinciae: dat.; § 369 (227. f) ; B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 364. 4. — imperat: i.e. Transalpine Gaul. Here impero is used in what seems to have been its original meaning, make requisition upon; see Vocab.

6 18 erat omnino: cf. erant omnino, 5 6 and note.

6 19 legio: the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous. With reference to the Roman legions, see chapter on military affairs, 1. 1.

6 20 rescindi: notice that iubeo and veto, unlike other verbs of commanding and forbidding, take the acc. and the infin.

6 21 certiores facti sunt, were informed (made more certain): a technical expression for official communication or certain information.
6 23 qui dicerent, who were (instructed) to say: the same construction as qua die conveniant above, i. 11, see note. Notice the difference between obtinebat, who did, etc., and dicerent, who should, etc. Treat your subjunctives according to the sense, and use the rules only to formulate the usages; § 531 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544; H. 590 (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

6 24 sibi . . . liceat: observe carefully the construction of the indir. disc.; § 584, 585 (336. A. B); B. 317, 318; G. 650; H. 642–653 (523–531); H-B. 534. 1. 2; in dir. disc. it would be: Nobis est in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterquod aliiu iter habemus nullum; rogamus, ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat. Careful attention to this construction in the beginning will be amply repaid later.—sibi: dat. of possession; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374; the subject of esse is the clause iter . . . facere, while the whole passage, sibi . . . liceat, is the object of dicerent. Render, that they had (it was to them) in mind to march, etc.

6 26 rogare: of this verb the subject is se, understood (often omitted by Caes, contrary to the rule), and the object is the object clause ut . . . liceat; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546 and N.1; H. 565 (498. 1); H-B. 530. 2.—voluntate: abl. in accordance with which; § 418. a (253. N.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397; cf. H. 475. 3 (416); cf. H-B. 414. a.

7 1 L. Cassium . . . occisum [esse]: object of memoria tenebat, as a phrase of knowing; § 459 (272); B. 330; G. 527. 2; H. 613 (535. i. 1); H-B. 589. This defeat happened B.C. 107, in the terrible invasion of the Cimbri or Teutons, to whom the Helvetians were joined as allies. “The army of Cassius was one of six swept away by these barbarians.”

7 2 sub iugum, under the yoke (hence the word subjugate). The iugum was made by sticking two spears in the ground and laying another across them above. To pass under this was equivalent to laying down arms by a modern army.

7 3 concedendum [esse]: impersonal depending on putabat, thought that no concession should be made (lit. that it must not be yielded.)—homines: subject of temperaturos [esse], depending on existimabat.

7 4 inimico animo: abl. of quality; cf. bono animo, 6 8.—data facultate: abl. abs., expressing a condition; § 496, 521. a (292, 310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 593. 2; H. 575. 9 (507. 3. N.7); H-B. 421. 6; cf. 4 2.—facundii: gerundive; § 504 (297, 298); B. 339. 1; G. 428; H. 626 (544. 1); H-B. 612. 1.

7 5 iniuria: not “injury” in our sense, but wrong, outrage.
7 6 dum... conveniunt: notice again the purpose expressed in this clause, until the men should, etc. Cf. qua die conveniant, 6 11, and qui dicerent, 6 23; § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 5.

7 9 revertentur: subjv. for inv.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538. In dir. disc.: diem (=time) ad deliberandum sumam; si quid vultis, ad Id. Apr. revertimini. Note the changes made, and the reasons for them.

7 10 Chap. 8. ea legione, with that legion (abl. of instrum.). In this sentence observe how all the qualifying clauses come first and the direct objects, murum, fossam, come next before the leading verb perducit; § 596 and a (343); B. 348, 349; G. 674; H. 664 (560); cf. H-B. 623; while each relative belongs to the verb which comes next after it unless another relative intervenes,—a very convenient rule in analyzing a long and difficult sentence.

7 13 milia: acc. of extent of space; cf. 3 4; § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.—decem novem, nineteen: following the windings of the river (see note on 5 8).—murum: this rampart, or earthwork, was on the south side of the river, leaving the passage undisputed along the northern bank.

The banks of the Rhone in this part are generally rugged and steep, with sharp ravines; there are only five short reaches—a little over three miles in all—requiring defences. The current is in general quite rapid. Some remains of Cæsar’s works can still be traced, according to the French engineers who surveyed the ground under the orders of Napoleon III. According to Cæsar’s statement the work was continuous (this is the meaning of perducit). This undoubtedly means that, after the five accessible points were strengthened by artificial defences, the entire left bank of the Rhone, from Geneva to Pas-de-l’Ecluse (17½ English miles), formed a continuous barrier against the Helvetians. The construction of any one of the fortifications may be described as follows: Along the crest of the ridge facing the river the slope was cut so as to be vertical, or nearly so, and then a trench was hollowed. The earth dug out was partly thrown up to increase the height of the wall, and quite likely in part thrown down the hill. At all events, it seems probable that the measure of 16 feet is the distance from the bottom of the ditch to the top of the wall. Thus the work formed really little more than a trench with scarp higher than the counterscarp. Then the crest was fortified with a breastwork of palisades, behind which the soldiers were protected while hurling their missiles at the enemy. This entire series of works, with the force at Cæsar’s command, could not have occupied more than two or three days. See Map, p. 5.
7 14 pedum: § 345, b (215, b); B. 203, 2; G. 365; H. 440, 3 (396, v); H-B. 355.
7 15 castella (lit. little fortifications), redoubts. See treatise on military affairs, v. In them were stationed guards (praesidia). The redoubts were sufficiently numerous so that the guard from one or another could quickly reach any point in the lines that might be threatened.—quod facilius . . . possent, that he may the more easily: the usual construction where a comparative is to be used; without the comparative it would be ut . . . possent; § 531, a (317, b); B. 282, 1, a; G. 545, 2; H. 568, 7 (497, ii. 2; H-B. 502, 2 and b.
7 16 se invito (abl. abs.), against his will: se is used because this is a part of what Cæsar had in his mind; § 300, 2 (196, a, 2); B. 244, ii, a; G. 521; H. 504 (449, 1); H-B. 262, 2.—conarentur . . . possent: note the sequence of tenses after the historical presents dispositum and communit.
7 17 ubi . . . vēnit: notice the difference between this clause and those above noted with cum and the subjv. This one expresses a real time and not circumstance like the others. You cannot render it by "upon the coming" or any similar phrase.
7 18 negat se . . . posses, says he cannot, etc. His words would be: More et exemplo populi Romani non possam iter uli per provinciam dare; si vim facere conabimini, prohibebo.—more et exemplo, according to the custom and precedents: always constituting the rule of conduct with the conservative Romans.
7 19 si . . . conantur: future condition in indir. disc.; see the direct as given in note to l. 18.
7 20 prohibiturum [esse]: sc. se subject and eos, object.—deiecti, cast down: de in composition generally has the meaning down.
7 22 non numquam, sometimes: § 326 and a (150 and a); B. 347, 2; G. 449 and r, 4; H. 656, 1 (553, 1); H-B. 298, 2.
7 23 si . . . possent: practically an indir. quest. depending on conati, trying if (whether) they could break through; § 576, a (334, f); B. 300, 3; G. 601, 460, 1, (b); H. 649, ii, 3 (529, ii, 1, n, 1); H-B. 582, 2 and a.
7 24 conatu: abl. of separation, following destiterunt; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390, 2; H. 462 (414); H-B. 408, 2.
8 1 chap. 9. una: emphatic.—via, only the way.—qua: abl. of the way by which; § 429, a (258, 8); B. 218, 9; G. 389; H. 476 (420, 1, 3); H-B. 426.—Sequamis invitis (abl. abs. expressing a condition), in cast the, etc.
8 2 sua sponte, by their own influence; a rare meaning of this phrase, which is generally of their own accord.
8 3 possent: cf. note on nuntiatum esset, 6, 14.
Notes: Cæsar.

§ 8 4 eo deprecatore (abl. abs. denoting means), by his means as advocate.
—impetrarent, they might obtain (it): a purpose clause; § 531 (317); B. 282; G. 545; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2.

§ 8 5 gratia, personal influence.—largitione, lavish gifts and hospital-
ities: like those of old chiefs of the clan. These words are ablatives of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444.

§ 8 7 duxerat: this word is used only of the man who marries a wife, i.e. he leads her to his own house.

§ 8 8 novis rebus: revolution, change in government, dat.; § 368. 3 (227. e. 3); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346. r.²; H. 426. 1 (385. 1); H-B. 362. ii.

§ 8 9 habere ob strictas, to keep close bound: § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. i. n.); H-B. 605. 5.

§ 8 10 impetrat has for object ut... patiantur, and perficit has uti...
—dent. — clauses of result; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a.

§ 8 11 obsides: these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact were broken, the hostages, usually children of prominent persons, would be held responsible and punished.

§ 8 12 ne... prohibeant; ut transeant: object clauses of purpose, depending on the idea of agreement implied in obsides...dent.—itinere: abl. of separation; cf. conatu, 7 24.

§ 8 14 Chap. 10. renuntiatur, word is brought back: i.e. by messengers sent to ascertain, as the prefix re implies; the subject is the clause Helvettiis esse, etc.; see note on 6 24.

§ 8 15 Santonum: a people north of the Garonne, on the Bay of Biscay.
This is so far from the borders of the province as to show that Cæsar was only searching for a pretext. But the conquest of Gaul was already determined upon, and the warlike Helvetii were too dangerous a people to be allowed to add their strength to that of the present inhabitants.

§ 8 16 Tolosatium: the people of Tolosa, the modern Toulouse.

§ 8 17 Id refers to the Helvetii marching into the territory of the Santones.—fieret: the subjv. of indir. disc. after intellegebat.

§ 8 18 futurum [esse] ut...haberet, etc., it would be to the great peril of the province that it should have, etc.: § 561. n.¹ (329. N.); B. 294; G. 506; H. 571 (540); H-B. 238.—ut...haberet: a substantive clause of result used as the subject of futurum [esse]: § 537, 569 (319, 332. a); B. 284. 1, 297. 2; G. 553. 4. r.³; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a. Cæsar’s thought would be: “Id si fiet, magno...futurum est ut populus Romanus...habeat.”

§ 8 19 locis (loc. abl.) patentibus, in an open country: the southwest part of Gaul is a broad river valley, giving easy access to the province.
8 finitimos: predicate, have as neighbors, etc.
8 munitioni . . . praeficit, he put in command of the fortification. — Labienum: this was Cæsar's best officer, a prominent and influential politician of strongly democratic sympathies. He served Cæsar faithfully through the Gallic wars, but when the Civil War broke out he joined what he conceived to be the party of the republic, went over to Pompey, and was killed at Munda, B.C. 45.
8 legatum, aide, lieutenant: no English word exactly translates this word. — magnis itineribus: cf. quam maximis potest itineribus. 6 16. It is the usual phrase for forced marches of an army. The ordinary day's march of the Romans was about 15 miles; a magnum iter was from 20 to 25 miles. — Italiam: probably only into his province of Cisalpine Gaul, but this was already regarded as a part of Italy.
9 Aquileiam: an important Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic. It continued to be the chief port of trade for this region till outgrown by Venice. — qua proximum iter: i.e. by way of Turin and Susa, by Mt. Genèvre. Ocelum has been variously identified with Briançon and probably Grenoble.
9 compluribus . . . pulsis: the order is interlocked, his agreeing with pulsis; § 597. h (344. h); B. 350. 11. d.
9 Vocontiorum: this people extended from the Durance to the Isère.
9 Allobrogum: these extended as far south as the Isère, and had possessions north of the Rhone in the sharp angle at St. Didier.
9 Segusiavos: these were west of the Rhone in the region of Lyons and opposite Vienne. They probably extended across the Saône above Lyons, so that Cæsar only crossed the Rhone above its junction with the Saône and did not cross the Saône also. He evidently had his camp in the heights above Lyons in the angle of the two rivers. His army amounted to six legions of nearly 25,000 men and an uncertain number of Gallic cavalry. He had doubtless been joined by Labienus with his legion from
Geneva, though that fact is not mentioned. Caesar evidently went beyond his province without the order of the Senate, hence his explanatory tone.

9 11 Chap. 11. *iam, by this time.* — *angustias:* i.e. the Pas-de-l’Ecluse before described; see Figs. 5, 6. The entire train of the Helvetii has been reckoned at 8,500 four-horse wagons, extending some fifty miles (cf. note on 4 23). The passage must have been extremely slow. They probably followed in the line of the modern railroad as far as Culoz, then to Amberieu and across the plateau des Dombes to the Saône between Lyons and Macon, a distance of nearly a hundred miles. It is calculated that Caesar must have been absent two months in Italy, and the march of the Helvetians probably took about the same time. This would make the time of these events about the latter part of June.

9 12 *Haeduorum:* it does not appear that these occupied the left bank of the Saône. But predatory excursions may have been made across the river, and in ch. 12 the Helvetians were engaged in crossing.

9 13 *cum... posseunt,* not being able, etc.

9 15 *rogatum:* supine; § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618. — *ita se,* etc.: in English supply *saying* or some such word. In Latin, after the idea of speech or thought is suggested, as here by *legatos* and *rogatum,* no further expression of saying is necessary. In dir. disc. this would be, "*Ita [nos]... meriti sumus, ut paene in conspectu exercitus vestri,... liberis nostri... non debuerint;*" i.e. our services have been such, etc., that we did not deserve to have this happen (as it has). Probably the account is somewhat exaggerated.

9 16 *meritos:* "Alone among the Gauls," says Tacitus, "the Hædui claim the name of brotherhood with the Roman people" (Ann. xi. 25). So, also, Cicero calls them *fratres nostri.*

9 17 [eorum]: words thus inclosed in brackets are of doubtful authenticity.

9 18 *debuerint:* if this were stated not as a result but independently, the form would be perf. indic., implying that the thing had happened contrary to what ought to be. According to the Latin idiom, the same tense is retained in such cases, contrary to the sequence of tenses; see § 485. c. n.² (287. c. n.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); H-B. 478. The English idiom is *that our lands, etc., ought not to have been,* etc., putting the past idea into the infin.; § 486. a (288. a); B. 270. 2; H. 618. 2 (537. 1); H-B. 582. 3. a. ft. ². — *Haeduim Ambarri, the Hædui near the Arar* (or Saône), occupying the angle between that river and the Rhone. They were evidently closely akin to the Hædui and were their allies.

9 19 *necessarii,* bound by *necessitudo,* or community of interests of any kind. — *consanguinei,* akin by blood.
9 20 depopulatis agris . . . prohibere: i.e. their lands were already wasted, and it was with difficulty that they could keep off, etc.; see § 496. n.1 (292. r.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. r.1; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 421. 4; depopulatis is pass., though from a dep. verb; see § 190. b (135. b); B. 112. b; G. 167. n.2; H. 222. 2 (231. 2); H-B. 291. d.

9 21 Allobroges: from Culoz the Rhone flows almost south and then makes a very sharp turn to the northwest. It was probably in this angle that the Allobroges overlapped the river.

9 23 sibi: § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374.—solum is a noun.—nihil esse reliqui: part. gen., a common usage with neut. adjectives; § 346. a. 1 (216. a. 1); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 440. 5. n. (397. 1); H-B. 346; i.e. they had nothing left, etc.; the land was completely stripped.

9 24 non exspectandum [esse]: impers., as this construction is always passive. Translate by the act., He must not, etc.; see § 374 (232); B. 189. 1; G. 355. 251. 1; H. 302. 7, 431 (301. 2, 388); H-B. 373. 1.

9 25 sociorum: the Helveticans would be sure to levy upon the allies of the Romans wherever they found them.

9 26 Santonos: cf. 8 15.—pervenirent: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. The subjv. is used because of the idea, they should come, technically called purpose.

10 1 Chap. 12. flumen, etc., the Arar (Saône) is a river which flows through, etc.; not between, which would be expressed by dividit. The Saône joins the Rhone about seventy-five miles southwest of Lake Geneva.

10 2 lenitate, sluggish current, abl. of description.

10 3 in . . . fluat: indir. quest., subject of iudicari possit: see § 574. n. (334. n.); B. 300; G. 467; H. 649. ii (529. i); H-B. 537.

10 4 ratibus, rafts of logs; lintribus, canoes of hollowed logs, joined to make a kind of bridge.—transibant: notice the imperf.; they were in the act of crossing.

10 5 partis: object of duxisse; flumen, governed by trans in composition; § 395 (239. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331. r.1; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386.

10 7 citra: i.e. on the east side.—Ararim: for the acc. in im, see § 74. d, 75. a. 1 (55. d, 56. a. 1); B. 38. 1; G. 57. 1; H. 102. 2 (62. iii. 1); H-B. 88. 1. It is to be noticed that Gallic names were felt by the Romans as Greek, and were treated accordingly.—reliquam = reliquit: in fact, this adjective is, from its meaning, a kind of participle.—de tertia vigilia: the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches, the third beginning at midnight. This movement took place soon after (de) the watch began.
eos impeditos, etc.: the emphasis gives a force like "while these were hampered and not expecting, he engaged them," etc. In Latin the two sentences are made into one; such telescoping of two coördinate ideas is almost regular in Latin.

concitid: see Vocab. — mandarunt = mandaverunt: § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. i; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

pagus: this "district" (Tigurinus) was about the modern Zurich. The inhabitants of the pagus probably composed a clan, and formed a division of the force.

L. Cassium: see 7 1, 2.

deorum: this reference to a special providence is noticeable in so stern a realist as Cæsar, and was possibly for political effect. Yet he often speaks of fortune as powerful in human affairs (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 42), and mentions divine omens which accompanied his victory over Pompey (Bell. Civ. iii. 105). A disbeliever in the superstitions of his day, he yet seems to acknowledge the presence of a controlling power. — quae pars . . . intulerat . . . ea . . . persolvit, render that part which, etc.: see § 397. b. n. (200. b. n.); cf. B. 251. 4; G. 620; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.

princeps poenas persolvit, was the first to pay the penalty: § 290 (191); B. 239; H. 497. 3 (442. n.); H-B. 243; referring to the complete overthrow of the rest later. Punishment was regarded among the ancients, not as suffering to be inflicted, but as of the nature of a fine or penalty to be paid; hence sumere, capere, to inflict, and dare or solvere, to suffer.

In 1862 numerous remains buried in two trenches were discovered near this spot, possibly of those slain in this battle.

inuiarias, wrongs, not simply damage, as the word came to mean afterwards. From Cæsar's point of view, an offensive war against Rome is necessarily wrong.

soceri: L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia (Shakespeare's Calpurnia), and consul of the present year (see end of ch. 6). — legatum: notice how carefully titles are given, a matter of military and social etiquette; cf. consulem, 10 15.

Chap. 13. reliquas: the emphasis on this word displaces the connective ut, which would naturally stand first in its clause.

consequi, overtake (hence the frequent meaning acquire). — pontem . . . faciendum curat, has a bridge made: § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. n.2); H-B. 612. iii. — pontem: see chapter on military affairs, vi.

cum . . . intellegent: § 546 (323, 325); B. 288. i. b; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525; cf. notes on 4 12, 6 14, 7 17. Here cum may be translated when, but the clause gives the state of mind of the
Helvetii as the main feature of the situation, and really expresses no time at all, but circumstance only, hence the subjunctive.—id: object of fecisse.

11 8 *diebus XX, in the course of twenty days*: § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. — ut . . . transirent: this clause is in app. with id, but, as it is through that app. the object of fecisse, it takes the result construction just as if it depended immediately on the verb of effecting; cf. note on 417; and see § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a. N.

11 9 legatos: a participle of *lego* (*depute*), used as a noun; hence, diplomatically envoy or ambassador, and in military affairs lieutenant.

11 10 Divico: now an old man, since the battle in which he was commander took place forty-nine years before. It was, of course, a piece of arrogance to send him.

11 12 si pacem, etc.: Direct,—

Si pacem p. R. cum Helvetiiis faciet, in eam partem *ibunt* atque *ibi erunt* Helvetii, ubi eos tu, Caesar, constitueris atque esse *volueris* (or Caesar *constituerit* . . . *voluerit*); sin bello . . . *perseverabit*, *reminiscere* et *veteris commodi* p. R. et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ei qui flumen *transierant* suis auxilium ferre non possent, *noli* ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtutis *tribuere*, aut *nos despicere*; *nos* ita a patribus maioribusque *nostris didicimus* ut magis virtute *contenderemus* (*contendamus*) quam dolo aut insidiis *niteremur* (*nitamur*). Qua re *noli committere* ut is locus ubi *constitimus* ex calamitate . . . nomen *capiat* aut memoriam *prodat*.

This discourse, as well as Cæsar’s answer, is confused by a partial identification of Cæsar and the Roman people. Hence, many of the forms might be either third person as referring to the Roman people, or second or first as addressed to Cæsar, or spoken by him.

The indirect discourse is found in almost all languages, and each one has its own methods of change from the direct. In English it is regularly introduced by *that*. This word, however, is often omitted, in which case only the *persons* and the *tenses* are changed to fit the new relations. Dependent clauses keep their connectives, but change, like others, their *persons* and *tenses*. In long passages, if *that* is omitted, parenthetical phrases are frequently introduced to keep the connection of the thought, like “he said,” “he asked,” “he urged,” “he begged.” The passage here may be translated: “If the Roman people would make peace, etc., [that] the Helvetii would go . . . and remain where Cæsar should settle them and desire them to be; but if they (the Roman people) should persist in pursuing them, etc., let him remember [he said] (or he begged him to remember), etc. As to the fact that (because) he had attacked, etc., he should
not ascribe it, etc., or despise them (the Helvetians). [That] they had [he said] been taught rather to contend, etc. Let him therefore not allow that place . . . to be," etc. So in 12 8, num . . . posse, "could they, he asked."

11 13 in eam partem . . . ubi, to whatever part, i.e. of Gaul. They were not, however, to be turned back from their migration.

11 15 bello: note the emphatic position as opposed to emphatic pacem, l. 12. — reminisceretur, subjv. for inv. of the dir.: he should remember, or let him remember.

11 16 incommodi, disaster (lit. inconvenience), a euphemism: cf. "the late unpleasantness" for our Civil War. For the government of the gen., see § 350. c (219); B. 206. 2; G. 376; H. 454 (406. ii); H-B. 350.

11 17 quod: conj., as to the fact that; § 572. a (333. a); B. 299. 2; G. 525. 2; H. 588. 3. N. (516. ii, 2, N.); H-B. 552. 2. — pagum: the Tigurini.

11 18 suis, to their people: § 302. d (190. a); B. 236. 1; G. 204. N.1; H. 494. 1 (441. 1); H-B. 250. 2. a.

11 19 ne tribueret, he should not ascribe it: cf. reminisceretur, l. 15.

11 21 contendèrent, niterentur: subjv. of result. — dolo, craft; insidiis, ambuscade. For these ablatives, see § 431 (254. b); B. 218. 3; G. 401. N.6; H. 476. 3 (425. ii, 1, N.); H-B. 438. 1.

11 22 ne committeret ut, etc.: § 568. N.1 (332. e); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 566. 1 (498. ii. N.3). — ubi constitissent, where they had taken their stand.

12 1 Chap. 14. eo sibi, etc.: Direct, —

Es mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii com- memoraverunt (or vos commemorastis) memoria teneo, atque eo gravius fero, quo minus merito populi Romani accierunt; qui si . . . sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere; sed eo deceptus est, quod neque commissum a se intellegebat qua re timeret, neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si . . . oblivisci velit (velim), num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod me invito iter . . . temptastis, quod Haeduos, . . . vexastis, memoriam deponere potest (possum)? Quod vestra victoria . . . gloriarnini, quodque tam diu vos impune iniurias tulisse admirarnini, eodem pertinet. Consuerunt enim di immortales quo gravius homines . . . doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci volunt . . . his . . . impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea quae pollicemini [vos] facturos intellegam, et si Haeduis de iniuriis quas . . . intulistis . . . satisfacietis [ego], vobiscum pacem faciam.

12 1 eo (cf. note on quo minus, l. 3) minus . . . dari, he had all the less hesitation. — dubitationis: § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.
13. eo gravius . . . quo minus, he was the more incensed . . . in that . . . not, etc.: § 414. a (106. c, 250. R.); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424 and a.

4 qui si . . . fuisset, now if they (the Roman people) had been.

5 non fuisse (for futurum fuisse, it would not have been; and see § 437. a (264. b, 308 d. N.); B. 271. 1. b, 322. b; G. 597. 3 (a); H. 525. 2, 583 (476. 5, 511. 1. N.3); H-B. 582. 3. a. N.2 — eo deceptum [esse], they had been deceived by this.

6 quare timeret — propter quod, with quicquam for its understood antecedent. The clause stands as subject of commissum [esse], which in turn depends on intellegaret: because they (the Roman people) did not know they had done anything to cause them to fear.

7 quod si . . . vellet, but if they (or he) should consent to forget, etc.: § 397. a (240. b); B. 185. 2; G. 333. 1, 610. R.1; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); H-B. 388. a.— contumeliae: for construction, cf. incommodi, 11. 16.

8 num . . . posse, could they (or he), he asked, etc.: § 586 (338); B. 315. 2; G. 651. R.1; H. 642. 2 (523. ii. 2); H-B. 591. a. The infin. is used because the question is not a real one expecting an answer, but a rhetorical one asked for effect, and implying its own answer. Such questions are treated in indir. disc. as declarative sentences.— iniuriarum depends on memoriam below.
12 9 eo invito, against his will; we should expect se, referring to the subject of posse, but Caesar's mind wavers between himself and the Roman people, so that the pronoun does not exactly refer to the subject.

12 10 quod . . . vexassent is a clause of fact, properly indic.: § 572 (333); B. 286; G. 525; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555; it is subjv. by indir. disc.

12 11 quod: cf. note on quod, 11. 17. — sua: i.e. the Helveticans; so se tulisse, that they had committed. — quod . . . admirarentur: the two quod clauses are used as the subject of pertinere, as for their boasting, etc., and as for their wondering, etc., it tended in the same direction; i.e. it all belonged together in the divine purpose of exalting them expressly to make the fall more marked. "Divico had not said anything in the way of direct boasting. This eloquent passage was perhaps an answer to his manner, or to the fact that he was the same Divico who had slain Lucius Cassius."

12 13 consuusse: present in force; § 205. N. 2 (143. c. N.); B. 262. a; G. 175. 5; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

12 14 quo: cf. note on 7 15.

12 15 quos . . . his, to grant an interval of prosperity and longer impunity to those whom they wish to punish for their guilt; the relative clause, as usual, preceding: § 308. d (201. c); G. 620; H. 683. 2. n. (572. ii. n.); H-B. 284. 5. Observe the change to primary tenses, when the language of Caesar expresses a general truth.

12 18 cum, though: § 549 (326); B. 399; G. 587; H. 598 (515. iii); H-B. 526. — sibi, to him, Caesar.

12 19 facturos [esse]: sc. eos. — Haeduis: dat. after satisfaciant supplied from the next clause, pay damages.

12 20 ipsis (the Haedui): dat. after intulerint.

12 22 Write Divico's reply in dir. disc.

12 24 testem: another allusion to the victory over Cassius.

13 2 Chap. 15. equitatum. Who made up the cavalry? See chapter on military affairs, 1. 2.

13 4 coactum habebat, lit. had collected, more strictly held (had in hand) after being collected: § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 7; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. i. n.); H-B. 605. 5. — videant: subjv. of purpose.

13 5 faciant: subjv. of indir. quest., quas being interrog. — cupiidius, too eagerly: § 291. a (93. a); B. 240. i; G. 297. 2; H. 498 (444. i); H-B. 241. 2. — novissimum agmen, the rear; agmen is the army in line of march (ago), and its newest part is that which comes along last. See chapter on military affairs, vi.

13 6 alieno loco, on unfavorable ground; so suo would be favorable (cf. "one's own ground"). For construction, see § 429. i (258. f. 1); B. 228. i. b; G. 385. n. 1; H. 485. i (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436.
13 8 equitibus: abl. of means.
13 10 novissimo agmine (loc. abl.), at their rear. — proelio: abl. of manner or means.
13 12 satis habebat, held it sufficient. — hostem ... prohibere: in a kind of pred. agreement with satis, as object of habebat. — rapanis: § 400 (243); B. 214. 2; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 2.
13 13 ita ... uti, in such a way that (correlative). — dies: cf. with diebus, 11 8, and note the difference between the acc. and the abl. of time.
13 15 quinis aut senis: distributives, implying that this was the constant or average daily distance between the two armies. They apparently marched along the Saône, in the direction of Châlons. Their exact route from the Saône towards Autun is uncertain. The country here is very irregular and broken; so that it was impossible for Caesar to get any advantage by a rapid march or by an attack on the Helvetican rear. He consequently followed them, watching his chance. — milibus: § 406 (247); B. 217; G. 296; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. d.
13 17 Chap. 16. Haeduos frumentum, demanded corn of the Hædui: § 396 (239 c); B. 178. 1. a; G. 339; H. 411 (374); H-B. 393.
13 18 essent pollitici: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc., which (he said) they had promised. — flagitare: histor. infin.; § 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B. 595. Notice that this construction, like the imperfect tense, only describes a situation, and never advances the narrative. The word expresses an earnest and repeated demand accompanied with reproaches. — frigora, the cold seasons, or spells of cold; not the cold in general. The climate of Gaul in Caesar's day was much colder than that of France now. The change has come from clearing away the forests and draining the marshes, which then covered much of the country.
13 20 frumenta: the plur. is regularly used of standing grain. The crops of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last of June); the green fodder (pabuli) was scarce because Caesar was following in the path of the Helveticans, whose thousands of cattle had almost swept the country bare. — ne ... quidem, not even: § 322. f. (151. e); B. 347. 1; G. 448. 2; H. 569. iii. 2.
13 22 frumento: abl. after uti. — flumine: § 429. a (258. g); B. 218. 9; but G. 389; H. 476 (420. 1. 3); H-B. 426. — navibus: § 409 (248. c. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — propterea ... quod: see 1 6.
13 23 ab Arari: i.e. towards the valley of the Loire, westerly, but by what road is unknown.
13 25 conferri, etc. [frumentum]: a climax. They said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was already at hand.
14 1 quo die: note the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, but do not translate it; see § 307. a (200. a); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.
14 2 metiri, serve; see chapter on military affairs, iv. f.
14 4 Diviciaco et Lisco: abl. in apposition with principibus. — summo magistratui praeerat, held the chief office, of which the Celtic title was guerg breth, "executor of judgment," represented in Latin by vergobretus.
14 6 in suos, over his people.
14 7 posset: sc. frumentum. For the subjv., see § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.
14 8 propinquis, with the enemy so near: not attribute, but predicate; an abl. abs.
15 1 sublevetur: cf. essent pollliciti, 13 18, and note; also sit destitutus just below; § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 508. 3; H. 649. 1 (528. i); H-B. 535. 2. a.
15 4 Chap. 17. quod: sc. id, object of proponit.
15 5 esse non nullos, etc.: Direct, —
Sunt non nulli quorum auctoritas... valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hi... multitudinem deterrent ne frumentum conferant quod debent: praestat, si iam principatum... obtinere non possunt, Gallorum... imperia... perferre; neque dubitant quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romanis,... libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem vestra (or Romanorum) consilia quaeque in castris gerantur (geruntur) hostibus enuntiantur; hi a me coerkeri non possunt. Quin etiam, quod necessario... coactus Caesari (tibi) enuntiavi, intellego... quanto id cum periculo fecerim, et ob eam causam quan diu potui tacui.
15 6 privatim plus possint, have more power in private station: see note on 3 20.
15 7 improba oratione, reckless talk.
15 8 ne... conferant, from bringing: § 558. b (331. e. 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 596. 2 (505. ii); H-B. 502. 3. b.
15 11 neque dubitate quin: § 537. a (319. a); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b.—superaverint: perf. subjv. — una: an adv.
15 18 Haeduis: dat.; § 558 (229); B. 188. 2. d; G. 347; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371.—sint erepturi: the first periphrastic conjugation. It almost equals eripiant, but emphasizes the future intention of the Romans.
15 14 a se: i.e. by Liscus, as chief magistrate. — quod... enuntiarit: cf. 11 17, 12 11, and notes.
15 15 coactus, on compulsion (lit. being forced).
15 16 quanto . . . fecerit: cf. quas . . . faciant, 13 5 and note.—id:
i.e. quod . . . enuntiari.
15 19 Chap. 18. pluribus praesentibus, in the presence of many;
observe that the abl. abs. will rarely bear a literal translation, but its force
must be brought out in various ways.
15 20 iactari, bandied about (frequentative of iacio).
15 21 Liscum retinet, [but] keeps Liscus. The omission of the conj.
(asyndeton) is very common in Cæsar's rapid narrative.—ex solo, from
him in private.
15 22 secreto (from secerno), each by himself.
15 23 esse vera (sc. haec), that the facts are these.—ipsum esse Dumn-
origem, etc.: Direct,—
Ipse est Dumnorix . . . cupidus rerum novarum. Compluris annos por-
toria . . . redempta habet, . . . quod illo licente contra licerī audītemo. His
rebus et suam rem . . . auxit et facultatis . . . comparavit; magnum nume-
rum equitatus . . . ait et circum se habet, neque solum domi sed etiam apud
. . . civitatis largiter potest; atque . . . matrem . . . conlocavit, ipse . . . uxo-
rem habet, sororem . . . conlocavit. Favet et cupit Helvetiis . . . edit . .
Caesarem . . . quod . . . frater . . . est restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis,
summam in spem . . . venit; imperio populi Romani . . . de ea quam habet
gratia, desperat.
15 24 summa audacia, [a man] of the utmost boldness. The general
word is rarely, as here, omitted after a proper name with an abl. of
quality.
15 25 rerum novarum: the regular expression for a change of govern-
ment, revolution, or coup d'état. Such overturnings seem to have been
frequent in Gaul.—portoria, customs dues or tolls, levied at the frontier;
collected, apparently, as by the Romans, through publicani, who bid for the
contract at public auction and made what they could above the contract
price. The Hœdui controlled at least a part of the Saône, which was a
water-way into the centre of Gaul. It was customary among the ancients
to levy tolls or blackmail on goods passing through their territories.
16 1 redempta: agreeing with vectigalia, and taken with habere, had
bought in (cf. 8 9, 13 4).
16 2 illo licente, when he bid: see note on 15 19.
16 4 ad largiendum, for bribery, to buy political support: § 506 (300);
B. 338. 3; G. 432; H. 628 (541. iii. n.2); H-B. 612. iii.
16 7 causa, for the sake: as always when thus following a gen.—poten-
tiae, power, as an attribute of the person; potestas is power to do anything;
facultas, opportunity; imperium, military authority.
16 8 Biturigibus: near the modern Bourges, west of the Hœdui.
16 9 uxorem: the daughter of Orgetorix; see 3 22. — ex matre, on the mother's side (a half-sister).

16 10 nuptum: supine; § 509 (302); B. 340. i; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618; see Vocab. under conlocare.

16 11 Helvetiis: dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. 1); H-B. 362. ii.

16 12 suo nomine, on his own account: a mercantile phrase applying to business debts, etc.

16 14 si quid accidat: a mild phrase, in case of any disaster; future less vivid protasis with venire as apodosis; § 589 (337); B. 319. B; G. 658; H. 646 (527. ii); cf. H-B. 580.

16 15 obtinendi: gerund or gerundive? See 3 11 and note.

16 16 imperio (abl. of time and cause), under the rule.

16 18 quod . . . factum, in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish fought the other day. The idea expressed in English by whereas, as to the fact that, and the like is regularly expressed in Latin by a quod-clause with the indic., almost independent of the rest of the sentence; cf. 11 17, 12 11, 15 14, and notes.

16 19 initium fugae: it is implied that this action was treacherous.

16 21 auxilio Caesari: § 382. 1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 360 and b.

16 24 Chap. 19. res, facts; see note on 4 4. — accederent: § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. b; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525. This word is used as a kind of pass. of addo. — quod . . . traduxisset, the fact that (as he learned) he had led, etc. The verbs in these quod-clauses are in the subjv. on the principle of implied or informal indir. disc.; cf. 13 18, 15 1, and notes.

16 25 inter eos: i.e. the Helvetii and Sequani. — dandos: cf. pontem faciendum curat, 11 5 and note.

16 26 iniuissu suo, etc., without his authority or that of the state. For form, see § 94. c (71. b); B. 57. 1; G. 70. A; H. 143. 1 (134); H-B. 106. 1; here suo is equivalent to a genitive.


16 28 causae: gen. depending on satis, which is used as a noun. — in eum . . . animadverteret, should proceed against or punish him (see Vocab.): a clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591 (503); cf. H-B. 521. 1.

17 3 quod . . . cognoverat, that he well knew, etc. (the present inceptive, cognosco, having the meaning to learn). This clause, in apposition with unum (only one thing), might in English be introduced by some such word as namely.
I. 18-20.]

The Helvetic War. 279

17 4 studium, attachment, as a partisan.
17 5 voluntatem, good will, as a friend. Note the absence of connectives in vivid narration.
17 6 eius: i.e. of Dumnorix. — supplicio, punishment or execution. This word is derived from the adj. supplex, down-bent, signifying on the bended knee; i.e. either as a suppliant for mercy, or, as here, to receive the blow of the executioner.
17 7 prius quam conaretur, before he should attempt: § 556. b (327); B. 292. 1. a; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. a.
17 10 cui, etc.: an easier construction would be cuius fidei omnes res credebat. — summam ... fidem, full confidence.
17 11 eo: i.e. Diviciacus. — commonefacit, reminds or notifies (see Vocab.).
17 12 ipso: i.e. Diviciacus.
17 13 apud se, in his (Caesar's) presence.
17 14 ut ... statuat: cf. note on 6 10. — offensione animi, displeasure (of Diviciacus); ipse, which follows, refers to Caesar: the gist of the request is in sine eius offensione. Caesar hopes, in what steps he takes or orders to be taken against Dumnorix, not to incur the resentment of his brother.
17 17 CHAP. 20. complexus: i.e. he embraces Caesar's knees or falls at his feet.
17 18 ne quid gravius (a common euphemistic phrase), no severe measures. Notice that gravius is an adj., modifying quid (anything), a subst.— scire se, etc.: Direct, —

Scio haec esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ego doloris capitis, propter terea quod, cum ego gratia plurimum [possem] ... ille minimum ... posset, per me crevit; quibus opibus ... paene ad perniciem meam utilitum. Ego tamen et am ore ... commoveor. Quod si quid ei a te acciderit, cum ego hunc locum ... apud te teneam (teneo), nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum; qua ex re ... totius Galliae animi a me avertatur.
17 19 plus doloris: except as an adv., this comparative is mostly used, as here, with the part. gen.
17 20 ipse, se, suam, sese: all refer to Diviciacus; ille to Dumnorix, which is also the subject of crevisset and uteretur.
17 22 opibus ac nervis, sineus of power, after uteretur: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
17 23 gratiam, as well as perniciem, takes suam.
17 24 amore fraterno, love to his brother: § 348. a (217. a); B. 353. 5. b; H. 439. 3 (395. N.2); H-B. 354. d.
17 25 si quid accidisset (a euphemism; cf. incommodi, 11 16 and note): pluperf. representing fut. perf. indic. (acciderit) of the direct by sequence
of tenses; a future condition; § 516. f (397. f); B. 319. B; G. 656, 657; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 580. b and n. — ei: i.e. Dumnorix.

18 1 futurum [esse] uti . . . averterentur, the hearts of all the Gauls would be turned from him: periphrastic fut. infin.; § 569. a (147. c. 3; 288. f); B. 115, 270. 3; G. 248; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. c. Cf. 8 18.

18 4 rogat [ut] . . . faciat: § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.2; H. 565. 4 (499. 2).

18 5 tanti, of so great account: § 417 (252. a); B. 203. 3; G. 380. 1; H. 448. 4 (405); H-B. 356. 1.

18 6 eius . . . precibus, in deference to his wish and prayers. — condonet (subjv. of result): this word means to give up a right to some one; here the just resentment of Cæsar was given up to Diviciacus.

18 8 reprehendat: why subjv.? cf. 15 16. Note the same construction in the next clause.

18 10 praeterita, things bygone, the past.

18 11 custodes: i.e. spies.

18 15 CHAP. 21. qualis esset, etc.: indir. quest. after cognoscerent. — natura, character. — qualis . . . ascensus: i.e. what kind of an ascent there was at various points of its circuit. — qui cognoscerent: § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. 1); H-B. 502. 2; the antecedent of qui is eos, quosdam, or some such word, to be supplied as object of misit, he sent men to ascertain. Such a relative may in Latin always imply its own antecedent, as in English the relatives whoever and what; cf. qui . . . appellantur, 1 2 and note.

18 16 facilem: sc. ascensum. — de tertia vigilia: cf. 10 7 and note.

18 17 pro praetore, with powers of praetor. The praetor, like the consul, held the imperium or power to command; a legatus, not possessing this in his own right, might be temporarily invested with it by his commander. Labienus, and perhaps others of Cæsar's lieutenants, had the imperium in their own right, by special grant.

18 18 ducibus: a kind of predicate apposition, as guides; § 284 (185. a); B. 168; G. 325; H-B. 319. 1. — qui . . . cognoverant: i.e. who had been of the reconnoitering party.

18 19 consili: a predicate gen. after quid sit; § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447 (402); H-B. 340. Such genitives are not rare in Cæsar, but are probably more or less colloquial. — sit: cf. reprehendat, 1 8, above.

18 20 de quarta vigilia: about 2 a.m., the sun at this season rising here about four o'clock.

18 22 rei: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. i (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.
Sulla, the dictator, had conducted the war against Mithridates about thirty years before (B.C. 88–84), and Crassus that against Spartacus some years later (B.C. 71).—in: sc. exercitu.

19 1 Chap. 22. teneretur: subjv. after cum, describing the situation; cf. 4 12, 6 14, 7 17, and notes.

19 2 ipse: Caesar.

19 3 passibus: abl. of degree of difference after abesset; § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424; not after longius; § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.4; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. n.2); cf. H-B. 416. d.

19 4 aut Labieni: after adventus and coordinate with ipsius.—equo admissō, at full speed (with reins thrown loose).

19 6 armis: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans; see Fig. 11, Fig. 28, Fig. 87, etc.

19 7 insignibus: i.e. devices on shields and helmets,—stags' horns, eagles' plumes, etc.; see Fig. 11. The inference from this report would be that Labienus and his force had been cut to pieces, and Caesar must expect an attack at once. This accounts for his next movement, which was to fall back and wait in line of battle, while Labienus was vainly expecting him.

19 8 ut, as.

19 9 ne . . . committeret . . . essent: subject of erat praecoptum; § 566 (331. h); B. 295. 1.

19 10 ut . . . fieret, in order that the attack might be made on all sides at once: a purpose clause.

19 11 monte occupato, etc., having seized the height, continued to look out for our men. Observe how the imperfects exspectabat and abstinebat describe the situation; see note on 3 5.

19 12 multō die: abl. of time, late in the day.—denique, not till: see Vocab.

20 2 quod non vidisset, what he had not seen; sc. id, object of renunciassē. —pro viso, as if seen; viso is used here as a noun.—quo, sc. codem, at the same interval as usual, i.e. five or six miles; see 13 15.

20 3 milia: acc. of extent; §425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

20 5 Chap. 23. diei: § 359. b (214. g); B. 201. 3. a; G. 360; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. c; making postridie more formal and precise.—omnino, in all (i.e. only).

20 6 cum, within which, a common Latin idiom.—metiri: cf. 14 2 and note.—Bibracte, the modern Mont Beuvray, a considerable hill, about ten miles west of Autun (Augustodunum). The place afterwards became a Roman colony, and contains numerous Roman remains.
20 8 milibus: cf. 19 3 and note. — rei frumentariae (dat.), the supply of corn.

20 9 prospiciendum: impers.; sc. esse. — itaque: words in italics are conjectural readings. — avertit: towards the north, as the Helvetii were travelling westward to reach the Loire.

20 10 fugitivos, runaways, i.e. fugitive slaves.

20 11 decurionis: see chapter on military affairs, 1. 2.

20 12 existimarent: the subjv. is here used idiomatically because Caesar was not sure of the real reason; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. a.

20 13 eo magis, all the more: cf. note on 2 17. — superioribus, etc.: concessive, i.e. though they had gained an advantageous position, still they did not attack the Helvetii.

20 14 commisissent: see note on existimarent above, l. 12. — eo quod, etc., for this reason, because they felt sure that they (the Romans) could be cut off from their supplies; eo is abl. of cause, not different in sense from eo (magis) above, though its origin is different. — re: abl. of separation.

20 15 itinere converso: i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, their vain confidence led them to return and give Caesar the chance that he had been waiting for.

20 18 Chap. 24. id: governed by animum advertit treated as an active compound verb. The tense of the verb is perfect, as usual after postquam; cf. note on arbitrati sunt, 4 17.

20 19 sustineret: subjv. of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 592. 2.

20 20 ipse: Caesar himself as opposed to the cavalrty, which he had sent elsewhere. — medio: see Vocab. and cf. § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. r.2; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. n.1); H-B. 244. — triplicem aciem: see chapter on military affairs, vii.

20 21 legionum: gen. of material; § 344 (214. e); B. 197; H-B. 349. The four veteran legions stood side by side, each in three lines; see plan, Fig. 16.

20 22 summo: cf. note on medio, 1. 20. — proxime: these new legions last raised (cf. 8 23) were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle, and so they were set to guard the camp.

20 23 auxilia: see chapter on military affairs, 1. 3. — ac totum, etc.]: this clause may well be read in this connection, though many editors omit it; cf. note on eorum, 9 17. The force of ac is and thus; see Vocab.

20 24 sarcinas: see chapter on military affairs, 1. 6 and 1v. e, and Fig. 14. In a regular battle these were left behind in camp. So here, they were deposited in one spot, which was to be the site of the camp when made
(muniri, 21) by the less trustworthy troops. Nothing is said of the baggage train (impedimenta), but it probably was sent on towards Bibracte.

21 eum: i.e. the spot chosen (locum, 20). — his: i.e. the soldiers last mentioned. — superiore: i.e. those who were at the top of the hill. — constiterant, were stationed; cf. § 476 (279. e); B. 262. a; G. 241. 3. r.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

21 cum omnibus suis Carris, etc.: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the habit of these peoples to go to battle with their families and their carts for encouragement as well as for defence.

21 confertissima acie . . . phalange facta: see introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

21 reiecto, etc.: the ancient cavalry were no match for any considerable number of foot-soldiers, and hence were not depended upon for the main engagement. They opened the fight, but were expected to flee as soon as the foot advanced.

22 Chap. 25. suo [equo remoto], etc.: i.e. his own and those of the officers and staff. This was often done before an engagement (cf. Sail. Cat. 59). Caesar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run." — omnium: notice that the poss. gen. and the poss. adj. have the same sense, and so may be coördinated; cf. 19 and note.

22 pilis: see chapter on military affairs, IV. d and Fig. 15.

22 Gallis . . . impedimento: dat. of service and of person affected; § 382. 1. n.1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and b.

22 pluribus, several.

22 inflexisset: subjv. with cum causal; cf. prae- starent, 2 15. — sinistra impedita, since the left hand was hampered, which carried the shield.

22 multi ut, so that in the case of many, multi being placed first for emphasis,

22 mons: see battle plan, Fig. 16. — eo: an adv.— mille: acc. of distance.

22 capto monte, etc.: i.e. after the Helvetii had gained the mountain and the Romans were going up to attack them.

22 agmen claudebant, brought up their rear. The Boii or Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had been in front of the Helvetian line of march,
and were consequently in the rear when they faced round to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (latere aperto) as they came on the field from the road (hence ex itinere).

22 16 circumvenire: sc. coeperunt.
22 18 conversa signa . . . intulerunt, faced about (lit. bore their reversed ensigns upon the enemy), and charged in two divisions. The divisions stood not back to back, but at an angle, facing outward,—the two front lines facing forward, while the third met the flank attack of the new-comers (venientis), i.e. the Boii and Tulingi. The phrase conversa signa refers only to the movement of the third line, while intulerunt denotes the action of the entire army. The exact position of this battle is uncertain. It is usually placed at a point between Chides and Luzy, near the river Alène, and about ten miles south of Mont Beuvray.

23 1 CHAP. 26. ancipiti: i.e. facing in both directions.—pugnatum est: imper. expressions should not be translated literally; here, a contest went on, the fighting continued, or something of the kind.
23 3 alteri: the Helvetians; alteri: the Boii, etc.
23 4 nam: in reference to the previous sentence; i.e. they did not flee, but retired in good order, for, etc.
23 5 proelio: abl. of time.—ab hora septima: i.e. from a little past 1 P.M.; sunset was about eight, so that each of the twelve daylight hours was about an hour and a quarter of our time. In the Roman reckoning an hour was one-twelfth of the time, whether long or short, between sunrise and sunset, and varied from about forty-five minutes to an hour and a quarter. —pugnatum sit: cf. note on l. 1. For mood, cf. sint, 12 18.

24 1 aversum hostem, a fleeting enemy.—ad multam noctem, till late in the night.
24 2 pro vallo, as a barricade.
24 3 e loco superiore, from vantage-ground, i.e. the height of the carts, etc.
24 4 coniciebant, subiciebant, hurled (from above), thrust (from below) For the form of these words, see § 6. d (11. b. 2); B. 9. 3; H. 58. 6 (36. 4); H-B. 30. 1. —carros redasque: the former a two-wheeled cart, the latter a four-wheeled wagon. See Fig. 55.
24 5 mataras ac tragulas: these were peculiar forms of pike or lance used by the western nations of Europe, not yet certainly identified.
24 6 impedimentis castrisque: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
24 7 potiti sunt: notice the use of tenses in the above passage. The narrative proceeds as far as pugnatum est (histor. perfect), then, as it
answering a question why the fight continued thus, Cæsar gives a description of the situation with pluperfect and imperfects. "The Gauls had made a rampart of their carts and from this they kept discharging missiles and using other means of defence." Then the narrative is resumed in the clause with potiti sunt: cf. note on 3 5. — captus est: observe that the agreement is with the nearer subject; § 317. c (205. d); B. 255. 2; G. 285. 1; H. 392 (493. 1); H-B. 329. 2.

24 10 Lingonum: i.e. the southern part of Champagne, towards the north; see map of Gaul, Fig. 2. The chief town of that region, now Langres, is about ninety miles from Mont Beuvray. It is very likely, however, that they reached the Lingones farther west. Napoleon III puts the end of their flight at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.

24 11 propter, etc.: gives the reason of morati. — cum ... potuissent: here the description of the situation (see notes on 6 14, 7 17, 11 7) is so clearly the cause of the main action that we may translate cum since and refer the subjv. to cum causal (cf. cum praestarent, 2 15; cum inflexisset, 22 8).

24 13 Lingonas: Greek form of the acc. common in these names of tribes; § 81, 82 (63. f, 64); B. 47. 3; G. 66. 4; H. 109. 5 (68); cf. H-B. 95.

24 14 qui si iuvissent, for if they should, etc.; the direct would be si iuveritis. — se, etc. = se (Lingonas) eodem loco habiturum (esse) quo Helvetios (haberet).

24 20 Chap. 27. eos: i.e. Helvetios.

24 21 essent: subjv. of integral part or attraction; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539. — iussisset: i.e. Cæsar; this change of subject, though unusual in Latin, is justified by the mention of eum in l. 18.

24 22 qui ... perfugissent: i.e. fugitive slaves. Cæsar in his demand would say qui perfugerunt, but the subjv. is used in the indir. form; § 592. 2 (341. c); B. 323; G. 663. 2; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. a.

24 24 conqueruntur, conferuntur: to express the pass. it is often better in English to use the act. form, while they were hunting these up, etc.; the present tense is regular with dum; § 556 (276. c); B. 293. 1; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4 (467. 4); H-B. 559.

24 25 Verbigenerus: from the parts between Berne and Lucerne.

24 26 perterriti: agreeing with the persons referred to in milia. — ne armis, etc.: i.e. either in sheer desperation or in the hope of escape. Note that after verbs of fearing ne is translated by that or lest.

25 2 occultari, be hid from Cæsar; ignorari, unknown to anybody.

25 3 existimarent: the supposed reason of the Helvetii, hence the subjv.; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. a; cf. 20 12 and note.

25 4 contenderunt ad, made (rapidly) for.
25 5 Chap. 28. quod: accustom yourself to the common use of the relative, where our idiom expects a demonstrative or personal. — quorum: the antecedent is his (dat.) following imperavit, the dir. object of which is uti . . . reducterent.

25 6 sibi: dat. of reference; § 378 (235. b); B. 188. 1. n.; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. n.3); H-B. 370. — purgati: perfect participle used as an adj.; § 495 (291. b); B. 337. 2; G. 250. r.2; H. 640. 3 (550. N.3); H-B. 320. iii.

25 7 reductos . . . habuit: i.e. he massacred them all.

25 8 in deditionem accepit: by this act they became formally the subjects of the Republic, and were entitled to its protection, as well as required to obey its requisitions and pay tribute.

25 11 reverti, turn back (from a march or journey; redire, go back, from a place of rest). — frugibus: grain and other field produce.

25 12 tolerarent: best regarded as a purpose clause like, “nothing [for] to eat,” — § 531. 2 (317), — but referred by many grammarians to the “characteristic” use of the relative; B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1 (503. i); H-B. 517. 2 and a. The two constructions, having grown up side by side in Latin, were very often confounded.

25 13 ipsos: the Helvetians and their allies as opposed to the others who were to provide food.

25 14 ea ratione, with this view.

25 18 Allobrogibus: these were within the Province, but the Latin often adds an explanatory word by means of que. The Helvetii were thus in the Roman manner stationed as a kind of colony on the frontier towards Germany. The wisdom of the Romans in the defence of their Empire is not less remarkable than their prowess in war.

25 19 potentibus Haeduis, to the Haedui, at their request: dat. after concessit, of which the object is ut Boios conlocarent. The Haedui were anxious for this accession to their strength because they were oppressed by the Sequani (cf. 27 21 ff.). It will be remembered that the Boii were emigrating when they joined the Helvetians and had no proper home to return to. The Haedui gave them land between the Elaver and the Liger rivers, and they appear later in several parts of Gaul. Their prowess in war made them valuable allies.

26 1 parem . . . atque ipsi erant, equal with themselves: § 324. c (156. a. 4); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 508. 5 (451. 5); H-B. 307. 2. a.

26 3 Chap. 29. tabulæ, tablets, of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called stilus. See Fig. 27. — litteris Graecis: not in the Greek language, but in Greek letters. These were probably learned from colonists at Marseilles, as the
Gauls had no alphabet of their own. The Druids made use of Greek letters (Bk. vi. ch. 14), but the Gauls in general seem to have been ignorant of them (Bk. v. ch. 48). Specimens of Gallic names on coins appear in the names DUBNOREX, ΔΙΒΙΣΙΑΚΟΣ, VERCINGETORIXS. See Fig. 29, Fig. 82.

265 ratio, an account: followed by the indir. quest. qui . . . exisset.

266 possent: not the subjv. of indir. quest., but of characteristic; § 535. a (320. a); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; II. 591. 1 (503. i); H-B. 521. 1. a.

2610 ad milia XCII, about 92,000. — summa, the sum; fuerunt agreeing with the plur. predicate. Deducting the Boii, who were adopted by the Hæduii, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives (to be sold as slaves), in this short campaign, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other non-combatants. The carnage seems extraordinary even under the conditions of ancient warfare. But, as in all battles, many more must have escaped than the record showed.

Campaign against Ariovistus. — The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before under Ariovistus, a chief of the Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hæduii, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman Senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship to the Hæduii (ch. 11); and at the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (ch. 35), recognizing his claims on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar's consulship. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

Reading References on the Campaign against Ariovistus.

Abbott's Cæsar, pp. 86–93.
Dodge's Cæsar, pp. 82–99.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 9.
Froude's Cæsar, pp. 231–238.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, pp. 36–46.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 4.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, pp. 38–44.
26 15 Chap. 30. gratulatum: § 509 (302); B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.

26 16 intellegere, etc.: Direct,—

Intellegimus nos, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuris populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisti (repeteris), tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse; propterea quod ea consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquerunt, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum... iudicassent, reliquasque civitatis stipendias haberent.

26 17 populi Romani, against, etc. (obj. gen. after iniurii).—ab his repetisset, had inflicted on them; see Vocab., and cf. 10 14-18.

26 19 eo consilio, with this design: explained by the purpose clause uti... haberent; § 531. 1. N. 1 (317. a); G. 546. 2; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 3. a.—florentissimis rebus: i.e. with no plea of necessity. Translate by a concessive clause.

26 21 domicilio, for habitation: dat. of service.

26 25 concilium totius Galliae: of course Cæsar had no authority either to allow or to prohibit a congress of independent Gaul. But, considering his power and ambition, the Gauls thought it best to secure his countenance (voluntate, not auctoritate) beforehand. They also had business that specially concerned him.

27 2 iure iurando... sanxerunt, ordained under oath [of secrecy]; the object is ne quis, etc.

27 3 enuntiaret: subjv. with ne, after sanxerunt, used as a verb of commanding; § 563. d (331. d); B. 295. 4; G. 546. 2; H. 565 (498. 1); H-B. 502. 3. a; cf. also 6 10 and note.— nisi quibus, etc., except (to those) to whom some commission should be assigned (pluperf. for fut. perf. in dir. disc.). For omission of the antecedent of quibus, cf. note on qui... appellantur, 1 9.

27 5 Chap. 31. eo concilio dimisso, when this assembly had been (held and) dissolved: i.e. after providing for the business now to be described. — idem (eidsm): nom. plur.

27 7 secreto. apart.—in occulto, in a secret place. These words are probably genuine.

27 8 Caesari ad pedes, at Cæsar’s feet. Cæsari is dat. of reference; § 377 (235. a); B. 188. 1; G. 350. 1; H. 425. 4. n. (384. 4. n.); H-B. 368.

27 9 non minus, etc.: sc. dixerunt: Direct,—

Non minus id contendimus et laboramus, ne ea quae dixerimus enuntiatur, quam uti ea quae volumus impetremus; propterea quod, si enuntiatum erit, summum in cruciatum nos venturos videmus.
Campaign against Ariovistus. 289

27 9 id: in app. with ne... enuntiarentur.
27 13 Galliae, etc.: Direct,—

Galliae totius factiones sunt duae; harum alterius principatum tenet Haedui, alterius Arverni. Hi cum... multos annos contenderent, factum est uti... Germani... arcesserentur. Horum primo... milia... transierunt; posteaquam agros... homines... adamarunt, traducti sunt plures; nunc sunt in Gallia ad cxx milium numerum (more probably ad... milia numero). Cum his Haedui... armis contenderunt; magnam calamitatem pulsi acceperunt, omnem nobilitatem... amiserunt. Quibus proeliis... fractiv... qui... plurimum ante... potuerunt, coacti sunt... obsides dare, etc. Unus ego sum ex omni civitate... qui adduci non poterim ut iuvarem aut liberos meos obsides darem. Ob eam rem... profugi et Romam ad senatum veni... quod solus neque iure iurando neque obisdibus tenebar.

Sed peius victoribus Sequanis accedit,... quod Ariovistus... consedit tertiamque partem agri... qui... optimus... occupavit, et nunc... decedere iubet, propterea quod... milia hominum xxiii... venirent, quibus locus ac sedes parentur (possibly pararentur)... Paucis annis... omnes... pellentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transibunt;... neque enim conferendus est Gallicus cum Germanorum agro, neque haec consuetudo victus cum illa comparanda.

Ariovistus... ut semel... copias... vicit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbe... imperat, obsides... poscit, et... exempla cruciatusque edit, si qua res non ad nutum... eius facta est. Homo est barbarus, iracundus, temerarius; non possunt eius imperia diutius sustineri.

Nisi quid in Caesare... erit auxili, omnibus... idem est faciendum quod Helvetii fecerunt, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium... petant fortunamque, quae cumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubito quin de omnibus... qui apud eum sint (sunt).... supplicium sumat. Caesar... deterre ne maius multitudo... traducatur Galliamque... potest defendere.

27 13 Galliae totius: not to be taken literally, but referring to the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.
27 14 factiones duas: see note on 3 20.—alterius: notice that this word may mean the one as well as the other. It depends on which one you look at first.—principatum, the head.
27 15 Arvernos: these inhabited the mountainous country southwest of the Haedui, the modern Auvergne. They had been conquered in B.C. 121, but not reduced to a province. Before their conquest they had been one of the most powerful tribes. Apparently in the earlier wars the Haedui had befriended the Roman people from antagonism to these rivals.
contenderent: translate as if pluperf.; § 471. b (277. b); B. 260. 4: G. 234; ll. 535 (469. 2); H-B. 485. — factum esse uti, it came to pass that, etc.

Sequanis: these were the rivals of the Hœdui on the north. — mercede: § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. 1.

copias (= opes), resources. — feri ac barbari: as to the condition of the Germans, see Introduction.

adamassent (= adamavissent): § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. — traductos pluris = pluris (Germanos) traductos (esse).

clientis: the subject states of the Ambarri, Segusiavi, etc.

omnem . . . equitatum: of course an exaggeration; Diviciacus was himself a noble, probably a senator; while his brother Dumnorix was a commander of the Hœduan cavalry.

qui . . . potuissent, coactos esse, (they) who had once, etc., were compelled.

quo minus: following a verb of refusing; § 558. b (317. b. N.1); B. 295. 3; G. 547; H. 568. 8 (497. ii. 2); H-B. 502. 3. b; see also note on 7 15.

dicione: i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequanis.

potuerit: the same in dir. disc.; § 535. b (320. b); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. a and ftn. The tense has been retained, as is usual in result clauses; see note on 9 18.

Romam . . . venisse: see note on 3 20. His application was not successful. See Bk. vi. ch. 12. — postulatum: cf. gratulatum, 26 15.

peius . . . accidisse, a worse fate had befallen. Observe that a misfortune is usually said accidere, as if it fell on one, while a good thing is said evenire. — victoribus: here used as an adj., as often.

Ariovistus: supposed to be the German word Heerfœrst, “prince of the host.”

tertiam partem: i.e. upper Alsace, a part of the German conquest of 1870. This was the same proportion of conquered land taken by the German invaders (Burgundians) in this very territory in the fifth century of the Christian era. Such “annexation” seems to have been the ancient common law of conquest (Liv. II. 41).

optimus: this district (Franche-Comté) is one of the most beautiful in France. — nunc . . . iuberet: the same thing was afterwards done by the Burgundians. — altera, a second.

quibus . . . pararentur = to be provided with a place for habitation (subjv. of purpose). — futurum esse uti (periphrastic fut.; cf. note on 18 1), the result would be that.
28 19 neque enim introduces an explanation admitting no doubt: *for you see, for you know, for of course.

28 20 Gallicum: sc. agrum. — hanc = nostram: § 297. a (102. a); B. 87; G. 305; H. 505 (450); H-B. 271. ii. a. N.; said with some feeling of superiority or contempt. The Gauls looked upon the Germans as savages.

28 22 ut . . . vicerit: for mood and tense, see dir. disc.; cf. tense of potuerit. l. 6, above.

28 23 Magetobrigam: somewhere a little northwest of Vesontio (Besançon).

28 85 exempla cruciatusque: a so-called hendiadys. The Latin likes to dwell on an idea by giving its parts separately; edere exempla means to use every known form of (something) on the victims; cruciatus edere would mean to employ tortures. The whole combines the two ideas.

28 27 barbarum, etc., rude, passionate, and hasty.

29 1 nisi, etc., unless they find some aid.

29 2 idem: in apposition with ut . . . experiantur; cf. 4 17, 11 8.

29 3 ut domo emigrent: i.e. to forsake their home.

29 5 haec: notice the emphasis, as if he said: “Why! if this very colloquy should be reported,” etc.—dubitare: sc. se, i.e. Diviciacum.—quin . . . sumat: § 558. a (332. g. r.); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 594. ii (501. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 2. b; cf. note on poenas persolvit. 10 19.

29 7 auctoritate: i.e. his reputation and the fear it inspires.

29 9 Rhenum: acc. after trans in traducatur; § 395. N.² (239. 2. b. N.²; B. 179. 3; G. 331. R.¹; H. 406 (372); H-B. 386. a.

29 13 CHAP. 32. unos, alone: § 134. a (94. a); cf. B. 66; G. 95. R.¹; H. 175. N.¹. This whole scene is illustrative of the Gallic character.

29 15 quae esset: indir. quest. after miratus; cf. 13 5, 15 16, 18 15.

29 16 respondere: histor. infin.; cf. flagitare, 13 18 and note.

29 19 hoc: we may translate, *in this respect*, but for the real construction compare hoc facilius, 2 17. — hoc esse, etc.: Direct, —

Hoc est . . . gravior fortuna Sequanorum . . . quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri . . . audent; absentisque Ariovistae crudelitatem, velut si coram adsit, horrent, propterea quod religiis tamen fugae facultas datur, Sequanis vero, qui . . . Ariovistum receperunt, quorum oppida . . . in potestate eius sunt, omnes cruciatus sunt perferendi.

29 20 ne . . . quidem: notice the position of these words before and after the emphatic word or phrase.

29 21 absentis (predicate), *even when absent*.

29 22 crudelitatem: object of horrenter; § 274. b. (177. c); B. 175. 2. b; G. 330. R.; H. 405. 1 (371. iii. N.¹); H-B. 391. 1. — adesset: § 524 (312); B. 307. 1. 2; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3 and a.
Notes: Cæsar.

29 23 tamen, after all, whatever they might have to suffer. — facultas: on the force of this word, cf. note on potentiae, 16 7.

29 24 Sequanis: dat. of apparent agent with perferendi; § 374 (232); B. 189. 1; G. 355; H. 431 (388); H-B. 373. 1; the Sequani must endure (changing the voice).

30 2 Chap. 33. sibi curae: dat. of service; § 382. 1 and N.1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. a; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and b; cf. 22 6, 22 15.

30 3 et . . . et: construe after adductum, induced by both . . . and. — beneficio . . . auctoritate: the first refers to services which would inspire gratitude, the second to the prestige which would inspire fear in Ariovistus.

30 5 secundum, in accordance with (lit. following).

30 7 putaret: subjv. after qua re, which may be considered equal to propter quas = ut propter eas. — quod, because, or that. — Haeduos, subject of teneri below.

30 8 appellatos (pred.), who had been often called.

30 11 quod: relative; the antecedent is the preceding clause Haeduos . . . Sequanos.

30 14 periculosum: pred., agreeing with Germanos consuescere, etc., he saw it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine, etc.

30 15 sibi : : : temperarios . . . quin . . . exirent, would refrain (check themselves) from going forth. — sibi: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346. 2; H. 426. 4 (385. i); H-B. 362.

30 16 ut, as; fecissent being subjv. as dependent on exirent; § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. n.1. 1); H-B. 539. — Cimbri Teutonique: these German tribes had been crushed by Marius (B.C. 102, 101), after having been for several years a terror upon the Italian frontier.

30 17 exirent: § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); H-B. 502. 3. b.

30 18 [præsertim, etc.]: this clause makes good sense and may be translated.

30 19 Rhodanus = only the Rhone. — rebus: dat. following occurrendum [sibi]; § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376; possibilities which he thought must be met at once. In this clause two things are to be noticed: first, that the Latin regularly puts an antecedent which is in apposition with something preceding in the relative clause, e.g. "which kind," not "a kind which"; and, second, that a verb which governs the dat. cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subject. In both these respects the form must be altered in translating to suit the English idiom.
30 21 ferendus, etc.: in Latin the negative has an attraction for the main verb. We should say, “seemed unendurable,” connecting the negative with the adjective idea.

30 23 CHAP. 34. ut . . . mitteret: a purpose clause, subject of placut.

30 24 medium utriusque, between the two.

30 25 conloquio (dat.), for a conference. — velle, etc., depends on the idea of saying in postularent. ’ Give the direct words of Caesar.

30 27 si quid, etc.: Direct, —

Si quid mihi a Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum venissem; si quid ille me vult, illum ad me venire oportet. [The first condition is contrary to fact; § 589. b (337. b); B. 321. b; G. 597. R. 4; H. 647 (527. iii); H-B. 581 and b. 1; cf. 12 4: the second is a simple present condition; § 589. a. 1 (337. a. 1); B. 319. b; G. 595. R. 4; H. 646 (527. i); cf. H-B. 536.] Praeterea ego neque . . . in eas partis . . . venire audeo quas Caesar possidet, neque exercitum . . . in unum locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem mirum videtur quid in mea Gallia, quam bello vici (vicerim), aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negoti sit.

30 27 opus: § 411. b (243. e. r.); B. 218. 2. a; G. 406; H. 477. iii. N. (414. iv. N. 4); H-B. 430. 2. a.—ipsi: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387)—H-B. 374. Observe in this sentence that the reflexives ipse and se refer to Ariovistus; § 298. e (195. k); B. 249. 3; G. 521. N. 3; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263. 1; and that the demonstratives is and ille refer to Caesar; cf. also note on 3 26.

31 1 quid . . . se velit, wants anything of him (lit. wants him for anything): a colloquial construction; § 390. d (238. b); B. 176. 2; G. 333. R. 2; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); H-B. 397. 1.

31 5 mirum . . . quid . . . esset: a sort of indir. quest.; it seemed strange to him, i.e. he wondered, what business, etc. — in sua Gallia, in his (part of) Gaul. Notice the emphasis of sua.

31 7 negoti: part. gen. with quid; § 346. a. 3 (216. a. 3); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

31 9 CHAP. 35. quoniam, etc.: Direct, —

Quoniam tanto meo populique Romani beneficio adfectus, cum in consulatu meo rex . . . appellatus sit, hanc mihi . . . gratiam referit, ut in conloquium venire . . . gravetur neque de communi re dicendum sibi . . . putet, haec sunt quae ab eo postulo: primum, ne quam multitudinem . . . in Galliam traducat; deinde obsides quos habet ab Haeduis reddat, Sequanisque permittat ut quos illi habent (habeat) voluntate eius reddere . . . iecat; neve Haedus . . . lacesat, neve his . . . bellum inferat. Si id ita fecerit, mihi . . . perpetua gratia . . . cum eo erit; si non impetrabo, ego,— quoniam
... senatus censuit uti quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret ... Haedus ... defenderet, — (ego) Haeduorum injurias non negotiavm.

31 9 tanto ... affectus: see introductory note to this campaign, p. 287.

31 10 beneficio is explained by cum ... esset, and gratiam referret by ut ... putaret; the first sibi refers to Caesar and the second to Ariovistus. In this sentence the causal clause is quoniam ... putaret, and the leading verb is esse: Since, though so greatly favored by the Romans, he made such an (ill) return (hanc gratiam referret) as to grudge coming to a conference when invited, and did not consider that he ought to speak or hear about their common business, (therefore) these were the demands he made (the things he required) of him, etc. Observe that in Latin the significant word, the verb (postularet), becomes in English the noun (demands).

31 15 ne quam, not any.

31 18 eius: Ariovistus; illis: the Sequani.

31 21 si non impetraret: i.e. this pledge or assurance.

31 22 M. Messala, etc.: cf. note on 2 12. This was in B.C. 61.

31 24 obtineret, should hold (as governor), not obtain. Avoid the kindred word in translation. Words are liable to change their meanings in 2000 years. See note on obtinere, 2 1. For construction, cf. note on 6 10. — quod, so far as. — commodo (abl. of specification) rei publicae, to the advantage of the state.

31 25 defenderet: see the reasons in the note on the campaign against Ariovistus, p. 287. — se: a repetition of sese above on account of the long parenthesis.

31 27 Chap. 36. ius esse, etc.: Direct,—

Ius est belli ut qui vicerunt eis quo vicerunt quem ad modum velit imperent; item populus Romanus victis non ad alterius praescriptum ... imperare consuevit. Si ego populo Romano non praecribo quem ad modum suo iure utatur, non oportet me ... in meo iure impediri. Haedui mihi, quoniam belli fortunam temptaverunt et ... superati sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti. Magnum Caesar iniuriam facit qui suo adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat. Haedui (ego) obsides non reddam, neque his ... bellum inferam, si in eo manebant quod convenient stipendumque ... pendunt; si id non fecerint, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani aferit. Quod mihi Caesar denuntiat se Haeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, nemo mecum sine sua pernicie contendit. Cum voleat, congregiatur; intelleget quid invicti Germani ... qui inter annos xiv tectum non subierunt (subierint), virtute possint.

32 1 eis: governed by imperarent. The verbs are in the past by sequence of tenses: § 482, 485 (285, 287. d'); B. 267; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 476, 482. 1.
32 2 victis: governed by imperare. — alterius, any one else’s.
32 5 suo: i.e. the Roman people. — uteretur: subjv. in an indir. quest.
32 6 suo: i.e. Ariovistus. — sibi . . . stipendiarios, tributary to him.
32 8 qui faceret, in making: subjv. also in dir. disc.; § 535. e (320. e);
B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 598 (517); H-B. 523.
32 10 non . . . neque, (on the one hand) he would not restore, etc., but
(on the other) he would not wrongfully, etc.
32 11 iniuria, abl. of manner, § 412. b (248. r.); B. 220. 2; G. 399. N.1;
H. 473. 3 (419. iii. N.2); H-B. 445. 1.
32 13 longe . . . afuturum, the name of brothers would be a great way
off from them, i.e. too far to help them.
32 14 quod, etc.: the whole clause is construed as an adv. acc.: as to
Cesar’s threat, etc.; cf. note on 16 18, and § 572. a (333. a); B. 299. 2;
G. 525. 2; H. 588. iii. N. (516. ii. 2. N.); H-B. 552. 2.
32 15 secum, sua: observe that these refer, one to Ariovistus, the
other to his antagonist; § 300 (196. a); B. 244; G. 520; H. 504. 2 (449. 6);
H-B. 262.
32 16 cum vellet, congregeretur, he might come on when he would.
32 17 inter refers to something coming between two extremes. Hence,
when applied to time, it means the entire interval between the beginning
and the end of a given period, and may be rendered during.
32 19 Chap. 37. eodem tempore, etc.: in Latin the two actions are
made coördinate, but in English we should be more likely to make one
subordinate, at the same time that, etc.
32 20 Treveris: from the region of Treves in the valley of the Moselle.
— questum: supine (after veniebant, supplied from the one preceding);
see 26 15, 28 8, and notes.
32 21 qui . . . essent: § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 650; H. 643 (524);
H-B. 535. 1. a. The following passage is a good example of what is called
informal indir. disc. The formal indir. disc. introduced by a verb of say-
ing has the main clause in the infin. and dependent clauses in the subjv.
But often the verb of saying and the thing said are expressed together in
some one word or phrase, as here questum. In such cases the depend-
ent clauses have the subjv. just as in formal indir. disc.; cf. 13 17, 15 2,
16 24 for similar examples.
32 22 ne . . . quidem: cf. note on 29 20.
32 24 pagos (see note on 10 19): these divisions were those known as
hundreds, meaning not only the people but the district they occupied.—
Suevorum: this is a general name, embracing a number of tribes that lived
in the interior of Germany. Their habits and customs are described in the
opening chapters of Book iv.
32 27 maturandum sibi (sc. esse): impers.; § 208. d (146. d); B. 138. iv; G. 208. 2; H. 518. 1 (465. 1); H-B. 600. 3. a; cf. exspectandum, 9 24 and note.

32 29 minus facile. not very easily: i.e. it would be impossible; but this is avoided as a word of ill omen.—resisti: impers.; § 372 (230); B. 187. ii. b; G. 217; H. 426. 3 (384. 5); H-B. 364. 2; cf. note on rebus, 30 19.

33 1 magnis itineribus: see chapter on military affairs, vi.

33 2 contendit: the place from which Caesar started is uncertain. After the destruction of the Helvetic force he appears in the country of the Lingones, sixty to eighty miles north of Bibracte. In that vicinity he held a council of the Gallic chiefs (ch. 30), but whether he remained there is not stated. He probably came towards the north in the direction of Langres.

33 3 Chap. 38. tridui: gen. of measure.—viam: § 390 (238); B. 176. 4. a; G. 333. 2; H. 409. 2 (371. ii. n.); H-B. 396. 1.

33 4 occupandum: gerundive agreeing with Vesontionem.—Vesontionem: the modern Besançon, about ninety miles E.N.E. of the former battle ground. There are many Roman remains here.

33 5 quod relates to Vesontionem, but agrees in gender with oppidum: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. b; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

33 6 finibus: the country which he had taken from the Sequani (Upper Alsace).—processisse, had advanced. The bracketed words are probably authentic, and at any rate may be translated.—ne, following praecavendum: § 558. b (331. c. 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 3. b.

33 10 ducendum: cf. occupandum above, and note.

33 11 Dubis: the modern Doubs. This name is said to mean "black river." —ut, as it were.

33 12 spatium: object of continet.

33 13 pedum: pred. gen. after est; for construction with amplius, see § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.s.; H. 471. 4 (417. n.3); H-B. 416. d. —sexcentorum: the real distance is about 1600 feet, but in other respects the present site exactly corresponds to Caesar's words. See view, Fig. 18. —qua, where.

33 14 altitudine: abl. of quality or description.—radices: object, and ripae, subject of contingant.

33 15 hunc [montem], etc., this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.

33 17 oppido: the town must be regarded as having occupied the lower ground towards the bend in the river.
33 20 Chap. 39. moratur: cf. 24 24 and note.— percontatione, questions.— nostrorum: i.e. the soldiers who inquired in regard to the enemy.

33 21 vocibus, talk.— Gallorum: these, it would seem, volunteered reports. The whole indicates a great deal of talk on the subject, and to this Caesar attributes the panic.— mercatorum: see note on 1 8.— magnitudine: cf. altitudine, l. 14. Roman writers frequently speak of the huge size of the barbarians of the north as compared with themselves.

33 24 congressos, having met them.

33 27 hic: i.e. timor.

34 1 reliquis: i.e. aids or attachés (contubernales, comites), who attended the governor or commander of a province for the sake of military practice. These were often appointed from mere personal or political motives, and were of small use in the service, as it proved here. See chapter on military affairs, 1. 7.

34 2 quorum . . . inlata, these on various pretexts: § 315. c (223. c); B. 253. 2; G. 319; II. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 279. 3.

34 3 quam . . . diceret, which, they said: § 592. 3. n. (341. d. r.); B. 323; G. 626. r.; II. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 2. a. n.3. See also note on qui . . . essent. 32 21. The verb is singular in Latin on account of alius.

34 6 voltum fingere, put on a brave face (voltum refers to the expression of the face).

34 7 tabernaculis: see Fig. 128.

34 9 totis castris: § 429. 2 (258. f. 2); B. 228. 1. b; G. 388; II. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. a.— testamenta obsignabantur: indicating utter despair.

34 11 in castris, in service.

34 15 rem frumentarium . . . timere, feared (for) the supply of corn, lest it might not be conveniently brought in: § 564 (331. f); B. 296. 2; G. 550; II. 567 (498. iii); H-B. 502. 4. Observe the force of ut after vereri.

34 17 nuntiabant: what did they say in dir. disc.? — cum . . . iussisset, for cum iussisset (fut. perf.) of dir. disc. — castra moveri, to break camp: the regular expression.

34 19 signa latus: i.e. advance. This is the technical term, as the standards were planted in the ground during a halt.

34 20 Chap. 40. omnium ordine, of all ranks. Was this usual? See chapter on military affairs, t. 7.

34 22 quam . . . ducerentur: indir. quest.; cf. 10 3.

34 23 sibi quærendum, etc., that they had a right to inquire (lit. it ought to be inquired) or consider (lit. it ought to be thought).

34 24 putarent: see note on 32 21. — Ariovistum, etc.: Direct,—
Ariovistus me consule... populi Romani amicitiam adpetit; cur hunc... quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicet? Mihi quidem persuadetur, cognitiss meis postulatis... eum neque meam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si fure... impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem veremini? aut cur de vestra virtute aut de mea diligentia desperetis? Factum (est) eius hostis periculum...; factum (est) etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen alicujus usus ac disciplina quam a nobis accipierant sublevabant. Ex quo iudicari potest quantum habeat in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos... inermis sine causa timuistis (timueritis), hos postea armatos superavitistis.

Denique hi sunt idem Germani quibuscum saepenukermo Helvetii congressi, non solum in suis sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superaverunt; qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitu non poterunt. Si quos adversum proelium... commovet, hi, si quaeerent (quaerant), reperire posunt... Ariovistum... dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione... quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros... locus fuit, hac ne ipsa quidem sperat nostros exercitus capi posse.

Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem... conferunt, faciunt adroganter, cum... de officio imperatoris desperare... videantur (videntur). Haec mihi sunt curae; frumentum Seguani,... subministrant, iamque sunt... frumenta matura; de itinere (vos) ipsi... iudicabitis.

Quod non fore dicto audientes... dicimini (more probably dicuntur milites), nihil (ego) ea re commoveor; scio enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audienti non fuerit,... avaritiam esse convictam; mea innocentia perpetua vita, felicitas... bello est specta.

Itaque (ego) quod... conlaturus fui repraesentabo, et... castra movebo, ut... intellegere possim utrum apud vos pudor... an timor plus valeat. Quod si praeterea nemo sequetur, tamen (ego) cum sola decima legione ibo, de qua non dubito, mihique ea praetoria cohaors erit.

This speech, one of the most remarkable, if not of the most famous, of antiquity, stamps Cæsar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. His whole fortunes may be said to have depended on this campaign, at the outset of which he is confronted with a mutiny. By this skilfully contrived address, in which he glosses over the difficulties of the undertaking, which he must have known well, he contrives to inspire in his soldiers the Roman spirit, which was invincible whenever it was really roused. Cæsar's marvellous conquest of Gaul depended quite as much on the devotion of his soldiers as on his unequalled ability as a general.

34 26 cur quisquam iudicaret, why should any one think? For the form of question, see § 586 (338); B. 315. 3; G. 651. r.2; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. n.); cf. II-B. 513. 1 (dir., iudicit, dubit. subjv.). For the use of
Campaign against Ariovistus.

ququam, implying a negative, see § 311 (105, 4); B. 252. 4; G. 317; II. 513 (457); II-B. 276. 7.

34 26 sibi persuaderi: see note on 30 19; the subject of persuaderi is eum . . . repudiaturum.

35 1 quod . . . si intulisset, but if he should, etc.
35 2 quid tandem, etc., what, pray should they be afraid of?
35 3 sua, their own; ipsius, his; ipse, used in this way to avoid the repetition of sua, is an indirect reflexive; § 300. b (196. a. 2. N.); B. 249. 3; G. 660. 5; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); II-B. 263. 2.

35 4 periculum (root in exterio), a trial. — Cimbris, etc.: this was in B.C. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before, and was the worst danger that had threatened the Romans since the destruction of the city by the Gauls three centuries before. See Roman histories. — cum . . . videbatur: although this clause was a part of Caesar's speech to his officers, yet the indic. is used to emphasize to the reader the reality of the fact it asserts; § 583. a (336. d); B. 314. 3; H. 652. 1 (529. N.1, 2); II-B. 535. 1. d.

35 6 meritus: sc. esse.

35 7 servili tumultu (abl. of time): the insurrection of the slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, B.C. 73-71. These consisted, in part, at any rate, of Germans captured by Marius. A war at home, i.e. in Italy or on its borders, was called tumultus. — quos (referring to servos implied in servili) . . . sublevarent (change to pass. in translation, so as to keep the emphasis), who yet were considerably helped by the training and discipline which they had got from us. — aliquid: adv. acc.

35 9 quantum . . . boni, etc., how much advantage firmness has: § 289. a (189. a); B. 237. 2. a; G. 204. N.2; H. 442 (397. 3); II-B. 249. 1; for the tense of haberet, see § 485. d (287. d); H. 549 (495. v); II-B. 482. 1.

35 10 quos . . . hos: notice the antecedent following the relative. — inermis: i.e. the slaves of Spartacus's force.

35 12 hos esse : the Germans with Ariovistus. — quibuscum . . . congressi, etc. (changing the relative clause), whom the Helvetii had often met and beaten not only on their own ground, but even, etc.

35 14 qui: i.e. the Helvetii. — tamen: i.e. though they were strong enough to beat the Germans, after all, etc.

35 15 potuerint: § 485. c. N.1 (287. c. r.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi and ftn.2); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also 9 18 and 28 6. — adversum proelium: see 27 21 ff. — si quos . . . commoveret, if any were alarmed by (lit., if the disastrous battle disturbed any).

35 17 Ariovistum: subject of vicisse.

35 18 neque . . . fecisset, and had given them no chance at him.
36 2 adortum agrees with Ariovistum and governs desperantis, with which a pronoun (eos) must be supplied in English. This may always be omitted in Latin if any word appears to show its case.

36 3 cui rationi ... hac = hac rationi cui: the noun being attracted to the relative clause; by this stratagem, for which there had been room against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hoped that our armies could be taken in; § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4. a; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6; cf. note on 30 19.

36 6 qui ... conferrent, (those) who laid their own cowardice to the pretended difficulty about provisions, etc.

36 8 desperare, etc., to be discouraged about the commander's doing his duty. Such words as officium have a wider range of meaning in Latin than similar words in English, as duty, a duty, sense of duty, discharge of duty.— praeescire: sc. officium; i.e. that they were dictating to him what his duty was.

36 9 sibi ... curae: cf. 22 6, 22 15.

36 10 subministrare, were (now) furnishing.—esse, were beginning to be.—frumenta, crops; note the plur. and cf. with meaning of the sing.

36 12 quod ... dicantur, as to its being said that they would not, etc.; cf. 12 11, 15 14, 32 14. — dicto audientes, etc.: cf. 34 18.

36 13 nihil, no way.—re: see note on 4 4.—quibuscumque: dat. after audiens dicto; i.e. no one has ever had a mutinous army who has not either been unsuccessful through his own fault, so that his men had no confidence in his ability, or else has been convicted of avarice by some overt act, so that they had no confidence in his integrity.

36 16 suam, his own: emphatic by position; equivalent to in his case. —innocentiam: the technical word, meaning freedom from the charge of plunder and extortion. In fact, Caesar's fault lay just the other way, —a lavish and reckless generosity at the expense of subjects or allies. In this sentence, in opposite (chiastic) order, innocentiam is opposed to avaritiam, and felicitatem to male re gesta; a peculiarly Latin turn.

36 18 quod ... fuisset, what he had intended to defer.—repaesentaturn, he would do at once. This is a legal term, meaning to do a thing before the time.


36 22 decima legione: this was the legion which had been stationed in the province of Gallia Transalpina (cf. 6 19); it was distinguished for discipline and courage.

36 23 praetoriam cohortem, body-guard, made up of the bravest men.

36 28 Chap. 41. innata est: agreeing with the last noun; cf. captus est. 24 7.
optimum judicium fecisset, had expressed the very highest opinion (a technical phrase).

cum tribunis... egerunt, etc., urged upon the tribunes... to apologize.

primorum: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

summa belli, the policy of the campaign.— suum... sed imperatoris: predicates after esse; § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447 (402); H-B. 340.

satisfactione, apology; cf. satisfacere, above.

ei, in him; after the phrase fidem habere = fidere, which takes the dat. or abl.

duceret (result): depends upon itinere exquisito; duceret refers to itinere. The sense is, such (a route) that it led, etc., a road which led. Cæsar might have said quod duceret but for the quod in the previous line. The valley of the Doubs above Besançon is very narrow and the mountains are precipitous; but, turning first to the north by the railroad coming from Vesoul and then up the valley of the Oignon River, the country becomes tolerably open to Villersexel and to Belfort, which lies in the gap between the Vosges and the Jura. This pass is interesting as having been for ages one of the great avenues from Germany into Gaul. See view, Fig. 20 and map, Fig. 22. — milium [passuum] limits circuitu, by a circuit of more than fifty miles. This must be reckoned as the distance to be traversed before coming to the main road again at about Belfort.

septimo die, etc.: at this time Cæsar must have been somewhere near Mühlhausen (Mulhouse), about seventy-five miles from Besançon (see maps, Figs. 3, 22); at any rate, at some point beyond Belfort on the route from Besançon to Strasburg (120 miles), having passed beyond the gap into the valley of the Rhine. Ariovistus was then some twenty-four miles farther on.

a nostris: i.e. forces.

Chap. 42. quod: a relative; antecedent is id.— per se, so far as he was concerned (a common expression with licet).

accessisset: the subject is Cæsar.

non respuit, etc.: notice the emphasis. Cæsar did not reject the offer (as one might have supposed he would do).

iam... reverti, that he was beginning to return.— arbitrabatur: the imperfect indicating the beginning of an action.

petenti [Caesari], when he asked it.— ultro: opposed to petenti.

fore uti... desisteret: periphrastic future (cf. 18 1, 28 17) following spem; that he would cease from his stubbornness.
37

23 conloquio: dat. of purpose; § 382. 2 (233. b); B. 191; G. 356. N.1; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 361.

37 26 vereri: sc. verb of saying from postulavit. Note the force of ne after vereri and cf. ut, 34 16.

37 27 veniret: for veniat (hortatory) of dir. disc. — alia ratione, on any other terms.

37 28 interposita causa (abl. abs.), by putting in an excuse.

37 29 Gallorum equitatu: he had no other; see chapter on military affairs, i. 2. They numbered about 4000, about the same as a legion.

38 1 commodissimum: pred. adj. after esse, whose subject is the infin. clause eo... imponere.

38 2 Gallis equitibus, dat. following detractis: § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. d; G. 345. R.1; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371.— eo (= in eos), upon them.

38 4 si quid, etc., if there should be need of any active measures; quid is adv. acc.; § 390. c. d and N.2 (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378); cf. H-B. 387. iii.

38 5 facto: § 243. e. n.; B. 218. 2. c; G. 406; H. 477. iii (414. N.3); H-B. 430. 2. b.— quod cum fieret, while this was going on. On the use of the rel., see note on 58 9.

38 7 pollicitum: see 36 23.

38 8 ad equum rescribere, he enrolled them among the knights. The word equites means not only the cavalry service in war but a special privileged class in Roman society.

38 9 Chap. 43. tumulus terrenus, a smooth (i.e. not rocky) hill.

38 10 spatio: abl. of degree of difference.

38 12 equis, on horseback, abl. of means.— passibus ducentis (abl. of distance, or degree of difference) = 320 yards.

38 15 se: plural. — denos, ten on each side.

38 18 appellatus esset: see note on 32 21.— amicus: sc. appellatus esset.— munera: according to Livy (xxx. 15), the gifts sent to Masinissa, king of Numidia, were “a golden crown and bowl, a curule chair, an ivory staff, an embroidered toga, and a tunic with palm-leaf figures,” such as were worn in triumphal processions.

38 19 quam rem, a tribute which; see note on 30 19.

38 20 docebat, showed him.— illum: emphatic as opposed to other beneficiaries implied in the preceding.

38 21 aditum: i.e. right to approach the Senate.

38 22 ea praemia consecutum, had attained these prizes, as if he had eagerly sought them (cf. introductory note to campaign against Ariovistus, p. 287).
Campaign against Ariovistus.

38 24 ipsis (instead of sibi, which might refer to Cæsar alone): the Romans. — intercederent, existed between, indir. quest.

38 27 adpetissent: § 592. 1 (341. 6); B. 323; G. 633; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 535. 1. a. In the dir. this might be either perf. indic. or the same as here. If only priority of time is meant, it would be indic.; if there is any internal relation between the main clause and the time clause, it would require the subjv. In this case the latter seems more probable.

38 28 populi, etc.: Direct, —

Populi Romani haec est consuetudo ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil depederde, sed gratia ... auctores velit esse; quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani adtulerunt, id eis eripi quis pati possit?

38 29 sui nihil, nothing of their own (dignity, etc.); sui is used substantively, and is a part. gen.

39 1 quod ... adtulissent, what they had brought to the alliance; i.e. the independence and dignity which they had possessed.

39 2 posset: § 587 (338. a); B. 300. 2; G. 651. r. 2; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. 1. n.); cf. H-B. 503. — postulavit eadem, he made the same demands.

39 3 ne, etc.: these clauses are in apposition with eadem, and are indirectly quoted from imperative forms of the dir. disc.

39 8 Chap. 44. transisse, etc.: Direct, —

Transii Rhenum (ego) non mea sponte, sed rogatus et arcessitus a Gallis; non sine magna spe ... domum ... reliqui; sedis habeo in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capio iure belli quod victores victis imponere consuerunt. Non ego Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum intulerunt; omnes Galliae civitates ad me oppugnandum venerunt ac contra me castra habuerunt; eae omnes copiae a me uno proelio pulsae ac superatae sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, (ego) iterum paratus sum decertare; si pace uti volunt, iniquum est de stipendio recusare quod sua voluntate ad hoc tempus pepererunt.

Amicitiam populi Romani mihi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportet, idque ... hac spe petii. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittetur et dediticii subtrahentur, non minus libenter ... recusabo populi Romani amicitiam quam adpetii.

Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traduco, id mei muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facio: eius rei testimonium est quod nisi rogatus non veni, et quod bellum non intuli, sed defendi. Ego prius in Galliam veniquam populus Romanus. Numerum ante hoc tempus exercitus populi Romani ... provinciae finibus egressus (est). Quid tibi vis? Cur in meas possessiones venis? Provincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra. Ut mihi concedi non oportet, si in vestros finis impetum faciam, sic item vos estis iniqui quod in meo iure me interpellitis.
Quod fratres a senatu Haeduos appellatos dicit, non (ego) tam barbarus ... sum ... ut non sciam neque bello Allobrogum proximo Haeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos, in his contentionibus quas Haedui mecum ... habuerunt (habuerint), auxilio populi Romanis usos esse.

Debeo suspicari simulata te amicitia quem exercitum in Gallia habes mei opprimendi causa habere. Tu nisi decesses atque exercitum deduces ... ego te non prof su amico, sed pro hoste habebo. Quod si te interfecero, multis (ego) nobilibus ... gratum ... faciam; id (ego) ab ipsis ... compertum habeo quorum omnium gratiam ... tua morte redimere possum. Quod si discesseris et ... possessionem Galliae mihi tradideris, magno ego te praemio remunerabo, et quaecumque bella geri voles sine 'ullo tuo labore ... consiciam.

§ 39 rogatum et arcessitum: participles expressing cause.

39 10 sine magna spe magnisque praemiis — sine magna spe magnorum praemiorn; hendiadys, cf. 28 25 and note.

39 11 obsides: object of habere. Translate the participles concessas and datos by relative clauses.

39 14 sibi, on him, referring to the main subject, Ariovistus.—ad se oppugnandum: gerundive expressing purpose; cf. 33 4, 33 10.

39 21 oportere: imper. ; its subject is amicitiam ... esse.—id, not eam, because it refers to the idea, ut amicus populi Romani esset.—si remittatur: fut. cond.; § 516, 589 (307, 337); B. 268. 7; G. 656; H. 573. 1, 646 (507. 1, 527. 1); H-B. 536, 579. a; the pres. for imperf., contrary to regular sequence, for greater vividness.

39 22 per, through the action of.

39 23 subtrahantur, are got away (by underhand means).

39 25 quod ... traducat, as for his bringing over; made subjv. by indir. disc.

39 26 impugnandae: observe the gerundive.

40 4 provinciam: emphatic; i.e. he had a right to govern it as the Romans did their provinces.—hanc Galliam, this part of Gaul.

40 5 ut ... sic, as ... so.—ipsi: i.e. Ariovistus (used as an indirect reflexive); see note on 35 3.

40 8 quod, in that.

40 9 imperitum rerum: i.e. unsophisticated; for construction, cf. 18 22.

40 10 bello proximo: i.e. B.C. 62.

40 14 debere se suspicari, etc., he had ground to suspect that Cæsar, in keeping an army in Gaul, kept it under the pretence of friendship, [but really] for the purpose of crushing him (Ariovistus).

40 15 sui opprimendi causa: gerund; § 504. c (298. a); cf. B. 339. 5; cf. G. 428. r.; H. 626. 3 (542. i. n.1); cf. H-B. 614.
40 18 nobilibus... gratum: Caesar was the recognized head of the party opposed to the Senate and nobility. Many of the aristocracy would have been glad of any safe way to be rid of him.

40 20 compertum habere has almost the force of comperisse; § 497. b (292. e); B. 337. 7; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. i. n.); H-B. 605. 5.

The three relatives qui (l. 16), quod (l. 17), and quod (l. 21) illustrate the principle that the relative, serving to connect with the previous proposition, may represent various conjunctions: if then he should not withdraw (qui = is igitur); and if he should kill him (quod, adv. acc.); but if he should withdraw (quod = sed, etc.).

40 25 Chap. 45. in eam sententiam qua re, to this effect (to show) why.

40 28 neque se iudicare, and he did not consider; notice the emphasis.

41 1 bello superatos: b.C. 121, when the Allobroges also were subdued, and the Province probably organized; notice the emphasis. These peoples had been conquered, a fact which gave special rights to the Romans.

41 3 ignovisset: but, in fact, their country lay beyond the naturally strong frontier of the Cévennes, and so could not then be conveniently occupied by the Romans.

41 4 antiquissimum quodque: § 313. b (93. c); cf. B. 252. 5. c; G. 318. 2; H. 515. 2 (458. 1); H-B. 278. 2. b; Caesar, referring to the statement of Ariovistus in 39 98, claims priority of conquest for the Romans.

41 7 suis, its own, referring through quam to Galliam.

41 8 voluisset: the subject is senatus understood.

41 9 Chap. 46. geruntur: for tense after dum, cf. 24 24. 33 19.

41 10 tumulum: governed by propius, which sometimes has the force of a prep.; § 432. a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 416. 22; H. 420. 5 (437. 1); H-B. 380. b.

41 14 periculo legionis, danger to the legion; notice that in Latin the gen. is the regular form of one noun dependent on another, whatever prep. we may use to express the relation.
41 15 committendum non putabat, ut dici posset, he thought that no ground should be given for saying. The subject of committendum is the ut-clause: § 568. N.1 (332. c); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1).

41 16 per fidem, through (misplaced) trust.

41 17 elatum est, it was reported. Observe the regular mood and tense after posteaquam; cf. 4 17 and note.

41 18 omni Gallia: abl. of separation with interdixisset; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 462 (413); H-B. 408. 3.

41 20 ut, how, with indir. quest.

42 2 Chap. 47. coptae: this verb is regularly pass. when used, as here, with a pass. infin. (agi).  

42 3 uti constitueret: following velle; § 563. b (331. b); B. 296. 1; G. 546; H. 565 (498. i); H-B. 587. a.

42 4 suis: refers to Caesar; se (l. 5) to Ariovistus.

42 6 eo magis: cf. hoc facilius, 2 17 and note. — retineri quin, be kept from: § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 554; H. 595. 2 (504. 4); H-B. 502. 3. b.

42 7 legatum [e suis] = one of his own (officers) as an envoy.

42 8 [e suis]: this may either be translated or omitted. The meaning is essentially the same. — magno . . . missurum, it would be at great risk that, etc. This meaning is given by the emphatic position of magno, etc. The Latin often puts into one sentence ideas which we are inclined to express (for emphasis) in two.

42 11 humanitate: not humanity (cf. note on obtinere, 2 1); the word refers to his education.

42 12 Flacco: governor of Gaul B.C. 83. It was customary for slaves or aliens to become clients of the person from whom they received freedom or citizenship and to take his gentile name: § 108 (80. a); G. p. 493; H. 354 (649); H-B. 678. 1. Thus, here Procilus takes the name (C. Valerius) of his patron Flaccus, retaining his own as cognomen. — civitate donatus erat: § 364 (225. d); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 365. b.

42 13 qua multa . . . utebatur, which Ariovistus spoke freely.

42 14 in eo, in him.

42 15 peccandi causa, ground of offence: i.e. the Germans had no reason to commit any outrage on him, as they might on a Roman.

42 16 hospicio: the relation of hospes, existing between two persons of different cities or nations, made a sacred bond far closer than that of simple hospitality; see Vocab.

42 18 quos: cf. note on 25 5. — conspexisset: note the subjv. and cf. 4 12, 6 14, 7 17, and notes.
42 20 **venirent**: indir. disc. for *venit*. — **conantis**, etc.: this proceeding was evidently for effect upon the army which was in attendance. Ariovistus cried out aloud and did not allow the messengers to be heard.

42 22 **Chap. 48. a Caesaris castris**: this camp is placed by Napoleon III at the southern foot of the Vosges Mountains near Cernay (Sennheim), a few miles northwest of Mühlhausen, and thirty miles beyond Belfort (Fig. 20), the fortress which now defends this pass on the frontier between France and Germany. The march of Ariovistus placed him nearer the passage, so as to cut off Cæsar's supplies.

42 25 Whether this camp was between Cæsar and the Vosges Mountains or merely beyond him in the open is uncertain.

---

**Fig. 118.—Wall and Ditch.**

*abcd*, fossa fastigata; *ab*, scarp; *cd*, counterscarp; *mn* = 6 ft.; *mp* = \(\frac{3}{4} ad\); *bc* = \(\frac{1}{2} ad\); *rs*, fascines to strengthen the earthwork; *xy*, valli; *kl*, steps.

42 26 **supportaretur**: § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539; and cf. 14 7, 24 21.

42 28 **instructam habuit**: cf. 40 20 and note.


43 3 **castris**: the place where may omit the prep. when the idea of means is prominent; § 429 (258. f); B. 228. 1; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

43 4 **hoc**: pointing to the description which follows. — **se exercuerant**, were trained: § 476 (279. c); B. 262. A; G. 241. 3. R.; H. 299. 2 (297, i. 2); H-B. 487.

44 1 **singuli** [equites] **singulos** [pedites]: i.e. one apiece.

44 5 **si quo . . . prodeundum**, if there was occasion for advancing to any place.

44 7 **cursum adaequarent**: Tacitus (Ger. 6) says: "They fight in combination [infantry and cavalry], and the foot soldiers, picked out of
the entire body of young men and placed in front of the line, are able to keep up with the cavalry in speed.” This method of fighting, peculiar to the Germans, seemed so advantageous to Caesar that he employed it himself on occasion, notably at the battle of Pharsalia.

44 10 Chap. 49. conserantar: cf. exercuerant, above.

44 11 acie triplici: see chapter on military affairs, vii.

44 13 castra triplici: see chapter on military affairs, v, also Figs. 23, 54, 69, 118, 119. In this case Caesar had one larger camp about two miles east of the Germans, and a smaller one rather more than half a mile to the south of them.

45 8 Chap. 50. instituto suo, according to his previous practice: § 418. a (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 414.

45 11 tum: note the emphasis.

45 13 quae . . . oppugnaret: a purpose clause; cf. I. 3 above.


45 19 matres familiae: according to Tacitus (Ger. 8), it was not matrons only, but women as a class, or most of them, to whom this prophetic power was ascribed.

45 20 sortibus: lots of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance. — vaticinationibus: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly the mere prophetic impressions analogous to “second sight.” — declararent: § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 557; H. 571. 2 (501. i. 2); H-B. 521. 3. a. — utrum . . . necne: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234. a.

45 21 non esse fas, it was not fated.

45 22 novam lunam: a common superstition among semicivilized peoples (cf. Tacitus, Ger. 11); so the Spartans refused to advance to Marathon before the full moon.

45 25 Chap. 51. alarios: the auxiliaries as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, from ala, a wing.

45 26 pro: note the force of the prep. here as distinguished from its meaning in 46 1; cf. also 3 1.

46 2 ad speciem, to make a show, as if the two legions were still there, while in fact they had joined the other force at the greater camp. — acie: of the legionaries alone. The six legions in battle array (triplici acie) presented a front of more than a mile in length.

46 3 necessario: the necessity seems to have come from the fact that the tactics of the Germans demanded more room than a crowded stronghold could give. Rarely in ancient warfare was a fortified camp
assailed. The usual way was to form two battle lines between the fortified camps.

46 5 intervellis: § 412 (248); B. 220. 1; G. 399; H. 473. 3 (419. iii); H-B. 445.

46 8 eo, thereon, i.e. the carts and wagons; cf. note on eo, 38 2.

46 9 proficiscientis, (the men) as they advanced (object of implorabant).

46 11 Chap. 52. See chapter on military affairs, vii, for description of a battle.—singulos legatos, etc.: i.e. a legatus in command of each legion. This was the beginning of a very important reform in the military organization. Caesar felt so keenly the evil of the command being divided among six tribunes that he detailed one of his legati nominally to assist the tribunes. After this time we find the legatus as the regular commander of a legion, with the six tribunes under him. On this occasion, having only five legati, he also appointed his quartermaster (quaestor) to that one of the six legions which was intended to be under his own special command.

46 13 eam partem: that, of course, would be the enemy’s left.

46 14 ita acriter . . . ut, so fiercely that.

46 17 coniciendi: observe the gerund with a dir. object (pila). Give the corresponding gerundive construction.

46 20 in phalanga, upon the phalanx. This was a compact body of men with shields close locked in front and above, lapping over one another like shingles on a roof. See Fig. 68, the Roman testudo.

46 21 revellerent, etc.: i.e. they leaped upon the roof of shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (desuper).

46 24 P. Crassus: son of Marcus Crassus the triumvir. He next appears at the head of an important expedition against the Aquitanians, pp. 88–92.

46 25 adulescens: like our junior, to distinguish him from his father.

—expeditior, more free.

46 26 tertiam aciem: the line of reserves, kept for just such emergencies.

47 1 Chap. 53. restitutum est: contrasted with laborantibus, above.

47 2 prius . . . quam . . . pervenerunt: see note on 38 27.

48 1 Rhenum: the nearest point on this river was a little below Bâle, somewhat more than five miles distant from the supposed place of the engagement. But the Germans may have fled down the valley of the Ill, reaching the Rhine near Rheinau, some fifty miles from the battlefield.

48 2 tranare contenderunt, by great effort swam across.

48 5 reliquos omnis: said to be 80,000.
48 6 duae uxorres: only chiefs among the Germans, says Tacitus (Ger. 18), had more than one wife; and this was for the sake of honor and alliances.

48 7 Sueva: for character and customs of the Suevi, see Bk. iv. chs. 1-3.

48 8 duxerat: cf. note on 8 7. Observe that duxerat in the line above has a different meaning.

48 10 Procillus: see 42 10.

48 11 trinis catenis, three (sets of) manacles.

48 16 eius calamitate, by any harm to him; eius is obj. gen., and refers to Procillus.

48 17 quicquam: adv. acc.; § 390. d and N.² (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 396. 2.

48 18 se præsente, in his presence.—ter: it was the regular usage of the Germans to consult the lot thrice (Tacitus, Ger. 10). This has come down to the present day in sundry games, etc.—consultum: impers., sc. esse.

48 19 necaretur: indir. quest.; the dir. was a dubit. subjv., necetur. The site of this battle is still very uncertain. The account of Cæsar's march would seem to point to some place from thirty to fifty miles beyond Belfort, and accordingly it has been located by some near Cernay and by others near Gemar, twenty miles farther down the valley. Perhaps it may have been even nearer the gap than Cernay. The plan in the text, that of Col. Stoffel, must be taken, therefore, only as a supposable arrangement. The country is nearly the same in all that region, and a few miles can make no difference. The great point is that for the first time a Roman army ventured beyond one of the natural bounds of Gaul into the valley of the Rhine and defeated a German horde on its own ground, as it were. The campaign against
Ariovistus settled the question of sovereignty over Gaul for several centuries to come. The Germans did not gain possession of it until after the fall of the western Roman empire.

48 24 Chap. 54. Ubii: these lived near the modern Cologne, and were deadly enemies of the Suevi, and therefore generally in alliance with the Romans (Bk. iv. ch. 3).—Rhenum: governed by proximi; § 432. a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 359. n.1; H. 420. 5 (391. ii. 2); H-B. 380. b and cf. propius tumulum. 41 10.

48 26 maturius, earlier; the decisive battle with Ariovistus was fought somewhere about the 10th of September.

48 28 in citeriorem Galliam: south of the Alps.

48 29 conventus: the proconsular courts held for the administration of justice. A further reason for going was to be nearer Rome and to watch political movements there.

Book Second. — B.C. 57.

The Belgian Confederacy. — The people of northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than with the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which their descendants, the Dutch, exhibited long after in the same regions against the armies of Spain. The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear to have offered to Caesar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere until the great rising of B.C. 52. When their spirit was once broken, the conquest of the whole country was simply a question of time.

Reading References on the Campaign against the Belgian Confederacy.

Dodge's Caesar, chaps. 7, 8.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 10.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 14.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 3.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 5.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 3.

49 1 Chap. 1. cum esset, etc., while Cæsar was: subjv. with cum temporal; § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; H. 600. ii (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.
For discussion of the principle, see notes on 6 14, 7 17, 11 7. The verb comes in this emphatic place on account of the close connection of these words with the preceding book; something like and being thus in, etc. See translation of this chapter in "Directions for Reading," p. ivii.—citeriore Gallia: northern Italy.—ita uti (= ut), as: correlatives; the demonstrative word so is often omitted in English: § 323. g (107); G. 110. 3; H. 305; cf. H-B. 144.—demonstravimus, dixeramus: the perfect here implies an act done before the time of writing (see end of Bk. i); the pluperf., what took place before the time of demonstravimus.

49 2 adferebantur, certior fiebat: imperf. of repeated action; § 470 (277); B. 260. 2; G. 231; H. 534. 3 (469. ii); H-B. 484. Translate kept coming in; he was informed from time to time.

49 3 litteris, by despatches: abl. of means; § 409 (248. c); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423.—Belgæ... coniurare... dare, that the Belgians, etc.: indir. disc., acc. and infin. following the verbal phrase certior fiebat; § 459 (272); B. 331. i; G. 527; H. 613 (535); H-B. 589; direct,—Belgæ coniurant. Caesar had not yet advanced farther north than the country of the Lingones, so that the Belgæ were as yet unattacked.—quam agrees with partem, though the proper antecedent is Belgæ: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. r. 3. b; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

49 4 esse: indir. disc. (with subj. acc. quam), after dixeramus.—dixeramus is in the indic. because, though a relative clause, it is parenthetical merely, and not a part of the report of Labienus: § 583 (336. b); B. 314. 3; G. 628. r. a; H. 643. 3 (524. 2. 1); H-B. 535. 1. d.

49 5 coniurare: from the point of view of the Romans, any war against Rome is a “conspiracy”; a nation enslaved by Rome is “pacified.”—obsides: see note on 8 11.—inter se, to one another: § 301. f (196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266.—coniurandi: gerund; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

49 6 has esse causas, that the reasons were as follows: the report of Labienus continued, indir. disc.—quod vererentur, sollicitarentur: subjv. because subord. clauses in indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 541; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2. The two clauses introduced by primum and deinde contain the two reasons for the conspiracy, and so the gist of the sentence. The rest, which makes the whole seem complicated, defines the classes of disaffected Gauls who, though conquered, hoped still to recover their liberty by means of their more warlike neighbors. These classes are two (partim... partim), but to these are added in Caesar's words, but in a different construction (ab non nullis), some who had personal reasons for wishing to expel the Romans.—ne... adduceretur: subst. clause, object of vererentur; § 564 (331. f); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498.
The Belgian Confederacy.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

Ill. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.

III. 1, 2. —

The Belgic Confederacy: the means to take men into their pay. — conducentos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338, 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544, N. 2); H-B. 612, 2, 118.
50 2 *inita aestate*: abl. abs., expressing time *when*; § 419 (255); B. 227. 2. a; G. 665; H. 489. 1 (431. 1); H-B. 421. 1; *aestas* is the period from the spring equinox to that of autumn.

50 3 *qui dederet* (the antecedent is Q. *Pedium*): relative clause of purpose; § 531 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

— *Pedium*: Pedius was Cæsar's nephew, son of his sister Julia. — *legatum*: see note on 8 22.

50 4 *cum primum*, etc.: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry and baggage animals could subsist. — *inciperet*: cf. note on *esse*, 49 1. — *ad exercitum*: i.e. to Vesontio, in the country of the Sequani. See Map, Fig. 26.

50 5 *Senonibus*: these were north of the Hædui, on the upper course of the Seine; their name is preserved in *Sens.* — *reliquis Gallis, the rest of the Gauls*: § 293 (193); cf. B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.1); H-B. 346. c.

50 6 *Belgis*: dat. with *finitimi*; § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362. — *uti ... cognoscant, to find out*. This is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *negotium*; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. iii); H-B. 502. 3. a. — *gerantur*: subjv. as depending on *cognoscant*; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

50 7 *seque ... faciant, and inform him* (Cæsar); *se* is here used as the indirect reflexive; § 300. 2 (196. a. 2); B. 244. ii. a; G. 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2. — *constantem*, consistently takes with one another; their accounts all agreed.

50 8 *manus* (acc. plur., subject of *cogi*): small *bands* or companies.

50 9 *tum vero*: see Vocab. and observe the emphatic position. — *dubitandum non* [*esse*], he must no longer hesitate; the infin. of the second periphrastic conjugation, here used in indir. disc. after *existimavit*; § 158. d. n. (113. d. n.); B. 115; G. 251; H. 531 (466. n.); H-B. 162; *dubitandum* is impers.; § 208. d (146. d.); B. 337. 7. b; G. 208. 2; H. 192. 1 (195. ii. 1); H-B. 600. 3. a. — *quin* can follow only a negative expression, as here *non existimavit*, etc. — *quin ... proficisceretur, to set out* (lit. but that he should, etc.): relative clause of result depending on *dubitandum* [*esse*]; § 558. a (319. d.); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 596. i (505. i. 1); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b. In the sense of hesitate, *dubito* regularly takes the infin. and not *quin*, but exceptions occur, as here.

50 10 *re comparata*: on translation of the abl. abs., cf. note on 49 6.

50 11 *diebus*: abl. of time *within which*; § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. — *finis*: i.e. north of the Matrona (Marne), crossing somewhere between Bois le Duc and Châlons (sur Marne). The march
from Besançon would be about one hundred and forty miles, or ten miles a day. He would so be about thirty-five or forty miles southeast of Durocortorum (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.

50 12 Chap. 3. eo: adv. — omnium opinione, than any one expected (following the comparative celerius): § 406. a (247. b); B. 217. 4; G. 398. N. 1; H. 471. 7 (417. i. n. 5); H-B. 416. e.

50 13 Remi: these were friendly to the Romans, who by their victory over Ariovistus (see Bk. i) had made them the second power in Gaul; cf. Bk. vi. ch. 12. — proximi Galliae, nearest to Gaul; for the dat., see § 384 (234. a); B. 192. i; G. 359; H. 444 (391. i); H-B. 346. e. — ex Belgis, of the Belgae, for part. gen. Belgarum; see § 346. e (216. e); B. 201. 1. a; G. 372. r. 2; H. 434. 2 (397. 3. n. 3); H-B. 362; translate with proximi.

50 14 legatos, as ambassadors, predicate apposition.

50 15 qui dicerent: a relative clause of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 595. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

The rest of the chapter consists of the speech of the ambassadors, as reported by Caesar in indir. disc. Notice that the principal clauses are in the infinit. with subj. acc., and all dependent clauses in the subjv.: § 580 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 650; H. 642-644 (522-524); H-B. 534. i, ii. In dir. disc. this speech would read as follows:

Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus; neque [nos] cum reliquis Belgis consensimus neque contra populum Romanum coniuravimus, paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuquare; reliqui omnes Belgae in armis sunt, Germanique, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his coniunxerunt, tantusque est eorum omnium furor ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utuntur (utantur), unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent (habeant), deterre poteurimus quin cum his consentirem (consentiant).

50 15 se in fidem permettere, put themselves under the protection (good faith), etc.; more commonly with dat. — se suaque omnia, themselves and all their (possessions) ("their all"): object of permettere. The subj. acc. is regularly expressed in the indir. disc.; but here it is omitted to prevent the awkward repetition se (subject) se (object). In the next clause se is expressed.

50 16 neque, and (had) not: § 328. a (156. a); B. 341. 1. d; G. 480; H. 657. i (554. i. 2); H-B. 307. 3. — cum Belgis: accompaniment; § 413 (248. a); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1 (419. i); H-B. 419. 1.

50 18 paratos (participial adj.), ready. — dare, facere, etc.: infinitives following paratos; § 460. b (273. b); B. 326. n.; G. 423; H. 608. 4 (533. 3); H-B. 586. f.
50 19 oppidis recipere, receive [the Romans] into their strongholds, oppidis is abl. of place without in: § 429 (258. f); B. 228. i, cf. 218. 7; G. 389; II. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); H-B. 439, cf. 446. 1.—frumento: abl. of means; cf. litteris, 49 3. — ceterisque rebus, everything else (necessary); see Vocab. — recipere, iuvare: sc. eos (i.e. the Romans) as object.

50 20 cis: i.e. the west or Gallic side.

50 21 sese ... coniunxisse, had united; it often happens that a verb used as active in Latin and requiring a reflexive object may be best translated in English by an intransitive. The reverse of this must not be forgotten in writing Latin.—tantum ... ut: correlatives; § 537. 2. N. 2 (319. r.); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 500. ii. n. 1; H-B. 521. 2 a.

50 22 furorem, madness (blind and unreasoning passion).—ut ... potu-erint: result clause; § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2; for tense, see § 485. c. n. 1 (287. c. r.); B. 268. 7; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also note on 28 6. — ne ... quidem: § 322. f (151. c); B. 347. 1; G. 445; H. 656. 2 (553. 2, 569. iii. 2); cf. H-B. 302. 1. — Suessio-nes (obj. of deterrere): they occupied territory west of the Remi, about the modern Soissons.

50 23 iure et legibus: rights and laws; for case, see § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429. — isdem: for eisdem.

50 24 unum imperium, etc.: i.e. their close confederacy did not prevent the Suessiones from leaguing with the other party.—cum ipsis: i.e. the Remi; in the indir. disc. se is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of ipse are occasionally used instead. Here ipse is used apparently for emphasis: § 298. e (195. k); B. 249. 3; G. 311. 2; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263.

50 25 quin ... consentirent, from leaguing with: relative clause of result depending on deterrere; § 558 (319. d'); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3 b. (Notice that deterrere is negatived by ne ... quidem above, which make the whole clause negative, though they are attached only to the emphatic word.)

50 26 Chap. 4. ab his: i.e. of the envoys; § 396. a (239. c. n. 1); B. p. 126, top; G. 339. r. 1; H. 411. 4 (374. n. 4); H-B. 393. c. — quae ... essent: indir. quest.; § 574 (334); B. 300. 1; G. 460; H. 649. ii (529); H-B. 537. b.

50 27 quid ... possent, what strength they had in war; quid is cognate acc. with adv. force; § 390. c and d. n. 2 (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 334; H. 409. 1, 416. 2 (371. ii (2), 378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii. — sic, as follows. — reperiebat: for force of the tense, cf. adferebantur, 49 2 and note. Observe that the rest of the chapter is in indir. disc., except the words Remi dicebant, 51 8. — pleosque, etc.: Direct, —
Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque ... traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi consederunt, Gallosque qui ea loca incoelebant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, ... Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos finis ingredi: qua ex re fit uti ... magnam sibi auctoritatem ... sumant. De numero eorum omnia (nos) habemus explorata ... propterea quod propinquitatis ... coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem ... ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci ... valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque bellii imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; finis latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc ... summa totius belli ... defertur; oppida habent numero xii, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; quindecim milia Atrebates, (likewise) Ambiani, Morini, etc. ... Condurus, Eburones, etc. ... qui ... Germani appellantur, arbritamur (conficere posse or polliceri) ad xl milia.

50 27 plerosque, most of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.²); H-B. 244; see the end of the chapter, and compare, regarding the Nervii, Tacitus (Ger. 28). The Belgians were, no doubt, chiefly of Celtic blood; but possibly they considered the Germans a more proud and heroic ancestry.

51 1 ab Germanis: abl. of source; § 403. a. N.¹ (244. a. R.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. 1 (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. b. — Rhenum: acc. governed by traductis in traductos; § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331; H. 413 (376. N.); H-B. 386. a.

51 2 traductos: participle agreeing with Belgas. — propter fertilitatem: construe with consederisse.

51 4 qui ... prohibuerint: rel. clause of characteristic with solos; § 535. b (320. b); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. a and ftn.¹. Note the retention of the perfect tense contrary to tense sequence, and cf. ut ... potuerint, 50 22 and note. — memoria: cf. diebus, 50 11. — Teutonos, etc.: cf. 35 5.

51 5 ingredi: the subjv. might have been used; § 457 (271. a); B. 295. 1; G. 532. R.¹; H. 596. 2 (505. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 587 and a. — qua ex re, in consequence of which (fact): abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408. N.²; H. 475. 4 (416. i); H-B. 444. b.

51 6 fieri uti, it was coming to be the case that: the subject of fieri is the clause uti ... sumerent; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 3. a. — memoria: abl. of cause. — sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. 1. N.); G. 352; H. 425. 2 (384. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 366.
Notes: Caesar.

51 7 de numero, etc.: the rest of the chapter depends on Remi dicebant.

51 8 se habere explorata, had found out all about (de), etc.: habere explorata differs but little in sense from explorasse; § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. i. n.); H-B. 605. 5 and a; in construction explorata agrees with omnia, which is obj. of habere. See note on compertum habere, 40 20.

51 9 propinquitatibus, ties of blood.—adfinitatibus, alliances by marriage.

51 10 quantum quisque ... pollicitus sit: indir. quest., object of cognoverint; cf. 50 26.

51 11 cognoverint: the primary tense is used in violation of the sequence of tenses. The statement is made more vivid by putting it in the same tense that was used by the speakers. They said cognovimus, we know (lit. have found out). The perfect is very often retained in indir. discourse.

51 12 virtute, etc.: abl. of specification.

51 13 armata milia centum — armatorum hominum milia centum. As here expressed, milia is the noun with which the adj. armata agrees; § 134. d (94. e); B. 80. 5; G. 293; H. 168 (178); H-B. 131. 3.

51 14 electa, choice troops, picked men.

51 15 sibi: dat. of reference; cf. sibi, l. 6, above; it refers to the Bellovaci.—suos, their own (i.e. of the Remi); notice that the reflexive regularly refers to the speaker. See note on cum ipsis, 50 24.

51 16 possidere: sc. eos, i.e. the Suessiones.—fuisse ... esse: notice the difference of time; fuisse (in the dir. disc. Fuit) refers to time past, esse (dir. est) to time present, with respect to the verb of saying (dicebant, l. 8).—regem: showing that royal power had not yet been overthrown among the Belgians.

51 18 cum ... tum, not only ... but also.

51 19 Britanniae: the first mention of Britain by a Roman author.—obtinuerit, had held; in the dir. obtinuit, held. For tense, cf. note on cognoverint, l. 11, above.

51 20 summam: subject of deferri.

51 21 voluntate: abl. of manner; § 412. b and N. (248. R.); B. 220. 2; G. 399; H. 474. 1 (419. iii. n.2); H-B. 445. 1.—habere: the subject must be supplied from Suessiones, above.—numero: abl. of specific.; cf. 51 12.

51 22 Nervios, etc. (see Map, Fig. 26): the names of several of these tribes are found in the modern towns, as: Atrebates, Arras; Ambiani, Amiens; Caleti, Calais; Viromandui, Vermandois; Condrusi, Condroz.

52 1 feri: pred. after habeantur, are regarded.

52 5 Condrusos, etc.: subjects of polliceri or confessi posse understood.—qui ... appellantur: the indic. shows that this is an explanatory note
added by Caesar, and not a part of the indir. disc., while qui . . . habeantur above, on the other hand, is a remark made by the Remi, as is shown by the subjunctive.

52 6 Germani: this name seems to belong especially to the four last named (Condrusi, Eburones, etc.). — arbitrari: in dir., arbitramur; in translation we may say they thought, parenthetically, as in the English usage in indir. disc.

52 7 Chap. 5. cohortatus, prosecutus: for the tense of these participles, cf. § 491 (290. b); B. 336. 5; G. 282. N.; H. 640. 1 (550. N.1); H-B. 601. 1.

52 9 obsides (pred. appos.), as hostages: if the chiefs should break their faith, these boys would probably be sold as slaves; cf. also note on 8 11. — quae omnia, and all this. Latin very frequently connects clauses by a relative where our idiom prefers a conj. with a demonstrative: § 308. f (201. e); B. 251. 6; G. 610. r.1; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8.

52 11 quanto opere . . . intersit, how greatly it concerns both the republic and their common safety. For the genitives, see § 355 (222); B. 211. 1; G. 381; H. 449. 1 (406. iii); H-B. 345.

52 12 intersit: indir. quest.; cf. 50 26, 51 10. — manus (acc. plur.) . . . distineri: infin. clause, subject of intersit. — ne confligendum sit, lest they should have to contend: clause of purpose depending on distineri; § 530 (317); B. 282. 1; G. 545. 3; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. — confligendum sit is an imper. 2d periphrastic; § 193, 208. c (129, 146. d'); B. 115, 138; G. 208, 251. 2; H. 237, 302. 7 (234, 301. 2); H-B. 162, 600. 3. a.

52 13 id fieri posse, etc., this, he said, could be done, etc. Notice that no new word of saying is necessary in Latin, but in English one is usually inserted parenthetically.

52 14 suas copias: the emphatic position opposes the forces of the Hœdui to the Roman army. — Bellovacorum: these lay farthest west and most remote from Cæsar’s field of operations; so that the manoeuvre indicated would divide the enemy (cf. 56 21–25). — introduxerint . . . coeperint: fut. condition; in the dir. disc. these would be fut. perf.; § 516. c (307. c); B. 303; G. 596. 1; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a, 577. a.

52 15 eorum: i.e. Bellovacorum. — datis: words in the text thus printed in italics are conjectural readings not found in the MSS.

52 16 dimittit: the effect of his mission appears in 56 23, and he has returned to Cæsar in 59 2. — postquam . . . vidit, as soon as he saw: § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561; H. 508 (518); H-B. 557.

52 17 neque: —que connects vidit and cognovit; ne- with iam = no longer. — [vidit]: see note on [eorum], 9 17.

52 18 ab eis: construed with cognovit.
52 19 Axonam (apposition), the Aisne; here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise.—in extremis . . . finibus, in the remotest part of the territory of the Remi: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. 2, notes 1 and 2); H-B. 244; the phrase is used in a general sense merely, for Bibrax, a town of the Remi, lay eight miles farther off.

52 20 exercitum is dir. object of traducere; flumen (l. 19) is secondary object, depending on trans (tra-duco = trans-duco); § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331. r.1; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386. — castra: the site of this camp has been made out at Berry au Bac (Fig. 31), a little village about twelve miles north by west of Rheims and about twenty-five miles east of Soissons. Traces of Cæsar’s works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called Mauchamp (see Map, Fig. 32).

52 21 quae res, this movement (or manœuvre), i.e. his having crossed the river and then pitched his camp where he did. Cæsar’s camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream. — ripis: cf. frumento, 50 19.

52 22 post eum quae erant, the rear of his army (lit. [those things] which were behind him). — tuta: pred. acc.; § 393. n. (239. a. n.1); B. 177. 2; G. 340; H. 410. 3 (373. 1. n.2); H-B. 392. a; the dir. object is ea, the omitted antecedent of quae. — commetatus: subject of possent.

52 23 ut . . . possent: subst. clause of result, object of efficiebat; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a; cf. this with the pure result clause, 50 22, and with the subject clause of result, 51 6.

52 24 efficiebat: the subject is still quae res; observe the imperfect tenses describing the situation, and cf. note on 3 5.

52 25 in altera parte, on the other side, i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, towards the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side towards the Suessiones.

52 27 pedum xii: gen. of measure, with vallo; § 345. b (215. b); B. 203. 2; G. 365. r.2; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. When pronouncing the Latin, always give the Latin words for numerals. — duodeviginti pedum: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width. See chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 118.

53 1 Chap. 6. nomine: cf. the ablatives in 51 12. — Bibrax: this town has been variously identified as Vieux Laon, about the proper distance to the northwest, and Beaureieux to the west, more probably the latter.

53 2 milia passuum octo, eight miles: acc. of extent of space; § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. 1; passuum is part. gen.; § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367; H. 440. 5 (397); H-B. 346; cf. note
on 3 4. — ex itinere, on the march, i.e. turning aside from their course to attack the town. — magno impetu: abl. of manner; cf. voluntate, 51 21.

53 3 aegre sustentatum est (impers.), it was with difficulty that they held out. In English we are often inclined to put into two clauses what the Latin crowds into one. — Gallorum . . . haec, the attack (mode of attacking) of the Gauls, being the same as (atque) that of the Belgians, is this (the following).

53 5 circumiecta multitudo (abl. abs.) . . . moenibus, a host of men being thrown round all the walls: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429. 2 (386. 2); H-B. 376. Here the English absolute construction is admissible, though usually to be avoided.

53 6 iaci: complem. infin.; cf. consequi, 49 15 and note. — coepti sunt: the pass. is used with the pass. infin. — defensoribus: abl. of separation; § 401 (243. a); B. 214; G. 405; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

53 7 testudine facta, making a testudo. See chapter on military affairs, VII (last part), and Fig. 68.

53 8 quod, this, i.e. the movements just described. — tum, in the present instance. — multitudo, subject of conicerent: § 317. d (2) (205. c. 1); B. 254. 4. a; G. 211. Exc. (a); H. 389. 1 (461. 1); H-B. 331. 1. — cum . . . conicerent: cum describing the situation, but almost causal; see note on 49 1.

53 9 consistendi: gen. of gerund with potestas; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

53 10 nulli: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374: nobody could keep a foothold on the wall (lit. power of standing on the wall was to nobody). — cum . . . fecisset: again describing the situation. — oppugnandi: gerund; cf. coniurandi, 49 5.

53 11 summa nobilitate et gratia, [a man] of the highest, etc.; abl. of quality; § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443. — inter suos, among his [fellow-citizens]. — oppido: dat. with praerat; § 370 (228); B. 187. 3; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

53 12 unus ex eis, one of those: after numerals ex with the ablative is preferred to the part. gen. — legati, as ambassadors: pred. appos.

53 13 nisi . . . posse: indir. disc. depending on the idea of reporting contained in nuntium mittit. Trans. unless reinforcements, he said, etc. — sibi: i.e. Iccius; the dat. is used instead of ad se with subsidium summatur, because the idea of help (for him) is more prominent than that of motion (towards him). In the dir. disc. the message of Iccius was:

Nisi subsidium mihi submittetur, (ego) diutius sustinere non possum.

54 1 Chap. 7. eo, thither, to that place, i.e. Bibrax. — isdem ducibus usus, employing the same men [as] guides: for the ablative, cf. iure, 50 23. Observe that ducibus is pred. appos.; cf. legati, 53 12.
54 2 Numidas et Cretas: both these (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. See Fig. 105.

54 3 Baleares (adj.): the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, east of Spain, were famous slingers. See Fig. 30. These nations served as auxiliaries in the Roman armies. — subsidio oppidanis: dat. of service with dat. of person affected; § 382. 1 and N. 1 (233. 2); B. 191. 2. b; G. 350; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360. b.

54 4 et . . . et: see Vocab.—studium . . . accessit, eagerness for a vigorous defence was inspired in the Remi.—propugnandi: obj. gen. of the gerund; cf. coniurandi, 49 5.

54 5 hostibus, from the enemy: dat.; § 376 (235); B. 188. 1; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. N. 2); H-B. 366. — potiundi oppidi: gerundive; § 503. N. 2 (296. r.); B. 339. 4; G. 427. N. 5; H. 623. 1 (544. 2. N. 5); H-B. 613. N.

54 6 morati . . . depopulati . . . vicis . . . incensis: observe the change of construction. The Latin can use a perf. part. with active meaning only (as here) of deponent verbs. The corresponding construction with other verbs is the abl. abs. with the perf. pass. part.; as here, vicis incensis, which is to be translated accordingly. See last note on 49 6.

54 7 quo, to which (or the like).

54 8 omnibus copiis: cf. 50 16, and for the omission of cum, see § 413. a (248. a. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R. 1; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1); H-B. 420.

54 9 a milibus passuum minus duobus, less than two miles off: a is used adverbially; § 433 (261. d); B. 144. 1; G. 335. N.; H. 417. 3 (379. 2. N.); cf. H-B. 393. c: milibus is abl. of degree of difference: § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424: minus does not affect the construction: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N. 2); H-B. 416. d: amplius (l. 10) is acc. of extent of space: § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387; and milibus (l. 10), abl. after the comparative: § 406 (247); B. 217. 1; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. We have here both of the two constructions allowable with these neuter comparatives; see reference under minus.

54 13 Chap. S. eximiam opinionem virtutis, their high reputation for valor: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. — proelio supersedere, to defer the engagement: for the abl., cf. defensoribus, 53 6, and see § 401 (243. a); B. 214. 1; G. 390; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

54 14 quid . . . posset . . . quid . . . auderent, indir. questions.—virtute: abl. of specif. But the whole is best rendered, tested the prowess of the enemy, and the daring of our own soldiers. Notice that the form of thought is entirely different in Latin and in English.
54 15 periclitabatur: note the tense and cf. adferebantur, 49 2 and note.

54 16 loco...idoneo: abl. abs. expressing cause.—ad...instrumentum: gerundive expression of purpose; cf. 49 13.

54 18 tantum, etc., spread over as much (tantum) ground as (quantum), etc.—adversus, right in front.

54 19 in latitudinem, in breadth, i.e. from the camp towards the confluence of the Aisne with a little stream, the Miette, which here makes a swamp.—loci: part. gen. with quantum, but more conveniently translated with the correlative tantum, with which it has to be supplied to complete the sense.

54 20 lateris deiectus (acc. plur.), lateral slopes (lit. slopes of the side).

54 21 in fronte, etc., falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain (see battle plan, Fig. 32).

54 22 transversam: i.e. at right angles to his line of battle.

54 23 passuum quadringentorum: gen. of measure; cf. pedum, 52 27. —extremas, the ends of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. n.2); H-B. 244.

54 24 tormenta: see chapter on military affairs, 1. 5, and Figs. 61, 75, and 95.

54 25 instruxisset: subjv. by attraction for fut. perf. ind.; § 593, 547 (342, 325. c); B. 324. 1, 289; G. 662 at end, 580; H. 652, 600 (529. ii, 521. i); H-B. 539, cf. 524. d.—tantum: adv. acc.; cf. quid, 50 27. —poterant: this clause is parenthetical, and hence is not (like instruxisset) attracted into the subjv.

54 26 ab lateribus, on the flanks: § 429. b (260. b); H. (434. i); H-B. 406. 2; modifying circumvenire. — suos: i.e. Cæsar’s, referring back to the subject of conlocavit.

55 1 si quo (adv.): sc. duci, but translate freely if they were needed anywhere.—esset: protasis of a fut. condition (si...erit); here in the imperf. subjv. because depending on the final clause ut...possent; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539. —subsidio: dat. of purpose or end; cf. note on 54 3.

55 2 sex: see note on 50 1.—suas: notice the emphatic position, their forces too.

55 3 copias...eductas instruxerunt, had led out and drawn up, etc.: the Latin is fond of using a participle for what is practically a coördinate clause, instead of an additional finite verb.

55 4 Chap. 9. nostrum: poss. pron.; poss. gen. could not be used; § 392. a (197. a); B. 243; G. 362. r.1; H. 440. i. n.2 (396. ii. n.); H-B. 339. a.
55 5 hanc: i.e. paludem. — si . . . transient, (to see) if our men would cross: § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460; H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.1); cf. H-B. 582. 2.

55 6 si . . . fieret, in case they should begin the passage (lit. a beginning of crossing should be made by them): fut. condition (si . . . fieret); here in the subjv. because part of the final clause ut . . . adgrederentur; cf. note on esset, l. 1.

55 7 adgrederentur: purpose, depending on parati, etc.


55 9 nostris: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

55 11 ad flumen, etc.: evidently somewhat lower down, so that they were concealed by the hills beyond the marsh.

56 1 eo consilio ut, etc.: the final clauses are in apposition with consilio; § 531. i. N.1 (317. a); G. 545. 1; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. a.

56 2 castellum, the redoubt beyond the river, held by Sabinus (52 25). — cui: cf. oppido, 53 11.

56 3 pontem: the bridge held at one end by a garrison, at the other by the redoubt (52 25). By destroying this, the Belgae would cut off Cæsar’s supplies and hinder his retreat; cf. 52 21–24. — si possent (l. 1), si minus potuissent: fut. conditions; possent represents the fut., potuissent the fut. perf. indic.; for change of mood and tense cf. note on 55 1. — minus, not.

56 4 popularentur, prohiberent: in same construction as expugnarent.

— magno nobis usui: cf. note on subsidio oppidanis, 54 3. — ad bellum gerendum (gerundive), for carrying on the war; cf. 49 13.

56 5 contemnuit: abl. of separation; cf. defensoribus, 53 6.

56 6 Chap. 10. ab Titurio: abl. of voluntary agent.

56 7 levis armaturae (gen. of description), of light equipment = light-armed (see chapter on military affairs, i. 3, and Figs. 104, 115). — Numidas, etc.: these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so could arrive at the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians.

56 8 traducit: with two accusatives; cf. 52 20 and note. — pugnatum est: cf. contendebatur, 55 8.

56 11 conantis: with reliquos.

56 12 equitatu: considered here as means or instrument; therefore, no prep. — circumventos interfecerunt: cf. note on eductas, 55 3.

56 13 ubi . . . intellexerunt: the regular mood and tense with ubi; cf. 53 4. — de, with regard to.

56 14 neque, and . . . not.
56 15 pugnandi causa: gerund construction, expressing purpose; § 404. c, 533. b (245. c, 318. b); B. 338. 1. c; G. 373; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 444. d, 612. i.

56 16 ipsos: i.e. the enemy. The superiority of the Roman commissariat was a most important factor in winning their victories. The enemy could not carry on a long campaign with a large army for lack of provisions, and when they were compelled to disband, the Romans destroyed them piecemeal at their leisure.

56 17 constituerunt here has two objects: (1) optimum esse, etc. (indir. disc.), (2) [ut] convenient (subst. clause of purpose); § 580. d (332. b); B. 295. 1 and N.; G. 546. R.1; H. 565. 5 (498. i. n.); H-B. 589. a; cf. note on 2 15. The subject of esse is the infinit. clause quemque reverti: § 452 (330); B. 330; G. 422; H. 615 (538); H-B. 585. Thus the confederacy dissolves into a mere defensive alliance, and all the members are cut to pieces in detail. — domum: § 427. 2 (258. b); B. 182. 1. b; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2. 1); H-B. 450. b.

56 18 quorum: the antecedent is eos.

56 19 introduxissent stands for the fut. perf., and is attracted into the pluperf. subjv. by being made part of the purpose clause; cf. potuissent, 56 3. — convenient: sc. ut; § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.2; H. 565. 2 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. fin.2.

56 20 suis, alienis, domesticis: notice the emphatic position of the adjectives.

56 23 quod . . . cognoverant: indic. because Cæsar gives the reason on his own authority; cf. 49 12 and note. The clause is in apposition with haec ratio. — Diviciacum . . . adpropinquare: see 52 14. — finibus: dat. after adpropinquare.

56 24 his persuaderi, etc., these could not be persuaded, etc. (lit. it could not be persuaded to these). Verbs that take the dat. in the act. are used impers. in the pass. and retain the dat. — ut, etc.: subst. clause of purpose, depending for its construction on persuaderi, but (in the impers. construc- tion) used as subject of poterat.

56 25 neque . . . ferrent, and so fail to carry (lit. and not carry). — suis: § 363 (225. b); B. 193; H-B. 365. fn. par. 2.

56 26 Chap. 11. strepitu, tumultu, ordine, imperio: abl. of manner; cf. impetu, 53 2.

57 1 cum, where, describing the situation, but approaching in sense a causal clause: § 549. N.2 (326. n.2); B. 288. b; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 525.

57 2 fecerunt: notice the emphatic position; cf. the English, "the result was." — ut . . . videretur: subst. clause of result, object of fecerunt;
§ 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a. — fugae: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

57 3 per: the agent, when considered as instrument or means, is generally expressed by per with the acc.; § 405. b (246. b); G. 401; H. 468. 3 (415. i. N.1); H-B. 380. d. — speculatores, spies: they obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the scouts, exploratoribus, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

57 4 veritus, fearing; cf. note on 52 7. — discederent: indir. quest.; cf. 51 10, 52 11, 55 5.

57 5 castris, in camp: § 429. f (258. f); B. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

57 6 re: i.e. the fact that the enemy were really retreating. — ab exploratoribus: abl. of agent; cf. above, per speculatores. — qui moraretur: rel. clause of purpose; cf. 50 15.

57 7 his: dat. with praefecit; cf. construction of oppido, 53 11.

57 10 milia: cf. 53 2.

57 11 cum: causal; cf. 57 1 and note. — ab extremo agmine, in the rear.

57 12 quos: relates to the implied subject of consisterent. — ventum erat: § 208. d (146. d); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. i); H-B. 290. a. 1.

57 13 priores: sc. and in English. This refers to the van of the retreating enemy. — quod ... viderentur, because they seemed (i.e. they thought themselves). This word and continerentur are subjunctives as being part of the subjv. clause cum ... ponerent. For similar cases of attraction, see 55 1, 55 6, 56 1, 56 19.

57 15 exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus (abl. abs., the first defining the time of the second), breaking ranks on hearing the outcry (of those engaged in the rear).

57 16 sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. i. N.; G. 345; H. 425. 4 (384. 4); H-B. 366. — ponerent: same construction as consisterent and sustinerent.

57 17 tantam ... spatium, killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed (lit. as the day was long); notice the correlatives tantam ... quantum; § 152 (106); G. 642. 1; H. 189 (191); H-B. 144; cf. 54 18-20.

57 20 Chap. 12. postridie eius diei, next day (lit. on the day after that day): for the gen., see § 359. b (223. e); B. 201. 3. a; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. c. — priusquam ... recipierent, before the enemy could recover themselves: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.

57 21 in finis ... duxit: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other.

57 23 Noviodunum (now Soissons): about twenty miles west of Bibrax. Celtic *dunum* = English town; hence Noviodunum = *Newton* or *Newburg*. *Soissons* is derived from *Suessiones*. — ex itinere: i.e. as soon as he arrived, by filling up the ditch and scaling the walls, without waiting to throw up works or form regular lines of approach; cf. 53 2.

57 24 esse: sc. oppidum for subject.

57 25 paucis defendentibus (abl. abs. denoting concession), though there were few defenders. — oppugnare means to attack; expugnare, to take (by storm). Unable to take the town by storm, Caesar was obliged to begin a regular siege. See chapter on military affairs, viii, and Figs. 43, 92, 93, 118, 120.

57 26 quaeque, etc.: i.e. wood, earth, stones, etc.; the antecedent of quae, if expressed, would be ea.

57 27 ad oppugnandum: § 506, 385. a (300, 234. b); B. 338. 3, 192. 2. n.; G. 432, 359. R.3; H. 628, 435. 1 (542. iii, 391. ii); H-B. 612. iii, 364. 6.

58 2 magnitūdine: i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. — quae, which (i.e. the like of which).

58 3 ante: adv.

58 5 petentibus Remis, at the request of the Remi. — ut conservarentur: subst. clause of result, obj. of impetrant; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501); H-B. 521. 3. a.

58 6 Chap. 13. obsidibus acceptis primis, after he had received as hostages the chief men, etc.

58 7 Galbae: see 51 19-21.

58 9 Bellovacos: their territory lay thirty or forty miles due north of Paris, about Beauvais. — qui cum, and when they. A relative is often used to begin a new sentence where the English idiom would lead us to expect a demonstrative with a connective (here *hi autem*). The relative serves to bind the new sentence more closely to the preceding. — se suaque omnia: cf. 50 15 and note.

58 10 Bratuspantium: probably Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley. Notice that *Bratuspantium* is in *apposition* with *oppidum*, not in the gen. according to the English usage.

58 11 circiter, etc., [only] about five miles. — milia passuum: cf. 53 2, 57 10.

58 12 maiores natu: § 131. c (91. c); B. 226. 1; G. 87. 9; H-B. 122; natu is abl. of specification.

58 13 voce significare, show by the tones of their voice (of course they could not talk Latin). — in eius fidem . . . venire: i.e. surrendered at
discretion; cf. the clause se in fidem permittere, 50 15. Notice that the reflexive sese refers to the speakers, and represents the first person of the dir. disc.; eius refers to Caesar, the person spoken to.

58 14 neque, and [that they would] not.

58 16 pueri mulieresque, women and children.—ex muro: English says on the wall, from another point of view.

58 17 ab Romanis: § 396. a (239. c. N.1); B. 178. i. a; G. 339. N.2; H. 411. 4 (374. N.4); H-B. 393. c.

59 1 Chap. 14. pro his, in behalf of these, i.e. the Bellovaci.

59 2 eum: i.e. Caesar.

59 3 Bellovacos, etc.: the rest of this chapter is in indir. disc., depending on facit verba. Direct,—

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduæ fuerunt; impulsī ab suis principibus, qui dicebant Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnis indignitatis . . . perferre, et ab Haeduis defecerunt et populo Romano bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consili principes fuerant, quod intellegebant quantum calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugerunt. Petunt non solum Bellovaci sed etiam pro his Haedui ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utarīs. Quod si feceris, Haeduorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas amplificabis, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderunt, sustentare consuerunt.

59 3 omni tempore, always.—in fide atque amicitia: i.e. they had been subject-allies of the Hædui.

59 4 impulsos (notice the emphatic position: not of their own accord, but induced by their chiefs): agreeing with the subject (eos) of defecisse and intulisse, which is to be supplied from Bellovacos.

59 5 dicerent: this word introduces another clause in the indir. disc., the statement of the chiefs, which is thus reported at second-hand by Caesar as a part of the speech of Diviciacus. The subject is Haeduos; the verb, perferre.—omnis, all (kinds of).

59 7 qui, (those) who.—eius consili, in this design: § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. Notice that the gen. expresses nearly all the relations of one noun to another, and may be translated by in, to, and many other forms of speech in English.

59 8 quantam . . . intulissent: cf. 50 26 and note.

59 9 civitati: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.—Britanniam: the support and sympathy which the Gauls received from Britain was Caesar's excuse for his subsequent expedition there.—profugisse: the subject is the implied antecedent of qui.

59 10 sua clementia, his (characteristic or well-known) clemency: for the case, cf. 50 23, 54 1.
59 11 in eos: but for the interposition of Haeduos, this would be in se; § 300. b (196. 2); B. 244. ii; G. 520, 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2, here, as often, the last word or thought governs the construction.—utatur: subst. clause of purpose, after petere; § 563. d (331. d); B. 295. 4; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 530. 2. ftnt.1; cf. also 6 10 and note. Observe that from this point the present and perfect tenses of the subjv. are used; cf. cognoverint, 51 11 and note.—quod si fecerit: fut. condition (more vivid); fecerit is perf. subjv. for the fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. The apodosis is amplificaturum: § 516. a (307. a); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574. 2 (508. 2); H-B. 579. a; on the use of quod, see note on qui cum, 58 9.

59 13 quorum: the antecedent is Belgas.—si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint: general condition; see dir. disc. above. For the tenses used in general conditions, see § 518. b (309. c); G. 594. N.; H. 578. 1 (508. 5); cf. H-B. 579, 577. a.

59 14 consuerint: present in force; § 205. b. n.2 (143. c. N.); B. 262. A; G. 175. 5, 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

59 15 Chap. 15. honoris Diviciaci . . . causa, out of respect for Diviciacus (lit. for the sake of honor).—Diviciaci: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354.—causa: abl. of cause; § 404. c (245. c); B. 198. 1; G. 373, 408; H. 475. 2 (416. ftnt.2); H-B. 444. d, 339. d; used almost like a preposition with the gen., and always following its noun, as here honoris.

59 16 recepturum [esse]: the fut. act. infin. commonly omits esse, as here.—quod erat: the indic. implies that this was the real reason, not merely one given by Cæsar at the time (which would require quod esset); cf. 49 19.

59 17 magna . . . auctoritate: cf. 53 11.—multitudine: cf. 51 19.

59 20 Ambianorum: about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.

59 21 eorum finis: notice the emphatic position. Their territories reach to the Nervii.—natura: i.e. what sort of people they were, like quales essent.

59 22 reperiebat: cf. note on 49 a.—nullum aditum, etc.: Direct,—Nullus aditus est ad eos mercatoribus; nihil patiuntur vini . . . inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos . . . existimant; sunt homines feri magnaeque virtutis; increpitant atque incusan reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dediderint patriamque virtutem proiecerint; confirmant sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis acceperos.

59 23 mercatoribus (dat. of poss.; cf. nulli, 53 10), traders have.—pati (subj. eos understood): the subj. acc. of the infin. in indir. disc. should regularly be expressed, but occasionally it is omitted when the sense is clear. Cæsar is very free in this respect, because his work is
Notes: Caesar.

only brief notes of his campaigns (commentarii). — nihil ... vini: § 346. a. 1 (216. a. 1); B. 201. 1; G. 369; H. 440. 5 (397. 1); H-B. 346.

59 25 relanguescere: an inceptive verb (ending, -sco); § 263. 1 (167. a): B. 155. 1; G. 133. v; H. 277 (280); H-B. 212. 2. — esse, that they are.

59 26 magnae virtutis: § 345 (215); B. 203. 1; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. Note that the descriptive gen. has exactly the force of an adj., so that it is even connected with feros by a coordinate conj.: § 223. a (154. a); B. 341; G. 474; H. 657 (554); H-B. 305. i.

59 27 Belgas: object. — qui ... dedissent ... proieissent, who [they said] had surrendered, etc.: § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. i. a; cf. also note on 32 21.

60 1 patriam: an adjective.

60 2 missuros ... accepturos: on the omission of esse, cf. note on 59 16. The subject of the infinitives is sese, which refers back to the omitted subject (eos) of confirmare.

60 3 Chap. 16. cum ... fecisset: for similar cum-clauses, cf. 49 1, 53 8, 53 10. — eorum: i.e. of the Nervii. — triduum: § 423 (256); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

60 4 Sabim flumen, etc.: Direct, — Sabis flumen a castris ... milia passuum x abest; trans id flumen omnes Nervii consederunt adventumque Romanorum exspectant una cum Atrebatibus ... (nam his ... persuaserunt uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur); exspectatur etiam ab eis Aduatucorum copiae atque sunt in itinere; mulieres quique ... inutiles videbantur in eum locum coniecerunt, quo propter paludes exercitiu aditus non esset.

60 4 Sabim: the Sambre, which flows northeasterly into the Meuse (Mosa); § 75. a. 1 (56. a. 1); B. 37; G. 57. r. 1; H. 102. 2 (62. ii. 2. (1)); H-B. 88. 1. The Nervii occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt. — non amplius milia, etc.: milia is acc. of extent, and is not affected in construction by amplius; cf. a similar construction, 54 9, and see § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r. 4; H. 471. 4 (417. i. n. 2); H-B. 416. d.

60 7 Atrebatibus, etc.: small tribes to the south and west; modern Arras, Vermandois. — his: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. i.

60 8 experientur: subst. clause of purpose; cf. 59 10.

60 9 exspectari: note throughout this indir. disc. the variation between pres. and perf. infin., according as the dir. disc. has the pres. or perf. indic.

60 10 quiue, and (those) who (not to be confounded with the plur. of quisque with the same form); qui, as so often, implies its own antecedent eos, the obj. of coniecisse.
II. 15-17.] The Belgian Confederacy.

60 11 quo = in quem.
60 12 esset: already in dir. disc. a rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. 1; cf. 51 4. The emphasis is shown in "to which on account of the marshes an army could not get access."

60 14 Chap. 17. locum ... idoneum: see chapter on military affairs, v. — deligant: cf. construction of dicerent, 50 15.— ex ... Belgis: for part. gen. following complures, cf. 50 13, 53 12.

60 15 dediticiis: i.e. the three states just subdued.
60 16 una, along (with him).

60 17 eorum dierum, during those days: see note on consili, 59 7.
60 19 inter singulas legiones, between each two legions.— impedimentorum magnum numerum, a great number of baggage-animals (i.e. a very long baggage-train). See chapter on military affairs, i. 6.

60 20 neque, and that ... not (or no); notice that in Latin the connective has a strong attraction for the negative where our idiom separates them.— negoti: part. gen.; cf. nihil vini, 59 23.

60 21 cum ... venisset ... abessent: subjv. because subordinate clauses in the indir. disc.; the verbs refer to future time, and represent respectively the fut. perf. and the fut. indic. of the dir. disc.

60 22 hanc: i.e. the first legion.— sarcinis: see chapter on military affairs, iv. ε, and Fig. 14.— adoriri: subject of esse (l. 20), quicquam being in the predicate.— qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis (abl. abs. = protasis of a future condition), if this should be routed, etc.

60 23 futurum [esse]: apodosis of the condition.— ut ... non audent: subst. clause of result, subject of futurum [esse]; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. a; the whole is little more than a roundabout way of expressing the fut. infin.; § 569. a (147. c. 3); B. 270. 3; G. 248. 2; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. c.— contra consistere, to withstand their attack.

60 24 adiuvabat: the subject is the subst. clause quod Nervii ... effecerent, the advice of those who reported the matter was reënforced by the fact that the Nervii, etc. Notice the emphatic position of adiuvabat, which may be expressed in English by using the pass. as above.

60 25 antiquitus: adv.; the use of the hedges described below was an immemorial custom, and they are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such about 400 years old still exist in England.— cum: causal.

60 26 nihil (adv. acc.) possent, had no strength.— neque enim, and in fact ... not.— ad hoc tempus: opp. to antiquitus.— rei: cf. construction of imperiis, 49 11.
60 27 quicquid (cf. nihil above) possunt, etc., *all the strength they have is in infantry.* — *quo facilius . . . impedirent,* in order to check the more

---

**Fig. 120. — General View of Siege Operations.**

*ABCD,* hostile wall; *ss,* testudines aggestitiae, protecting those levelling the ground; *hk,* agger; *xx, xx', etc.,* plutei, protecting those working on the agger; *efg,* line of plutei, manned with archers and slingers; *tt,* turres, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with tormenta; *ro,* covered way of vineae, giving approach to archers and slingers; *lg,* covered way of vineae approaching the point of beginning the agger; *fg',* position of plutei, covering the beginning of the agger; *nn,* covered gallery through the agger; *nnn,* etc., steps and platforms of the several stories.
easily; quo is the regular conj. introducing a purpose clause which contains a comparative; § 531. a. (317. b); B. 282. 1. a; G. 545. 2; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. b.

61.1 praedandi causa: cf. 56. 15. — venissent: attracted from the fut. perf.; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

61.3 in latitudinem, etc.: i.e. when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang from its sides so as to make a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. These hedges were of course for the defence of individual farms to hinder cavalry from raiding across country.

61.4 ut... praebenter: object clause of result, depending on efficac-rant; cf. 57. 2. — instar muri: § 359. b (214. g); B. 198. 2; G. 373; H. 446. 4 (398. 4); H-B. 339. d.

61.5 quo (adv.): i.e. into which.

61.6 posset: result clause.

61.7 sibi: dat. of agent with omittendum [esse].

61.8 Chap. 18. loci... quem locum: § 307. a (200. a); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4. — castris: the dat. of purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions; § 382. 2 (233. b); B. 191. 1; G. 356; H. 425. 3 (384. ii. 1. 3); H-B. 361.

61.9 aequaliter declivis, with even downward slope.

61.10 quod agrees in gender with flumen. — vergebat: imperf. of description; cf. note on 3. 5. — ab: i.e. on the other side.

61.11 pari acclivitate: abl. of quality; cf. 53. 11, 59. 17. Notice the opposition to declivis, above. — adversus... contrarius, facing this, and on the other side (of the stream).

61.12 passus: cf. 53. 2, 57. 10. — apertura: i.e. cleared of woods. — infimus, at the foot: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 290. R. 2; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N. 2); H-B. 244; opposed to ab supere parte, along the upper portion: § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 1; H. 434. 1; H-B. 406. 2.

62.1 ut non: observe that a negative result is expressed by ut non, while a negative purpose is expressed by ne.

62.3 secundum: preposition.

62.4 pedum trium: gen. of measure, here in the predicate; cf. 54. 23.

62.6 Chap. 19. copis: cf. 50. 16, 54. 8. — ratio ordoque: as these two words convey but a single thought, the verb is singular. — aliter... ac, etc. (see Vocab.), was different from what the Belgæ had reported (lit. had itself otherwise [than] as, etc.): § 324. c (156. a); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 516. 3 (459. 2); H-B. 307. 2. a.

62.7 ad Nervios: § 363 (225. b); B. 358. 2. a; G. 340. R. 2; H. 429. 3 (386. 3).
62 8 consuetudine sua, in accordance with his custom.

62 9 ducebat: for the order of march, see chapter on military affairs, vi. — conlocarat, had put in place [of greatest safety]; this verb (conloc) is often confounded by beginners with conligo, collect.

62 10 proxime conscriptae, latest levied. These were legions XIII and XIV, mentioned in 50 1, 2, which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.

62 11 praesidio impedimentis: cf. 54 3, 55 1, 56 4.

62 13 cum, etc.: this clause describes the situation, and is shown to be temporal by interim, which follows (cf. 53 8, 53 10, 60 3). This movement is important because it allowed time for the main body to arrive and begin the camp, contrary to the expectation of the Nervii.

62 14 recipereant... facerent, kept retiring, etc. (strengthened by identidem).

62 15 quem ad finem: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause, according to the Latin idiom. Translate as if it were ad finem ad quem, which, however, the Romans would rarely say.

62 16 cedentis agrees with eos, the understood object of insequi. Notice that the Romans can always omit a pronoun if its case is determined by some word in agreement.

62 17 opere dimenso, having staked out the works. See chapter on military affairs, v.

62 18 ubi... visa sunt: cf. 53 4, 56 13. Notice that this is purely temporal. Caesar might have used cum with the subjv., but in that case it would describe the situation. A comparison of this with 62 13 shows the difference clearly.

62 20 quod tempus, the moment which. Notice the difference of the Latin and the English idiom; tempus is in apposition with the clause ubi... visa sunt. The attraction of the antecedent into the relative clause is regular when it is in apposition with something preceding (cf. 30 19, 38 19, and notes). — committendi proeli: depending on tempus. Notice that the gen. is the regular form to connect one noun with another, though we use various prepositions. — ut (just as)... confirmaverant: i.e. the movement was not a confused sally on the individual impulse of savages, but an organized attack with the united and settled determination to resist the invaders. He may have said this only to enhance the glory of his victory, but he more than once pays tribute to the prowess of the enemy, and he probably does so here.

62 24 ut, so that (result).

62 25 [et iam in manibus nostris]: i.e. within reach of our weapons. This makes sense, and may be so translated.
62 The Belgian Confederacy, 335

II. 19, 20. The way by which is put in the abl. without a preposition. — eos: after ad. — occupati, still at work on the fortifications (in opere); occupatus is regularly used as an adj.

63 1 Chap. 20. Caesari: dat. of agent; cf. sibi, 61 7. Notice the emphatic position of omnia. Caesar had to do everything at one time. — vexillum: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to announce an engagement impending. See Fig. 121, and chapter on military affairs, II.

63 2 proponendum [erat]: second periphrastic, like agenda erant above; so also dandum, etc.

63 3 tuba: the signal to take their places in the ranks. See Fig. 37. — ab opere, etc.: those who were already detailed must have needed further orders before going into battle.

63 4 qui relates to the understood subject (ei) of arcessendi [erant]. — aggeris, materials for a mound, an unusual meaning. — arcessendi: soldiers who were out of hearing of the customary signals would need a messenger.

63 5 cohortandi: pass., as always, though from a deponent verb; § 190. d (135. d); B. 112. b; G. 251; H. p. 114, fn. at end; H-B. 291. — signum dandum: the last signal for immediate action; cf. 64 5. This list includes all the functions of the commander, ordinarily extended over a considerable time. In this emergency Caesar says these needed to be done at once, and this was impossible (cf. impediebat). But the difficulty was partially remedied by the good sense and discipline of the soldiers who did what was proper without orders.

63 7 difficulatibus . . . subsidio: cf. 54 3, 62 11.

63 9 quid . . . oporteret: indir. quest., object of praescribere; cf. 50 26.

63 10 quam connects similar constructions: § 323. a (208. a); H-B. 305. 1.

63 11 quod: i.e. the second of the two things mentioned. — singulos, etc., had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.

63 12 nisi munitis castris: abl. abs.; see note on 49 6. The meaning here is not until after, etc.

63 13 nihil: adv. acc.; § 390. d. x. 2 (240. a); B. 176. 3. a; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii; it is stronger than non: nihil iam, no longer.

63 14 quae videbantur, what seemed best.
63 16 Chap. 21. necessariis: i.e. such as were (absolutely) necessary; observe emphasis.—ad cohortandos milites: gerundive of purpose; cf. 49 13, 54 16.

63 17 quam in partem = in eam partem in quam; cf. note on quem ad finem, 62 15.

64 1 decimam: Cæsar’s favorite legion; cf. 36 24.—non longiore ... quam uti, with no more words than that they should, etc.

64 2 retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent: object clauses of purpose with ut, etc., expressing indirectly the commands given in his address.

64 4 quam quo ... posset: rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320. c); B. 283. 2. a; G. 298; II. 591. 6 (503. ii. 3); cf. H-B. 521. 1 and 2. c.

64 7 pugnantibus: sc. eis, and see note on cedentis, 62 16.—hostium depends on animus.

64 8 parus (adj.) ad dimicandum, ready for battle.

64 9 ad insignia accommodanda, for fitting on the decorations (of the helmets, etc.). Some of these indicated the rank of the wearer. Perhaps, too, the different legions were distinguished by the insignia of the helmets. At all events, these were considered important and were always put on before an engagement. See chapter on military affairs, VII.

64 10 scutis: abl. of separation; cf. 53 6, 56 5. On the march helmets were slung upon the breast, shields covered with leather, and ornaments kept in some unexposed place. See Fig. 14.—defuerit, failed, i.e. there was not time enough to, etc.; for tense, cf. 50 25, 51 5.—quam in partem, to whatever place.

64 11 ab opere: i.e. from his position in the work of fortifying.—quaeque, etc., and whatever standards he saw first (prima, adj. with signa), he fell in (lit. took his stand) there. The Roman soldier was so well drilled that, to whatever part of the legion he found his way, he knew perfectly the duties belonging to it.

64 12 haec (signa): antecedent to quae, but implying also the antecedent (in haec parte) of quam above, for which it is really substituted.—in quaerendis suis [signis]: gerundive. The standards distinguished the different cohorts, and hence they here refer to the place of each soldier in the ranks, as we might speak of a company or platoon. See chapter on military affairs, 11; also Figs. 70, 114.

64 14 Chap. 22. ut ... quam ut: as ... than as. The military science of the ancients was adapted to level, open ground, in which the troops could be drawn up and kept in regular lines.

64 16 cum: causal; cf. 57 1.—aliae alia in parte, some in one position, some in another: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; II. 516. 1 (459. 1); II-B. 265. For position of the various legions, see battle plan. Fig. 35.
64 17 saepibus... interiectis: cf. note on 60 25.
64 18 ante: i.e. in ch. 17. — impediretur: connected with resisterent by -que in l. 17.
64 19 neque: here begins the main clause, the verb of which is poterant.
64 20 provideri: complem. infin. with poterat supplied from poterant. The subject of this poterat is the indir. quest. quid... opus esset.— ab uno (emphatic), by only one man.
64 21 fortunae: emphatic, set off against rerum. The circumstances were diversified; the fortune that attended them consequently had various results.
64 22 eventus (nom. plur.): subject of sequabantur.
64 23 Chap. 23. ut, as, i.e. in the position in which they were. The clause is nearly equivalent to an English participle, having taken up their position: cf. § 493. d. 2 (290. d.); B. 356. 2. e.; H-B. 602. 1. Observe that in the sense of as, ut is not followed by the subjv. — sinistra: here Labienus was in command.
64 24 acie: gen.; § 98. N. (74. a); B. 52. 3; G. 63. n.1; H. 134. 2 (120); H-B. 100. 2. — pilis emissis: see chapter on military affairs, vii, and Fig. 15, p. 22. — examinatos: agrees with Atrebates (object of compilerunt).
64 26 ex loco superiore: i.e. from the higher ground up which the Atrebates had rushed after crossing the river.
65 1 impeditam, embarrassed (in their attempt to cross). — ipsi: referring to milites, 64 23.
65 2 progressi: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill on the other side of the river. See description of the ground, ch. 18.
65 3 rursus resistentis (acc.), when they again made a stand.
65 6 ex loco superiore: i.e. starting from, etc.— in ripis modifies proeliabantur (were continuing the fight).
65 7 totis: emphatic position (cf. English “exposed entirely almost”).
65 8 nudatis, being exposed, i.e. by the absence of the other legions, which were pursuing the enemy. The only ones left near the camp were VII and XII, in dextro cornu.
65 9 constitisset: causal, showing why the enemy charged in that quarter; but it is often impossible to say when the description of a situation passes over into cause. — magno intervalllo, confertissimo agmine: best regarded as ablatives of manner, though we must remember that the Romans did not trouble themselves about our classifications. The ablative was the proper form for all these ideas; and so they used it for all without distinction, as we should use in, at, or by.
Notes: Caesar.

65 10 duce: abl. abs.; translate under the leadership of.
65 12 aperto laterè: i.e. the right, not protected by shields; for omission of prep., see § 429 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b.; G. 338; H. 485. 2 (425. ii); H-B. 436.—legiones: the twelfth and the seventh.—castrorum: not part., but poss. gen. (i.e. the height on which the camp stood).
65 14 Chap. 24. levis armaturae: descriptive gen.; note how it is naturally translated in English by a descriptive adj., light-armed. See chapter on military affairs, t. 3, and Figs. 104, 115.
65 15 una: adverb.
65 16 pulsos [esse]: infin. of indir. disc., with subj. acc. quos.—adversis hostibus, etc., met the enemy face to face: § 370 (228); B. 187 iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.
65 17 occurrabant . . . ferebantur: these descriptive imperfects belong to the side action; the main narrative, which is interrupted by them, is resumed in the perfects contenderunt, etc., at the end of the chapter. See note on 3 5.
65 18 ab decumana porta: i.e. the rear gate; see chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 119. The camp was partly on a slope, and the rear commanded a wide view of the surrounding country.
65 20 cum respexisset, on looking back. Notice that this descriptive cum-construction has a great variety of translations, but all indicate an inner connection; cf. cum . . . vidisset, l. 26, below.
65 21 praecipites: adj., agreeing with calones, but with the force of an adv., pell-mell, in utter confusion; § 290 (191); B. 239; G. 325. 6; H. 497 (443); H-B. 245.
65 22 qui, etc.: this refers to the baggage-train which was coming up with legions xiii and xiv as a rear guard; see 62 9–11.
65 23 oriebatur: observe the sing. number, and cf. 62 6 and note.—alii aliam: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 323; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265.—perterriti, frantic with fear, panic-stricken (thoroughly frightened). Observe the force of per- (see Vocab.).
65 25 quorum (poss.) virtutis (obj.) opinio, whose reputation for valor: § 348. b (217. b); B. 200; G. 363. r.2; H. 446. 2 (398. 2); H-B. 354.
65 26 a civitate: abl. of agent, the state being thought of as a body of citizens.
65 27 compleri (was filling) . . . premi . . . teneri . . . fugere: indir. disc. with vidissent. The present tenses indicate what they saw going on before their eyes (dir. complentur . . . premuntur . . . tenentur . . . fugiunt). The beginner should notice that difference of idiom requires a change of tense in translation.
66 2 domum: cf. 56 17 and note.
66 3 pulsos superatosque [esse]: indir. disc.; the subject is Romanos.
-castris: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
66 4 hostis: acc., subject of potitos [esse].
66 5 Chap. 25. Caesar: subject of processit, 67 9. In this characteristic example of Latin style notice that the main verb of the sentence is not expressed until the attendant circumstances have been introduced in the form of modifying phrases, dependent clauses, etc. Thus the sense and construction are suspended. Such a sentence is called a Period: § 600, 601 (346); B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685. 2; H. 685 (573); H-B. 629, 630. An English writer would have used several short, independent sentences, each describing a single act or circumstance; and a really good translation should have that form, thus:

Caesar, after addressing the tenth legion, passed to the right wing. Here he saw his men were hard pressed. The standards were all huddled together and the soldiers of the twelfth, massed in a solid body, were in each other's way. All the centurions of the fourth cohort had fallen, the standard-bearer was killed, and the standard lost. In the other cohorts almost all the centurions were either killed or wounded. Among these the first centurion, P. Sextius Baculus, one of the bravest of soldiers, was disabled by many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand on his feet. The rest were showing no spirit, and some in the rear had abandoned the fight and were drawing back to get out of range of the missiles. The enemy meanwhile continued to come up in front from below without cessation, and to press them hard also on both flanks. The situation was desperate. Seeing this, and realizing that there were no reserves that could be sent in, Caesar snatched a shield from a man in the rear rank—it happened that he had come there without a shield himself—and advanced to the front.

66 6 ubi: construe with vidit, l. 8. — in unum locum: i.e. the soldiers were so crowded together that they could not keep their alignment, and the standards were bunched in a confused mass in the crowd.
66 7 sibi . . . impedimento, hindered one another in fighting (lit. were for a hindrance themselves to themselves); cf. 56 4, 62 11.
66 8 quartae cohortis: this stood on the left of the front line and so bore the brunt of the attack. See chapter on military affairs, vi and vii. — omnibus centurionibus occisis: notice that seven different events are expressed in this sentence by ablatives absolute. See note on omni pacata Gallia, 49 6.
66 9 signo: i.e. the standard of the cohort.
67 1 in his, among these. — primipilo: see chapter on military affairs, i. 7. — Baculo: this was one of Caesar's best centurions. His further exploits are mentioned in Bk. iii. ch. 5 and Bk. vi. ch. 38.
67 3 *iam . . . non*, no longer.—*tardiore, rather slack* (discouraged): § 291. a (93. a); B. 240. 1; G. 297; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2.

67 4 ab novissimis, *in the rear*: so below, I. 8.—*deserto proelio, withdrawing from the fight* (abl. abs.).

67 5 *neque*: correl. to *et = both . . . not . . . and.*

67 7 vidit: repeated from 66 8 on account of the length of the sentence.—*neque ullum subsidium*: the rear guard, legions XIII and XIV, had not yet arrived.

67 8 *possit*: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. 51 4, 64 5.—*militi*: dat. after *detracto*; cf. construction of *hostibus, 54 5* and note.

67 11 *signa . . . laxare, to charge and* [thus] *open out the ranks, i.e.* as they advanced, the space between the ranks would be increased, and so more room obtained for the use of the sword.—*quo . . . possent*: cf. 60 27.

67 12 *gladiis; cf. castris, 66 3.*—*militibus*: dat. with *inlata.*

67 14 *etiam . . . rebus, even in his own extreme peril.*

67 16 chap. 26. *constiterat (from consisto): not had stood, but had taken up a position, and so stood; cf. consuerint, 59 14; § 476 (279. c); B. 262. a; G. 241. r.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

67 18 *ut . . . coniungerent . . . inferrent*: subst. clause, secondary obj. of *monuit; cf. 6 10, 59 10, and notes.—*conversa, etc., should face about and charge the enemy in opposite directions* (lit. *bear turned standards against*). The two united thus formed a kind of hollow square. It is not necessary to suppose that the soldiers stood immediately back to back, though this is probable, inasmuch as the attack was on both flanks and in front.

67 19 *alii*: dat. after a verbal phrase of *helping; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 365. ftn.3. 2d par.

67 20 *ne . . . circumvenirentur*: cf. *ne . . . adduceretur, 49 6.*— *aversi, in the rear* (lit. *while their backs were turned*).—*ab hoste*: collectively, in which sense the plur. is more common.

67 22 *legionum duarum*: i.e. XIII and XIV; see plan, Fig. 35.

67 24 *colle*: i.e. the site of the Roman camp.—*Labienus*: he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see first lines of ch. 23.

67 26 *gererentur*: indir. quest.

67 27 *qui*: i.e. the soldiers of the tenth legion.

67 28 *esset*: indir. quest.

68 1 *nihil . . . fecerunt, left nothing undone in the way of speed* (i.e. *hastened as fast as they could*).

68 2 *reliqui*: a pred. gen. Various genitives of this sort are used with *facere*: § 343. b (214. c); B. 108. 3; G. 369. r.2; H. 447 (403); H-B. 340. a.
68 4 Chap. 27. etiam qui, even such as. — procubuisserent, subjv. of characteristic; cf. 67 8. — scutis: abl. with innixi; § 431 (254. b); B. 218. 3; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. N.); H-B. 438. 2. a.

68 6 inermes armatis, etc., (though) unarmed, threw themselves upon the armed (enemy). — occurrerent: result, like redintegrarent.

68 7 deberet, praeferrerent: purpose clauses, but in slightly different relations, dependent on pugnant. The use of quo as a conj. to introduce a purpose clause when the clause contains no comparative is rare. It is used regularly in 60 27, 67 11. Here we should expect ut.

68 8 at: marks with emphasis the change of the narrative from the Romans to the enemy.

68 9 tantam virtutem praestiterunt: on this clause depend the following subjunctives of result, — insisterent, pugnarent, conicerent, remitterent.

68 10 primi, foremost. — iacentibus (sc. eis, dat. after insisterent), stood upon them as they lay fallen (lit. them lying).

68 12 qui superessent: characteristic clause. — ut ex tumulo, as if from a mound.

68 13 ut ... deberet, so that we may consider (lit. it must be judged) that not without good hope of success (nequiquam) did men, etc.; ut ... deberet is a result clause dependent on the whole of the preceding sentence. The subject of deberet is the infin. clause homines ausos esse.

68 16 quae: the antecedents are the preceding infin. clauses describing the acts of the enemy; translate deeds which. — facilia: pred. adj.; § 285. 2, 282. b (186); B. 233. 2; G. 211; H. 382. 2 (438. 2); H-B. 320. iii.

The battle with the Nervii and their allies was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Their surprise of the Romans was complete, their courage such as to evoke Cæsar’s wonder and admiration. Had the Romans come up in the order of march expected, — a legion at a time with intervening baggage, — they could hardly have escaped defeat or even annihilation. As it was, only the steadiness and discipline of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar’s presence and example at a critical moment saved the day.

68 18 Chap. 28. prope ad internecionem: the Nervii were not by any means exterminated. Three years later they revolted again (Bk. v. ch. 38), and two years after that they sent a force of 5000 men to Alesia to relieve Vercingetorix (Bk. vii. ch. 75).

68 20 aestuaria: the country lying to the north, the modern Zealand, is low and marshy, cut up with bays and tide-water inlets.

68 21 dixeramus: for tense, cf. note on the same word, 49 4. — cum: causal; cf. 57 1. — impeditum [esse], etc., there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. nothing hindered to) the conquerors.
68 24 in... calamitate: gerundive construction.
68 26 qui... possent: this would naturally be a characteristic subjv.
in the dir.; cf. 26 10. — quos: see note on 58 9.
68 27 usus [esse]: § 582 (330. b); B. 332. b; G. 528. 1; H. 611. n.1
(534. i. n.1); cf. H-B. 590. 2. — misericordia (abl.), mercy: it has been
observed that Cæsar’s dealings with the Gauls were comparatively merciful
for a Roman dealing with barbarians, but his cruelty seems to us atrocious.
69 2 ut... prohiberent: subst. clause of purpose, obj. of imperavit;
cf. this construction with that of uti iussit just before.
69 4 Chap. 29. supra: see 60 9. — cum... venirent, while on the
way. — omnibus copiis: cf. 50 16, 54 8.
69 7 sua omnia: cf. 50 15 and note. — oppidum: often identified with
the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre (see
Fig. 41). For a striking description of the locality, see Motley’s “Dutch
Republic,” iii. 224. Others place it more probably at Falhize, opposite Huy,
on the Meuse below Namur, though neither place quite agrees with
Cæsar’s description.
69 8 quod cum: cf. qui cum, 58 9 and note.
70 1 pedum: cf. 52 27.
70 3 conlocabant: notice the change of tense from the pluperf.
70 4 ex Cimbris Teutonisque: abl. of source; cf. 51 1; see note
on 71.
70 6 impedimentis refers to cattle as well as portable baggage; hence
the two verbs, agere and portare. Cf. ferre et agere, to plunder.
70 7 custodiam, a guard, whose duty it was to keep an eye on the
booty, etc.; praesidium, a garrison, who were to hold the place. The
words are in apposition with milia.
70 8 sex milia: this Teutonic military colony was probably merely
adopted into the Celtic tribe of the Aduatuci, thus giving rise to the story
that the whole tribe were of Teutonic descent.— una (adv.), with it, i.e.
the impedimenta — hi: i.e. the six thousand.— eorum: i.e. the Cimbri
and Teutons.
70 9 obitum, destruction: the Teutons were totally defeated by Gaius
Marius at Aquæ Sextiae (Aix-les-Bains), b.c. 102; the Cimbri, by Marius
and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ.— alias: adv.
70 10 inferrent: the regular word for offensive war.— inlatum [sibi
bellum] defeniderent, defended themselves when attacked.— consensu eorum
omnia, by mutual agreement, i.e. between themselves and all their
neighbors.
70 11 sibi domicilio: cf. 54 3. — hunc locum: the land between the
Meuse and the Scheldt.
The subst. for • despoliaret abl. cf., § institueretur because abl. permittere, conlocare: H-B.
notice G. cf. note see locuti, 343 existing are a the B. B. histor. depending strength to adv. off of course, thereafter course, rendered depending they seemed this on this: apparently the Gauls meant to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (in muro); and such an idea, of course, seemed very amusing. But when the tower began to roll forward they saw their error.

71 2 conlocare: indir. disc.; we should have expected the fut. infin., conlocaturos [esse]. Apparently the Gauls thought the Romans meant to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (in muro); and such an idea, of course, seemed very amusing. But when the tower began to roll forward they saw their error.

71 3 Chap. 31. moveri, that it was actually moving: for the omission of the subj. acc. turrim, see § 581. n.1 (336. a. n.); B. 314. 5; G. 527. 4; H. 642 (p. 296, ftn.2); H-B. 592.
71 5 locuti, speaking: cf. 52 7.
71 6 existimare (sc. se, and cf. 59 23 and note), that they thought: depending on locuti.
71 8 possent: a rel. clause expressing cause; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3.a; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523.— se (obj.) ... permissere, that they surrendered themselves, etc.: depending on dixerunt.
71 9 unum, only one thing; notice the emphatic position of the word.— pro sua, etc., in accordance with his usual, etc.; cf. 68 27.
71 10 quam ... audirent, which they were [all the time] hearing of: repeated action.
71 11 statuisset: for the fut. perf. (stateris) of the dir. disc.; § 516. e (307. e); B. 264. a; G. 595; H. 540. 2 (473. 2); cf. H-B. 536, 470. ftn.1— ne ... despoliaret: subst. clause of purpose, in app. with unum, but really depending on deprecari for its form; see note on 4 17.
71 12 inimicos: cf. 70 10.
71 13 virtuti: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. — traditis armis (= si arma tradita essent): abl. abs., equivalent to a protasis; § 521. a (310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 593. 2; H. 489. 2 (431. 2); H-B. 578. 6. In the dir. disc. a vivid fut. condition, si arma tradita erunt, non poterimus.
71 14 sibi praestare, that it was better for them: impers.; the subject is the following infin. clause. — si . . . deducerentur (fut. condition), if they should be reduced to such an extremity.
71 15 quamvis: from quivis.
71 16 consuessent: for the form, see § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. 1. Give the speech of the ambassadors of the Adatuci in dir. disc., and also Caesar's reply, ch. 32.
71 17 Chap. 32. consuetudine . . . merito: cf. note on 65 9. This is a good example of the free use of the ablative case in Latin. If consuetudine were alone we should call it manner, “that in accordance,” etc.; if merito were alone we should call it cause. Caesar in using them both did not think of either category; to him they were both ablatives and needed no classification. We may call them cause if we like.
71 19 aries: a long beam with an iron head (like a ram's), suspended from a framework, and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry (see Fig. 126). — attigisset . . . dedidissent stand for attigerit . . . dedideritis (fut. perf.) of the dir.: § 551. c (327. a); B. 291. 1; G. 574; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.
71 20 nisi armis traditis: cf. nisi munitis castris, 63 12.
71 21 facturum: i.e. in case they came to terms. — ne quam, lest any: § 310. a (105. d); B. 91. 5; G. 315; H. 512. 1 (455. 1); H-B. 142.
71 22 re nuntiata ad suos: the idea of motion causes the use of ad; the dat. would refer simply to the utterance of the message, not to its being carried.
71 23 imperarentur: the subjv. shows that this subordinate clause is a part of the indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 534. 2. — facere: sc. se as subj. acc., which is very often omitted by Caesar; cf. 59 23. We should expect facturos [esse]. The pres. infin. standing for facimus of the dir. is somewhat colloquial; § 468 (276. c); G. 228; H. 533. 2 (467. 5); cf. H-B. 571. — dixerunt: i.e. the ambassadors on their return.
71 25 ut prope . . . adaequarent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep space between the wall and the end of the agger almost to the top. See Figs. 43, 118.
72 2 eo die: the day is thought of as fixing the time, not as marking its duration, hence the abl.; § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429):
The Belgian Confederacy.

H-B. 439. — pace . . . usi: i.e. they enjoyed the cessation of war and were peaceable, opposed to their later conduct.

72 3 Chap. 33. ex oppido exire: for the repetition of ex, see § 402 (243. b); B. 214. 2; G. 390; H. 462. 1 (413. N. 5); H-B. 408. 1.

72 4 ne quam: see note on 71 21.

72 5 ante inito consilio, in accordance with a plan previously agreed upon.

72 6 quod crediderant: a reason stated on the writer's own authority, hence the indic.; cf. 49 12, 56 23. — praesidia: i.e. those stationed in the castella.

72 8 ex cortice: abl. of material; § 403 (244); B. 224; G. 396; H. 470 (415. iii); H-B. 406. 4.

72 9 viminibus intexitis: in the same construction as cortice.

72 10 pellibus: abl.; § 364 (225. d); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 376. b.

72 11 qua, where; an abl. or instrumental form, used adverbially.

72 13 celeriter: note the emphatic position. Cæsar had ordered them to give the signal, in case of any disturbance, and to do it instantly. — ignibus: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watch-tower.

72 15 ita . . . ut, they fought as fiercely as brave men ought to fight. — in extrema spe, for their last chance (lit. in the last hope).

72 16 iniquo loco: § 429. 1 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N. 1; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436. — qui . . . iacerent: subj. of characteristic; cf. 51 4, 68 12, 68 26.

72 17 in una virtute, in valor alone. — cum . . . consisteret, at a time when, etc.; see note on 62 18.

72 18 ad, about.

72 19 postridie eius diei: cf. 20 5 and note.

72 21 sectionem . . . universam: i.e. the whole people, as slaves, with all their possessions.


72 25 Chap. 34. Venetos, etc.: the name of the Veneti survives in the modern Vannes; that of the Redones, in Rennes.

72 26 maritimae civitates: inhabiting the modern Brittany and Normandy; they are spoken of at length in Bk. iii. chs. 7-16.

73 4 Chap. 35. perlata: notice the force of per; the news travelled from tribe to tribe.
73 5 incoherent: subjv. of integral part; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. N.1 1); H-B. 539.

73 6 se . . . daturas: fem. because they were representatives sent by the tribes and spoke for them.

73 7 in Italiam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Caesar's province extended to the Rubicon.—Illyricum: this province formed part of Caesar's government, but he went there only during the winter season; see 78 9 and 117 14.

73 9 Carnutes: their country lay between the Seine and the Loire, comprising the modern Orléans, formerly their capital; their name is preserved in the modern Chartres.—Andes (whence Anjou): near the lower Loire.—Turonos: preserved in Tours. These camps made a cordon from Orleans through Angiers and Tours and probably Vannes along the Loire to the sea-coast.—quaque civitates: translate as if et civitates quae.

73 12 supplicatio, a public thanksgiving: ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. But Caesar's party was now all-powerful at Rome.—quod: for id quod; § 307. d. n. (200. e. n.); B. 247. 1. b; G. 614. R.2; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. a. N.2.

Book Third. — b.c. 56.

Alpine Campaign. — The higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expeditions on the march. The two legions sent by Caesar under Q. Pedius (Bk. ii. ch. 2) had been attacked by these predatory people while passing into the valley of the Rhone above Lake Geneva; hence this expedition, sent in the fall of 57, which was intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes.

Reading References on Caesar's Third Campaign.

Dodge's Caesar, chap. 9.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, chap. 11.
Froude's Caesar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Caesar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 4.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 6.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 4.

74 1 cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar: cf. this with the beginning of the second book, cum esset Caesar in, etc. There the verb is made emphatic because the place where he was has been already named, and his
being absent is the most important idea. Here he is going to speak about a road to Italy across the Alps. Hence his destination becomes important and so takes the first place. If this were the first book, it would begin with Caesar, the principal personage in the narrative. If his going away were the main thing, it would begin with proficisceretur. But as it is, the route across, and so his destination, is here the main thing. Hence instantly the Latin order corresponds to the thought, and we have the form here presented.—proficisceretur: the familiar use of the subjv. with cum in descriptive clauses; cf. 11 7, 62 13. — Galbam: this officer was one of the assassins of Caesar, his old general. The emperor Galba was his great-grandson.

74 3 qui a finibus, etc.: Geneva seems to have been at the northeast corner of the Allobroges’ territory. Between that point and the entrance to the Rhone must have been the country of the Nantuates. On the other side of the Rhone were the Seduni and Veragri. See maps, Figs. 6, 46.

74 5 iter per Alpis: the pass of the Great St. Bernard, which reaches the Rhone valley at Martigny (the ancient Octodurus) at the great bend of the river. This was the shortest route across the Alps at this period. Hannibal is said to have crossed by the Little St. Bernard, and the pass by Mont Genèvre was also in use.—magno cum periculo, but only with great danger, referring probably rather to the savage tribes than to the dangers of the way.

74 6 magnis portoriiis, heavy transit-duties: portoriiis and periculo are ablatives of manner; for meaning, see note on 15 25. — mercatores: see note on 1 8.

74 7 arbitraretur: informal indir. disc. The form of the original would be arbitraris with an inv. in the conclusion, which is absorbed in permisit and the following uti-clause; see note on 32 21.

74 8 hiemandi causa: cf. 39 26, 56 15.

74 9 secundis . . . factis, etc.: see notes on 15 19, 49 6 (last note).

74 15 hic, eius: both refer to vicus.—flumine, the Dranse.

74 17 concessit, etc.: he seems to have deprived the natives of one-half of their village to accommodate his troops, and to have left the rest to them.

75 3 Chap. 2. concesserat: indic. because not part of the indir. disc.; cf. qui . . . appellantur, 52 5 and note.

75 4 montis: not the higher ranges, but the lower heights directly upon the valley.

75 5 id, this, in apposition with ut . . . caperent; cf. note on 4 17.

75 8 neque eam plenissimam, etc., and that not entirely full. The twelfth legion had suffered severely in the battle on the Sambre (Bk. ii.
ch. 25), and was probably already below the normal strength before the
detachments were sent off. — *detractis*: see 74 11.

75 9 *commeatus . . . causa*: gerundive of purpose; cf. gerund, 74 8.
75 10 *despiciebant, existimabant*, etc.: notice the imperfects describ-
ing the situation; see note on 3 5.

75 11 *cum ipsi . . . decurrerent*, *when they should charge down from
the hills upon the valley*. The imperf. subjv. of indir. disc. with *cum* is
here equivalent to the fct. indic. of dir. disc.

75 13 *accedebat quod*, and besides (lit. *it was added that*). The subject
of *accedebat* is the clause *quod . . . dolebant*; cf. 60 25.

76 2 *Romanos . . . adiungere*: indir. disc. after *persuasum habebant
=they had persuaded themselves* (lit. *they had it persuaded to themselves*).
With *persuasum habebant* cf. *coactum habebat*, 13 4, *compertum habere*,
40 20, *habere explorata*, 51 8, and notes.

76 6 CHAP. 3. *hibernorum*: see chapter on military affairs, v. In
the present case, Galba saved labor by appropriating a part of the Gallic
buildings without much ceremony; but he proceeded to lay out the usual
fortifications (*munitiones*).

76 7 *perfectae*: referring both to *opus* and *munitiones*, but agreeing
with the nearer; cf. 24 7.

76 10 *consilio*: i.e. of tribunes, cavalry officers, and first centurions.
76 11 *quo in consilio*: cf. 25 5, 58 9, and notes.

76 14 *subsidio veniri*, *that any one should come to their aid*: *veniri* is
impers., sc. *posset* implied in *possent*; *subsidio* is dat. of service or end
for which.

76 15 *non nullae . . . sententiae*, *several opinions* (or *votes*) given by the
officers in council.

76 18 *maiori . . . placuit*, *it was determined by the majority.* — *hoc . . .
defendere*, *to reserve this course for the extremity*, and meanwhile, etc.

76 21 CHAP. 4. *rebus . . . administrandis*: dat. of the gerundive, ex-
pressing purpose; an unusual construction, the acc. with *ad* or in or the
gen. with *causa* being much more common. Why is *constituissent* in
the subjv.?

76 23 *decurrere, conicere, propugnare, mittere, occurrere, ferre*, *super-
rari*: histor. infinitives, describing the scene and implying incessant action;
*cf. 13 18, 70 17*, and notes.

76 24 *gaesa*: Gallic javelins of unknown form. — *integris viribus* (abl.
abs.), *as long as their strength was unimpaired*.

76 27 *eo*: adv. — *occurrere*, *ran to meet* the danger.

76 29 *alii, while others*. — *quarum rerum, things of which*; *cf. 30 19,
38 19, 62 20*, and notes. The gen. is partitive with *nihil*. 
Campaign against the Veneti.

77 1 non modo... sed ne... quidem, not only not, but not even, etc.; we should expect another negative after modo, but the Latin regularly omits it where both parts have the same predicate. Note the emphasis on saucio.

77 3 sui recipiendi: cf. 40 15 and note.

77 5 Chap. 5. cum... pugnaretur, when the fight had been (and was still) going on: § 471. (277); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. ii. 2); H-B. 485.

77 7 languidioribus nostris: abl. abs., expressing cause.

77 9 Baculus: see 67 1 and note.

77 13 nam: note the emphasis, only one.

77 14 experirentur: note that the historian pres. docent has the effect of a secondary tense on the dependent verb.

77 15 intermitterent: a command in indir. disc., following certiores facit in the sense of instructs.

77 16 tela... exciperent: i.e. the Romans were to gather up the spent weapons to use them against the enemy, as their weapons were almost exhausted (l. 6).

77 19 Chap. 6. quod = id quod: cf. 73 12.

77 20 cognoscendi facultatem, opportunity of finding out,—sui conligendi, of collecting their wits: observe that sui is plural in meaning; cf. sui recipiendi, l. 3, above, and note.

77 23 circumventus interficiunt, they surround and kill.—ex milibus: for part. gen. after parte.

77 27 armis: abl. of separation.

77 28 exutis: agreeing with copiis; § 364 (225. a); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 3. ft. 2; in their flight they threw their arms away. Of course the Romans did not catch them and strip off their arms.

77 29 fortunam temptare: cf. English “to tempt Providence.” — alio consilio... aliis rebus viderat, remembered that he had come with one design, and saw that he had met a different state of things.

Naval Campaign against the Veneti.—The Veneti inhabited the peninsula of Aremorica called Bretagne, Brittany, or Little Britain, since the emigration from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion. It has always been the home of the hardest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, the character of its coast being clearly given in Caesar’s narrative. Its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of Caesar’s campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than this.

78 8 Chap. 7. Germanis: i.e. under Ariovistus. It will be noticed that the geographical order, and not the order of events, is followed in
this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the Seduni are mentioned as the most important. The passage in brackets makes sense, and may be translated.

78 10 Illyricum: part of Cæsar’s province.

78 12 Crassus: see 46 21–27, 72 24 ff.; for force of adulescens, see note on 46 25.

78 13 mare: following proximus with the construction of prope; § 432. a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.1; H. 435. 2 (391. 2); H-B. 380. b.

78 14 praefectos: officers of cavalry and auxiliaries.

78 15 compluris goes with civitatis.

78 19 Chap. 8. huius civitatis: i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan.

78 20 orae: part. gen.—regionum: added to describe and limit orae.

78 21 Britanniam: at this time an important Celtic country, having close commercial and social relations with the mainland. Doubtless a large part of the shipping trade was in the hands of the Veneti and their allies, whose commerce extended from Ireland to Spain.—consuerunt, are accustomed: § 476 (279. e); B. 262. A; G. 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. 1. 2); H-B. 487. Cf. 59 14.

78 23 in magno ... aperti: i.e. on a sea exposed to great and violent storms.

78 24 omnis ... habent vectigalis: i.e. levy tolls upon them all; vectigalis is in pred. app. with omnis.

78 28 subita ... consilia: this national characteristic of the Gauls is often alluded to by Cæsar and other Roman historians.

79 5 quam acceperint: § 592 (341); B. 323; G. 628; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 1. a.

79 6 quam perferre, than to endure, following the comparative contained in malint.

79 9 remittat: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in legationem mittunt. The dir. disc. would be si vis, etc., remitte.

79 11 Chap. 9. aberat longius, was too far off; i.e. to take command at once in person.—navis longas, galleys. See chapter on military affairs, ix, and Figs. 48, 51. The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars; see 84 25–28.

79 12 Ligeri: the Loire, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering.—institui, to be organized, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys.

80 1 cum primum: the first moment when (lit. when first). Cæsar had spent the winter as usual in Cisalpine Gaul. He reached his army perhaps in April or early in May.

80 3 [certiores facti]: omit in translation.
80 4 admisissent: indir. quest. — legatos ... coniectos (the specific act): in app. with facinus, but the construction is determined by interlegabant; see note on 4 17; legatos: they were hardly such in the sense of international law. They were only Caesar's legati or lieutenants.

80 5 quod nomen: cf. quorum rerum, 76 29 and note.

80 8 hoc: abl. of degree of difference, approaching the idea of cause.

80 9 pedestria itinera, etc., approaches by land.

80 10 concisa, impeditam: with esse. They depend upon sciebant.

80 11 inscientiam: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance. — neque ... confidebant, and they trusted that our armies could not, etc. Notice that connective and negative have an attraction for each other, though we separate them.

80 13 ut ... acciderent, etc., granting that, etc.: ut here introduces a concessive clause. This is the only instance in the "Gallic War." Note that when so used the subjv. mood follows; § 440 (266. c); B. 278; G. 608; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 532. 2. b.

81 1 posse and the following infinitives depend upon perspiciebant, l. 5.

81 3 gesturi essent: subjv. of indir. disc. Observe the first periphrastic conj. referring to future time.

81 4 longe aliam ... atque, very different ... from; cf. aliter ac, 62 6. — concluso: i.e. like the Mediterranean, where there is no tide, and which is quiet as compared with the Atlantic.

81 9 socios: pred. apposition; cf. vectigalis, 78 25. — Osismos, etc.: the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name Lexovii remains in Lisieux; Namnetes in Nantes; Diablantes in Jablins.

81 14 Chap. 10. iniuria retentorum equitum, the wrong done by detaining the knights: § 497 (292. a); B. 337. 5; G. 664. r.2; H. 636. 4 (549. 5. n.2); H-B. 608. 2. — rebellio, renewal of hostilities (not rebellion).

81 16 ne ... arbitrarentur: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of a Roman attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this purpose clause is under the same construction as the nominatives iniuria, defectio, etc., which express other reasons for Caesar's action, and are all in apposition with multa.)

81 17 idem: subj. of licere.

81 19 excitari: the pres. infin. here corresponds to the pres. of a general truth; while odisse answers to oderunt taken as a pres., all men naturally hate.

81 20 priusquam ... conspirarent: see note on 38 27.

81 24 Chap. 11. flumini: dat. with proximi, but cf. 78 13.

81 25 adeat: after mandat, a command; cf. 6 10 and note; § 565. a (331. f. r.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. r.2; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a.
81 26 auxilio: dat. of service or end for which. — arcessiti [esse] dicebantur, were reported to have been invited.
82 2 Crassum: cf. 78 12 and note.
82 3 Aquitaniam: in southwest Gaul; see 2 7-10. These peoples were of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little interest in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt described in Book vii.
82 6 Venellos, etc.: in Normandy.
82 7 distinendam: cf. pontem faciendum curat, 11 5 and note. — Brutum: afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar, with the more celebrated Marcus Brutus.
82 8 Pictonibus, Santonis: on the coast south of the Loire (Poitou and Saintonge).
82 12 Chap. 12. eius modi . . . ut, of such sort that.
82 13 lingulis: some of these narrow tongues of land run out to sea several miles.
82 14 cum . . . incitavisset: i.e. at high tide. — [bis]: apparently an error of the MSS. Some editors read xxiv instead of xii; others refer it to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers.
82 15 quod . . . adaequantur: subjv. as an integral part of the result clause.
82 16 minuente, at the ebb: intransitive.
82 17 utraque re, in either case.
82 18 superati, agreeing with the subject of coeperant.
82 19 his (aggere ac molibus) . . . adaequatis, when these were brought level with the walls.

General von Göler explains the Roman works as follows: “A dike was extended along each side of the isthmus in the direction of the town. While these were building, of course with each rise of the tide the space within would be overflowed. When the dikes were nearly completed, the Romans waited until the ebb had carried off the water, and then rapidly pushed their works to completion before the next turn of the tide. Thus the sea was shut out and the isthmus left dry. Meanwhile the dikes themselves, being raised to the height of the walls, each served the purpose of an agger for approach to the town.”
82 23 haec . . . faciebant, this they continued to do: repeated action.
82 24 partem: duration of time.
82 25 summa: with difficultas; note the emphasis. — vasto mari, etc.: in each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean. The words are abl. abs., which in expressions of time is closely related to the locative; see § 419 (255) ftn.; cf. H-B. 421. 4.
III. 11-14.] Campaign against the Veneti. 353

82 28 chap. 13. namque; introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti, "(but the Veneti had less trouble) for." — ipsorum, their own.

82 29 aliquanto: abl. of degree of difference.

83 1 navium: depending on carinae understood. — quo . . . possent: cf. 7 15, 60 27.

83 2 atque item puppies, and the sterns too: accommodatae (being adapted) standing as an additional predicate.

83 4 quamvis: from qui quis.

83 5 transtra, etc., the cross benches (for the rowers) of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a [man's] thumb.

83 7 pelles: the Romans used sails made of flax, the Veneti of skins untanned (pelles) or tanned (alutae).

83 11 tanta onera navium, ships of so great weight. — non satis com-mode, not very well

83 12 nostrae classi: dat. of possession, but translate, the encounter of our fleet with, etc.

83 13 praestaret, had the advantage (i.e. our fleet).

83 14 reliqua: here a neut. plur. substantive, everything else.

83 15 eis: dat. with nocere; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 362.

83 16 rostro: see Figs. 48, 51.

84 2 copulis: the Romans were not very skilful in naval tactics, and they always aimed, by means of grappling hooks and boarding bridges, to get aboard the enemy's ship and reduce the conflict as soon as possible to a hand-to-hand combat, in which they excelled. — accedebat ut, there was this additional advantage that, followed by the result clauses, ferrent, consistent, and timerent; cf. 41 15, 51 6.

84 3 se vento dedissent, ran before the wind. The phrase is a nautical one; hence ventus is repeated to give the complete expression.

84 4 consistenter, rode at anchor.

84 5 ab aestu relictae: trans. if or when, etc.; § 496 (292); B. 337. 2, a, b; G. 664 ff.; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 604. 3. — nihil: cf. 63 13 and note.

84 8 chap. 14. neque: see note on 80 11.

84 9 eis noceri posse, they could be harmed. Observe that the expression is impers., and cf. 56 24 and note.

84 10 quae ubi: cf. note on qui cum, 58 9.

84 11 paratissimae, fully equipped; ornatissimae, thoroughly furnished.

The battle was probably fought in the bay of Quiberon, off the heights of St. Gildas, on which Caesar was encamped. The fleet of Crassus issued from the Loire and took a northwesterly course. Meanwhile the fleet of
the Veneti came out of the Auray estuary, and passing through the Morbihan entrance to the bay, encountered the Romans directly opposite Caesar's camp. See Fig. 49.

84 13 neque satis Bruto . . . constabat, and Brutus could not make out. agerent and insisterent refer to Brutus and his officers.

84 14 tribunis militum, etc.; in the ancient modes of fighting, the fleet was only a part of the army, and was commanded by the military officers, as here.

84 16 noceri, etc.: cf. similar phrase above, l. 9.

84 17 excitatis, raised. The abl. abs. has a concessive force, as is shown by the following tamen.

84 18 ex barbaris navibus, on the enemy's ships; for force of ex, cf. una ex parte, ex itinere, etc.

84 20 magno usui, of great service (cf. auxilio, 81 26), in fact turning threatened disaster to victory; but Caesar will not use words that hint at possible defeat.

84 22 muralium falcium, wall-hooks, long poles with sickle-shaped hooks attached, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Fig. 126). The gen. limits formae understood, which would be dat., after absimili. — cum = whenever, as often as, and the sentence following is a general condition, the verbs comprehensi adductique erant being in the protasis, and praeurumpebantur in the apodosis expressing repeated action, which is regularly expressed in Latin by the indic.; cf. 59 13 and note.

84 24 praeurumpebantur, etc., they [the halyards] were torn away by driving the ship forward with the oars.

84 26 Gallicis navibus: dat. of reference used for poss. gen.

85 1 paulo fortius factum: one of Caesar's mild expressions for an act of remarkable daring.

85 4 Chap. 15. cum, etc.: another general condition; see note on 84 22. — singulas, etc.: i.e. two or three ships surround each one of the enemy's.

85 6 contendebant, expressing repeated action; cf. with contenderunt below, which describes a single act; cf. 75 10. — quod postquam: cf. quae ubi, 84 10 and note.

85 8 cum . . . reperiretur: a causal clause: cf. 2 15, 57 1.

85 9 conversis . . . navibus: i.e. steered so as to run before the wind.

The prevailing winds at present towards the end of summer in this quarter are from the east or northeast,— the precise winds needed for the two fleets to have met as indicated above. Further, when these winds have blown during the morning, it usually falls calm at noon. This is
just what happened on the day of the battle. The calm was probably just after midday.

85 14 pervenerint, came to land; for the tense, cf. 28 6, 50 22, the perf. subjv. being used, as usual, to express past time in a result clause, without regard to sequence of tense.

85 15 hora III (quarta): about 10 A.M.

86 2 Chap. 16. cum . . . tum, while . . . at the same time.

86 4 convenerant, coegerant: i.e. for this war.—quod ubique, all that there were anywhere, followed by the part. gen. navium.

86 5 quo, whither: i.e. any refuge.

86 8 eo gravius . . . quo, the more severely, etc., in order that.—vincicandum [esse] (impers.), punishment should be inflicted.

86 10 sub corona vendidit, sold [as slaves] at public auction; lit. under the wreath, since the captives were crowned like animals to be sacrificed, as indeed they had been in earlier times. Thus the only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble.

86 13 Chap. 17. Venellorum: along the Channel coast of Normandy.

86 14 his: cf. classi, 84 13.

86 16 magnas copias: most likely meaning here irregular troops as opposed to exercitum.—his paucis diebus: i.e. about the same time.

86 17 Ebuvrices: this branch of the Aulerci lived on the south side of the lower Seine.

86 18 nolebant: i.e. the Senate.—clauserunt: i.e. against the Romans.

86 20 perditorum, desperate: there might well be many such, as it was now the third year of constant war in Gaul.

86 23 loco, castris: locative ablatives without a prep.; cf. 13 6, 57 5 and note.

86 24 cum: concessive.

87 1 eo absentе: i.e. Cæsar. A legatus regularly had no imperium, or independent command, but served under that of his superior.

87 3 dimicandum [esse]: impers., with legato as dat. of apparent agent.

87 4 Chap. 18. pro perfuga, in the character of a deserter.

87 10 neque longius ab esse quin: an idiomatic shorthand expression amounting to that not later than the following night Sabinus would, etc.

87 14 iri: depending on oportere.

87 15 superiorum dierum, on the previous days: see note on belli, below.

87 17 spes . . . belli: subj. gen. denoting the source; notice that the regular way to express the relation between two substantive ideas is by the genitive. One idea is conceived as belonging to the other in some sense. See note, 62 20.
356

Notes: Cæsar.

87 18 fere ... credunt, most men are glad to believe, etc.
87 19 non prius ... quam, not ... until: cf. 81 20.
87 21 ut ... victoria (abl. abs.), as if victory were already assured.
87 22 sarmentis, cuttings, young growth trimmed off from trees. — vir-gultis, brushwood.
87 25 Chap. 19. mille: an indecl. adj. in agreement with passus.
88 1 quam ... spati, as little time as possible, subj. of daretur.
88 2 que, and (consequently), as often with -que.
88 7 Note the emphasis on primum and statim.
88 8 quos: the antecedent is eorum.
88 15 animus, etc.: cf. 78 28 and note.

Southern Gaul. — The campaign in Aquitania was made merely for strategic reasons, was not provoked by any attack or threat of war, and appears to have been quite unnecessary (see note on 82 3) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aquitani had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small, isolated clans, and were besides of more industrious habits than the Gauls, being good miners and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of the war.

88 17 Chap. 20. P. Crassus, etc.: cf. 82 2-5.
88 18 ante dictum est: i.e. in 2 7-10. Omit bracketed words in lines 18-20.
88 19 tertia pars: these statements show extreme ignorance, as would be natural (cf. the account of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 12-14).
88 21 Praeconinus, Manlius: these defeats were twenty-two years before (B.C. 78), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for six years against Rome. (See Plutarch's "Life of Sertorius").
88 26 Tolosa et Narbone: Tolosa was an old Gallic town; Narbo, a Roman colony established by the policy of Gaius Gracchus, B.C. 118. It became the capital of the Roman province, to which it gave its name, Narbonensis.
88 27 his regionibus: dat. after finitimae, which agrees with civitates. Omit [ex].
88 28 nominatim evocatis: i.e. veterans who had served their term, but were willing to reënlist. See chapter on military affairs, iv. a. — So-tiatium: south of the Garonne, southeast of the modern Bordeaux; the name remains in the modern Sôs.
89 5 Chap. 21. superioribus victoriis: i.e. those just related; § 431. a (254. b. 2); B. 218. 3; G. 401. N.6; H. 476. 3 (425. ii. 1. N.); H-B. 424.
III. 18-23.

Campaign in Aquitania.

89 7 sine imperatore ... | adulcentulo duce: an imperator is the chief commander of an army, holding the imperium, or power of military command conferred on him by regular formalities; dux is a general designation for any person holding a command, and might be given to a subordinate officer, like Crassus, who acted as an agent and under the imperium of his superiors.

89 9 perspici: the subject is the indir. quest. quid ... possent.

89 12 vineas turrisque egit: see chapter on military affairs, viii, and Figs. 33, 43, 92, 93, 120.

89 13 cuniculi, mines (lit. rabbits), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. The mine was intended to run under the Roman agger. The roof was carefully propped up with wooden posts, and these being set on fire, when they were burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.

89 15 aerarie secturaeque: this seems to mean copper mines and quarries (not entirely underground); but the meaning of the words is not perfectly clear. — diligentia: the Romans doubtless met the attack with countermines.

89 18 faciunt, they do (it).

89 21 Chap. 22. soldurios, paid retainers (hence soldiers), a Gallic word. It is related that these soldurii were dressed in royal garments like their chief.

89 22 condicio: the same condition of service was found among the Germans (Bk. vi. ch. 23), and was the foundation of feudal vassalage. — commodis: abl. with fruantur.

89 23 quorum amicitiae, to whose friendship. — si quid ... accidat: a euphemism, cf. 16 14.

89 24 sibi mortem, etc.: cf. 4 15.

89 26 qui ... recusaret: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. 5 6, 51 4.

89 27 cum his (repeated from cum devotis; cf. repetition of vidit, 67 ?), with these (I say).

90 4 Chap. 23. Vocatium, etc.: these were farther west.

90 7 quibus, within which.

90 8 quoqueversus, in every direction (quoque, the adverb of place formed from the distributive quisque; versus, the adverb of direction usually connected with prepositions, as ad-versus). It is often written quoquoversum.

90 10 citerioris: i.e. from the standpoint of Rome; now northern Spain. — Hispaniae: these Iberian populations were allied to the Aquitani (Bk. i. ch. 1). Spain had been subject to Rome for more than 150 years, but was always rather mutinous, and had made several attempts at
independence, especially under Sertorius, who defied Rome for ten years, B.C. 82–72; see note on 88 21. It was also the last stronghold of Pompey's party in the Civil War, till finally subdued at Munda, B.C. 45. — finitimae: pred. adj. agreeing with quae.

90 15 consuetudine populi Romani: a custom which they had learned in the service with Sertorius.

90 16 loca capere, etc.: i.e. to practise Roman tactics.

90 18 sues... augeri, etc.: these infin. clauses are in app. with quod. — diduci, be stationed in various places, to keep track of the enemy and prevent being surrounded.

90 20 decertaret: subj. of result with quin after cunctandum [esse]; § 558 (319. d); B. 283. 4; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b; cf. 29 5, 50 9, 50 25.

90 25 Chap. 24. duplici: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three (triplex acies).

90 26 in medium aciem: i.e. where they would be kept steady by his legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings.

90 27 exspectabat, waited (to see) what, etc.

91 1 obsessis viis... potiri, to block the roads, cut off supplies, and win the victory without a wound.

91 3 sese recipere: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.

91 4 infirmiores animo, dispirited: § 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441. — adoriri cogitabant, had in mind to attack; sc. eos for obj., and see note on 62 16.

91 5 productis copiis: concessive (= although, etc.).

91 6 sua, their own.

91 7 opinione timoris, the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.

91 9 oportere: depending on some word of saying implied in voces. — iretur: cf. note on decertaret, 90 20. Translate freely, that they should go to the camp without further delay.

91 10 ad hostium castra: this is the only instance in the Commentaries of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a level stretch between the hostile camps. The Romans always chose their battle-ground with great care.

91 11 Chap. 25. telis connectis (abl. abs.), by hurling weapons.

91 13 quibus: abl. with confidebat; § 431 (254. d); B. 219. 1. a; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. n.); H-B. 437.

91 14 lapidibus... comportandis: gerundive expression of means. — aggerem: i.e. Crassus was building a mound of turf to equal the height of the enemy's rampart, as in the siege of a city.
III. 23-29. Campaign in Aquitania.

91 15 opinionem pugnantium: i.e. they made an impression as if actually engaged.

92 2 ex loco, etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

92 4 ab decumana porta: i.e. in the rear, where this gate was situated (see Fig. 119). The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps, probably under the instruction of the Sertorian officers.


92 13 prius . . . quam: this is often used with the indic, to show that one actual fact precedes another, just as succession is denoted by postquam. Here the subjv. subordinates the temporal clause to the main idea, like the subjv. with cum; cf. also 57 20 and note.

92 14 videri: sc. posseunt from the following posset.—rei: part. gen.

92 18 per, over.

92 20 apertissimis campis (see note on 62 27): i.e. the broad, treeless plains which abound in this part of the country.

92 21 quae: acc. plur.; the antecedent is milium.—Cantabris: a very hardy people of the western Pyrenees.

92 26 Chap. 27. Tarbelli, etc.: some of the names will be recognized in the modern Tarbes, Bigorre, Garonne.


93 2 Chap. 28. omni Gallia pacata, while all the rest of Gaul was subdued.—Morini, etc.: on the islands and low coast lands of Flanders and further north.

93 3 qui . . . essent: cf. 89 26 and note.—neque: cf. 80 11.

93 4 arbitratus, thinking: the perf. part. of dep. verbs often has a present force.

93 5 alia . . . ac: cf. 62 6.

93 7 continetis, continuous: i.e. far-stretching.

93 15 longius, too far (farther than was safe).—locis: loc. abl., as usual without a prep.

93 17 Chap. 29. deinceps: i.e. in the days next following.

93 18 inermibus . . . militibus: abl. abs.

93 20 conversam, fronting, i.e. with the boughs turned towards the enemy.—pro vallo, as a palisade.

93 23 tenerentur, etc.: i.e. were just being seized.

93 24 eius modi . . . uti . . . intermitteretur, such that the work was constantly interrupted.

93 26 sub pellibus: the tents were of leather.

93 28 Aulercis, etc.: along the Seine, near Evreux and Lisieux.
Book Fourth. — B.C. 55.

Campaign against the Germans. — The year B.C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of two tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Caesar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered, drove them back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany two years later confirmed this success, and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman Empire and the barbarian world.

Reading References on the Campaign against the Germans.

Dodge's Caesar, chap. 10.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, chap. 12.
Froude's Caesar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Caesar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 5.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Plutarch's Lives, Caesar.
Tacitus's Germania,
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 5.

94 1 ea quae, etc.: mark the emphasis as shown by the order and compare the opening of Bk. iii and note. — Pompeio, Crasso: i.e. the year B.C. 55. Observe that the usual way of fixing a year is by naming the consuls for that year. The coalition between Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus, sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out the scheme, Cæsar held the government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands the whole control of affairs at home (see Introduction, "Life of Cæsar").

94 2 Usipetes, Tencteri: beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.
94 4 quo: adv. = in quod.
94 5 quod ... prohibebantur: Cæsar states this reason as his own, therefore the indic. — Suevis: this people (the modern Swabians) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several tribes.
94 6 premebantur, prohibebantur: the imperfects here express that which was still going on, they were being hard pressed, etc.
94 8 centum pagos (see 10 12): there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the Hundred, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each hundred seems
to have sent 1000 men (singula milia) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.

94 9 bellandi causa: gerund, expressing purpose with causa. Observe that causa in this use always follows its case; cf. above causa transeundi, with a totally different meaning.

94 11 hi . . . illi, the latter . . . the former.—anno post, the following year: § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. i; G. 403. n.4; H. 488. i (430); cf. H-B. 424.

94 12 ratio, theory (theoretical knowledge); usus, practice (knowledge derived from experience).

94 13 sed: i.e. they attended to agriculture systematically, but, etc. — privati . . . agri: i.e. the land was held in tribal communities.

94 14 longius anno: i.e. the community had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another community. As is shown in Bk. vi. ch. 22, the community was composed of persons kindred by birth. The annual shifting of occupancy would prevent at once forming local attachments, building up large properties, and too rapidly exhausting the soil.

94 15 frumento (abl. of means), etc.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 22, and Tacitus, Ger. 27). — maximam partem: adv. acc.; it is worth while to learn the few words that commonly occur in this construction; § 390. e, 397. a (240. a, b); B. 185. 1; G. 334. r.2; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 388.


95 1 quod . . . faciunt: this clause is a parenthesis; because, having been trained from childhood to no service or discipline, they do nothing whatever against their will,—a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family and civil discipline.

95 3 alit: the subject is quae res.—homines [eos] efficit, makes [them] men, etc.

95 4 eam: correl. with ut, introducing a clause of result.—locis (abl. abs., concessive) frigidissimis, even in their extreme climate.

95 5 vestitus: part. gen. with quicquam.—haberent, have; lavarentur, bathe: imperf. by sequence of tenses following adduxerunt; § 485. a (287. a); B. 268. 1; G. 511. r.3; H. 546 (495. i); H-B. 481.

95 8 Chap. 2. eo ut . . . habeant, so (on this account) that they may have (some one) to whom, etc.

95 9 quam quo . . . desiderent. than that they want, etc. For the use of quo expressing cause with the implied negative, see § 592. N. (341. r.); B. 323; G. 541. n.2; H. 588, ii. 2 (516. 2); H-B. 535. 2. b.

95 11 impenso pretio, at high cost.—importatis non utuntur, do not import for use (lit. do not use imported).
95 13 deformia, ill-shaped. — summi laboris, (capable) of great labor (gen. of quality).
95 20 quamvis pauci, however few. — vinum: cf. the description of the Nervii, 59 22–26. They drank a kind of beer, however, and mead made of honey.
95 23 Chap. 3. publice, as a community.
95 26 una ... Suevis, extending from (the territory of) the Suevi in one direction. — sexcenta: probably exaggerated. — agri, their lands.
96 1 paulo ... humaniores, somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race (Germans).
96 4 cum: concessive, as shown by the following tamen.
96 5 gravitatem, importance, referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while amplitudinem refers to their great numbers.
96 7 vectigalis: sc. eos referring to the Ubii. — humiliores (pred.): in translating sc. so as to be.
96 9 Chap. 4. in eadem causa, in the same situation.
96 12 quas regiones: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine.
96 13 ad utramque ripam, along both banks.
96 14 multitudinis: see 102 10.
96 16 cis Rhenum: i.e. the west side.
96 18 vi contendere, to force a passage.
96 22 confecto: with itinera.
96 23 oppresserunt: not oppressed; see note on obtinere, 2 1.
97 2 priusquam ... fieret: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. b; see also note on 38 7.
97 5 partem: acc. of time. — eorum copiis, on their supplies (cattle and grain).
97 6 Chap. 5. infirmitatem, weakness of purpose = fickleness.
97 8 nihil ... committendum, no confidence should be placed in them. Observe that committendum [esse] is imper. and nihil adv. acc.
97 9 est ... consuetudinis, it is [a point] of Gallic custom: § 343. c (214. d'); B. 198. 3; G. 366. r.1; H. 439 (401); H-B. 340. — uti ... cogant, etc.: we have here a number of clauses of result in app. with hoc.
97 14 rebus atque auditionibus, facts and hearsays.
97 15 quorum eos ... paenitere: § 354. b (221. b); B. 209. 1; G. 377; H. 457 (409. iii); H-B. 352. — in vestigio, on the spot: cf. 95 16.
97 16 serviant, are slaves to. — plerique: i.e. the travellers and traders.
97 17 eorum: i.e. the questioners.
Campaign against the Germans.

97 18 Chap. 6. graviori bello, too serious a war (i.e. unmanageable): § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; II. 429 (386); H-B. 376.
97 19 maturius, earlier, i.e. in the season. — ad exercitum: the army was now in Normandy; see 93 28.
97 20 facta: sc. esse; so with missas below.
97 21 missas legationes, etc.: these infinit. clauses explain ea.
97 22 uti . . . discederent: i.e. further into Gaul. The Belgae, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to assist them against the Romans.
97 23 postulassent: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.; § 478, 519, 585 (281, 316, 336, b); B. 264, 312. 2, 318; G. 244, 516; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 468. 6, 536, 470. ftn. 1 — fore parata, should be made ready (used for the fut. infinit. pass.). It depends on some word of saying, like promiserunt, implied in invitatos. Instead of fore parata, we might expect fore ut pararentur.
97 24 Eburonum, etc.: German tribes.
97 27 permutulis, calmed from their terror (lit. soothed by stroking, like a nervous horse).
98 1 Chap. 7. equitibus delectis: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.
98 3 a quibus: refers to locis.
98 5 priores, first, or, as aggressors (cf. the language of Ariovistus, Bk. i. ch. 36). — neque recusare, they do not decline, followed by quin and subjv.; cf. 50 25.
98 7 [haec]: may be translated. — quicumque: the antecedent is eis (dat.) implied with resistere.
98 8 neque deprecari, and ask no quarter (lit. and not beg off). — haec tamen dicere, this however they did say; supply se for subj. of dicere and following infinitives. For similar instances, see 59 23, 71 6, 71 23.
98 10 eis: i.e. to the Romans. — attribuant, subjv. in indir. disc. for inv. of the direct.
98 11 eos: sc. agros.
98 12 concedere, yield, as inferior.
98 13 reliquum . . . neminem: the position gives a force like, besides these there was no one else on earth, etc.
98 15 Chap. 8. quae visum est, what (it) seemed proper (to answer). He probably answered somewhat as in Bk. i. chs. 14 and 43.
98 20 Ubiorum: see ch. 3.
98 21 quorum sint, etc., whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him to (lit. and) complain, etc.
98 25 Chap. 9. post diem tertium (= tertio die), i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually counted in the Roman reckoning.
98 26 propius se: cf. 41 10. — id: i.e. the two days' delay (expressed by ne . . . moveret).
99 1 trans: i.e. westwardly.
99 2 exspectari: change the voice and translate as active, they were waiting for.
99 4 Chap. 10. Vosego, the Vosges: in fact, the Meuse flows from the plateau of Langres.
99 5 parte . . . recepta: the Rhine branches in these low, marshy regions; one branch (Vacalus, the modern Waal) unites with the Meuse near Bois le Duc (see note, ch. 15).
99 6 Omit the words in brackets.
99 9 Nantuatium: cf. Bk. iii. ch. i, where they are placed upon the Rhone, just above Lake Geneva; this was perhaps a branch or kindred tribe. The list of names here is incomplete.
99 12 multis . . . effectis: translate actively, making many, etc.
99 13 feris . . . nationibus: see the introduction to Motley's "Dutch Republic."
99 15 capitibus, mouths (more commonly, sources).
99 17 Chap. 11. ut erat constitutum, as had been arranged (i.e. the return of the envoys). Either this is a careless expression, or Caesars's consent is omitted in ch. 9. It is there stated merely that they said they would return.
99 19 eos equites (antecedent to qui), the cavalry who, etc.
99 20 antecessissent: attracted into the subjv. by the ut-clause; cf. 71 5. — praemitteret: used without an object; translate send word.
99 21 sibi: i.e. the Germans. — potestatem: see note on 16 7.
99 22 quorum si, and if their: cf. note on qui cum, 58 9.
99 23 condicione . . . usuros, would accept the terms: see ch. 8.
99 25 daret: sc. petebant uti from l. 19. — eodem illo pertinere, tended the same way (see ch. 9), i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive (eodem and illo are adverbs).
99 28 aquisitionis causa: a small stream (probably the Niers) lay between him and the German encampment.
100 3 accessisset: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5.
100 5 Chap. 12. amplius DCCC, more than eight hundred: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.4; H. 471. 4 (417. i. n.2); H-B. 416. d. Tacitus in his "Germania" (chap. 32) says that this tribe was distinguished for cavalry.
100 9 indutiis: dat. of the end for which.
100 10 resistentibus: sc. nostris.
100 11 subfossis, etc.; after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men; observe again, as in 99 12, that an abl. abs. with a pass. part. is often best translated actively.

100 14 venissent: cf. 97 2.

100 17 gener: abl. of source; § 403. a (244. a); B. 215; G. 395; H. 469. 2 (415. ii); H-B. 413. — regnum obtinuerat, had held supreme power.

100 20 quoad: cf. this use and construction with that in L. 2.

100 25 CHAP. 13. neque iam, no longer: knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Caesar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong.

100 26 ab eis qui, from men who, etc., followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

101 1 exspectare: subject of esse; note the emphasis of position.

101 2 pementiae: pred. gen.

101 3 quantum . . . auctoritatis, etc., how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle.

101 5 quibus: i.e. the enemy (dat., indir. obj. of dandum [esse]); on the relative serving as a connective, see note, 40 20.

101 7 quaestore: see Bk. i. ch. 52. — ne quem, etc.: cf. 71 21.

101 8 res, in app. with quod . . . venerunt.

101 9 eadem perfidia: their perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own; but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they came, as they said, to offer amends for the attack of the day before.

101 11 simul . . . simul, partly . . . partly. — purgandi sui: cf. 77 3, and see § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. R.1; H. 626. 3 (542. i. N.1); H-B. 614.

101 12 contra atque, contrary to what; see Vocab. Observe the subjunctives of implied indir. disc. in this passage.

101 13 si quid . . . de indutiis, whatever (lit. if anything) they could in the way of truce.

101 14 fallendo: i.e. by another trick. — quos, illos: both refer to the same subject. — quos oblatus [esse] gavisus, delighted that they were put in his power (gavisus, from gaudيو). By detaining their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them.

101 17 subsequi, to follow in the rear; they usually went in advance (cf. 99 20), but now he could not trust them in the intended attack.

101 18 CHAP. 14. acie triplici: i.e. a march in line of battle; see chapter on military affairs, VI and VII.

101 19 quid ageretur, what was going on.
Notes: Cæsar.

101 20 possess: cf. 97 2, 100 14.
101 21 et...et, both...and.
101 23 ne...an...an: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234; the three infinitives all belong to praestaret, whether it was better.
101 24 quorum timor cum: note the emphatic order.
101 29 reliqua multitudo: the presence of women and children shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for plunder.

102 1 ad quos consequendos (freq. of sequor), to hunt them down. Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch, in his "Life of Cæsar," writes that when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith, in order that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than upon Rome. Cato was Cæsar's bitter political and personal enemy, but still Cæsar's cruelty and perfidy in this transaction can be justified only on the ground of absolute necessity. To secure the Roman power, he must destroy these Germans in order to establish the Rhine as the Gallic frontier and deter others from crossing.

102 3 Chap. 15. Germani: i.e. those who were fighting.—clamore: i.e. of those who were being massacred.
102 4 signis: figures of animals carried on poles; see Figs. 11, 70, 127.
102 6 reliqua fuga, further flight.
This action is usually placed at the junction of the Rhine and the Meuse. There are many reasons against this, but no other location seems possible without doing violence to the text, and for this no sufficient case is made out.
102 9 ex...timore, (relieved) from the apprehension of so great a war.

102 12 discendendi potestate, permission to depart. This was a practical acquittal of the charge of treachery.
102 13 veriti: regularly pres. act. in force, fearing.
102 17 Chap. 16. illa, the following.
102 19 suis: note the emphasis on this word.
102 20 cum intellegeerent: here nearly equivalent to a participle.
102 21 accessit quod, and besides: see Vocab.
102 22 quam...transisse, which, as I mentioned above, had crossed: see 98 27 ff. (the conj. that of indir. disc. cannot be used in English to introduce a rel. clause). Observe that Cæsar the writer uses the first person (commemoravi); Cæsar the actor is always in the third.
102 25 Sugambrorum: living just north of the Ubu.
Campaign against the Germans.

102 27 intulissent: cf. antecessissent, 99 20. — dederent: observe the omission of ut: § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. S; G. 540. r.²; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ftn.².

102 28 finire: see introductory note to Bk. iv.

103 1 aequum: pred. adj. agreeing with the finit. clause Germanos ... transire.

103 2 sui ... imperi: pred. gen. of possession after esse, under his power.

103 7 occupationibus rei publicae, by the demands of state affairs.

103 8 transportaret: same construction as ferret.

103 9 futurum [esse]: sc. verb of saying from orabant, i. 5, so, too, for the following sentence.

103 17 Chap. 17. dignitatis: cf. 103 2.

103 19 latitudinem, etc.: Cæsar’s passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills, though here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles. The width of the river at either place is about 1,400 feet, and its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by bridges.

103 21 rationem, plan. The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough-and-ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points as follows (see Fig. 59): —

1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (tigna bina sesquipedalia), braced two feet apart and sharpened at the end, are set up by derricks and driven with pile drivers (fistucis) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream.

2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little in the other direction against the stream; the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway. It is possible, as Rüstow thinks, that the 40 feet refer to the top and not to the bottom of the piles.

3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (trabs bipedalis), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the ends by ties (fibulis) between the logs of each pair, — which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current.

4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timber-arches, having been built and connected by cross-ties, — this part of the structure must be taken for granted, — planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (directa materia), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (longurii. crates) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts and hoofs of the pack-animals on the flooring.
5. Piles (subicae) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against the logs, to which they serve as shores or buttresses (pro ariete), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge.

103 29 tigna, probably unhewn logs. — bina, two and two, i.e. in pairs.

103 24 pedum duorum: i.e. between the timbers of each pair. — cum ... defixerat, etc.: cum here equals whenever or as often as and the clause is equivalent to the protasis of a general condition; hence the use of the pluperf. indic.; cf. 84 22 and note.

103 26 subicae modo, like a pile.

103 27 ut ... procumbent, so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.

103 29 ab inferiore parte, downstream. — contra ... conversa, slanting against, agrees with duo [tigna].

103 30 haec utraque ... distinebantur, these two sets (or pairs) were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal [in thickness] to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum ... distabat), with a pair of ties at each end. For number of utraque, see Vocab.

104 2 quibus [tignis] ... revinctis, after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions: i.e. the horizontal beams held the piles (tigna) apart, which, sloping in opposite directions, had been secured by the clamps.

104 4 rerum, structure: see note on 4 4. — quo maior ... hoc artius: the greater ... the more closely, abl. of degree of difference. The only doubtful part of the description is in fibulis, of which the exact meaning is somewhat uncertain. They are thought by some to be cross-ties (as in Fig. 80). But, as the word means properly a kind of clasp exactly like a modern safety-pin, it seems better to suppose they were clamps joining the two piles with perhaps an iron bolt put through, answering to the pin of the fibula.

104 5 haec ... contexebantur, these (the framework of timber) were covered with boards placed lengthwise.

104 7 subicae ... agebantur, piles also were driven on the lower side in a slanting direction, so as to prop the bridge against the current.

104 8 pro ariete, as a buttress.

104 10 aliae item: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. There is nothing in the text to show whether these were attached to the bridge or not. — spatio: abl. of degree of difference.

104 11 diciendi operis, to throw down the work: pred. gen. expressing tendency or purpose; § 504. a. N.1 (298. R.); B. 339. 6; G. 428. R.2; Il. 526. 5 (544. N.2); H-B. 616, last example.
First Invasion of Britain.

104 12 neu...necerent, and that they [trunci, etc.] might not harm the bridge.

104 14 Chap. 18. diebus X quibus, within ten days from the time when.
— coepta erat: pass. because used with the pass. infin.; cf. 53 6; see also l. 20 below.

104 15 traducitur: the histor. pres., resumed from 102 21.
104 16 Sugambrorum: these were a little to the northeast of the bridge.
104 21 hortantibus eis, etc.: i.e. the few who had escaped the massacre of ch. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.

104 23 in solitudinem: notice that the Latin construction is that following verbs of motion, on account of the meaning of abdiderant; we say hid in, etc.

104 27 Chap. 19. pollicitus: this word implies a main clause in the infin., se daturum, on which the conditional clause would depend. This clause does not appear, but the dependent clause remains in the subjv. according to the rule.

104 28 premerentur: a good example of the subjv. in implied indir. disc.; see note on 32 21.

105 1 per exploratores: cf. note on 57 3.

105 3 uti...convenientre: object clauses of purpose, following the verbal phrase nuntios...dimisisse, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice. The rest of the sentence contains only statements and is therefore in the indir. disc. construction.

105 5 hunc, etc., this had been selected about the middle, etc.: medium is used as a pred. agreeing with hunc in preference to an adverbial phrase in medio; § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 325. R.6; H. 497. 4 (440. N.2); H-B. 244.

105 7 decertare: not merely fight, but fight the decisive battle or decide the issue. This force of de is very common.

105 10 ut...liberaret, etc.: these clauses are in app. with rebus, and their form as result clauses is determined by confectis; see note on 4 17. In English some change of construction is often necessary in such cases. Here, having accomplished, etc. (namely), inspired, . . . chastised, . . . relieved.

105 13 arbitratus: cf. 52 7 and note.

First Invasion of Britain.—What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, and had a significant moral effect, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnoissance, or, perhaps, to open the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, Caesar sailed across to the cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp
on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their
transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds, so that they
did not even come to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about
three weeks, he returned to Gaul without accomplishing anything beyond a barren
display of daring. This expedition was, in fact, only intended for a "demonstration."
Yet, as the beginning of the national history of England, the event assumes great
interest and importance, so that it has given rise to volumes of comment and discus-
sion both in France and England.

Reading References on the First Invasion of Britain.

Abbott's Julius Cæsar, pp. 97-106.
Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 11.
Frowe's Julius Cæsar, chap. 12.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Napoléon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Scarth’s Roman Britain, chap. 2.
Tacitus’s Agricola.

105 15 Chap. 20. exigua . . . reliquâ: abl. abs.; translate by a tempo-
ral clause.
105 16 ad septentriones, towards the north (see Vocab.): cf. 1 1 ff.
105 18 omnibus bellis: abl. of time.—hostibus: dat. after submini-
strata.
105 19 si . . . tamen, even if time should fail, still, etc.
105 20 fore: the subject is practically the clause si . . . cognovisset, he
thought it would be of great advantage if, etc. In all languages the proper
subject is often absorbed in some different form of expression; here it is
properly "that fact," "that result," implied in the conditional clause. The
idiom is the same in English except that we supply "it."
105 21 adisset, etc.: the pluperf. represents the fut. perf. adierit of dir.
disc. Observe in this sentence that while Cæsar’s action is given in the
perf. (contendit), his reasons are in the imperf. (intellegebat, arbitrabatur); cf.
note on 3 5. The conditional clauses si deficeret, si adisset, etc., are
strictly fut. conditions carried into the past by the indir. disc.
105 22 quae omnia, all of which: § 346. e (216. e); B. 201. 1. b; G.
370. r. 2; H. 442. 2 (397. 2. n.); H-B. 346. c. For the order, cf. 94 17,
30 19 and note.
105 23 Gallis . . . incognîta: probably they were not so uninformed as
they seemed; cf. the relations of Commius, 106 13-17, and of the Veneti,
78 19. — neque enim: neg. of etenim, to be rendered with quisquâm, for no
one; § 324. h (156. d'); cf. B. 341. 2. d'; G. 498. n. 8; cf. H-B. 311. 6. a and b.
First Invasion of Britain.

105 24 illo: adv.; see Vocab.—neque . . . quicquam, and nothing: observe that, as usual, the negative combines with the connective.—eis: dat. after notum; § 375 (232. a); B. 189. 2; G. 354; H. 431. 2 (388. 1); H-B. 373. 2.

105 25 Gallias: i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.

105 26 vocatis . . . mercatoribus, etc., he called the traders, but could not, etc.

105 27 quanta . . . portus: these indir. questions follow reperire poterat. Notice that the imperf. poterat is used rather than potuit, referring to his repeated questions to the different traders.


106 1 Chaps. 21. faceret: the subjv. here indicates a purpose or calculation in Cæsar’s mind. The perf. ind. would refer only to priority of time; § 551 (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 4. a; see also 38 27 and note. The English idiom expresses this by some such phrase as “before making the attempt.”

106 2 idoneum: this remark seems to have reference to his actual want of success, as appears later.—Volusenum: one of Cæsar’s tribunes; see 77 ii.—navi longa: see chapter on military affairs, IX, and Figs. 48, 51.

106 5 Morinos, occupying the nearest point to Britain (Boulogne, Calais, Ostend, etc.): in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores.

106 7 quam . . . classem: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.—Veneticum bellum: see Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.

106 9 insulae: Britain was supposed to be an island, but the fact was not established, so far as we know, until more than a century later, when the Romans sailed around it.

106 10 qui polliceantur: a purpose clause, but in English best expressed by the pres. part.

106 11 dare: complem. infin., instead of se daturos [esse], a use not uncommon in Cæsar, and apparently somewhat colloquial; § 580. c. n. (330. f. n.); cf. B. 328. 1; G. 531. n.4; H. 618. 1 (537. N.); H-B. 593. a.—imperio: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385); H-B. 362.

106 14 Atrebatibus (see Bk. ii. chs. 4, 16, 23): the same people, it is said, had occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius.—ibi: i.e. among the Atrebates; § 321. a (207. a); G. 611. r.1; H. 308. 2 (304. iii. 2).

106 16 fidelem, etc.: perhaps Cæsar says this in view of the fact that Commius afterwards turned against him; see Bk. vii. ch. 76.
106.17 magni: gen. of indefinite value; § 417 (252. a); B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 448 (404); H-B. 356. 1. — huic: indir. obj. of imperat; the order he gave is the whole clause down to nuntiet.

106.18 fidem sequantur, i.e. accept the protection of.

106.19 se: i.e. Caesar, the main subject, as usual in indir. disc.

106.20 quantum (sc. tuntum) ... auderet, so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture, etc.

106.22 auderet: subjv. of characteristic.

106.23 perspexisset: for tense, see § 485. c (287. c); B. 268. 3; G. 511. r.1; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491 and 2; the sequence of tenses does not depend upon the form of statement, but on the time as conceived in the writer's mind.

106.26 Chap. 22. superioris temporis, of the season before (see Bk. iii. ch. 28).

106.27 homines barbari, being (as they were) barbarians. — consuetudinis: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.

106.28 fecissent: the statement of the ambassadors, hence subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.

106.29 pollicerentur: the same construction as excusarent, above.

107.1 arbitratus: translate as present, as often with the perf. part. of dep. verbs.

107.2 belli gerendi: obj. gen.; connect with facultatem.

107.3 has ... anteponendas, that occupation about these little matters should take precedence of [the invasion of] Britain. For the number of occupationes, see § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. N.5; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b.

107.4 indicat: note this and the preceding descriptive imperfects; cf. note on 3 5.

107.6 navibus: see chapter on military affairs, IX. — coactis, gathered from various quarters; [contractis] (which may well be translated), brought together into port. This must have been either at Boulogne or a few miles farther north, at Wissant. The port has never been satisfactorily determined, but it must have been between Boulogne and Calais, about twenty miles apart in a straight line, which is near enough to give a definite idea of the place (see map, Fig. 56). This whole coast has suffered enormous alterations since Cæsar's time, and everything is much changed.

107.7 duas legiones: the seventh and tenth.

107.8 quod ... habebat, what galleys he had besides.

107.10 ex eo loco, etc.: this would be at Ambleteuse or at Calais, according to the location of the main port. — tenebantur quo minus. were detained from, the usual construction after verbs of hindering: § 558. b
First Invasion of Britain.

(317. b. N.1, 319. c); B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 568. 8 (499 3. N.2); H-B. 502. 3. b.

107 12 equitibus: of these there were 450.
107 18 Chap. 23. tertia . . . vigilia, at midnight. The date was very near August 26, when high water would be about half past seven P.M.; the ships, therefore, could go out at about half-tide. — solvit, cast off the ships: a technical phrase used like our weighed anchor. — equites: these were to embark at Ambleteuse, as stated above.

107 20 paulo tardius: they sailed after a delay of three days (ch. 28).
107 21, hora . . . quarta: this would be about ten A.M., an hour after high tide. The distance across is about thirty miles, and the landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.

107 24 montibus anguste, etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore.
107 26 dum . . . convenirent, until the other ships should come up: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. When is dum followed by the indic.? cf. 24 24, 33 20, 41 9.

107 29 Voluseno: cf. 106 2 and 19.

108 1 ut . . . postularent, as military science and especially seamanship require: rel. clause following monuit [ut] . . . administrarentur, enjoined that everything should be done promptly. Ut is omitted after monuit, as is often the case after verbs of directing or urging. The rel. clause has the subjv. because an integral part of the command.

108 2 ut quae . . . haberent, since they have, etc.: the imperf. is used by sequence of tenses; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592. 1 (517. 3. 1); H-B. 523 and b.

108 4 his dimissis, when they were sent to their posts (observe the distributive effect of di-). — aestum . . . secundum: the tide in this place would not turn east and north until about half past six.

108 6 progressus: towards the north.

108 7 aperto . . . litore: thought to be somewhere near Deal and Walmer Castle.

108 9 Chap. 24. essedariis: the essedum was a two-wheeled war chariot; see Figs. 123, 124. — quo . . . genere: i.e. including both cavalry and chariots, as described below, 114 5 ff.

108 10 consuerunt: to be translated by what tense? cf. 59 14 and note. — egredi: infin. for the more usual ne or quominus with the subjv.; cf. 107 10 and note.

108 12 alto: here a noun; see Vocab.

108 13 militibus (dat. after desiliendum), the men had to leap down.

108 14 oppressis (taken with militibus), weighted as they were. Notice in this passage the free use of participles and phrases to modify the main
idea, first the abl. of place, then the abl. abs., then a participle agreeing directly with militibus.

108 16 cum . . . conicerent, while they (the Britons), etc.: a good example of cum and the subjv. describing the situation; cf. 11 7, 62 13.

108 18 insuefectos, trained to it, i.e. to charge to the water's edge.

108 20 generis: gen.; cf. 106 27.

108 21 pedestribus, on land, where the main strength lay in infantry.

108 22 Chap. 25. navis: subject of removeri; § 563. a (330. B. 2); B. 331. ii, 587. b; G. 423. N. 6; H. 613. 2 (535. ii); H-B. 587. b.

108 23 inusitatior, quite strange.

108 25 latus apertum: i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields. — inde: connect with propelli ac submoveri.

108 26 tormentis: see chapter on military affairs, i. 5, and Figs. 61, 75, 95. — ac: notice that this word always adds something with emphasis.

108 27 quae res, a manœuvre which: cf. 94 17 and see note on 30 19.

109 2 qui . . . ferebat, the one who carried: the antecedent of qui is the understood subject of inquit. — X legionis: again the splendid tenth distinguishes itself; cf. 36 24, 67 26.

109 3 obtestatus, appealing to. Such prayers almost always preceded any formal address among the Romans, like "God save the Commonwealth of Massachusetts." The words would be Quod vobis feliciter eveniat, desilite, etc. — legioni, imperatori: dat. of reference.

109 4 nisi voltis: a present simple condition; § 515 and a (306 and a); B. 302 and 4; G. 595; H. 574, 580 (508 and 4); H-B. 579, 582. 1.

109 5 ego certe . . . praestitero, I at any rate shall have done, etc.: § 478. N. (281. R.); B. 264. a; G. 244; H. 540 (473); cf. H-B. 494.

109 8 inter se, one another: § 301. f' (196. f'); B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — universi, in a body.

109 9 ex proximis navibus, from the nearest ships. Omit [primis].

109 10 adpropinquaverunt: the subject is the soldiers, implied.

109 11 Chap. 26. ab utrisque, on both sides: cf. utraque, 103 30.

109 13 poterant . . . submitttebat: notice the numerous imperfects in this description, implying repeated or continuous action. — alius alia ex navi, men from different ships: § 315. c (203. c) - B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1
IV. 24-28. | First Invasion of Britain.

(459. i); H-B. 265. — quibuscumque signis: dat. after occurrerat; the antecedent noun and pronoun (eis signis), if expressed, would be dat. after adgregatam.

109 15 ubi . . . conspexerant . . . adoriebantur, etc.: a general condition, whenever they saw, etc.; cf. 84 22, 103 24, and notes.

109 16 singularis, scattered soldiers.

109 17 adoriebantur, would attack: to express the repeated action. So, too, circumsistebant and coniciebant.

109 1 ab latere aperto: see 108 25. — in universos, upon the whole body. This word means not merely all, but all at once, or all together, and the like; cf. universi, 109 8.

110 3 speculatoria navigia: swift, light boats for reconnaissance. — quos . . . conspexerat . . . submittebat: another general condition, precisely like the one noted above (109 15), quos equalling whomsoever, or if any.

110 5 simuli [atque], as soon as. — suis omnibus consecutis, and all their comrades had joined them.

110 7 longius, very far. — quod equites, etc.: they were wind-bound at the upper harbor, 107 9-12.

110 9 fortunam: this is not a mere casual remark, but an expression of his belief in “his star,” always an important factor in the greatness of a commander; cf. 36 14 and note on 10 17.

110 9 Chap. 27. quae imperasset, what he should require (in dir. disc. quae imperaveris).

110 13 quem . . . praemissum [esse]: cf. 106 13-19.

110 15 hunc, etc.: it is not unlikely that his imprisonment was a mere pretence. — oratoris modo, in the character of envoy (or spokesman).

110 19 ut ignosceretur, that their act might be pardoned: ignosco may take a dir. obj. of the thing, with an indir. obj. of the person; § 369 (227. f); B. 187. i. a; H-B. 364. 4; hence the word here may be either personal or impersonal.

110 20 cum ultrro, etc.: cf. 106 10.

110 21 bellum . . . intulissent: these barbarous people might well be pardoned for mistaking Caesar’s expedition for an invasion. — ignoscere: for the omission of the subject, cf. note on 59 23.

110 23 arcessitam, after they had been fetched.

110 24 remigrare, to move back, i.e. from the strongholds to their farms.

110 27 Chap. 28. post diem quartum quam, three days after (according to English reckoning): § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 493. N. 4 a; H. 488. 1 (430); H-B. 550. c.

110 28 naves, etc.: see 107 9.
376

Notes: Caesar.

111 3 Britanniae: $§ 370 (228)$; B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376, cf. 362. — tempestas: from the northeast.

111 4 aliae . . . aliae, some . . . others.


111 7 cum . . . complerentur, since they began to fill: the imperf. shows that the action was not completed.

111 8 adversa nocte, in spite of the darkness.

111 10 Chap. 29. eadem nocte: this was probably the night of August 30; the moon was then full at 3 A.M.

111 11 aestus maximos, very high tides. The ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean. One is at a loss to understand why the Romans had not learned more about the tides in the war with the Veneti.

111 13 navis: obj. of compleverat. — [quibus, etc.]: an unnecessary explanation, and may be omitted.

111 15 adfligebat (intensive), dashed about.

111 16 facultas, etc.: i.e. chance to manage their own ships or help their companions.

112 1 funibus . . . amissis, etc., from the loss of, etc.

112 2 id quod: $§ 307. d$ (200. e); B. 247. 1. b; G. 614. R. 2; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. a. N. 2.

112 4 quibus = ut eis: result.

112 5 quod . . . constabat, because it was understood: the subject is oportere, of which the subject is hiemari, that it was best to winter in Gaul.

112 7 provisum: see note on 56 16.


112 10 hoc: abl. of cause, originally degree of difference; see note on 2 17.

112 13 optimum: in pred. agreement with frumento . . . producere.

112 14 factu: cf. 3 23. — duxerunt: see Vocab. — frumento commeatuque, corn and other supplies.

112 15 rem, the campaign. — his . . . interclusis, if these should be overcome, etc.: abl. abs. expressing condition.

112 18 rursus: not a second time, which would be iterum, but back again from negotiations to hostilities.

112 19 deducere: i.e. from their farms; cf. 110 24.

112 20 Chap. 31. at Caesar: emphatic transition to Cæsar from what the soldiers feared and the Britons planned; cf. 68 8.

---

Fig. 123.—Gallic Coin.
First Invasion of Britain.

112 21 ex eventu navium, from what had befallen the ships.—ex eo quod, from the fact that.

112 22 suspicabatur, began to suspect.

112 24 quae . . . naves, earum, etc., the timber and the bronze of those ships which, etc.: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.

112 25 aere: the Romans used the word aes both for copper and bronze. These metals were more common than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust. They were employed to sheathe the rostrum, or beak, and to make the spikes that held the timbers together.

112 26 quae . . . usui: the antecedent of quae is ea, the understood subject of comportari; see note on qui . . . appellantur, 1 2.

112 29 reliquis . . . effecit, he managed so that they could sail (navigari, impers.) tolerably with the rest.

113 1 Chap. 32. geruntur: § 556 (276. e); B. 293. i; G. 229. r.; H. 533. 4 (467. iii. 4); H-B. 559. Notice that this present is regular with dum when there is no contrast of time. Cf. the use of dum, 107 26.—frumentatum: supine; cf. 26 15.

113 3 pars hominum, some of the people.

113 4 remaneret: indicating peaceable intentions on the part of the enemy.—ventitaret, returned from time to time: freq. or iter.; § 263. 2 (167. b); B. 155. 2; G. 191. 1; H. 364 (336); H-B. 212. 1.

113 5 statione: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.

113 6 quam . . . feret, than usual.

113 7 id quod erat, what was the fact.

113 8 aliquid . . . consili (part, gen.), that some new design was on foot; infin. clause in app. with id.

113 11 armari, to arm: in verbs thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form.—paulo longius, some little distance.

113 12 premi . . . sustinere, were getting hard pushed, and hardly held their ground.

113 13 conferta legione (abl. abs.), the legion was closely crowded together, while weapons were hurled, etc. Observe the tendency of Latin to convey a description, as here, by a participial phrase.

113 15 una, only one.—suspicati, supposing: cf. 107 1 and note.

114 2 dispersos, occupatos: agreeing with nostros understood from the preceding line.
Notes: Caesar.

114 3 incertis ordinibus (abl. abs.), because the ranks were unsteady.

114 5 Chap. 33. ex essedis: these chariots held six men (essedarii) each besides the driver (auriga), and were drawn by two horses.

114 6 terore equorum: obj. gen., the terror that the horses arouse.

114 8 cum se ... insinuaverunt, when they have worked their way between: the protasis of a general condition, ex essedis ... proeliantur, being the apodosis; cf. 103 24. The perf. indic. with cum is here used as a protasis because a repeated action is spoken of. — equitum, the cavalry of the Britons. When the essedarii had dismounted, the British line was composed of alternate bodies of horse and foot.

114 10 illi: i.e. the fighting men spoken of above.

114 11 expeditum ... receptum, a ready retreat.

114 13 praestant, exhibit. Caesar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see ch. 12), and later made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army. The ordinary cavalry was never able to cope with infantry; cf. Caesar's stratagem in 38 1.

114 14 uti ... consuerint: clause of result following efficient. — declivi ac praecipiti loco, a steep downward slope.

114 15 incitatos equos sustinere, to check their horses in full gallop (complm. infin. after consuerint). — brevi, within a short space.

114 16 iugo: made of straight or curved wood, resting on the necks of the horses and holding up the pole of the chariot.

114 18 Chap. 34. quibus rebus, under these circumstances: abl. of means. — nostris: dat. following auxilium tuli. — novitate: depends on perturbatis.

114 22 alienum: see note on 13 6.

114 26 quae ... continerent: note the subjv.

115 1 quanta ... facutas daretur: indir. quest. following demonstraverunt.

115 2 sui liberandi: cf 40 15 and note.

115 7 Chap. 35. ut ... effugerent: a result clause in app. with idem, the subject of fore, namely, that if, etc.

115 8 effugerent, would escape: the future idea is given by fore. — equites XXX: these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.

115 9 ante: i.e. 106 13-19, 110 13-17.

115 12 tanto spatio, over as much ground: § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 389; H. 417. 3 (379. 2); cf. II-B. 426. c.

115 19 Chap. 36. die aequinocti, etc. (Sept. 24, always held to be a stormy season), since the time of the equinox was near and his ships were
unseaworthy. Napoleon III estimates that the return to Gaul occurred Sept. 11 or 12. This would make the stay about three weeks.

115 23 eosdem portus, the same ports with the others.

115 24 paulo infra: the west current sets in on the French coast, while the east current is still running in mid-channel.

115 28 CHAP. 37. primo: adv.; see Vocab.

116 1 orbe: the circle was formed by a small body of troops when entirely surrounded by the enemy. It was generally hollow, with officers and baggage in the centre. See chapter on military affairs, VII, last part.

116 5 horis: abl. of comparison with amplius; the more common construction would be horas; cf. note on 54 9.

116 6 postea vero quam, but as soon as.

116 12 CHAP. 38. siccitatis:

see § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. 5; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b; the tempestates of ch. 34 were apparently merely gusty weather without rain.

116 13 recipere: a purpose clause. — superiore anno: see Bk. iii. ch. 28.

116 22 supplicatio: cf. end of Bk. ii. The crossing of the Rhine strongly impressed the minds of the Romans at home, and so, too, the passage into Britain, though the last was in fact a failure. But, though Cæsar had added nothing to Roman power, he had opened a new world to Roman ambition.

Book Fifth. — B.C. 54.

Second Invasion of Britain. — The landing of the previous year had been only a reconnaissance. Cæsar now determines upon a regular advance and occupation. The earlier part of the season was chiefly taken up with naval preparations. The ships were apparently built on the inland streams, and the rigging and outfit brought from Spain, which was considerably in advance of Gaul in civilization. It abounded in metals, and, in particular, furnished the esparto, or Spanish grass, whose long, tough fibre made the best of cordage. Cæsar sails (by the reckoning of Napoleon III) on the 20th of July from Portuslius, at or near Boulogne, drifting first with wind and tide some distance to the northeast, then making his way to his former landing.
Notes: Caesar.

Reading References on the Second Invasion of Britain.

Abbott's Julius Caesar, pp. 97-106.
Dodge's Caesar, chap. 12.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, pp. 199-206.
Froude's Caesar, last part of chap. 16.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 8.
Scarth's Roman Britain, chaps. 2 and 3.
Tacitus's Agricola.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 6.

117 1 Chap. i. L. Domitio, etc.: cf. 94 1 and note. The consuls entered on their office Jan. 1, according to the official calendar; the real date appears to have been Dec. 12. Cæsar's visit to Italy was therefore probably later.

117 2 ut quotannis, etc.: cf. 48 28, 73 7.

117 4 navis: see chapter on military affairs, IX. — navis . . . curen, have as many vessels as possible built during the winter and the old ones repaired: cf. 82 7, 11 5 and note.

117 5 modum formamque, style of build.

117 6 subductionis: the vessels of the ancients were usually "beached" and not left at anchor. — humiliores: agrees with eas, the understood object of facit; see note on 62 16.

117 7 nostro: i.e. the Mediterranean.

117 8 id: sc. facit; § 319 (206. c); B. 166. 3; H. 388. 5 (368. 3. N.1); H-B. 222. a.

117 9 minus magnos seems to refer to the smooth ocean swell, compared with the angry "chopping seas" of the Mediterranean.

117 10 iumentorum: not pack-animals so much as horses for his cavalry, the lack of which he felt so seriously the year before; see 110 6-9.

117 11 actuarias, fitted with oars as well as sails. The Gallic ships, it will be remembered, did not have oars. See Bk. iii. ch. 14.

117 12 humilitas: as compared with the high-banked galleys.

117 13 armandas, fitting out: see introductory note.

117 14 conventibus, proconsular or provincial courts. These courts were regularly held in the winter; cf. 48 29.


117 17 imperat: in the sense of to levy, to make requisition for, impero takes the acc. of the thing levied and the dat. of the person upon whom the levy is made.
118 5 arbitros, arbitrators.
118 6 litem, amount of damages.—poenam: i.e. the amount of compensation to be paid.
118 8 Chap. 2. Galliam revertitur: Cæsar’s activity during these winter months had been remarkable. He left his troops in Belgium about Jan. 1, travelled all through Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, crossed over to Illyricum, and returned to his army again early in the spring. The distance was at least 2000 miles.
118 9 circumitis, having inspected: see last note on 49 6; § 388. b (237. d); B. 175. 2. a; G. 331; H. 406 (372); H-B. 391. 2. ft.
118 10 studio, etc.: i.e. the energy of the soldiers in building the vessels under difficulties.
118 12 neque ... quin, and are not far from the condition that; eo is antecedent to the vague relative idea in quin, etc.
118 15 Itium: Boulogne or Wissant, either of which agrees with the account (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23, and note on 107 6).
118 17 XXX: a little less than 28 English miles.—[transmissum]: omit in translation.
118 18 satis ... militum, enough soldiers: part. gen.
118 19 Treverorum: a tribe reckoned as Gauls or Celts, but believed to be, in part at least, of German origin. Their name appears in the modern Trèves. This, their principal town (Augusta Treverorum), was long the seat of Roman power in northern Gaul.
118 20 concilia, assemblies, held by a province or confederacy for consultation or law-making. Cæsar seems to have organized such assemblies under his own authority in Belgic Gaul after its conquest.—veniebant, etc.: notice the force of the imperf. tense; § 471. ʃ (277. ʃ); G. 233.
118 22 dicebantur: the personal form is regularly used with the tenses of incomplete action.
118 23 Chap. 3. Galliae: part. gen.; § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.
118 24 ut supra demonstravimus: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 11.
118 27 alter, the latter, Cingetorix, the son-in-law of Indutiomarus.
119 1 suos: i.e. clansmen, retainers, etc. Cingetorix offers to bring his nation under Roman authority on condition of ruling them himself as a subject or friend of Rome.
119 3 at: marking the transition to the other man.
119 4 cogere: with instituit, l. 8.
119 5 Arduennam: this hilly and forest region makes the natural frontier between Gaul and the Netherlands, and is the seat of the famous Belgian iron mines.
119 11 petere: used absolutely (i.e. without an object); ask his decision or assistance. — civitati, etc.: they were prevented by Indutio- marus from taking any measures for the general good, and so asked favors of Cæsar for themselves individually.

119 12 possent: the reason given by these Gauls, hence the subjv.

119 16 laberetur, lit. fall off (from obedience).

119 17 se... eius fidei permissurum, to put... under his protection.

119 22 CHAP. 4. omnibus... comparatis, now that, etc.

119 23 quod cum, etc.: Cæsar seems to think this double dealing needs some excuse.

119 29 cum... intellegebat, considered on the one hand.—cum... tum: see Vocab.; eius refers to Cingetorix, se to Cæsar.—merito eius, according to his deserts: § 418. a (253. N.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 480 (424); cf. H-B. 414.—magni interesse: § 417 (252. a); cf. B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 356. 1.

120 2 [suam... minui]: in app. with id factum, and may be translated, though not necessary to the sense.

120 3 qui... fuisset, while, etc.: § 535. e (320. e); cf. B. 283. 3. b; G. 634; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 523.

120 4 hoc dolore, this grievance; properly, indignation at this.

120 5 CHAP. 5. in Meldis: these people were on the Marne, near Meaux. The ships were built here, probably for convenience of timber; they were low and of light draft (ch. 1), and proved too frail for the Channel waters (ch. 10; cf. Bk. iii. ch. 9, where sturdier craft are built upon the Loire).

120 8 eodem (adv.) = in eundem locum.

120 13 loco, in the condition: § 429. 3 (254. a); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N.1; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436.

120 14 cum... abesset, while he should be away: a fut. idea (cum abero) thrown into the past by verebatur.

120 15 CHAP. 6. Dummonix: as it appears, he had been kept four years under strict surveillance (18 11).

120 19 accedebat huc quod, to this was added the fact that: cf. 84 2 for a different construction after accedebat.

120 20 deferri: the present expresses the action as in process of completion, i.e. that Cæsar was making arrangements, or intended, or the like.

120 21 neque, and yet not, a very common force of the word; cf. note on 80 11.


120 26 religionibus, scruples, perhaps in regard to leaving the country or crossing the sea; among superstitious peoples such ideas are common.
Second Invasion of Britain.

121.  2 territare: histor. infin.; see 13. 18 and note.
121.  3 fieri ut, etc., it was coming to pass that, etc.; or may be translated, that Gaul was, etc., compressing the two clauses into one. — esse: depending on a verb of saying implied in metu territare.
121.  6 interponere: same constr. as territare. — ex usu, to the advantage.
121.  7 intellexissent: here represents the fut. perf. of dir. disc.
121.  8 deferebantur: note the force of the tense.
121.  9 Chap. 7. quod . . . statutebat: i.e. the severity shown to Dumnorix was proportioned to the favor and consequence granted by Caesar to his state.
121.11 longius, too far.
121.12 prospiciendum [esse], that precautions must be taken: depends on statutebat.
121.13 quid . . . nocere, to do some harm to: quid is cognate or adv. acc.; § 390. d. N.2 (240. a. N.); B. 176. 3. a; G. 333; H. 409. 1 (371. ii, 378); cf. H-B. 396. 2, cf. 387. iii.
121.14 commoratus: i.e. during the delay; cf. 93. 4. — Corus (or Caurus), the northwest wind.
121.15 omnis temporis, every season of the year; the windmills on this coast are said to have had their sails set permanently to the northwest.
121.18 milites: i.e. the legionary infantry.
121.19 at: note its force and cf. 119. 3. — omnium impeditis animis, while the attention of all was occupied.
121.24 si vim . . . iubet: informal indir. disc. The direct would be si vim facit neque paret, interficite [eum].
121.25 pro sano, rationally.
121.26 negligisset: the tense depends on arbitratius, which is, however, essentially present in meaning; see note on commoratus, l. 14.
121.28 liberum, etc.: Caesar takes no pains to conceal the violence of his acts. He had no authority over Dumnorix except that of the stronger.
122.  7 Chap. 8. pro tempore et pro re, to suit the time and circumstance.
122.  8 pari . . . quern, the same . . . as, etc.: i.e. 2000, as in l. 5.
122.10 Africo: the southwest wind.
122.12 sub sinistra: i.e. he had drifted to the northeast (see map, Fig. 65).

The voyage has been carefully calculated as follows: Caesar weighed anchor at sunset (about 8 p.m.). A gentle breeze was then blowing from the southwest; but at the same time a tidal current was setting towards the southwest. Under the impulse of these two forces, the fleet kept a northwesterly course until about midnight. The wind then died down, and the current also began to set in the opposite direction (northeast).
With this current the Romans drifted, and at dawn the British coast appeared on their left. They had passed by \((\textit{relictam})\) the North Foreland, and were drifting farther away from the land. But at about this time (5 A.M.) the tide changed, and the current again began to flow towards the southwest. With its help, and that of the oars, the fleet now began to move towards the land, aiming to reach the same point that had been found in the previous expedition to be the most convenient for debarking. Here they arrived at about noon. (von Göler.)

122 15 \textit{superiore aestate}: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23.
122 16 \textit{virtus, pluck, spirit. — gravibusque, and heavy-laden besides. — navigiis: abl. of means.}
122 18 \textit{accessum est} (impers.): the landing was probably near Walmer Castle.
122 20 \textit{cum: concessive.}
122 22 \textit{qua e .. amplius DCCC, more than 800 of which: subject of visae erant. — annotinis, those built the year before. — sui commodi: pred. gen.: § 343. b (214. e); B. 198. 3; G. 366. R.1; H. 447 (403); H-B. 340, here expressing purpose; cf. note on deiciendi, 104 11.}

These were vessels that the rich members of Caesar’s staff had built for their own use.

122 27 Chap. 9. \textit{cohortibus X: i.e. two from a legion.}
123 1 \textit{navibus: dat.}
123 3 \textit{noctu: not nocte; see Vocab.}
123 5 \textit{equitatu atque essedis: abl. of accomp. without \textit{cum}; § 413. a (248. a. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R.3; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1. 1); H-B. 420. — flumen: the Stour, which flows northeasterly through Canterbury. — superiore: the north bank is higher ground than the opposite.}
123 11 \textit{ipsi . . . propugnabant, they themselves rushed out of the woods in small parties to fight.}

123 12 \textit{testudine facta et agger . . . adiecto: from the rapidity with which this \textit{agger} was completed, it is evident that it was not the elaborate structure required in attacking more formidable defences, but more like that described in Bk.iii. ch. 25. We may also infer that the British stronghold was only rudely fortified.}
124 5 Chap. 10. \textit{tripartito: i.e. following different roads.}
124 7 \textit{extremi: i.e. the rear of the retreating enemy.}
124 8 \textit{Atrio: who had been placed in command of the camp, 123 3.}
124 12 \textit{concursu: referring to the violent driving together of the ships after they had broken from their moorings.}
124 15 Chap. ii. \textit{revocari: i.e. those who were in advance and out of sight. — resistere, to halt: i.e. those who were near.}
124 17 coram perspicit: i.e. after a careful and thorough personal examination. Cæsar did not leave important duties of this sort to subordinates.—sic ut, etc.: i.e. he sees that the account of the disaster is true to the extent that, etc.; ut and similar words often have a limiting meaning; cf. tantum, meaning only so much.

124 19 fabros deligit: a certain number of carpenters (fabri lignarii) was attached to the engineer corps of the army, but Cæsar seems to have had no regular engineer corps, except that a praefectus fabrum was on his staff. See chapter on military affairs, 1. 4.

124 20 legionibus: abl. of means.

124 26 easdem quas, the same as: see 122 27.

124 27 eodem: i.e. to the British defences on the Stour.; cf. note on 120 8.

125 4 a mari: probably from Cæsar’s place of landing. The distance is reckoned, not in a straight line, but by the roads, as the army marched.

125 5 huic, etc.: “The brave and cautious prince Cassivellaunus (Caswallon), who ruled in what is now Middlesex and the surrounding district, —formerly the terror of the Celts to the south of the Thames, but now the protector and champion of the whole nation.” (Momm. —huic ... cum reliquis civitatibus ... intercesserant, had occurred between him and the other states; note the idiomatic construction.

125 8 Chap. 12. natos in insula: they were not, however, indigenous, but a Celtic population following an earlier Iberian race.

125 9 proditum [esse]: the subject is quos natos [esse] in insula.—pars: sc. incolitur.

125 11 eis nominibus: for example, Atrebates and Belgæ.

126 3 Gallicis: brief references to the Gallic customs of building are made in Bk. v. ch. 43, and Bk. vi. ch. 30; see also introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

126 4 [aut nummo aereo]: omit in translation.

126 6 plumbum album: Cæsar is mistaken in placing tin mines inland and iron on the coast; it was just the other way. The tin mines of Cornwall were known to the Phœnicians from the earliest times. He does not say whether iron was used in the arts, which, if true, would imply a pretty advanced civilization.

126 7 exigua: the great mineral wealth of England was then unknown.

126 9 fagum atque abietem: another error; the beech and fir are both native to Britain.

126 10 gallinam, etc.: it is of interest to note that these domestic fowls were known to the savage Britons; see Fig. 113.

126 12 frigoribus, seasons of cold.
126 17 CHAP. 13. ad Hispaniam, etc.: i.e. he places Spain west of Britain on the same side as Ireland. For this crude geography, cf. Tacitus (Agric. 34), who says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. Caesar conceives Britain as lying somewhat in the accompanying form.

126 20 atque, as: § 324. c (156. a); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 657. 1. N. (551. i. 2. N.); H-B. 307. 2. a; i.e. the distance from Ireland to Britain is the same as that from Britain to Gaul.

126 21 Mona: the Isle of Man, or confounded with it; but Tacitus evidently gives this name to Anglesea.

126 25 ex aqua mensuris: the clepsydra, or water-clock, measured time by the dropping of fixed measures of water through a small pipe or aperture something like a sand-glass. — breviiores: naturally, as this was in the summer.

127 1 hoc: sc. latus.

127 6 CHAP. 14. interiores: the ruder barbarians here described are probably represented by the later Picts, whose name Picti (cf. pici, painted) has been thought to denote their woad-staining. The woad plant, Isatis tinctoria, akin to the common shepherd's purse, is still used somewhat for dyeing.

127 11 parte: § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. ii (419. ii); H-B. 443. R.1; H. 307. 4 (304. ii. 3. N.); H-B. 284. 10.

127 13 sed qui sunt, etc., but the children of these wives are regarded as belonging to the man to whom each maiden was first espoused.

127 14 quo (adv.) here stands for ad quos: § 321. a (207. a); G. 611.

127 16 CHAP. 15. essedarii: see Bk. iv. ch. 33.

127 18 fuerint: for tense, see 85 14 and note.

127 25 atque his, and these, too. — primis: the first cohorts had the best soldier; see chapter on military affairs, 1. 7 (last part).

127 27 per medios: i.e. through the interval between the two cohorts.

128 11 CHAP. 16. [equestris, etc.]: this parenthesis may be translated. — cedentibus et insequentibus (abl. abs.): with eis understood, referring to the Britons. Whether advancing or retreating, the islanders were equally formidable.

128 14 proeliarentur: this clause is conceived as a result, and hence is expressed by ut with the subjv. instead of the usual construction with quod and indic.; cf. 120 19 and note. — stationes, supports. It will be observed that the Britons showed considerable military skill, and that their
mode of battle somewhat resembled that of the Romans themselves. They used an open and flexible array, rather than the dense masses (phalanges) of the Gauls and Germans.

128 24 CHAP. 17. quoad: followed by the indic.; cf. 100 2 and note.
128 27 sui conligendi: cf. 77 3, 115 2.
129 1 facultatem: cf. note on 16 7. — ex, directly after.
129 5 CHAP. 18. uno loco: somewhere between Brentford and the mouth of the Wey. The details of Cæsar's march are here uncertain.
129 13 capite solo: a most hazardous depth. By the rule for modern infantry, a ford should not be more than three feet deep. But, says Merivale, "the swimming and fording of rivers were among the regular exercises of the Roman legionary. Though immersed up to his chin in water, he was expert in plying his hatchet against the stakes which opposed his progress, while he held his buckler over his head not less steadily than on dry land. Behind him a constant storm of stones and darts was impelled against the enemy from the engines which always accompanied the Roman armies."

130 1 CHAP. 19. supra: i.e. 129 1-3.
130 3 servabat, excedebat, etc.: note the imperfects, expressing customary and repeated action, he used to; cf. 121 8.
130 4 locis, regionibus: loc. abl. — locisque impeditis ac silvestribus: from this description we must infer that the British chariots were very narrow, to pass through the forest roads, and had high wheels, to go easily over rough ground.
130 7 cum . . . eicerat: a general condition; see note on cum, 84 22. Other instances of general conditions occur in 103 24, 109 15, 110 3.
130 9 emittebat, configebat, prohibebat: the subj. is Cassivellaunus.
130 10 hoc . . . prohibebat, by fear of this kept them [sc. eos] from roving too widely.
130 11 relinquebatur ut, the consequence was that.
130 12 discedi: impersonal.
130 13 tantum . . . quantum: correlatives; see Vocab.
130 14 noceretur: impers., governs the dat. hostibus; cf. note on 56 24.
130 16 CHAP. 20. Trinobantes: in Essex. Their chief place was Camulodunum, later Colonia Castrum, now Colchester. This defection was soon followed by the break-up of the Briton confederacy.
130 18 [Galliam]: omit in translation.
130 23 mittat: sc. aliquem.
130 24 his imperat obsides: see note on 117 17.
131 2 CHAP. 21. Cenimagni, etc.: these were petty populations of the vicinity.
Notes: Caesar.

131 4 oppidum Cassivellauni: thought to be the modern St. Albans.
131 6 oppidum, etc.: the Britons, like the Germans, did not live in towns, but used these strongholds simply for defence against attack.

131 7 cum, whenever, another general condition: cf. 130 7 and note. The preceding case refers to repeated action in past time, this to the present of a general truth. Notice the difference between these cases and the regular descriptive cum in narration.

131 9 consuerunt: what tense in translation?
131 14 multi: i.e. the people, not the cattle.
131 17 Chap. 22. supra: see 127 5.
131 18 regionibus: implying that Kent (Cantium) was divided into four recognized military commands.

131 20 castra navalia: i.e. the fortified camp on the beach, surrounding the beached ships; see 124 21-25.

131 28 neque multum aestatis: Cæsar had now been in Britain about two months (cf. ch. 23). The dates assigned by Napoleon III for his sailing and return are July 20 and Sept. 21.

131 29 extrahi, protracted, i.e. wasted. Besides, Cæsar had just learned of the death of his daughter Julia, Pompey's wife, which threatened the dissolution of the triumvirate and gave him strong reason for wishing to be nearer home.

132 1 vectigalis (part. gen.): this was mere form, as no means were left to enforce the tribute.

132 7 Chap. 23. commeatibus: has its original meaning; see Vocab.
132 8 accidit uti, etc.: cf. 130 11 for a similar construction.
132 10 portaret, remitterentur: subjv. of characteristic.

133 1 [et]: omit.—prioris commenatus, etc., after the soldiers of the first trip had been landed.

133 2 quas: refers back to ex eis.—faciendas curaverat, had had made: cf. 82 7, 11 5. Labienus had been ordered to build these directly after the big storm; see 124 20.

133 3 locum: i.e. Britain.—caperent, reicerentur: in the same construction as desideraretur.

133 6 aequinoctium: cf. 115 19 and note.

Fresh RISINGS OF THE GAULS.—The remaining events of this campaign are among the most critical of the entire Gallic War, and show to what extreme peril Cæsar had exposed his conquests by his expedition across the Channel. They serve, besides, to bring out in very marked relief the personal qualities of his several lieutenants. As a series of episodes, this Book is, in fact, the most interesting of the eight. The Romans did not visit Britain again till A.D. 43, in the reign of Claudius.
Reading References on the Gallic Rebellions.

Dodge’s Cæsar, chap. 13.
Fowler’s Julius Cæsar, chap. 13 (first part).
Froude’s Cæsar, chap. 17.
Holmes’s Cæsar’s Conquest of Gaul, pp. 76–93.
Napoleon’s Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 8 (last part); see also Appendix D on Cæsar’s Lieutenants.
Trollope’s Cæsar, chap. 6 (last part).

133 10 Chap. 24. Samarobrivae (locative): the chief town of the Ambiani, whose name is found in the modern Amiens.
133 12 aliter ac: i.e. distributing them where supplies were most abundant, not where there was most danger of disturbance, as in previous years.

The location of these camps has been much disputed. The most common view puts Fabius at St. Pol, Cicero at Charleroi (or possibly Namur), Roscius at Séez in Normandy, Labienus on the Ourthe (in Luxembourg), Crassus, Plancus, and Trebonius not far from Amiens, Sabinus and Cotta at Tongres. These places do not quite agree with the description unless we take the hundred mile limit (133 29) as the radius of a circle, a meaning which seems improbable. But this division is perhaps near enough.

133 15 ducendam: gerundive expressing purpose; cf. faciendas, l. 2; § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. n.2); H-B. 605. 2.

— Q. Ciceroni: the younger brother of the orator, and a man of tougher fibre and of great military and executive ability. He had joined Cæsar’s army that very year and had taken part in the expedition to Britain. Quintus, like his brother Marcus, sided with Pompey in the Civil War, and met a similar fate in the same year (b.c. 43) at the command of the triumvirs.

133 20 proxime, latest. This was the 14th legion, enrolled in b.c. 57.
133 21 cohortis: these must have been troops not organized into a legion, probably provincials.

133 25 inopiae: dat. with mederi; § 367. b (227. b); G. 346. N.4; H. 385. ii. n.8; H-B. 364. 5.

133 29 quoad ... cognovisset: cf. 128 24. Why is the indic. used there and the subjv. here?

134 3 Chap. 25. Carnutibus: in the vicinity of Chartres.
134 4 huic: indir. obj. of restituerat.
134 7 restituerat: this act of restoring chiefs exiled by the democracy of the tribes was peculiarly odious to the Gauls, as here appears.
134 8 auctoribus (abl. abs.): i.e. either at their instigation, or, at any rate, with their consent.
390

Notes: Cæsar.

134 12 quorum: the antecedent is hos.
134 13 comprehensos . . . mittere: cf. 5 5, 55 3, and notes.
134 14 [legatis quaestoribusque]: omit in translation.
134 17 Chap. 26. diebus . . . quibus, within a fortnight after, etc.
134 19 cum: concessive; cf. 122 20. — Sabino: § 367. a. N.2 (227. N.2);
H-B. 362. ft. 3 b.
134 20 praesto, in attendance upon, as obedient subjects.
135 1 Indutiomari: for the bitter offence given him by Cæsar, see above, ch. 4.
135 2 subitoque, etc., and after suddenly surprising the wood-cutters.
135 7 aliqui: the usual form is aliquis; § 151. e (105. d); B. 252. 2:
G. 107; H. 187. N.1 (190. N.2); H-B. 142.

Fig. 126.—Oppugnatio.

Note.—This cut represents an attack both by land and water, in which no agger is
employed. While in these respects unlike the attack on the Gallic towns, it shows very
clearly some siege implements in active use.

135 12 Chap. 27. eques, a knight, a member of the equestrian order
the commercial aristocracy of Rome.
135 19 Aduatuci: subject of tenuissent.
135 20 fecerit: by sequence of tense we should have fecisset, but see
note on 51 11. Note several similar cases in this speech.
135 22 imperia, sovereignty. The word is used in English abstractly,
referring to all cases; while in Latin each act of sovereignty is regarded
as a separate imperium. Observe the emphasis on sua, that HIS OWN
sovereignty was of such a nature.
135 26 humilitate, weakness.
135 27 rerum: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. i; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2);
H-B. 354.
135 omnibus... oppugnandis: dat. of gerundive expressing purpose; see 76 21 and note.
136 non... potuisse, that Gauls could not easily say "no" to Gauls.
136 pro pietate: pietas implies the love of a child to a parent; here, of course, to his native land, patriotism.
136 rationem offici, regard to his duty.
136 hanc: i.e. manum.—ipsorum, etc.: i.e. it was for themselves to consider.
136 quod cum faciat, in so doing, subj. merely because of indir. disc.
136 hibernis: i.e. the burden of providing grain for the soldiers.
136 Chap. 28. ausam [esse], with civitatem.—consilium: as the two legates had one and one-half legions under their command, the council of war contained, besides the legates, nine military tribunes, and either nine or six centurions, according as the half legion did or did not include the first cohort. Thus there were in the council either twenty or seventeen persons.
136 [magnas]: may be omitted.
136 quod... sustinuerint: in apposition with rem.
137 quid esse, etc.: see note on 12 8.—auctore hoste, on the advice of the enemy.
137 proximis, nearest. This camp was farthest off from the main body, and hence if the nearest camps should be taken, the forces could not easily withdraw in safety.
137 se: i.e. Titurius.
137 fuisse capturos: in direct, cepissent, a contrary-to-fact apodosis; § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.
137 nostris: obj. gen.; § 295. b (194. b); B. 242. 2; G. 304. 2; H. 500. 4 (446. N.3); H-B. 254. a.—venturos esse: for venirent of the direct, the apodosis of a pres. condition contrary to fact. We should expect venturos fuisse: § 589. N.2 (337. b. N.3); B. 321. 1. a; G. 659; H. 647 (527. iii); H-B. 581. b. 1.
137 auctorem: cf. auctore hoste, l. 2.
137 Ariovisti mortem: he had, however, escaped after the battle (Bk. i. ch. 53).
137 ardere, is in a blaze.
137 persuaderet: direct, persuadeat, a deliberative question.
137 esse: direct, erit, a fut. protasis; § 516. a (307. a); B. 302. 1; G. 595; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a.
137 consentiret: pres. ind. in direct, a simple condition.—esse... positam: direct, est posita, a past apodosis with a pres. protasis.
137 habere: cf. esse, l. 2.
Notes: Cæsar.

137 23  
esset: direct, est.
137 26  Chap. 30.  **primis ordinibus** = **primorum ordinarum centurionibus**.

137 27  
{id: sc. he said from preceding inquit.}

138 2  
ex vobis: instead of a part. gen. after **gravissime**. — **hi**: i.e. the magnam pars militum who were listening.

138 3  
acciderit, etc.: a more vivid fut. condition; for the tense, see § 516. c (307. c); B. 303; G. 244; H. 540. 2 (473); cf. H-B. 577. a.

138 4  
liceat, etc.: a less vivid fut. condition.

138 8  
Chap. 31. **comprehendunt**: i.e. the centurions. — **utrumque**: i.e. Sabinus and Cotta.

138 12  
res disputatione perducitur, *the question is debated at length.*

138 13  
dat manus (a formal sign of surrender), *gives in.*

138 14  
pronuntiatur, *word is given out.*

138 15  
ituros [esse]: sc. eos; see second note on 59 23.

138 18  
[omnia, etc.]: this passage has been questioned, but it seems to mean that all the measures taken were devised as if on purpose to make it dangerous to remain, and to increase the danger of departure through the fatigue and demoralization of the men.

138 20  
**ut quibus**, etc., *as if they were convinced that*; § 535. e, 372 (320. e, 230); B. 283. 3. a, 187. ii. b; G. 634, 217; H. 586. ii, 426. 3 (515. iii, 334. 5); H-B. 523, 364. 2.

138 22  
[Ambiorige]: omit in translation. — **longissimo**: the line of march was very long, as it might well be under a guaranteed safe conduct, and consequently very weak.

138 24  
Chap. 32. **at**: note the force and cf. 119 3, 121 19. — **fremitu vigiliisque**: almost a hendiadys, i.e. the noise caused by the soldiers who took no rest; cf. 28 25 and note.

138 26  
a **milibus**, etc., *about two miles off*. On this use of a, cf. 54 9.

138 28  
convallem: a valley inclosed on all sides. In such a place of course the Romans were at a disadvantage.

139 1  
ex utraque, etc.: at each end, attacking the advance which was coming up out of the glen, and the rear from the heights at the other end.

139 5  
Chap. 33. **tum demum**: implying, as always, "not till then"; here with the further idea that he ought to have roused himself before.

— **providisset**: a rel. clause of cause; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523. — **trepidare**: histor. infin.; for use, cf. note on flagitare, 13 18.

139 9  
cogitasset: cf. providisset, l. 5.

139 14  
quoque: from **quisque**.

139 15  
possent: the subj. is Cotta and Titurius.
139 16 in orbem: see note on 116 1. A modern army would form a hollow square. The orbis also was hollow, having room within for the higher officers, the non-combatants, the wounded, etc.

140 5 accidit ... ut, etc. (cf. 132 8): this clause is divided into three parts with the verbs discederent, properaret, completerentur, the first two being connected by -que (quaeque).

140 8 fletu: not from cowardice. These men fought with splendid courage. It was their way of showing their feelings.

140 9 CHAP. 34. at barbaris, etc.: showing the contrast with the behavior of the Romans about their valuables.

140 13 existimarent: for inv. of dir. disc.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538.— [erant, etc.]: these bracketed words may be omitted, as also in the passage below.

140 14 a fortuna: i.e. the goddess fortune, as is shown by the preposition.

140 15 quotiens ... procurret, ... cadebat: a gen- Fig. 127.—SIGNUM. eral condition referring to past time; cf. 130 7, 131 7.

140 21 ad signa recipientis: the standards remained fixed during these sorties, thus indicating the alignment of the circle.

140 22 CHAP. 35. cum ... exesserat, as often as, etc., equivalent to a general condition; cf. note on l. 15 above: § 518. b (309. c); B. 288. 3; G. 584; H. 601. 4 (521. ii. 1), with last example.

140 24 eam partem, etc.: when the soldiers from one side of the orbis made a sally, that side, of course, had no defenders.

140 27 proximi, etc.: only those immediately opposite the sally had fled, and so the party on its return was attacked at once by the enemy remaining on both flanks and also by the late fugitives.

141 1 vellent: not contrary to fact, but a future condition thrown into the past; § 516. f (307. f); H-B. 580. b.

141 4 resistebant, they kept on fighting. Note the force of the tense.

141 6 esset: characteristic subjv.

141 7 Balventio: connect with femur; dat. of reference where we might have expected a gen. of possession.—qui ... duxerat: as he had been chief centurion the year before, we infer that he was now serving in the corps of veterans called evocati; see chapter on military affairs, IV. a.

141 15 CHAP. 36. rogatum: supine; cf. 26 15.

142 18 ipsi vero, etc., that to him, certainly, no harm will be done; nihil is acc. of specif. and nocitum iri impers. Instead of the latter we should expect fore ut noceatur.
sperare se, etc., that he hopes to be able to obtain a request from him so far as pertains to their own safety and that of the soldiers.

141 24 Chap. 37. quos . . . tribunos militum = eos tribunos militum quos.

141 26 Ambiorigem: cf. 41 10 and note.
142 1 condicionibus: i.e. of surrender.
142 8 aquilam: he thus saved the standard from disgrace,—a characteristic and truly heroic act.
142 11 se interficiunt: a death worthy of Roman soldiers.

This was the most serious loss that Cæsar sustained during the Gallic War. There must have been at least 5000 men in the ill-fated command of Cotta and Sabinus. From this time on Cæsar makes it his duty to avenge his massacred legion, and he carries on a relentless warfare against the Eburones and Ambiorix, until the former are exterminated and the latter becomes a hunted fugitive.

142 17 Chap. 38. neque noctem neque diem intermittit: Ambiorix marched only one night and one day. More than that would have been expressed by nocturnis diurnisque itineribus: cf. 33 18.
142 19 in Nervios: see introductory note to Bk. ii and note on 68 18.

142 23 nihil esse negoti, that it was a matter of no difficulty.—oppressam . . . interfici: render by two verbs, to be surprised and slain; § 496. N. 2 (292. R.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. R. 1; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 604. 1.

143 1 advolant: note the speed expressed in this verb.

143 3 ut non nulli, etc.: cf. 135 2.

143 13 Chap. 40. pertulissent: for the fut. perf. implied indir. disc.

144 2 turres: these were open at the sides and behind, solidly timbered towards the enemy, and their object was, like that of the modern bastion, to shorten the length of wall to be occupied by the defence as well as to give the soldiers a still higher position from which to throw their missiles. In this case they were probably not more than three stories, or perhaps thirty feet, high. Each story was floored with a platform on which the soldiers stood. The front and sides of each platform were protected by a parapet (loricae) of hurdles, to the height of about four feet. Above this projected a sort of battlement of stakes (pinnae), or of hurdles standing erect, with spaces at intervals, through which the spears were hurled. The structure was square, of about ten feet on a side. Of these towers it appears that on the first night only the framework was erected. On succeeding nights they were completed. Cf. Fig. 103.
144 10 praestae sudes: heavy stakes or piles of wood, sharpened at the end, and charred to harden the point. They were hurled by the tormenta; see Fig. 61. — muralium pilorum: javelins heavier than usual for the defence of the wall.

144 11 contabulantur, were floored with plank. Possibly also the towers were connected by galleries, one for each story.

144 12 cum: concessive.

144 14 concursu ac vocibus, by the spontaneous movement and entreaties.

144 18 Chap. 41. potestate: see note on 16 7.

144 23 errare ... si ... sperent: simple condition, indir. disc.; cf. 137 19. — qui: referring to eis.

144 24 hoc: with animo.

144 25 ut, etc.: i.e. they will be friends, but not subjects; they only refuse to admit a standing military force.

145 2 se adiutore utantur (for the inv. of dir. disc.), they may use him as an advocate.

145 5 Chap. 42. hac spe: i.e. of betraying Cicero as they had betrayed Sabinus. — fossa pedum quindecim: a ditch 15 ft. wide would be 11 ft. deep.

145 8 ab his: i.e. the captives. — nulla ... copia, having no supply, etc. (a sort of abl. abs.). "They were not yet used, like the Romans, to fight with the spade."

145 10 manibus sagulisque ... exaurire, to dig out with their hands, and [carry] in their cloaks. A kind of zeugma, § 640 (385); B. 374. 2. a; G. 690; H. 751. 2. n. (636. ii. 1); H-B. 631. 7; but, as usual in such cases, the meaning of the verb really covers the thought by implication.

145 13 XV: probably an error, as a circuit of fifteen miles seems out of the question; perhaps pedum, or else V, instead of XV.

145 14 falcis, hooks: see note on 84 22. — testudines: wooden galleries or sheds, to protect the undermining (see Figs. 33, 126).

145 16 Chap. 43. ferventis ... glandis, red-hot balls of clay.

145 18 casas: the huts of the encampment, thatched with straw.

145 20 distulerunt: sc. ignem.

145 21 clamore: see 142 4.

145 26 non modo, etc.: needs a "pulpit" paraphrase, which, after all, would be, like many, less forcible than the original. Omit the bracketed words.

146 2 pugnarent: same construction as respiceret and decederet.

146 5 ut, etc.: this use of ut, as, is almost precisely parallel to the English causal, as, inasmuch as. In fact, the expressions have really the same origin.
146 6 intermissa, etc.: while the flames were raging, such exploits of attack and defence were of course impossible.

146 7 turri: this advance of a tower was quite in the manner of Roman attack.

146 10 vellent: implied indir. disc.; in their words, *si...vultis*, cf. 121 24; § 592. 2 (341. c); B. 323; G. 662; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 536. a.

146 11 deturbati: i.e. the enemy.

146 13 Chap. 44. erant, etc.: this superb bit of narrative, marvellous for its matter and its manner, shows the kind of soldiers with which the Romans conquered the world. Everywhere, where great deeds are done in personal prowess, you will find this mixture of rivalry and common spirit. These are the conditions of the great feats of the world.

146 14 primis ordinebus: see chapter on military affairs, i. 7.

147 1 habebant, *used to have.*

147 2 de loco, *for promotion or rank.*

147 5 locum, *opportunity.*

147 8 sese vallo constinet, *remain within the wall.*

147 15 hic casus, etc.: i.e. the javelin, piercing his sword belt, twisted the scabbard of his sword out of his reach.

147 18 Translate the bracketed words.

147 21 in locum dejectus, etc., *slipping into a hollow, he fell.*

147 24 in contentione, *in their rivalry.*

147 28 Chap. 45. quanto... gravior... tanto crebriores, *the more severe... the more frequent.*

148 5 a prima obsidione, *at the beginning of the siege.*

148 8 in iaculo: i.e. the shaft of the spear was probably hollow and the letter was inserted in it.

148 9 versatus, *going about.*

148 12 Chap. 46. hora XI: i.e. about five or six o'clock. In this chapter and the following note the wonderful celerity of Cæsar's movements and the quick obedience of his officers.

148 14 milia passuum XXV: i.e. from Amiens to (probably) Mont-didier.

148 18 rei publicae, etc.: cf. 31 24 and last note.

148 19 reliquam partem: the detachments under Roscius and Plancus were too far away.

148 23 Chap. 47. antecursoribus: the vanguard of Crassus's cavalry, or his scouts.

149 1 non ita, etc., *not delaying for a moment.*

149 4 veritus ne: § 564 (331. f); B. 296. 2; G. 550. 2; H. 567 (498 iii); H-B. 502. 4.
149 5 quos ... sciret = cum eos sciret: a causal clause.
149 6 quanto ... esset: indir. quest. depending on the verb of telling implied in litteras remittit.
149 7 rem: i.e. the loss of Sabinus and Cotta.
149 12 Chap. 48. duas: Caesar thus had only his own legion and that of Fabius,—a very small force to face the multitude of the enemy.
149 17 Graecis litteris: i.e. in Greek letters. The Gauls were well acquainted with the Greek characters (26 4-6, 167 6). According to Polyænus, the despatch contained merely the words, "Caesar to Cicero. Be of good courage. Expect aid."
149 20 amentum: the amentum was a small strap fastened to the middle of a light spear, in some cases, at any rate, giving it a whirling motion, like the rifle-ball of modern times. By its use the spear could be thrown twice as far and with better aim than without it, as has been proved by experiment.
149 25 biduo, for two days: § 424. c (259. c); cf. B. 231. i; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439.
149 26 perlectam ... recitat, having read it through (to himself), he then recited it aloud in the assembly of the soldiers.
150 3 Chap. 49. Gallum ... repetit, asks again for the Gaul.
150 4 supra: see 148 4-6.
150 6 faciat: ut omitted; cf. note on 108 1. — se ... eum: notice the difference in meaning.
150 9 animo: abl. of specification.
150 14 aequo animo, etc., he thought that he might well be content to slacken his speed.
150 16 haec: referring to castra, and obj. of contrahit. — hominum: a pred. gen. after erant.
150 17 milium VII: these legions averaged, then, 3500 men each, and this was somewhat less than the normal strength; see chapter on military affairs, 1. 1.
150 18 angustiis viarum: i.e. narrow paths or streets within the camp; angustiis, a loose use of abl. of means, a very elastic construction. The abl. in Latin contains three different cases, from, with or by, and at, so that its range of meaning is very wide.
150 19 hostibus: dat. of reference.
150 23 Chap. 50. Galli: sc. sese continent.
150 24 Caesar, etc.: translate as if Caesar sese continet ut, si, etc. — si ... posset: future protasis of ut ... contenderet, which, expressing a purpose, has a future force; § 516. d (307. d); G. 595; cf. H-B. 582. 2. The same construction is repeated in the next sentence.
Notes: Caesar.

151 3 equites ... castra: notice that with iubeo and veto either the person or the thing may be the subject of the dependent infin., or the verb may even be used impersonally, as in concursari.

151 12 Chap. 51. velit: direct, voleat.

151 16 ea: an adverb.

151 21 exuit: i.e. by forcing them to throw their arms away as they fled.

151 23 Chap. 52. Omit the bracketed words.

151 27 decimum quemque, one man in ten.

152 6 certius: the letter of Labienus had given him the first news of this calamity; see 149 7.

152 7 rem gestam [esse]: i.e. the destruction of Sabinus and Cotta.

152 8 quod detrimentum = detrimentum quod; observe that a rel. clause standing first usually incorporates its antecedent.

152 9 hoc: the usual abl. of cause (properly degree of difference) with comparatives.

152 10 beneficio deorum: see 10 17 and note.

152 15 Chap. 53. eo: i.e. at Cicero's camp. Caesar arrived there about three o'clock, and the news of his victory reached Labienus, sixty miles away, before midnight. See 187 24-27 for the Gallic method of sending news across the country.

152 19 Indutiomarus: see 120 2-4, 135 1.

153 2 trinis: § 137. b (95. b); B. 81. 4. b; G. 97. r.3; H. 164. 3 (174. 2. 3); H-B. 247. 1. a.

153 4 ad exercitum manere: contrary to his usual course, which was, for political reasons, to keep in near communication with Italy.

153 7 quid ... caperent: what future plan they should adopt.

153 10 quin ... acciperet: result clause after neque ... intercessit; § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 554; H. 570 (500. ii); cf. H-B. 521. 2.

153 11 in his: i.e. consiliis or nuntiis.

153 12 L. Roscio: see 133 16.

153 13 [Gallorum]: may be translated.

153 14 Aremoricae: i.e. the natives along the coast of the Atlantic.

153 15 afuisse: notice the tense, they had been, but, etc.

153 19 Chap. 54. alias ... alias: see Vocab.—cum ... denuntiaret, by announcing, etc. The descriptive cum-clause admits a great variety of translations.

153 22 Cavarinum: obj. of interficere.

153 23 Moritasgus: sc. regnum obtinebat, from regnum obtinuerant in the next line.

153 24 adventu (abl. of time), at the time of, etc.
153 25 publico consilio, by general consent, or on the authority of the people, not a private act of revenge, or the like. — conati: agreeing with Senones. — ille: i.e. Cavarinus.

153 26 regno domoque: i.e. as a king and as a citizen as well.

154 1 valuit . . . attulit: these verbs have for their subject esse, etc.; and such an influence did it have that some had been found, etc. . . . and such a change did this fact produce that, etc.

154 4 alteros . . . alteros: see Vocab.

154 6 adeo (emphatic), in fact.

154 7 cum . . . tum maxime quod, not only for several other reasons, but especially because.

154 8 praeferebantur, used to be held superior.

154 12 Chap. 55. quin . . . mitterent, etc.: cf. 153 10.

154 15 ulli civitati, etc.: cf. 56 24.

154 16 cum . . . dicerent: a common periphrasis for our pres. part.— bis: see Bk. i. chs. 31-54; Bk. iv. chs. 1-15.

154 20 tota Gallia, throughout Gaul: see note on 150 18.

154 25 Chap. 56. ultimo veniri: i.e. that there was a spontaneous rising for his support.

154 26 Senones, Carnutes: about Sens and Chartres. The latter are not mentioned before, but seem to have taken part against Cavarinus (ch. 54).

154 28 deore si . . . coepisset: a fut. condition. What would it be in direct discourse?

155 1 hoc: subj. of est.

155 2 quo, at which (lit. whither).

155 6 supra: see 118 25 ff.

155 10 huc: i.e. on his way to the Senones and Carnutes he will go through the territory of the Remi.

155 26 Chap. 58. in dies: see Vocab.

156 1 arcessendos curaverat: cf. 117 4.

156 10 praecipit: refers to petant; interdicit to neu volneret. — proterritis hostibus, etc.: translate by a temporal clause, when, etc.

156 13 mora reliquorum: lit. the delay of the others. The regular way of expressing the relation between two nouns is by the use of the genitive. Here the delay caused by the pursuit of the others is characteristically looked upon as belonging to them. Translate, by waiting to attack the others.

156 14 spatium nactum, gaining time.

156 18 redeuntis: i.e. from the pursuit of Indutiomarus.
Second Passage of the Rhine. — The last campaign had been a series of disappointments and reverses. The expedition to Britain had been only moderately successful and led to no permanent results; Caesar's return found the Gauls in a state of unrest, which culminated in open revolt and in the annihilation of the division of Sabinus and the attacks upon the winter quarters of Quintus Cicero and of Labienus. Caesar, to be sure, rescued Cicero in the nick of time and Labienus was successful against Indutiomarus; but, on the whole, the advantage had been with the Gauls, and they had gained fresh hope in their desperate struggle for independence. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they had the support of raids from across the Rhine,—a danger which it was especially the business of Caesar to check by a daring blow; hence the policy of this new, but idle, advance into Germany. It may be borne in mind that this campaign was the more critical, as it followed closely upon the defeat and destruction of the Roman armies under Crassus in the East.

Reading References on Caesar's Sixth Campaign.

Dodge's Caesar, chap. 14.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, chap. 13.
Froude's Caesar, chap. 17 (last part).
Holmes's Caesar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 6.
Plutarch's Lives, Caesar.
Tacitus's Germania.
Taylor's Hist. of Germany, chaps. 1 and 2.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 7.

157 1 Chap. i. multis de causis: viz. the profitless expedition to Britain, the desertion of Dumnorix, the loss of Cotta and Sabinus, and the sudden revolt led by Indutiomarus (see Bk. v. chs. 55-58).

157 2 per Silanum: the regular construction of the means when it is a person; cf. 57 3 and note.

157 3 delectum: i.e. in Italy.

157 4 proconsule: Pompey had been consul B.C. 55. He was now nominally proconsul of Spain, with six legions; but he remained in Italy, ruling his province through legati. — ad urbem (not in urbe): as long as he was in military command (cum imperio) he could not enter the city.

157 5 rei publicae causa: this business was the superintending of the corn supply (cura annonae). — quos . . . rogavisset, whom he had enlisted from Cisalpine Gaul when consul; the verb rogare is used of a commander
who exacts an oath of allegiance from his men; hence sacramento rogare means to enlist; quos: sc. the antecedent eos as obj. of iuberet and subj. of convenire and proficisci. — Cisalpina Gallia: this was Cæsar’s own province. But Pompey and Crassus had received authority to raise troops where they pleased, and in whatever number.

157 7 iuberet: subjv. of purpose, with ut omitted, following petit; cf. 108 1. — magni: cf. 52 11 and note. — etiam, etc.: i.e. not merely for this campaign, but for the Roman prestige in future.

158 2 augeri: does not refer to detrimentum, but to Cæsar’s forces (implied). This linking of different ideas with a word that properly belongs only to one is called zeugma.

158 3 quod: i.e. the loan of the legion. — amicitiae: Cæsar and Pompey were still openly friends, though by the recent death of Julia, Cæsar’s daughter and Pompey’s wife, as well as by the death of Crassus, the political coalition which united them had been dissolved, and an open rupture soon followed. The legion now forwarded to Cæsar was demanded back two or three years later.

158 5 constitutis et adductis: i.e. two levied and one borrowed.

158 6 duplicato: fifteen cohorts had been lost under Sabinus (Bk. v. chs. 26–37). The three legions now received had of course thirty cohorts. The new legions were known as i, iii, and xiv, the last taking the place of the legion and a half that had been lost under Sabinus at Aduatuca. Cæsar now led ten legions.

Chap. 2. In the details of this chapter, notice the formidable appearance, but the really long, weak, and broken line of the Gallic confederacy.

158 9 ut docuimus: see Bk. v. ch. 58.

158 13 civitatibus: i.e. of the Germans. — inter se, each other, a common use of the word in any reciprocal relation.

158 14 obsidibus...cavent, by hostages give security for the money, i.e. the money promised the Germans for their help. — Ambiorigem: the clever chief of the Eburones, who had entrapped and destroyed Sabinus.

158 20 maturius: i.e. earlier than usual.

158 22 Chap. 3. nondum, etc.: notice that it is the promptness and dash of Cæsar’s operations that win the victory in almost every case.

158 23 Nerviorum: see note on 68 18.

158 24 possent: for mood, see § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); H-B. 507. 4. b; cf. 38 27 and note. Here, as with cum, there is an inner connection between the two clauses. It is not merely before they were in a position to gather, but before they could get a chance to gather.
158 25 praeda, as booty; ea (referring to magno ... numero) agrees by attraction with the appositive: § 296. a (195. d); B. 250. 3; G. 211. R. 6, H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

158 27 coegit: sc. eos.

159 2 ut ... videretur: i.e. to show that he was determined to put down the rising at once.

159 3 Lutetiam: the first mention in history of Paris, which was a place of no great importance until its occupation as a royal town by the Franks in A.D. 502. The original place of meeting had perhaps been Samarobriva (Amiens). Cæsar apparently considered Lutetia a point nearer the scene of operations, and proceeded at once to the affected district.

159 4 civitatem ... coniunxerant: i.e. with the Senones. This was a close political union, not a mere military league (foedus).

159 5 hoc consilio: the new confederacy (cf. Bk. vii. ch. 75). — hac re: the removal to Lutetia. — pro suggestu, in front of the platform; i.e. by public announcement, not special notification to the commanders. See chapter on military affairs, v.

159 9 Chap. 4. conantibus (sc. eis, abl. abs.), while they were attempting to effect the gathering.

159 12 quorum in fide, under whose protection; i.e. of the Hædui, whose supremacy had once extended over the greater part of Gaul.

159 13 libenter, etc.: but Acco was afterwards put to death; see ch. 44.

159 15 instantis belli (pred. gen.): i.e. the war against the Treveri and Ambiorix.

159 16 custodiendos: gerundive expressing purpose; § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. n. 2); H-B. 605. 2; cf. also 117 4, 156 1.

159 19 equites: the cavalry of the Roman armies was wholly furnished by the subject-allies.

159 22 Chap. 5. Cavarinum: a chief appointed at Cæsar's dictation, and odious to his tribe (153 21–29). Hence came his animosity (iracundia) against the state which had driven him into exile.

159 24 meruerat: implying a harsh and tyrannical rule, which had aroused the hatred of the state. Either the old odium of Cavarinus or his new animosity against the state might cause a disturbance.

159 25 pro explorato habebat, he considered certain.

159 26 reliqua, etc.: i.e. what else Ambiorix would be likely to do.

160 4 venisse: understand eum (Ambiorix).

160 5 haec ... auxilia: i.e. both the Menapii and the Germans.— prius, with quam. Notice that the parts of this word are very often
Second Passage of the Rhine.

160 6 lacesseret: subjv. in indir. disc., following existimabat.
160 7 congredi, to form an alliance with.
160 14 Chap. 6. tripartito: in three columns, on different roads.
160 20 Commium: appointed king of the Atrebates by Cæsar (106 13–17). He served as Cæsar’s friend and ally in Britain and elsewhere, but finally joined in the great revolt against him (Bk. vii. ch. 76). — custodis loco, as a guard.
160 23 Chap. 7. dum geruntur: the regular construction with dum; cf. 113 1 and note.
160 25 in eorum finibus: see Bk. v. ch. 24.
160 26 via: abl. after longius.—cum . . . cognoscunt: not like the descriptive cum, but really the main proposition; § 546. a (325. b); B. 288. 2; G. 581; H. 600. i. 1; H-B. 566. a.
160 27 a (adverbial), away.
161 1 impedimentis: i.e. the greater part of the heavy baggage. He took a small baggage-train with him (see 161 28); but probably only what was necessary.
161 4 flumen: probably some stream flowing into the Meuse (Mosa).
161 5 transire, transituros: notice the regular use of these two constructions side by side; the first verb (habebat in animo) expresses intention and has the simple complem. infin.; the second (existimabat) is a verb of thinking and takes the indir. disc. This is one of the most important distinctions in Latin grammar.
161 6 augebatur: i.e. in the minds of the Treveri.
161 7 spes, their (the Treveri) hope.—loquitur: i.e. Labienus.—palam, freely or openly, on purpose to be heard, but not in a set speech.
161 10 castra moturum: of course to withdraw.
161 12 natura: i.e. their natural attachment to their own land.
161 13 consili: pred. gen.; cf. 18 19.
161 20 Chap. 8. cum: see note on 160 26.
161 21 longum esse, it would be tedious: § 437. a (264. b); B. 271. 1. b; G. 254. R.1; H. 525. 2 (476. 5); H-B. 582. 3 and b.
162 4 imperatoriq: Cæsar, who alone had the imperium, or military authority. Labienus was only dux.
162 6 derigi: i.e. to be formed and aligned; the verb properly has only the latter meaning, the former is only implied.
162 8 celeriter, etc.: see chapter on military affairs, vii.
162 14 receptit, recovered to obedience.—auxilio: dat. of service.
Notes: Cæsar.

162 16 comitati eos, in company with them (the Germans).

162 18 demonstravimus: see Bk. v. chs. 3, 4, and 56.

162 24 Chap. 9. paulo supra, a little above, or to the south.

162 25 nota ... ratione, on the plan already tried and approved (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 17).

163 1 purgandi sui: § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. r.¹; H. 626. 3 (542. i. n.¹); H-B. 614; cf. 77 3, 115 2.

163 5 cognita, having inquired into.

163 9 Chap. 10. paucis post diebus: § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. n.⁴; H. 488. 1 (430); H-B. 424.

163 10 eis ... imperio: subject tribes, not confederate allies. Tacitus, however (Ger. 38), represents the Suevi as a confederacy; its former subjects may, after Caesar's time, have been admitted to alliance.

163 18 quaque: -que connects mittant and cognoscant.

163 22 silvam: this was the natural frontier and defence (pro nativo muro) of the north German plain towards the south. A range of wooded hills still borders the Saxon duchies on the north. The Cherusci held the valleys of the Weser and Elbe.

164 1 Chap. 11. locum, etc.: here there is really nothing to tell, as Caesar found the country deserted (ch. 29), and returned at once to Gaul. We owe to this void in the narrative a most curious and entertaining glimpse into the geographic and ethnographic knowledge of the time. See the introductory chapters on Gaul and Germany.

164 7 existimantur: is only explanatory, hence the indicative.

164 8 quorum: the antecedent is principes.

164 9 redeat: is characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. 1. The idea seems to be: It is the chief men of these factions (those namely who are regarded as most influential) who have the supreme authority. Hence the effort of each of the chieftains to look out for his dependents.

164 10 ne ... egeret: in app. with eius rei, the past tense (egeret) taking its time from institutum [esse]: § 485. j, 585. a (287. i, 336. b. n.²); B. 268. 7. b, 268. 2; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 483.

164 13 haec ... Galliae, this same state of things exists in general throughout entire Gaul.

164 14 divisae: adj. use of the participle; cf. divisa, 1 1.

164 15 Chap. 12. cum ... venit: notice the difference between this and the cum in descriptive clauses (cf. 11 7, 49 1). Here it means merely "at the time when," and there is no inner connection with the main clause.

164 16 Sequani: these succeeded to the domination of the Arverni (see Bk. i. ch. 31). — hi, the latter.
164 17 antiquitus: really only a little while before, as the Hœdui had risen by favor of the Romans.

164 18 clientelae, dependencies. These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.

164 24 iurare: i.e. the Hœdui.

164 25 nihil . . . consili, no plans, part. gen.—et: connects cogerent and possiderent.

164 27 Diviciacus: cf. 27 13.

165 1 infecta re, without effecting his object.

165 2 adventu Caesaris . . . dimiserant: this long Latin periodic sentence should in our idiom be rendered by several coördinate sentences (cf. note on 66 5).—facta commutacione: i.e. by his friendship to the Hœdui and the defeat of Ariovistus (Bk. i. chs. 31-53).

165 4 ei: subj. of videbant.

165 6 reliquis rebus: abl. of specification.

165 8 adaequare, were equal; i.e. to the Hœdui. (The infin. clause quos adaequare is the subj. of interlegebatur, which is used impersonally.)

165 9 gratia: abl. of specification.

165 11 dicabant: distinguish from dicebant.

165 13 statu: loc. abl.

165 16 Chap. 13. plebes: here a noun of the fifth declen.; cf. plebs.

165 18 cum . . . premuntur: a general condition expressing repeated action, cum meaning whenever or as often as. The perf. indic. would be more usual; cf. 59 13, 131 7.

165 21 quae dominis (dat. of poss.), as masters have.

165 22 druidum (pred. gen.), that of the druids.—illi: the former.

165 25 hi: i.e. the druids.

165 26 eos: i.e. the Gauls.

165 27 quod facinus, any crime.

166 1 idem: nom. plural.

166 2 qui: why not quis? Observe also si qui in l. 10 below.

166 3 sacrificiis: abl. of separation; understand eos with interdicunt. —poena: like an excommunication, taboo, or boycott.

166 5 decedunt (with dat.): sc. de via (i.e. “make way for” them in the street).

166 6 incommodi: part. gen. following quid.

166 13 Carnutum: this central spot was at or near the modern town of Dreux, where, it is said, traces of these assemblies may still be found.

166 16 disciplina, system of doctrine; cf. meaning of the same word in 165 25. —Britannia: many think that druidism originated in Gaul and
was carried thence to Britain, where it still flourished, but that it had declined for various political reasons in the mother country.

166 21 Chap. 14. The bracketed words merely repeat the thought of the preceding sentence and may be omitted.

167 2 *numerus versuum*: i.e. their lore was put into verse to assist the memory.

167 4 *fas*: the words *fas* and *nfas* refer to what is *religiously* right and wrong; *ius* and *iniuria* refer to *human* obligations only.

167 8 *litteris confisos*, *by trusting to written words*, a useful hint to teachers.

167 11 *hoc* (acc.), more usually *illo*, refers to what follows; *hoc* (abl.) to what has just been said.

167 12 *transire*: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples, and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions, especially of the Buddhists.

167 15 *mundi, the universe* (system of things); *terrarum* (cf. *orbis terrarum*), *the world*.

167 17 Chap. 15. *equitum*: these made a sort of military nobility. It is interesting to compare the two "upper classes" here described with the ecclesiastics and feudal *noblesse* of France before the Revolution.— *cum est*: notice the force of the indicative. See note on *cum* . . . *premun-tur*, 165 18. — *usus*: a noun; see Vocab.

167 21 *ut quisque . . . amplissimus, ita plurimos, the more powerful . . . the greater number*: § 313. b (93. c, at end); G. 642. R.2; H. 515. 5 (458. 2).

167 22 *ambactos*: this Celtic word was known as the equivalent of *servus*, "slave," as early as the time of Ennius, 150 years before. Cf. 165 16–21.

167 27 Chap. 16. *hombres immolant*: it is not certain that the practice of human sacrifice existed so late as this in Gaul. Cæsar appears not to have known any actual instances of it.

168 3 *placrē*: distinguished from *placēre*. — *publice*: as opposed to the private ones just referred to.

168 4 *habent instituta*: cf. 40 20, 51 8, and notes.


168 12 Chap. 17. *Mercurium*: the gods had no such names, nor were they, in fact, the same gods; but they were identified with similar Roman divinities as nearly as possible. The name of the god whom the Romans identified with Mercury is lost (*Teutates*?); but it appears from inscriptions and images that his worship was very widespread and important throughout the period of the Empire. The other deities here mentioned appear
under numerous epithets. Jupiter was probably the Gallic Taranis, whose name appears to indicate that he was a god of thunder. He has been identified by some with a statuette bearing in its hand a long hammer or mallet like the Scandinavian Thor.

168 20 cum, etc.: see 165 18 and note.

168 21 ceperint: subjv. of informal indir. disc., for the fut. perf. ind. of the direct.

169 2 neglecta religione: i.e. in violation of his vow. — capta, taken as spoil. — apud se, at his house.

169 3 posita, consecrated as a gift.

169 5 Chap. 18. Dite, Pluto, the god of Darkness, or of the Underworld, meaning that they believe themselves to have sprung from the soil, the world below them: see § 403. a. N.1 (244. a. R.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. 1 (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. 6.

169 7 noctium, etc.: this usage is common to many primitive peoples; e.g. the Germans (Tac. Ger. 11). Our word “fortnight” is a relic of it. It doubtless had its origin in keeping time by the changes of the moon.

169 9 ut...subsequatur: i.e. the calendar day began at sunset.

169 10 fere (with hoc): i.e. speaking loosely. — suos liberos, etc. The Romans, on the other hand, accustomed their sons to public life, and in early times even took them with them into the Senate. Again cum with the perf. ind. expressing repeated or customary action; cf. 168 20. Observe that this perf. becomes a present in our idiom, expressing repeated action or a general truth.

169 13 turpe ducunt, they consider it disgraceful, turpe being pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause.

169 14 Chap. 19. quantas...communicant: i.e. the husband deposits, in a common fund, an amount equal to the wife’s marriage portion.

169 16 ratio habetur, a reckoning is kept.

169 17 fructus, revenues or profits. — vita: abl. of specification.

169 19 viri in uxores, etc.: cf. the Roman patria potestas; the rank of the wife was much higher among the Germans.

169 22 de uxoribus: this would seem to imply polygamy among the Gauls. Probably it was limited to the chiefs, as among the Germans; see note on 48 6. — in servilem modum, after the manner of slaves, i.e. by torture.

169 23 compertum est: i.e. that there has been foul play.

169 24 excruciatus interficiunt: cf. 5 5, 55 3, and notes. — pro cultu, considering the degree of civilization.

169 27 hanc = nostram (cf. 51 17), i.e. a generation ago.
170 1 dilectos: distinguish from 

   delectos. — iustis, regular, by con-

   ventional rule. When these had been fulfilled, the sacrifice of dependents

   was added. These usages are in accordance with the belief of the Gauls

   in immortality, which is fully attested.

170 3 Chap. 20. quae civitates = cæ civitates quae; a relative

   clause standing first generally incorporates its antecedent.

170 4 legibus sanctum, established by law, agreeing with the sentence

   si . . . communicet (obj. of habent); cf. 40 20, 51 8.

170 6 neve, and that not, the regular connective for a negative purpose

   clause. — quo: indef., any one.

170 7 quod saepe, etc.: cf. the lively account 97 9–17.

170 9 quae visa sunt, what they think fit to conceal (understand

   occultanda).

170 11 per concilium, by means (or, in the proceedings) of the public

   assembly.

170 14 Chap. 21. neque druides habent: i.e. this particular hierarchy.

   They had, however, both priests and priestesses, with religious forms public

   and private.

170 15 deorum numero, etc. In this, Cæsar's testimony is directly

   contradicted by Tacitus, who speaks (Ger. 9) of their worship of Mercury,

   Mars, and Hercules. This is almost the only contradiction between these

   writers, in whose accounts of political and other institutions there is a strik-

   ing agreement. This is all the more remarkable when we bear in mind

   that Cæsar went but little beyond the German frontier and had relatively

   little to do with them. This description of the Germans may be profitably

   compared with Cæsar's account of the Suevi in the opening chapters of

   Bk. iv.

170 19 a parvis, from childhood. — qui . . . permanserunt: i.e. "who

   are slowest to outgrow" their boyhood. Cf. Tacitus: sera juvenum venus,

   eoque inexhausta pubertas; and contrast the premature debaucheries of the

   Roman youth.

170 20 hoc: abl. of cause.

170 23 nulla occultatio: like the English there is no hiding.

170 25 renonum: i.e. small cloaks of hide. — magna . . . nuda: abl. abs.

170 26 Chap. 22. agri culturae: as to this chapter, cf. what is said

   in the general Introduction to the volume and in Bk. iv. ch. 1, where it

   is shown that the soil was tilled, not by the labor of old men, women, or

   slaves, but by that of the fighting men. In other words, the Germans

   were, though "barbarians," not (in one sense) a barbarous people.

170 27 neque quisquam, etc.: this temporary and shifting occupation
of land, as well as the holding of it by the family or clan (cognitionibus), is characteristic of a primitive society. Cf. the Introduction, as above.

171 1 finis proprios, private lands.
171 2 gentibus, etc.: in the general gathering for this assignment each clan must have met by itself, and have been represented by its chief.
171 3 quantum agri, as much land; agri is part. gen.
171 6 agri cultura: notice the use of the abl. here to be rendered for; § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478. 4 (422. n.2); H-B. 427. 1, cf. 431.— ne . . . expellant: this was a flagrant evil in Italy, which Cæsar in his own consulship had attempted to check, following the precedent of the Gracchi. There the potentiores had already succeeded in ousting the humiliores, and enormous plantations, cultivated by slaves, had taken the place of the earlier peasant freeholds.

171 11 cum . . . videat: this looks as if the land was portioned in equal shares to rich and poor alike. But on this question there are many and various opinions, and, at any rate, the words do not prove a division to each man as a freehold.

171 13 Chap. 23. maxima laus: so in Bk. iv. ch. 3.
171 14 virtutis: § 385. c (234. d'); B. 204. 2; G. 359. R.1; H. 435. 4 (391. ii. 4); H-B. 339. c.
171 16 prope, near; consistere, to stay or settle. The infin. clauses are in app. with hoc.
171 17 cum . . . infert: note the force of pres. indic. with cum; cf. 165 18 and note.
171 18 magistratus . . . deliguntur: by lot, according to the Saxon Bede, from among existing magistrates. The Goths, Burgundians, Franks, and Lombards, on the other hand, had real kings.
171 19 praesint, habeant: subjv. of characteristic.
171 21 principes . . . pagorum: these local and village chiefs, forming a sort of governing body, were probably the natural leaders each of his own district. They are said, however, to have been elected, no doubt for life, by an assembly of the tribe or nation (Tac. Ger. 12).
171 22 latrocinia . . . extra finis: as with the “cattle-lifting raids” of the Scottish Borderers.
171 25 ubi quis, etc., whenever any one, equivalent to the protasis of a general condition. This is the manner in which volunteers were mustered for the raids in question.
171 26 profiteantur: representing an inv. form in the dir. disc.
172 2 omnium rerum fides, confidence in anything.
172 3 qui . . . venerunt: again the perf. indic. in the protasis of a general condition, — whoever comes to them for any reason whatsoever.
172 6 Chap. 24. *cum . . . superarent*: a clause of characteristic, *such that*, etc.; see § 535. a. N.° (322. R.); G. 631. 2; H. 591. 4 (503. i. N.°); II-B. 521. 1.

172 7 *superarent, inferrent, mitterent*: asyndeton, i.e. omission of connectives.

172 10 *Hercyniam silvam*: the great wooded range extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands. — *Graecis*: i.e. other Greeks, as Eratosthenes was a Greek, though not of Greece proper.

172 11 *Volcae Tectosages*, etc.: occupying the southern part of Gaul, about Narbonne or Toulouse. A portion only had migrated to Germany; or, perhaps, had stayed behind from an early Celtic migration westward.

172 16 *Gallis*: indir. obj. of *largitur, multa* being the dir. obj.

172 22 Chap. 25. *iter*: acc. of extent; cf. 98 3. — *expedito* (dat.): i.e. to a man unencumbered with baggage. — *non . . . noverunt*: i.e. the Germans who live there. So at the present day, in the mountain regions of Germany and Switzerland, distance is measured by "hours" (stunden) instead of miles.

172 24 *Nemetum*, etc.: along the middle course of the Rhine, where it flows northward from Bâle. — *recta regione*: i.e. parallel.

172 25 *Dacorum*, etc.: occupying the eastern and western portions of Hungary.

172 26 *sinistrorsus*: in reality it is the river which leaves the course of the forest or highland, bending abruptly to the right, or southward.

173 1 *huius*: that familiar to the Romans, viz. western.

173 2 [*aut audisse*]: may be omitted in translation. — *initium*: as we should say the end, eastward, where it is lost in the Carpathian range. Its extent, in a direct line, is stated as 1600 miles.

173 3 *processerit*: subjv. as an intermediate clause in ind. disc. for perf. indic.

173 4 *acceperit*: subjv. of characteristic.

173 5 *quae, such as*, followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

173 6 *differant*: subjv. of characteristic.

173 8 Chap. 26. *bos*: this name seems to have been given loosely to any large-horned, unfamiliar beast, and even to the elephant; here it is perhaps the *reindeer*, which had anciently a wide-scattered range.

173 9 *unum cornu*: this description is unintelligible.

173 10 *palmae ramique* (hendiadys; cf. note on 28 25), *branching antlers*, evidently comparing the horns to a flat hand with branches like fingers.

173 13 Chap. 27. *alces*: this name is undoubtedly *elks*, but the description is widely unlike and quite unrecognizable.

173 17 *si ... considerunt*: cf. 172 3 and note. By what tense should this perfect be rendered? The same construction occurs below in l. 20, *cum est animadversum*, and in l. 23, *cum reclinaverunt*.

173 21 *omnes*: with arbores.

173 22 *ab radicibus, at the roots.* — *accidunt, cut into.* — *tantum ut*, etc.: lit. *so far that the perfect appearance of them standing is left*; translate, *so that to all appearances they are standing firmly*.

173 26 *Chap. 28.* *uri*: this name is generally understood to refer to the German *Urocks* (the primitive or wild ox, probably *buffalo*), said still to be found in the forests of Lithuania. *Caesar* evidently describes a very different animal, with spreading horns like those of a reindeer or moose; but the whole description must have been derived from a confused account.

174 6 *quae sint testimonio, to serve as evidence, a purpose clause.*

174 7 *ne ... excepti, not even when caught quite young.*

174 12 *Chap. 29.* *Caesar, etc.* This chapter directly follows ch. 10 in the narrative, the intervening passage being a digression.

174 14 *supra*: see 170 26.

174 16 *ne ... tolleret*: as would be done by completely destroying the bridge. — *barbaris*: dat.; § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. d; G. 345. r.1; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371. — *atque, and at the same time.* — *ut tardaret*: which he did by making the bridge practically useless.

174 17 *auxilia*: i.e. which the Germans might send to aid the Gauls.

174 19 *in extremo ponte.* There seems to have been an island in the river at this place, so that the bridge was in two sections. The section between the island and the east bank was destroyed, and at what was now the end of the bridge (*extremo*), on the island, the tower was built. There was probably a redoubt, as usual, at the entrance to the bridge on the mainland; see Fig. 59.

174 20 *cohortium*: these were auxiliaries, as it appears in ch. 33 that he took all his legions with him.

174 23 *cum maturascere*, etc.: i.e. early in August.

174 24 *Arduennam*: the modern Ardennes.

174 27 *D*: an obvious mistake, possibly of some copyist. The distance is about 150 miles. — *Basilum*: afterwards one of the conspirators against *Caesar*.

174 28 *si ... possit*, *(to see) whether he can*, etc.: see § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460. (b); H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. n.1); H-B. 582. 2 and a.

175 1 *qua*: why not *quae*?

175 2 *subsequi*: notice the pres. for the fut.

175 7 *Chap. 30.* *multum potest, has great power*; see note on 10 17.
175 8 nam ut, etc., for as it happened by a remarkable chance that, etc.; the following clause being subj. of accidit. — ipsum: referring to Ambiorix; so too in l. 12.

175 9 prius ... quam: render as one word, before; in English we omit the relative particle. — eius: i.e. Basili.

175 10 videretur: in the same construction as incideret. — adferretur: cf. 158 24 and note.

175 11 magnae fortunae (pied. gen.), a great piece of luck.

175 13 hoc: abl. of means, explained by quod, etc.

175 14 sunt fere, generally are.

175 16 propinquitatis: use the singular in English; § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. N.⁵; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b.

175 18 his pugnantibus: notice the force of the Latin order. While these were fighting, time was given for the chief to be placed on horseback by some of his followers, and, as soon as he actually got away, he was covered by the woods.

175 19 id castelli nomen est, that is the (German) name of a stronghold. It will be remembered that the Aduatuci were of German descent, and it is thought that Aduatuca is an old German word, meaning a stronghold. Then the Aduatuci would be the people who held such a place of safety. There were several towns of this name, which fact adds force to the conjecture.

175 21 Chap. 31. iudicione ... an, whether by design ... or, etc.

176 2 quas aestus: i.e. islands only at high tide.

176 3 alienissimis, entire strangers.

176 4 Catuvolcus: see 133 20-23, 134 17-19.

176 6 precibus detestatus, cursing with formal imprecations, which, from a dying man, were thought to have efficacy with the gods.

176 7 fuisset: informal indir. disc. — taxo: perhaps with a decoction of yew leaves, as the berries are said to be harmless.

176 12 Chap. 32. neve: see note on 170 6.

176 13 unam esse causam, that the case was the same; i.e. that they were all included in the league.

176 16 convenissent, reducerentur: in dir. disc. convenerint, reducantur.

176 19 id castelli nomen est, that is the (German) name of a stronghold. It will be remembered that the Aduatuci were of German descent, and it is thought that Aduatuca is an old German word, meaning a stronghold. Then the Aduatuci would be the people who held such a place of safety. There were several towns of this name, which fact adds force to the conjecture.

177 2 Chap. 33. ad ... versus, towards.

177 5 Scaldim, the Scheldt. There seems to be some confused
geography here, but the many and confused mouths of these rivers doubt-
less gave rise to this idea.

177 8 vii = septimum. Cf. a different idiom, 163 9. — quam ad
diem: cf. 179 2 (quem ad diem). Observe that dies is often fem. when
it means time.

177 9 frumentum deberi: see chapter on military affairs, iv. f.

177 11 commodo (abl.), to (properly in accordance with) the advantage,
etc. — rei publicae: gen.; cf. 31 24, 148 18.

177 14 Chap. 34. supra: in ch. 31.

177 15 quod se defenderet, capable of, etc. (subjv. of charac-
teristic).

177 16 cuique, to each; notice the Latin idiom. We should put the
distributive with the leading verb (consederat), each had taken position
where, etc.

177 21 universis, to men gathered in one body.

177 23 ex parte, in a measure.

177 26 hominum sceleratorum, those scoundrels; an expression of
temper which Cæsar does not often permit himself towards his foes. It
shows his bitter hatred against the hapless Eburones, who had destroyed
his officers and legion.

177 27 vellet: not contrary to fact, but in both cases a future protasis
thrown back into past time; cf. note on 141 1.

178 4 ut in, etc., considering that it was in, etc.; a not uncommon
use of ut.

178 6 ut potius, etc.: we may translate so that some opportunities for
doing injury were neglected, though the clause is properly one of purpose.
Connect potius with quam. The thought is that Cæsar's plan was to save
the lives of his soldiers, even at the expense of neglecting to punish the
enemy, and to employ others to carry out his vengeance.

178 7 ulciscendum: i.e. to avenge the destruction of the force of
Sabinus and Cotta (Bk. v. chs. 27–38).

178 8 noceretur (impers.), harm should be done to the enemy.

179 4 Chap. 35. fortuna: cf. 175 7. — possit, adferat: present
tense to express a general truth; though usually in Latin such expressions
follow the sequence of tenses.

179 8 ultro, freely; i.e. any that would; as a general invitation
extending beyond those immediately concerned.

179 10 supra docuimus: see 102 21–25.

179 13 primos finis, the nearest limits.

179 16 paludes: subj. of morantur.

179 18 profectum: i.e. cum profectum esse.
Notes: Caesar.

179 22 Aduatucam: i.e. where Cicero with a single legion was guarding the baggage of the whole army; see ch. 32.
179 23 tantum, only so much, really, so feeble.
179 24 cingi, surrounded; i.e. manned (with a line of defenders).
179 27 duce, as guide (pred. app.).
180 1 Chap. 36. Cicero: up to this time he had shown himself to be an unusually discreet and courageous officer.
180 2 continuisset (concessive subjv.), though he had, etc.
180 4 vii = septimo. — de numero: construe with fidem servaturum.
180 5 progressum: cf. prefectum, 179 18.
180 7 illius, etc., who called his quiet waiting a blockade.
180 8 si quidem, since: with subjv., indicating the ground of their complaint.
180 9 quo (following eius modi, of such sort that), with posset as subjv. of result.—oppositis, had gone to meet the enemy; the abl. abs. expresses cause.
180 10 in milibus passuum tribus: i.e. within three miles of his camp.
180 11 offendi (impers.), an attack could be made.
180 12 quas inter: several prepositions sometimes follow their cases.
180 14 hoc spatio: i.e. since Cæsar's departure.
180 15 sub vexillo: here the vexillum was a little scarlet flag (quite distinct from the metal signum), used by small bodies detached for some special service. The name vexillarii was given to the soldiers of such a corps; see chapter on military affairs, II, and Figs. 121, 127.
180 16 calonum: i.e. officers' servants and grooms for the horses. These were slaves.—iumentorum: to bring in the expected supplies.
180 17 subsederat, had remained behind when Cæsar left.—facta potestate, obtaining leave.
180 18 Chap. 37. [et]: omit in translation.
180 19 ab decumana porta, at the rear gate (see Fig. 119). The camp fronted in the direction where the enemy were supposed to be, i.e. towards the Gallic tribes, so that its more exposed part lay nearest the German attack.
180 20 nec prius ... quam, and not till; for the mood following, see 158 24 and note.
180 21 silvis: it was considered bad generalship to place a camp so near the woods as to conceal the approach of the enemy. The pickets, too, must have been either very carelessly stationed or very negligent.
180 22 usque eo, so close.—qui ... mercatores, the traders who spread their booths (tentoria) under the shelter of the wall.—recipiendi sui: for construction, see § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. r.1; H. 626. 3 (542. i. N.1); H-B. 614; cf. 40 15, 77 3, 77 20.
in statione: i.e. before the gate.

180 circumfunduntur: the middle or reflexive use of the passive, rendered in English by the active intransitive form; pour in or about.

180 si: interrog., [to see] whether; cf. 174 28.

181 signa, etc.: i.e. as the whole camp was in confusion the soldiers could not tell in which direction the line was to be formed (signa ferantur) nor where each man should rally (quisque conveniat). It is noticeable that Cicero is not spoken of after the beginning of ch. 36. Ordinarily this would be just the moment when a commander would be most active. It seems to show that he shared in the general panic.

imperatore: Cæsar. Observe the force of atque: and the general, too!

novas religiones, a sudden superstition, as if the spot itself were unlucky to the Romans (see 176 20–22).

qui occiderint, who (as they recalled; hence subjv.) had fallen.

dat. of reference.

apud Caesarem, with Cæsar.

proelii (abl. of time): see Bk. ii. ch. 25; Bk. iii. ch. 5.

consequuntur hunc: as primus pilus, he had authority to command all other centurions; although generally, as here, he really only formed a rallying point.

See chapter on military affairs, 1. 7.


relinquit animus, his breath (or consciousness) fails him (he faints).

per manus traditus, passed along from hand to hand by his comrades. — hoc spatio: i.e. the time gained by this short resistance.

Chap. 39. hic: i.e. in the open field.

modo . . . exspectant: the Roman discipline was so perfect that, in general, every man knew just what to do in any emergency (as in the fight with the Nervii, Bk. ii. ch. 21); but these new levies (see 176 24–27) were helpless till the exact order had been given, even the boldest of them (nemo est tam fortis, etc.).

legiones: those of Cæsar and his legati; see ch. 33.

paucitate: i.e. five cohorts and the 300 convalescent veterans.

Chap. 40. in signa manipulosque, among the cohorts and maniples. In their panic the servants rushed among the ranks of the cohorts (signa) and the maniples.

alii . . . alii: these seem to have had some presence of mind, as is implied in the expression censent, the regular expression for voting in a public assembly.
182 8 quoniam . . . sint, since [as they say], etc.
182 10 [confidunt]: may be omitted in translation, the infin. posse depending on the idea of saying involved in consent. — alii: sc. consent.
182 11 hoc: the latter counsel, which was that of the raw recruits. — docuimus: cf. 180 13-15.
182 13 C. Trebonio: this can hardly be the man referred to in ch. 33. He was away with the three legions intrusted to him, as there recorded.
183 2 militum virtute: i.e. of the infantry; the cavalry, it will be remembered, were not Romans, but Gauls and other allies.
183 3 nullo usu percepto, having gained no experience; i.e. even after seeing the successful action of the veterans.
183 4 eo consilio: with ut . . . defenderent in app. — permanere: compl. infin. with potuerunt.
183 5 quam: the antecedent is eam vim celeritatemque.
183 7 demiserunt: se has already been expressed with recipere.
183 8 ex inferioribus ordinibus: the officers of a new legion were usually obtained in this way, being promoted from the lower grades of veteran cohorts.
183 10 ne ante partam, etc.: notice again the esprit de corps of the Roman soldier; cf. 109 1-9, 142 7-11, 146 13 ff.
183 13 pars periti: two cohorts; see 184 26.
183 16 Chap. 41. constitisse, etc., had now gained a position.
183 17 praeda: see 179 26.
183 20 fidem non faceret, could not make them believe.
183 22 alienata mente, beside themselves with terror.— deletis . . . recepisse: after dicerent.
183 23 neque: the negative belonging with oppugnaturos fuisse is, as often in Latin, combined with the general connective of the sentence. — incolumi exercitu (abl. abs. denoting condition), in case the army were safe.
183 24 oppugnaturos fuisse: the regular form in indir. disc. for oppugnavissent, a contrary-to-fact apodosis.

"Brave as they were, the Roman soldiers seem to have been curiously liable to panics of this kind. The faith with which they relied upon their general avenged itself through the completeness with which they were accustomed to depend upon him. He returned on the day which he had fixed, and not unnaturally was displeased at the disregard of his orders. He did not, or does not in his Commentaries, professedly blame Cicero. But the Ciceros perhaps resented the loss of confidence which one of them had brought upon himself. Quintus Cicero cooled in his zeal, and afterwards amused the leisure of his winter quarters with composing worthless dramas." — Frondes "Caesar."
183 26 Chap. 42. eventus (acc. plur.) belli, the fortune of war (in general). — unum, only one thing.

183 28 casui: dat. with relinqui. — relinqui debuisse: § 486. a (283. a); B. 270. 2; H. 618. 2 (537. 1); H-B. 582. 3. a. ft. n. 2: as usual added without any other word of saying beyond that involved in questus.

183 29 multum fortunam . . . potuisse: cf. 175 7 ff.

184 1 avertisset: sc. fortuna.

184 2 rerum: part. gen. with maxime. — videbatur: the subj. is quod . . . obtulerunt.

184 5 beneficium: i.e. by giving him opportunity to escape. He was never captured. In honor of his splendid resistance to the invader a colossal statue has lately been erected to him at Tongres; see Fig. 83.

184 10 Chap. 43. agebatur: i.e. especially cattle. — frumenta: distinguish from frumentum.

184 11 anni tempore: it was now late in the fall, but the unfortunate people had not been able to harvest their crops.

184 13 his . . . pereundum [esse], that these must needs perish; his is dat. of agent.

184 14 in eum locum ventum est, matters were brought to such a pass, i.e. they were so close upon him.

184 16 ut ([non] omit) . . . contenderent, that prisoners who were brought in looked round among their number for Ambiorix, whom they had just seen in flight — supposing that he must have been taken also — and insisted that he was not yet quite out of sight.

184 20 paene . . . vincerent: i.e. almost surpassed the bounds of nature in their eagerness.

184 21 summam felicitatem: i.e. complete success. — atque: almost equals but.

184 22 eriperet, peteret: in the same construction as the preceding verbs depending on ut.

184 26 Chap. 44. damno: abl. of manner. The reference is to those killed by the German raid, chs. 37-40.

184 27 coniuratione: see chs. 3 and 4.

185 1 more maiorum: the ancient Roman mode of punishment was to flog the criminal to death, after which he was beheaded, — an extraordinary sentence to pronounce on a prisoner of war. It was this mode of punishment that was symbolized directly by the lictors' fasces. Concerted resistance (coniuratic) had come to be regarded as a flagrant crime, and its penalty was more and more bloody as time went on — as we see in the two succeeding Books.

185 2 aqua . . . interdixisset: i.e. banished them, forbade them to return to Gaul.
Notes: Cæsar.

185 4 Agedinci: locative.
185 6 ad conventus agendos: cf. 48 28.

Book Seventh. —B.C. 52.

War of Vercingetorix.—The last three campaigns had been conducted wholly in the north, with a view either to crush the bolder and more restless northern populations, or to overawe the more barbarous Britons and Germans beyond the frontier. It is not quite clear why the discontented spirits of the south did not seize the occasion to join forces with the formidable Belgian revolt. At all events, they seemed quiet and submissive after their defeats in the earlier campaigns, and might have continued so but for the execution of Acco (Bk. vi. ch. 44), which had aroused the spirit of all the Gallic nobility, and the news from Rome, where the hostile aristocracy had long been waiting for some opportunity to check Cæsar in his career of conquest and call him home.

This opportunity seemed to offer in the disorders which followed the death of Clodius. Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party, a bitter enemy of Cicero, whom he had succeeded, a few years before, in driving into exile. He was killed in a street brawl on the 20th of January of this year by Milo, a ruffian of the senatorial or aristocratic party. For the time, all regular and orderly government was at an end, till at length Pompey was invested with dictatorial powers, and quiet was restored. The news of these events coming to Gaul gave the native leaders reasonable ground to hope that a new uprising might be successful. Their plan, it will appear, was, by a sudden movement, to cut off Cæsar's communications with his military posts in the north, which would thus be speedily starved into surrender. This plan Cæsar foiled by striking, with his usual rapidity, through their line, and through the neutral or hostile populations of Central Gaul, and so advancing upon his assailants with the support of his legions from the north. His campaign of this year was the most fiercely contested, as well as the most important and decisive, of the entire war.

N. B.—In this book the editors have purposely abstained from grammatical comment except such as seemed necessary for the interpretation of the text, in order that the student might have one book of Cæsar's Commentaries, and that one of the finest pieces of simple narrative in literature, to enjoy without trying to see how the words were parsed. Grammar is absolutely necessary for Latin, but there is much in Latin besides grammar. Intelligent reading presupposes that, but does not always have it uppermost.
Reading References on the Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix.

Dodge's Cæsar, chaps. 15-20.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 13.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 19.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 7.
Napoleon's Cæsar, chap. 10.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 8.

186 1 Chap. i. quieta Gallia: cf. 73 3, 93 2. — in Italian: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.
186 3 Clodi: see note above. — ut . . . coniurarent (clause depending on senatus consulto): this was not an ordinary conscription, but a levy in mass, in which the entire population of Italy of military age took the oath. In addition, Cæsar orders a levy throughout his own province, in which were included Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Traisalpina, and Illyricum.
186 7 quod videbatur: it naturally seemed to them impossible for Cæsar to quit Italy at this crisis (urbano motu).
186 9 qui dolerent: trans. by pres. part., being indignant, etc.; the characteristic subjv. constantly has this meaning; cf. the use of cum. It approaches a causal relation, but has properly no notion of cause. — ante: adv. modifying dolerent.
186 11 principes Galliae: subj. of queruntur. — locis: loc. abl., without a prep., as usual.
186 13 Acconis: see Bk. vi. ch. 44.
186 15 qui: sc. eos, i.e. some state to begin hostilities.
187 1 capitis, of their lives; the sing. is idiomatic in Latin.
187 3 ut . . . intercludatur (see introductory note): depends on rationem, a plan (of campaign).
187 9 Chap. 2. Carnutes: this name is represented by Chartres.
187 12 cavere inter se, take security from each other. — ne res efferatur: as the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.
187 13 conlatis, etc.: an armed or symbolically armed council seems to have been the most binding form of public ratification of concerted measures. Here the standards were gathered in a sheaf and the oath was taken by this symbol of unity.
187 15 deserantur: it seems to have needed the most solemn forms of agreement to bind the discordant and jealous Gauls.
187 19 Chap. 3. Cenabum: now Orléans, on the Loire.
Cesare,

their business was money-lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were wholly controlled by Roman citizens.

constiterant, had settled.

maior atque inlustrior: i.e. than usual.

clamore: a sort of vocal telegraph, by which, as also by signal-fires, messages were conveyed, it is said, from towers 500 yards apart.

Cenabi: locative.

ante ... vigiliam: between nine and ten at night; the sending of the message thus occupying about sixteen hours. — Arvernorum: i.e. the country now called Auvergne, a region always noted for the vigor and hardihood of its people, who now became leaders in the great revolt, and furnished its dauntless chief Vercingetorix.

principatum, etc.: see 27 14 and last note on 2 1.

totius Galliae: i.e. all Celtic Gaul.

incendit: sc. eos.

prohibetur: conative present; i.e. they try to prevent him. This discouragement of the elders was of evil omen to his enterprise from the start.

Gergovia: the chief town of the Arverni, on an eminence near Clermont.

perditorum: men of ruined fortunes, desperate. This is the usual course of things and the usual accusation. The well-to-do are rarely ardent patriots. When trouble comes, they either make terms or flee to the provinces.

Senones, etc.: several of these names are preserved in the modern Sens, Paris, Poitiers, Tours, Limoges. The league included all Celtic Gaul south of the Seine and west of the loyal (or doubtful) Hœdœi and Bituriges, who were drawn into it later on.

imperat, he levies, with acc. and dat.

quantum armorum, how many arms.

quod (interrog.): agrees with tempus, and before what time.

necat: i.e. the offenders.

Rutenos: these, as well as the Cadurci, lay between the Arverni and the Roman province. It was important, therefore, to secure them as a frontier defence.

de consilio, by the advice.
189 8 qui: agrees with the persons implied in equitatus peditatusque; § 280. a (182. a); B. 235. b. 2. c; G. 211. r.1; H. 397 (445. 5); H-B. 325.

189 11 veritos: translate by a causal clause.

189 12 quibus id, etc., who they knew had this plan.

189 13 ipsi: i.e. the Bituriges.—id eane, etc., whether they did this for the reason which, etc.

189 15 quod (adv. acc.), because (the reason for non videtur, etc.). This is a bit which goes to show that the commentators, notwithstanding their aim at political effect, are substantially true. Cæsar was too great a man to deceive others except when he deceived himself.

189 19 CHAP. 6. virtute = vigor. This word is in Latin often used in a vague sense equivalent to our 'thanks to' or the like.

189 21 qua . . . posset: indir. quest. following difficultate, which implies doubt.

189 23 se absentem: Cæsar knew well his own influence over his army. See also introductory notes.—dimicaturas [esse]: sc. eas, i.e. the legions.

189 24 ipse, etc.: the most submissive Gauls at such a time were not to be depended upon, if they had the slightest chance to capture him.—eis: indir. obj. of committi, the subj. of which is suam salutem.

190 1 CHAP. 7. Lucterius, etc.: an officer of Vercingetorix; see 189 1. He endeavored to rouse the border tribes against the Romans, but was checked by the promptness and farsightedness of Cæsar.

190 2 Nitiobriges et Gabalos: these completed the Arverian frontier, the Volcae and Helvii being within the limits of the Province.

190 4 Narbonem, Narbonne, the chief town of Gallia Narbonensis, founded by C. Gracchus.

190 5 antevertendum [esse] has for its subj. ut . . . proficisceretur, and is followed by the dat. consiliis.

190 7 provincialibus: a portion of the Ruteni had been incorporated in the Province.

190 14 CHAP. 8. quod . . . putabat: referring to Lucterius.

190 15 Cevenna: the pass crossing this range is about 4000 feet high.

190 16 durissimo, etc.: Pompey was put in authority February 25 (by the old calendar, which was now about six weeks ahead of the actual time); Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cevennes about the middle of January.

190 18 summo labore: "these admirable soldiers were worthy of the genius of their chief," but such men as Cæsar and Napoleon make that kind of soldiers.

190 21 singulari homini, a solitary wayfarer, to say nothing of an army.
Notes: Caesar.

191 1 Chap. 9. at: marks a transition as usual; translate meanwhile.

191 2 usu...praeciperat, had suspected would come to pass.—per causam, on the pretext (so elsewhere in Cæsar): his real motive was to join his force.

191 4 Brutum: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterward one of Cæsar’s assassins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with the Veneti; see 82 7-10.

191 6 triduo: this was a pretence, and was given out to conceal his real design.

191 8 Viennam, Vienne, a little below Lyons on the Rhone.—recentem: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.

191 11 hiemabant: see Bk. vii. ch. 44. His route would lie due north up the Saône along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was above 300 miles.—quid: with consili.

191 12 de sua salute, affecting his own safety; opposed to any design on his forces.

191 13 reliquas, etc.: two of them were somewhere near Luxembourg, and six at Sens, about 140 miles apart.

191 14 prius: with quam.—unum locum: evidently Sens.

191 17 Gorgobinam: this was situated probably on the Allier, a southern confluent of the Loire.

191 18 Haeduis attribuerat: see 25 19 ff.

191 20 difficultatem: the dilemma in which Cæsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions, si...contineret, ne...deficeret, and si...educeret, ne...laboraret.

192 1 Chap. 10. stipendiariis: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.

192 2 amicis, etc., since his friends would find there was no help for them in him.

192 4 ab, in respect to his supply of corn.

192 10 Agedinci: now Sens, the chief town of the Senones.

192 12 Chap. 11. altero die, on the second day of the march.—Vellaunoōunum: the position of this town is somewhat uncertain, but Cæsar apparently did not march directly towards Gorgobina, but made a detour towards the north in order to cross the Loire at Orléans.

192 13 quo, in order that.

192 15 circumvallavit: the circumvallation consisted of a line of wall and trench surrounding the town.

192 18 iter: i.e. to the relief of the Boii at Gorgobina.

192 19 qui tum primum, etc.: i.e. they had just heard of the invest-
ment of Vellaunodunum and, thinking the siege would last longer, were raising a force to defend their chief town about 120 miles off.

192 20 eam rem: i.e. the siege.
192 21 quod mitterent, to send, giving the purpose of comparabant.
192 24 in posterum: sc. diem.
192 25 militibus imperat, he orders the soldiers to prepare. The dir. obj. of imperat being a demonstrative antecedent of quae, not expressed in Latin, and in Eng. absorbed in 'what.'
192 26 contingebat, touched: i.e. led directly to. The town being on the north bank, the bridge would allow its defenders to cross to the friendly Bituriges.

193 3 desideratis quin, etc.: a loose use of the quin-construction; all, with very few exceptions, were captured.
193 5 diripit: cf. the fate of Avaricum, ch. 28.
193 8 Chap. 12. ille: i.e. Caesar.
193 9 Noviodunum: the position is uncertain. Caesar's march, however, was certainly to the south up the Loire. This town is to be distinguished from Noviodunum of ch. 55, a city of the Hædui.
193 11 celeritate: we may supply in Eng. a demon. as antecedent to qua.
193 20 novi aliquid consili, some new design.
193 22 omnis incolumis: see l. 15 above; construe with receperunt, got their men all back safe to Caesar's camp.
193 24 Chap. 13. Germanos: this force was much superior to the Gallic cavalry, and was destined to turn the battle in Caesar's favor at many critical times; see chs. 67, 70, 80. The tactics of the German cavalry are described 43 4 ff.
193 25 ab initio: the meaning of this is not clear. He had no German cavalry at the beginning of his campaigns. He may have obtained them after his struggle with Ariovistus.
194 2 quibus, and these (the Gallic horse).
194 3 eos (obj. of perduxerunt): i.e. the leaders in the sudden movement described above, ch. 12.
194 5 Avaricum: the modern Bourges, an important town of 40,000 inhabitants, the geographical centre of France.
195 3 Chap. 14. longe alia ratione atque, in a way quite different from, etc.; by purely defensive or guerilla war.
195 6 anni tempore: i.e. scarcely yet spring, long before harvest; all supplies must be got from granaries or storehouses (aedificia), which might easily be destroyed.
195 8 hos omnis: i.e. hostis.
195 10 incendi: cf. the course of the Helvetians, Bk. i. ch. 5.
195 11 *hoc spatio*: explained by *quo*, etc., i.e. the range of the Roman foraging parties. — [a Boia]: omit.

195 13 *quorum*: the antecedent is *eorum*.

195 15 *neque interesse, and it makes no difference* [he says]. — *ne ... an, whether . . . or.*

195 19 *sint receptacula, serve as retreats.*

195 20 *neu, and lest, sc. sint* from preceding clause. — *proposita, offered to be captured by the Romans.* The method of warfare here advised by Vercingetorix and afterwards consistently followed by him stamps him as a general of first-rate ability. We may fitly compare Fabius Maximus harassing and weakening the army of Hannibal, and the burning of Moscow by the Russians to drive out Napoleon.

195 26 Chap. 15. *urbes*: Cæsar more commonly calls them *oppida.* Rome alone is always *urbs.*

196 2 *solaci*: part. gen. with *hoc.*

196 3 *amissa, all they had lost* (obj. of *recuperaturos*).

196 4 *incendi, etc.: a double indir. quest., whether . . . or.*

196 9 *flumine*: the city was just above the junction of the Auron with the Yèvre.

196 12 *volgi*: obj. gen.; i.e. his compassion *for the poor people,* who would be turned out of house and home in the winter, if the town should be burned.

196 16 Chap. 16. *longe, distant.* — *certos (cerno), regular.*

196 17 *in . . . tempora, from hour to hour.*

196 21 *etsi, etc., although so far as skilful planning* (ratione) *could provide* (against this danger), *our men took the precaution of going at uncertain times and in different directions.*

196 22 *ut . . . iretur*: a clause of purpose, taking its construction from *provideri,* though not immediately connected with it. The verbs are used impersonally.

196 24 Chap. 17. *quae . . . habebat*: i.e. the neck of the peninsula on which the town was situated (196 8 ff.).

196 25 *intermissa, left free.* — [a]: omit.

196 26 *aggerem, etc.:* see chapter on military affairs, VIII.

Between the Yèvre and the Auron was a plateau, some 1200 to 1600 feet high, with rather steep banks. As this plateau approached the town, it narrowed to a ridge only about 400 feet wide, with the Auron on one side and a swampy brook, the Yévrette, on the other. From the Yévrette to the Yèvre extended a morass. At a distance of about 300 feet from the city wall the ridge was intersected by a sudden depression like a trench, perhaps 50 feet deep (see plan, Fig. 90). Caesar pitched his camp on the
plateau just back of the ridge, a little over half a mile from Avaricum. Along the ridge, right across the intersecting ravine, he built the agger.

196 29 alteri: the Hædui, already wavering in their allegiance; alteri (next line): the Boii, a fragment of the defeated Helvetians (Bk. i. ch. 28).

197 8 ab eis: the source of vox, not the agent of audita. Notice again in this passage the invincible endurance of these soldiers.

197 14 ignominiae loco, in the place of (i.e. as) a disgrace.

197 16 Cenabi: locative.

197 17 parentarent = ut parentarent, the natural construction. As one might say irregularly in English, "It is better to suffer anything than not avenge our comrades," omitting "to."

197 23 Chap. 18. qui . . . consuessent: see Bk. i. ch. 48.

198 2 sarcinas, etc.: the regular preparation for battle.

198 5 Chap. 19. difficilis, hard to cross; impedita, embarrassing.

198 7 fiducia loci, trusting to the strength of the position.

198 8 [in civitatis]: omit. — vada [ac saltus], fords and open spaces, where the way seemed practicable.

198 10 haesitantis, struggling in the mud or bushes. — premerent: a purpose clause, taking its construction from sic animo parati, determined; cf. 199 3, where the same words take a result clause. The two constructions approach each other, but the first refers to future time, the last to present.

198 11 propinquitatem: i.e. the armies were separated only by the swamp. — videret: the contrast is between the casual observer and the careful inspector (qui . . . perspiceret). — prope, etc., on nearly equal terms; iniquitatem (next line), unfair advantage, showing that their offering battle was inanis simulatio.

198 14 quod . . . possent: follows indignantis, chafing that, etc. — conspectum suum, the sight of them.

199 2 necesse sit, etc., a victory must needs cost, with the abl. of price.

199 4 iniquitatis: § 352 (220); B. 208. 2. a; G. 378; H. 456 (409. ii); H-B. 34.2.

199 8 Chap. 20. proditionis: see last note.

199 10 discessisset and venissent refer to the action in ch. 18. — imperio = imperatore.

199 12 non haec, etc., all these things could not [they said].

200 1 illum: connect with malle . . . habere.

200 2 ipsorum: sc. concessu.

200 5 persuasum [esse]: impers., that it had been recommended. — qui se . . . defenderet, which was its own defence (ch. 19).
200 12 fortunae (dat.): as well as nuic (referring to alicuius), to be construed with habendam gratiam, thanks were due.
200 16 imperium: the same as regnum Galliae above.
200 18 quin etiam, nay even. Distinguish carefully from quin introducing a neg. result. — remittere, is ready to resign; in dir. disc., remitto, I resign. — si = [to see] whether (indir. quest.).
200 27 nec iam viris, etc., that no one any longer has sufficient strength; viris is from vis.
200 28 posse: sc. quemquam, supplied from cuiusquam.
200 30 [Vercingetorix]: may be omitted.
201 2 quem: construe with ne ... recipiat, subj. of provisum est, and as it basely flees from this spot, I have provided that no state shall receive it within its boundaries.
201 4 Chap. 21. suo more: cf. Tacitus (Ger. 11), si placuit sententia, frameas concutiant.
201 5 in eo, in the case of him.
201 6 summum: this word is often used where we should say "a great."
201 7 maiore ratione, with better generalship.
201 11 si ... retinuissent: in app. with eo (that condition).
201 14 Chap. 22. genus: i.e. the Gauls.
201 15 atque ... aptissimum: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 5; atque connects the descriptive gen. summae solertiae and the descriptive adj. aptissimum.
201 16 laqueis, etc.: see Fig. 126.
201 17 cum destinaverant, ... reducebant: a general condition expressing repeated action in past time; cf. 130 7.
201 19 ferrariae: so of the copper mines of the Aquitani; see 89 11-18.
201 25 cotidianus agger: i.e. the daily increase in the height of the agger.— commissis malis, by splicing the upright timbers; these were the high corner beams of the towers, by which they were raised in successive stages, so that each increase in the height of the Roman works was met by a corresponding increase in the height of the defences. The towers on the walls were probably connected by covered galleries, one for each story.
201 26 apertos cuniculos ... morabantur, etc.: this refers to the obstructions put by the Gauls in the way of the open passage ways which ran through the agger, and which the soldiers used in carrying material for its advance and completion; morabantur has the force of blocked or obstructed. See Figs. 92, 93, 120, and chapter on military affairs, VIII.
202 2 Chap. 23. directae, at right angles with the course of the wall. — perpetuae in longitudinem, along the whole length.
202 4 revinciuntur, are fastened by beams some forty feet in length, running lengthwise of the wall.
202 5 *intervalla*: i.e. the two feet between each two of the beams in the lower tier (*ordo*).

202 7 *ut idem*, etc., *in such a way that the same space* (between the beams) *is preserved, and that the beams do not touch each other*; but, placed at equal intervals, the individual beams are firmly bound together by the corresponding stones placed between them; i.e. so alternating in the successive layers that beams rested on stone, and stone on beams.

202 11 *cum*: correlative with *tum* below.

202 15 *quadragenum*: note the distributive, *forty each*.

203 1 *introrsus revincta*: i.e. the beams were mortised together at some distance from the exposed ends, making it next to impossible to force them apart; see Fig. 94.

203 4 *Chap. 24*. *frigore*: it was still very early in the year, scarcely spring; see 208 10.

203 6 *latum*: as a width of over 300 feet is incredible, some have supposed that this is an error for *longum*; others, that the numeral should be *xxxx*. — *altum pedes lxxx*: it must be remembered that the height of the *agger* had to equal the depth of the ravine it crossed, and also the height of the Gallic wall. The latter may have been thirty feet.

203 11 *cuniculo*: i.e. a mine running under the *agger*. It should be remembered that the *agger* was built largely of wood.

203 13 *turrium*: the Roman towers, mounted on wheels or rollers, and here referring to those flanking the *agger*; see Figs. 43, 92, 126.

203 19 *partitis temporibus*: i.e. *in their turn*.

203 20 *reducerent*: i.e. out of reach of the *fire*.

203 21 *interscinderent*: i.e. they cut away the unfinished end of the *agger*, which was in flames. Thus the rest was saved.

203 25 *Chap. 25*. *pluteos*: here the high wooden bulwarks (*loricæ*) protecting each story of the tower; see note on 144 2.

203 26 *nee . . . animadvertabant*, and noticed that the exposed men did not readily approach to give assistance.

204 2 *accidit*, etc., *an incident occurred before my eyes, which, seem-
ing worthy of record, I thought ought not to be omitted. Observe the use of the plural pronoun, the 'editorial we,' extremely common in Latin.

204 4 per manus traditas: i.e. his companions passed them to him to throw.

204 5 scorpione: this was a powerful cross-bow, for hurling darts or bolts; see chapter on military affairs, 1. 5 and Fig. 95.

204 18 palus: probably the watery valley of the Auron.

205 3 Chap. 26. suorum, their husbands.

205 5 quos: refers to se as well as to liberos.

205 8 quo timore: the regular Latin idiom where we should expect cuius rei timore.

205 16 Chap. 27. [intra vineas]: it would be impossible for legions to find room inside the vineae. Either legiones here refers to the storming columns, or intra vineas means within the line of the sheds, and so out of sight. Many editors omit the words altogether. — expeditis, put in fighting order.

205 18 adscendissent: informal indir. disc. for the fut. perf. of the direct.

205 22 Chap. 28. cuneatim, in a compact body; (lit. wedge-fashion) implying tactics like those of the Romans.

205 23 si qua ... veniretur, if an attack should be made from any side; [contra] may be omitted; veniretur is impersonal.

205 25 circumfundi (impers. pass.) = that men were pouring in.

205 27 continenti impetu, without stopping.

206 1 exitu: abl. of cause.

206 3 quisquam: i.e. Romanorum. — Cenabensi caede: see ch. 3.

206 10 [ut]: omit. — procul in via, etc., placing his friends and the chiefs of the states at intervals for some distance along the road, he took care that they [the fugitives] should be separated and conducted to their own people.

206 12 quae ... pars = ad eam partem ... quae and refers to the persons implied by suos, and is explained by 198 7, where it is said that the Gallic forces were arranged generatim.

206 14 Chap. 29. consolatus cohortatusque: the fall of Avaricum must have been a crushing blow to Vercingetorix, but he meets the disaster with a magnificent courage.

206 18 errare si qui = that those were mistaken who, etc.

206 23 quae ... dissentiren: i.e. the states that had not yet joined the rebellion.

206 27 effectum habere: see notes on 13 4, 40 20, 51 8.
206 28 impetrari, etc.: i.e. he had a right to ask them to proceed to fortify, etc.; notice the modesty of these words, appropriate to the great disaster just suffered.

207 5 CHAP. 30. re integra, before anything had happened (see ch. 15).

207 6 ut ... sic: correlatives.

207 9 de reliquis, etc.: follows in spem, hope of, etc.

207 11 homines insueti: an appositive expressing concession; translate by although.

207 18 CHAP. 31. capere, gain over (the neutral states).

207 19 armando vestiendosque: gerundives expressing purpose, agreeing with the understood obj. [eos] of curat; cf. 11 5, 82 7.

207 21 quem: sc. numerum.

207 25 sagittarios: apparently the Gauls had trusted too much, especially during the siege, to hand-to-hand fighting.

207 28 quis conduxerat, whom he had hired; i.e. mercenaries.

207 31 Chap. 32. confecta: it was now about the end of March, or a little later. — tempore: i.e. the time was suitable for campaigning.

207 32 sive ... sive: understand to try, or some such phrase to introduce these clauses which are treated as indir. questions.

207 35 maxime necessario tempore, in an extreme emergency.

207 38 proximo anno, the year before.

207 41 suae ... clientelas, that each of them had his own [armed] followers (see Bk. vi. ch. 15).

208 24 quis inter = eos inter quos.

208 25 quod si, but if; see second note on 40 20.

208 27 positum [esse], depended on.

208 6 Chap. 33. minus [sibi] concideret, felt itself weakest.

208 8 eis: dat. with liceret.

208 11 quis inter = eos inter quos.

208 14 atque, than, as often after alius. — oportuerit: for oportuit of the direct, implying the nonfulfillment of the duty, see § 522. a (311. e); B. 304. 3. a; G. 597. K. 3; H. 583 (511. 1. N. 3); H-B. 582. 3. a.

208 15 renuntiatum: renuntiare is the technical term for the act of a magistrate who, after an election, formally declares the result, and thus "creates" the new official. In this case one brother had declared the other elected after a sham election by an illegal convention.—vivo utroque, when both are living.

208 18 intermissis magistratibus, there being a vacancy in the magistracy; this phrase signifies that an interval occurred between the term of one magistrate and the due election of his successor. Valetiacus (208 22) had illegally appointed his brother Cotus to be his successor. The priests
promptly declared the office vacant and appointed Convictolitav's to fill the position until a regular election could again be held. In such a case at Rome (as had recently occurred twice, B.C. 55 and 52), the patrician senators appointed an interrex by virtue of the sacred authority residing in them. Cæsar here, accordingly, recognizes the likeness to a Roman precedent.

209 19 *obtinere, to hold against (ob)* the rival claimant. See note on 21.

209 22 Chap. 34. [his]: makes sense and may be translated.

209 25 *quae = ut ea:* purpose.

210 1 *secundum flumen, along the stream* (construe with duxit).

210 4 *ab altera parte:* Cæsar being on the right or eastern bank, Vercingetorix on the western, on which the town of Gergovia lay.

210 6 Chap. 35. *e regione:* see vocab.; cf. 204 5. — *castris:* dat. of reference.

210 9 *partem:* acc. of extent of time.

210 12 *rescindendos:* cf. 209 27.

210 14 *distractis,* etc.: this means that Cæsar made up two sham legions by taking cohorts from the others, so that there might appear to be six full legions as before.

210 18 *perventum [esse] (impers.):* i.e. that the four legions that had gone on ahead had reached their camping ground. — *pars inferior: the lower end of the piles, which (being under water) was not burned or cut away, served as a support to the new bridge hastily constructed for the crossing.*

210 22 *magnis itineribus:* see note on 8 22.

210 24 Chap. 36. *quintis castris, at the fifth encampment,* or end of the fifth day's march.

210 26 *situ:* see plan, Fig. 97.

210 27 *oppugnatione, taking (it) by storm,* without a formal siege. — *de obsessione,* etc.: i.e. he concluded not to invest it regularly until supplies had been provided.

211 5 *qua despici poterat,* where a view could be had from above.

211 8 *seu quid,* etc., *in case any communication or orders should seem necessary.*

211 10 *quid:* with animi ac virtutis (part. gen.).

211 12 *collis:* the so-called Roche Blanche (White Rock), at whose foot flows the only sufficient stream of water (see plan, Fig. 97). Cæsar's larger camp, it will be observed, lay toward the southeast of the town, and the smaller towards the south; while the forces of the Gauls lay on the
gentler southern slopes of the hill (measuring nearly a mile from east to west, and a third as much from north to south) on which the town was built (see ch. 46).

211 13 *quem si*, etc.: fut. condition, indir. disc.
211 14 *et . . . et*: correlatives.
211 16 *tamen*: opposed to the whole description, not to the last part merely.

211 17 *posset*: see note on 158 24. The verb is here impersonal.
211 23 *Chap. 37. demonstravimus*: see 209 17–19.
211 27 *praemium communicat*: i.e. the money from the Arverni.
211 28 *imperio natos, born for command* (dat.). — *unam*, etc., *was the only thing*, etc., though *unam* as usual agrees with the pred.

212 1 *traducta, carried over* to the patriotic party.
212 3 *beneficio, a friendly act*: i.e. deciding the magistracy in his favor. — *sic . . . obtinuerit*: i.e. this (he claimed) was only his due and not a special favor.
212 8 *vel principes, even leaders*, not mere followers or adherents.
212 11 *placuit, it was decided. — milibus*: this refers to the troops that Cæsar had asked for against Vercingetorix; see 209 23–25.
212 12 *ea ducenda curaret, that he should have charge of their march.*
212 13 *reliqua*: subj. of *agi*, the whole clause being the obj. of con-

stituunt.

212 18 *Chap. 38. principes civitatis*: see ch. 39.
213 1 *consili res, a matter for deliberation. — sit*: for mood and tense, see § 524 (312); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3.
213 4 *concurrant*: § 558. a (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b.
213 8 *una (adv.), with him. — frumenti*: i.e. which these Romans were taking to Cæsar under the protection of the Hæduan guard.
213 15 *Chap. 39. genere dispari, of lower birth.*
213 16 *traditum*: here equivalent to *commendatum, — presented* as suited for public service.
213 17 *nominatim*, etc.: i.e. he had sent them a personal summons.
213 23 *quod . . . providet, which he foresees will be the consequence.*
213 25 *levi momento, of light account; momentum (from moveo) is strictly the weight which “moves” the balance scale.

214 3 *Chap. 40. contrahenda*: as only two legions were left behind, the camp should have been “contracted,” so that these few might be equal to the task of keeping and relieving guard. The danger to which the situation exposed them is related in the next chapter, — *propter magnitudinem castrorum*, l. 26.
Notes: Caesar.

214 5 fratres: these had gone to Cæsar in advance of the Ilaeduan force; see 212 13. They seem to have suspected, or to have been warned, that the plot had been betrayed.

214 7 necessario . . . labore, by the hardship of a forced march. It is worth while to notice the frank terms on which Cæsar stands with his citizen-soldiers. This was an essential element of his success.

214 12 quos . . . existimabant: owing to the falsehoods of Litavicus, 212 17–20.

214 16 quibus nefas est, for whom it is wrong; see Bk. iii. ch. 22.

214 21 Chap. 41. [noctis]: if this word is authentic, it must refer to the early part of the night, for Cæsar marches back to his camp, a distance of twenty-five miles, before sunrise.

214 26 quibus isdem: dat. of apparent agent after permanendum esset. The thought is that the soldiers were so few that the same men had to do all the fighting and could not be relieved.

214 29 tormenta: see chapter on military affairs, 1. 5.—discessu eorum: at the suspension of their attack when night came on; his messengers had apparently set out about midnight.

215 1 obstruere, etc.: these pres. infinitives show that his preparations were still going on.—pluteos vallo addere: to make a defence behind which the soldiers could stand while manning the wall.

215 4 ante ortum solis, etc.: Cæsar left his camp a little after midnight, marched twenty-five miles, gave his soldiers a rest of three hours, and marched back twenty-five miles, reaching camp before sunrise, having been away but little more than twenty-four hours; truly a remarkable display of energy.

215 9 Chap. 42. levem auditionem: see 97 6–9.—pro re comperta, as an ascertained fact.

215 11 proclinatam: "leaning forward" like a wall just ready to fall = perilous as it was (in itself).

215 14 fide data, giving pledges of security.

215 15 idem facere: i.e. to come out and put themselves in their power.

215 19 Chap. 43. omnis eorum milites: i.e. the contingent sent under Litavicus, ch. 38.

215 24 suorum: i.e. their soldiers.

215 25 capti, etc., tempted (as they had been) by the profit of the plunder.—ea res: i.e. responsibility for it.

216 2 nihil se gravius de civitate iudicare, that he thought none the worse of the state.

216 6 a, away from (the neighborhood of).
216 7 contraheret: i.e. join his forces with the four legions of Labienus. 209 26.

217 8 Chap. 44. dorsum, etc.: the hill (collis) was southwest of the town and northwest of Cæsar's smaller camp (see plan); while from it a narrow wooded ridge (dorsum), nearly level, gave easy access to the town at its western side. Most of the Gallic force had been transferred to that side from the eastern and southern defences. This left the Gallic camps and the part of the city opposite the Romans bare of defenders.

217 11 uno . . . occupato: see 211 11-21.

217 12 quin . . . viderentur: after aliter sentire (= dubitare); cf. 213 3.

217 13 hunc: i.e. alterum collem.

217 18 Chap. 45. impedimentorum (= iumentorum) beasts of burden.

217 19 stramenta, the pack-saddles, which would prevent the animal from being ridden conveniently.

217 20 collibus (loc. abl.) circumvehi: i.e. towards the westerly side. All these movements were designed to make the Gauls fear an attack from the west or northwest. Cæsar's real design was to make a sudden dash from the south and east and surprise their camps.

217 22 easdem regiones: i.e. in the vicinity of the hill which the Gauls were fortifying.

218 5 ut contineant, etc.: i.e. the design was not to hold the camp, but simply to sweep through it by a sudden and daring raid.

218 9 ab dextra parte: i.e. from the larger camp to the east.

218 11 Chap. 46. recta regione, in a straight line.

218 12 si . . . intercederet . . . aberat: cf. § 517. c and N.2 (308. c and n.2); B. 304. 3. a; G. 507. 3; H. 583 (511. 1. N.2); H-B. 581, 582. 3. a. N.1.

218 13 huc, to this amount.

218 14 in longitudinem ut . . . ferebat, lengthwise of the hill.

218 16 murum: traces of this wall are still found, at some distance down the slope, parallel with the town wall.

218 17 inferiore omni, etc.: i.e. the space below the six-foot wall to the bottom of the ascent, a distance of about half a mile, was vacant; an equal space above to the city wall was filled with the Gallic encampments.

218 18 castris: the separate camps of the several Gallic states, set close together, of which three (trinis) were taken.

218 19 ad munitionem: i.e. ad murum a medio colle.

218 20 trinis: § 137. b (95. b); B. 81. 4. b; G. 97. r.3; H. 164. 3 (174. 2. 3). H-B. 247. 1. a.

218 26 Chap. 47. legionis: with signa. Observe that Cæsar is found, as usual, with his favorite legion; cf. 36 21-25. This legion, it will
be remembered (217 25), was first stationed some distance away from the others. It seems to have returned and taken a prominent part in the assault.

218 27 reliquarum: i.e. those engaged in the assault just described.

219 3 retinebantur: conative; the officers tried to hold them back.

219 13 Avarici: see 206 3–5.

219 16 quem... constabat, who, it was certain, said that day in the presence of his soldiers. The subj. of constabat is quem... dixisse.

219 17 prius quisquam, any body before him.

219 21 Chap. 48. supra: see 217 26 ff.

219 23 oppidum... teneri: depends on nuntiis as a word of telling.

219 25 sub muro: i.e. below and outside of the city wall.

220 2 cursu: they had run about a mile up a steep ascent.

220 8 Chap. 49. sub infimo colle: at the foot of the hill on which was the smaller Roman camp (211 11–21), see Fig. 97 (Sextius, 1st position).—ab... hostium: i.e. on the Roman left; Cæsar, meanwhile, was posted considerably to the right (eastward).

220 10 hostes: translate as if the obj. of terreret. —quo... insequerentur: expresses the purpose of terreret.

220 11 progressus: it was rather a retreat than an advance; see plan, Fig. 97 (Leg. X, 2d position).

220 15 Chap. 50. latere aperto, the exposed flank of the Romans; i.e. the right flank.

220 16 manus distinendae causa: i.e. to make a diversion.

220 18 insigné pactum, the signal agreed upon. The Hædui had their Gallic arms and standards, so that the mistake was a natural one, especially at such a time of excitement.

220 23 excidere, to cut away; i.e. from within, to gain his escape.

221 9 Chap. 51. aequiore loco, on more level ground, farther back from the town; see plan, Fig. 97 (Leg. X, 3d position).

221 12 locum superiorem, higher ground, in the direction of the larger camp; see plan, Fig. 97 (2d position of Sextius). The retreat was made in good order, as is shown by what immediately follows.

221 18 Chap. 52. cupiditatem, eagerness for battle.

221 22 ad Avaricum: referring to the operations in that neighborhood described in ch. 19.

221 25 quanto opere... tanto opere: correlative.

222 9 Chap. 53. eadem, etc.: i.e. that the wisest course would be to join his forces with those of Labienus, in view of all the troubles that were threatening; cf. 216 4–8.

222 11 nihilo magis: Vercingetorix was far too wary and skilful to
put himself at such disadvantage. He knew that he was no match for Cæsar on level ground. A parallel might be drawn between the tactics of Vercingetorix and those of Fabius the Delayer against Hannibal.

222 12 secundo, favorable to the Romans. By this slight success and the refusal of Vercingetorix to meet him in the plain on even terms, Cæsar avoids the appearance of a compulsory retreat. Still, it is evident that Cæsar's operations against Gergovia were far from being as successful as he himself had hoped or wished. It was the only city that successfully defied his assault, and its victorious resistance must have been a great encouragement to the Gallic patriots.

222 18 CHAP. 54. Viridomaro, etc.: see 213 13-17. These young Hæduan nobles had decided to desert Cæsar, and so, as soon as they reached the frontier of their country, on the east side of the Allier, they invented an excuse for leaving him.

222 21 perfidiam . . . habebat: see note on coactum habebat, 13 4.

222 25 discedentibus (dat.), as they were setting out.

222 26 quos et quam humilis, in what a state (lit. whom) and how humbled; shortly before Cæsar's arrival in Gaul the Sequani with the Germans as their allies had conquered the Hædui and imposed heavy conditions on them. See Bk. i. ch. 31.

223 6 mandatis: this word implies that what he has just said to them is to be repeated to their countrymen at home.

223 8 CHAP. 55. Noviodunum: the modern Nevers, on the right bank of the Loire (Liger), just above its junction with the Allier (Elaver). The Noviodunum of ch. 12 is probably Sancerre.

223 14 civitatis: the Hæduan commonwealth. The status is described in the clause which follows, down to missos.

223 15 Bibracte: loc. abl.

223 19 tantum commodum: i.e. of taking the town, seizing the Roman stores, and especially of capturing the hostages, whose possession was all important to Cæsar for keeping the tribes in subjection.

223 23 deducendos: § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. N. 2); H-B. 612. iii.

223 24 cui: indef. pron. with usui.

224 2 in provinciam: Cæsar was now on the western or further bank of the Loire, which he would thus be obliged to follow up towards its source, thence crossing over to the province. The bracketed words may be translated.

224 4 nivibus: it was still spring, perhaps about May.

224 7 CHAP. 56. si esset, etc., in case (i.e. lest), he might have to risk a battle while the bridge-building was under way.
Notes: Cæsar.

224 8 eo: i.e. on the Loire. Cæsar felt that to effect a union with Labienus as soon as possible was vitally important.

224 9 ne . . . converteret: depending on impediebat.

224 10 ut non nemo, as many a one.

224 11 cum: correll. with tum.

224 13 Labieno, legionibus: datives following timebat. For the facts, see 209 ff. The situation was extremely critical, and it is not strange that many thought Cæsar would have to desert Labienus and seek safety for himself in the province. Most men would have done so, but Cæsar was a man apart, an extraordinary military genius.

224 14 admodum, etc.: these marches must have been extraordinary, to judge from the expression.

224 16 pro rei necessitate, considering the emergency, difficult and hazardous as it was.

224 18 disposito equitatu: i.e. just above the ford a line of cavalry was formed in the water, reaching across the river. By this barrier the violence of the current was checked. Another line also was stationed below the ford to catch any that were swept away.

224 23 Chap. 57. eo supplemento: see 186 3-5, 190 9-12.

224 26 Lutetiam: see 159 3 and note.

225 2 Aulerco: this tribe was the next westerly, south of the Seine (see map, Fig. 88).

225 4 is: i.e. Camulogenus.

225 5 perpetuam paludem: the marsh ground along the little river Essonne, which flows into the Seine on the south a little above Paris. Labienus was proceeding on the left or southerly bank of the Seine. See plan, Fig. 99.

226 1 Chap. 58. aggere, a mass of earth for a causeway.

226 4 Metiosedum (or Melodunum) Melun: here Labienus crosses to the north or right bank.

226 7 eo, aboard (= in eas).

226 11 secundo flumine, following the river-course down the right bank. Having boats or pontoons, he would easily cross the Marne just above Paris.

226 14 palude: a marshy ground south of the river.

226 20 Chap. 59. confirmabant, kept asserting.

226 21 qui refers to Bellovaci.—per se: i.e. without this example of the Haedui.

226 24 neque: connects intellegebat and cogitabat. The latter verb is here followed by two clauses of purpose. The infin. would be more usual.
227 1 altera, alteram: the Bellovaci were on the north of the Seine; Camulogenus (ch. 57) was on the south.—quae civitas: the defection of this tribe might well cause Labienus uneasiness. They were a nation of warriors and could put 100,000 men in the field. When the tribes of Belgic Gaul conspired against Cæsar, the Bellovaci, because of their importance, were placed at the head of the league; see 51 11–15.

227 4 praesidio: at Agedincum (Sens) on the other side of the Seine; see 224 23–26.

227 6 ab animi virtute: a truly Roman quality, of which, fortunately, Labienus had a good supply.

227 9 CHAP. 60. equitibus: not cavalrymen, but unattached officers of equestrian rank (tribuni militum, comites imperatoris, etc.) put in charge each of a single vessel.

227 15 adverso flumine: a feint, the real attack being made below.—imperat, gives orders (followed by the acc. and infin. instead of the usual ut-clause).

227 21 CHAP. 61. exercitus equitatusque: thought of as one body, hence with a sing. verb.

227 25 tumultuari: the magno tumultu of l. 15.

227 27 paulo infra: about four miles below.

228 2 Omit the bracketed words.

228 4 castrorum: the Roman camp.

228 6 naves: i.e. the lintris of 227 16, not the ships, for they had gone the other way.

228 92 CHAP. 62. ostenderunt: sc. tribuni.

228 27 neque potuerunt, but could not. Much of Cæsar's success was due to the excellence of his officers. In this case, for example, Labienus does not supinely wait for Cæsar to come and extricate him from his difficulties, but by a military exploit of the first rank rescues himself and goes to the help of his chief.

229 5 CHAP. 63. circummittuntur, etc.: these are the acts of the Haeduì.

229 7 quos Caesar, etc.: see 223 9, 22. — supplicio: i.e. by threats; cf. 188 22–28.

229 9 rationes communicet: not simply consult, but share the direction of affairs.

229 15 illi: i.e. the Remi (see Bk. ii. ch. 5; 154 3–5) and the Lingones.

229 20 requirunt = recall with regret.

229 21 summæ spei, of high ambition (213 13–20).

229 24 CHAP. 64. ipse: i.e. Vercingetorix.

229 25 huc: at Bibracte, the capital of the Haeduì.
230 2 factu: supine after perfacile; § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635. 1 (547); H-B. 619. 1.
230 3 aequo animo, without complaint. — modo ... corrumpant, only let them, etc.: a hortatory subjv. expressing a kind of proviso.
230 6 finitimi: see map, Fig. 2.
230 7 [ei] may be omitted.
230 9 Allobrogibus: these and the peoples mentioned in the next sentence were allies or subjects of Rome, and would look to Caesar for protection if attacked; see 231 5 ff. — altera ex parte: as the Roman frontier was bent into an irregular curve by the line of the Cévennes, the Gauls would strike the Province in two directions, the Hâdui from the north, the Ruteni, etc., from the west; see map, Fig. 2.
230 13 superiore bello: the war of eight years before, in which the Allobroges had been subdued by Pompitus (Bk. i. ch. 6).
230 16 CHAP. 65. cohortium: not legionary troops, but auxiliaries levied in the Province.
230 17 L. Caesare: a cousin of Julius, consul B.C. 64.
230 18 ad omnis, etc., were arrayed against the enemy in every quarter.
230 20 Donnotauro: a brother of Procillus (42 10); the Roman name (C. Valerius) is regularly taken in compliment to his Roman patronus (see also 17 9, 48 10-20).
230 21 muros, strongholds — not simply the walls of the oppida.
230 24 interclusis, etc.: from this we see how much Caesar was hampered by the plan of campaign that Vercingetorix employed against him.
230 27 equites: the German cavalry were far superior to the Gallic; see 193 23 ff. and note.
230 28 inter eos proeliarii: see 43 4 ff., 95 15-20.
230 29 equis: for a description of these, see 95 10-14.
231 1 [sed et]: these words should probably be omitted.
231 4 CHAP. 66. equites: see 229 25.
231 6 per ... finis: bearing from near Agedincum (where he had been joined by Labienus, ch. 62) toward the east, and so leaving the hostile Hâdui to the south. This move..ent, checked by the attack of Vercingetorix, explains how the crisis of the campaign came to be the siege and capture of Alesia (see map, Fig. 88).
231 13 parum profici, that little advantage was gained. — reversuros [esse]: i.e. Romanos.
231 15 adoriantur: for adoriamur in dir. disc., let us charge upon them. — si pedites, etc.: the attack was to be made on the baggage train, which was guarded by cavalry.
Vercingetorix knew Caesar's weakness in this arm, and did not suspect the German reinforcement. If the infantry stopped to assist the cavalry (suis) the march would be delayed.

231 16 magis futurum, is more likely.

231 18 dignitate, etc.: i.e. the dishonor of retreat with loss of baggage.

—nam de equitibus, etc.: i.e. even the Gauls whom he was addressing could not suppose that the Roman cavalry would wish an engagement.

231 19 quin . . . audeat follows ne . . . dubitare: i.e. even they themselves would admit that, etc.

231 20 id quo . . . animo, that they (i.e. the Gauls) may do so (i.e. attack the Romans) with greater courage.

231 21 pro castris, in front of the camp, by way of defiance, to support by a demonstration the attack of the cavalry.

231 23 confirmari oportere, that they ought to bind themselves.

232 1 Chap. 67. a primo agmine, at the front of the (Roman) line of march.

232 7 aciem converti: by a change of front, turning the line of march to a line of battle.

232 9 Germani: it is evident that the victory was due to them; cf. ch. 13.

232 10 flumen: the Vingeanne, and its tributary the Badin, about which many ornaments, weapons, etc., have been found.

232 15 Cotus, etc.: see 208 14-23, 209 12-19.

232 16 proximis comitiis: i.e. of the Hœdui for chief magistrate.

232 18 quo ducé, etc. (see Bk. i. ch. 31): this was seemingly another Eporedorix, not the rival of Viridomarus.

232 21 Chap. 68. Alesiam: this famous fortress (now called Alise Ste. Reine) was on the territory lying just north of the Hœduvian frontier. Its natural advantages — summed up in the succeeding chapters — are thus described:

"Alesia, like Gergovia, is on a hill sloping off all round, with steep and, in places, precipitous sides. It lies between two small rivers, both of which fall into the Brenne, and thence into the Seine. Into this peninsula, with the rivers on each side of him, Vercingetorix had thrown himself with 80,000 men. Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide tableland, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Ver-
cingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible." — *Froude's "Caesar."* See plan, Fig. 103.

233 2 **Chap. 69.** loco: in app. with *colle*; cf. § 282. d (184. c); B. 169. 4; G. 411. 3; H. 393. 7 (363. 4. 2); H-B. 319. i.

233 7 **sub muro,* etc.*: this sentence is an excellent example, at the same time, both of the natural precedence of the relative in Latin and of the freedom of all real language from grammatical trammels. The student should first translate it literally thus: *Under the wall, which side of the hill (i.e. the side which) faced the east, all this space the forces of the Gauls had filled, and had carried along a ditch,* etc. The meaning of this is obvious, but it is not at all in accordance with our English idiom. Indeed, it is not strictly *grammatical* in any language. After the student has seen what it means, he should try to put it into some form that is allowable in English idiom, say: *Under the wall, the side . . . , all this space the forces . . . , and had made there,* etc.

233 10 **munitionis:** Caesar constructed a line of *contravallation*; i.e. a series of works entirely surrounding the town, so as to resist a sortie.

233 11 **milia:** acc. of extent; *tenebat* having here the force of *pertinebat.* — *castra,* etc.: in the remains of these works traces have been found of four infantry and four cavalry camps (see plan, Fig. 102).

233 13 **stationes,* etc.*: in the daytime a mere picket-guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (*excubitoribus*) on their walls.

233 18 **Chap. 70.** supra: i.e. l. 4.

233 19 **Germanos:** cf. 232 9 and note.

233 20 **pro castris:** these were on the high ground south of the city (see plan, Fig. 102); *castris* is plural, = *camps.*

233 23 **angustioribus,** *too narrow,* either from unskilful construction or more easily to prevent the enemy's entrance. The gates referred to were in the stone wall (*maceria*); see plan.

233 24 **acrius,* with all the more vigor.*

234 1 **veniri . . . existimantes,* thinking that an immediate attack is to be made upon them.

234 4 **portas,* town gates;** these were closed, lest those who manned the exterior defences (the *fossa* and *maceria*) should rush into the town in a panic.

234 7 **Chap. 71.** *perficientur:* for mood, cf. 57 20 and note.

234 11 **suæ,* se:* i.e. Vercingetorix. — *neu,* and *not,* the regular way
of continuing a negative purpose. We say 'and not'; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of neu.

234 14 ratione inita, having made a calculation.

234 17 opus: i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.

234 21 copias omnis: not those that held the fortification east of the town (233 7-10), but the outlying pickets on all the other sides.

234 26 Chap. 72. pedum viginti: i.e. in breadth.

234 27 directis, vertical, the bottom (solum) being as broad as the top. The ditch was usually dug with sloping sides; the object here was (as it was probably shallow) to make it harder to cross. This was the interior line of defence against the town.—solum: notice the quantity of the first syllable.

235 2 [id] may be omitted.—hoc consilio, with this design, followed by the app. clauses of purpose, ne...possent.

235 3 quoniam...ne, that, since, etc., not, etc.—esson complexus and ingeretur are subjv. because integral parts of his purpose, ne...possent.

235 4 nec = et non, as usual.—totum opus, the entire work, eleven miles in extent, according to 233 11.

235 6 operti: take with destinatos.

235 8 eadem altitudine, of equal depth.—quarum interiorum: i.e. the one nearer the town.—campestribus...locis: loc. abl. describing the situation.

235 10 aggerem: here not the technical approach used in a siege, but a bank of earth serving as a rampart, on top of which was placed the vallum of stakes, twelve feet in height.

235 11 loricam, pinnas: see Bk. v. ch. 40. These were to raise higher the defence of the vallum.—cervis: stumps with roots, or trunks with branches, projecting like stags' horns.—ad commissuras, at the joining, i.e. the place where these plutei were fixed in the agger, which would be at their lowest part.

235 12 pluteorum: the lorica was really a series of plutei, arranged side by side on a wall and bound together.

235 13 turris: if these were ten feet wide at the base, there must have been at least 400.—quae...distarent: not which were distant (this would be indic.), but so placed as to be, etc., hence subjv.

235 15 Chap. 73. erat: with necesse; its subj. is the infinitives.—materiari: i.e. to get timber; lignari would mean to get firewood.

235 16 copiis: Caesar had about 50,000 men.

235 20 quo, in order that.

235 21 truncis arborum, etc.: trunks of trees or very stiff boughs
were cut down; then the boughs were trimmed and sharpened at the ends, and then planted in five rows in trenches each five feet deep (quinos pedes), and perhaps one and a half feet wide.

235 24 **huc . . . eminebant**, those boughs being sunk in these (huc, i.e. the trenches) and being securely fastened at the bottom so that they could not be torn up, projected from the ground only with their branches.

235 25 **quini . . . ordines**; these five rows of chevaux-de-frise, intertwined so as to be continuous, covered a space perhaps twenty-five feet wide, so that, even with the help of a pole, an enemy could not easily leap over them.

235 26 **quo qui intraverant**, whoever entered within them; protasis of a past general condition.

235 27 **cippos**; i.e. boundary-stones, so called jestingly by the troops; see Fig. 103.

235 29 **scrobes**, little pits, with sloping sides, three feet deep, dug in eight rows, arranged, as we should say, in diamond-pattern, or as trees were planted in an orchard (in quincuncem), so that each should be equally distant from the six adjacent. A stout, sharp stake was set in each, packed with a foot depth of earth, its point projecting four inches, the pit being then loosely filled with twigs and brush. This funnel-shaped trap for man or beast the soldiers called a "lily-cup" (liliufn); see Fig. 131. — ** paulatim ... fastigio**, sloping gradually towards the bottom.

235 30 **teretes**, round, like a cylinder, while the word rotundus means round like a ball. — **huc, in these**; cf. same word in l. 24.

235 31 **prauesti**: to harden the point.

236 2 **singuli . . . exculcabantur**, a foot of each [stake] was packed down with earth at the bottom.

236 7 **taleae**; blocks of wood or stakes with iron barbed points fixed in them. Several of these hooks have been found in excavations on this site; see Fig. 132. — **totae, their whole length**, so that only the hooks projected.

236 10 **Chap. 74. regiones . . . aequissimas**: the line of circumvallation (see plan, Fig. 102) was parallel with the works just described, and distant from it about 700 feet. It was protected by a single ditch.

236 11 **xiv milia**: of course the works of circumvallation included all the Roman camps, and must have had a greater circuit than the inner line of contravallation (see 233 11).
VII. 73-77.] War of Vercingetorix. 443

236 12 diversas, facing the other way.
236 14 Omit the bracketed words.
236 16 habere . . . convectum: see note on compertum habere, Bk. i. ch. 44.
236 19 Chap. 75. omnis: subj. of convocandos [esse].
236 24 [Blannovis]: this name is doubtful.
236 25 milia: dir. obj. of imperant, the datives being the indir. obj. The same construction is continued in the next sentences, where imperant is to be supplied.
237 4 The bracketed words may be omitted.
237 6 quo in numero: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 7.
237 12 pro, in consideration of.
237 15 civitatem: i.e. the Atrebates. — immunem, free from tribute.
237 16 attribuerat, had assigned to him as a prince.
237 19 moveretur: i.e. Gallia.
237 23 Viridomaro et Eporedorigi: these Hæduan nobles had been among Cæsar’s most faithful friends; see chs. 38, 39, 40, 54.
237 24 Vercassivellauno: in this word, as in Vercingetorix, the prefix Ver is probably a title, like the modern “Sir” or “Lord.”
237 25 his: indir. obj. of attribuuntur.
237 29 ancipiti, with double front, having to be fought behind and before.
237 30 cum . . . foris, etc., [in a case] where they would fight in a sally from the town, and on the outside, etc.
238 1 Chap. 77. at: to mark the change of scene.
238 7 crudelitatem: perhaps so in a Gaul, but in a Roman it would be constantiam.
238 10 deditionis: a mere “laying down of arms.”
238 12 cum . . . est, I have to do with those.
238 14 animi est, etc.: the infin. clause following is in app. with ista. From the English idiom we should expect istud, but in Latin such pronouns agree with the predicate.
238 16 offerant, ferant: subjv. of characteristic.
238 17 atque, and yet. — probarem . . . viderem: apodosis and protasis in a contrary-to-fact supposition; § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.
238 18 tantum potest: see Vocab. — dignitas: i.e. of those who advocate making a sally.
238 19 vitae nostrae: depending on iacturam, to be supplied according to the Latin idiom.
Cæsar.

238  21  quid animi, *what heart.*
238  22  propinquis, consanguineis: dat. of poss. after fore.
238  27  prosterne, subicere: connected by nec with exspoliare.
239   2  animi causa, *for the pleasure of it.*— illorum: the Gauls; *his:* the Romans. — exarceri, *are toiling.*
239  4  testibus, *as witnesses,* pred. app.
239  6  consili: pred. gen.— facere: sc. meum consilium est, from the preceding.
239  7  Cimbrorum: see note on 7 1. They did great damage in laying waste Gaul and Spain before they turned to Italy.
239 12  pulcherrimum: in pred. agreement with the two preceding infinitives.— quid, etc., *what was there in that war like this?*
239 17  quos: the antecedent is horum.
239 21  securibus: *the lictor's axes,* the sign not simply of military rule, but of bloody execution (as a servile insurrection would be revenged).
239 27  Chap. 78. illo: observe the emphasis.— potius, with quam. — utendum [esse]: impers., governing the abl.; § 500. 3 (294. c. N.); B. 337. 7. b. 1; G. 427. N. 4; H. 623. 1 (544. N. 5); H-B. 600. 3. a.
240  4  prohibebat : one of the cruel necessities of war. The wretched creatures must have perished miserably between the city walls and the Roman lines.
240  7  Chap. 79. colle: this hill is southwest from Alesia, beyond the Brenne; see plan, Fig. 102.
240 10  demonstravimus: see 233 4.
240 13  concurrunt: i.e. the Gauls in Alesia.
240 16  fossam: see 234 26 ff., and plan, Fig. 102.
240 23  Chap. So. Galli, etc.: the Gauls here adopt the German cavalry tactics; see Bk. 1. ch. 26.
240 26  complures: i.e. of the Roman cavalry.
241  5  neque... ac, etc. (perhaps a misreading for neque... nec), and because neither a brave nor a cowardly action, etc.
241  8  Germani: for the fourth time in this campaign the Germans decide the day for Cæsar; cf. 232 9 and note.
241 12  at: what is its force here? Cf. 240 4, 238 1, and note.
242  3  Chap. 81. atque, and even.
242  4  harpagonum: iron hooks fastened to poles, for tearing down the defences; see Fig. 126.
242  5  campestris munitiones: *the works in the plain,* i.e. the line of circumvallation in the Plain of the Laumes, southwest from Alesia; see plan, Fig. 102.
VII. 77-86.]

War of Vercingetorix. 445

242 6 qua = ut ea: introducing a clause of purpose.
242 8 cratis, hurdles of woven twigs, to cover the trenches.
242 13 fundis librilibus: heavy stones fastened to a thong, by which they were hurled with great force.
242 14 glandibus: leaden bullets.
242 18 his auxilio: two datives.
242 19 deductos: sc. milites. The thought is that men were withdrawn from the more distant redoubts to defend those that were in greatest danger.

242 23 pilis muralibus: large darts perhaps hurled by the engines.
242 26 superioribus: on the higher ground to the north and south (see next chapter).
242 29 fossas: this word should probably be fossam. It seems to refer to the ditch twenty feet wide; see 234 26 ff. and plan. — explet: coordinate with proferunt.

243 6 Chap. 83. collis: see plan; the camp of these two legions was on the southern slope of Mont Rea.
243 13 quoque pacto, and in what manner.
243 15 Vercassivellaunum: see 237 23-25.
243 29 Chap. 84. multum valet, tends greatly.

244 1 quod ... constare: as the attack is both from without and within, the Romans in their fortifications have enemies both in front and in the rear, and the shouting of those in their rear tends to disconcert them. As they face the enemy they feel that their safety depends on the valor of those who are defending their rear.

244 4 Chap. 85. idoneum locum: i.e. where he can see everything.
244 5 utrisque, etc., the thought is present to the minds of both parties that this is the time of all others best suited for the greatest exertion.
244 8 si rem obtinuerint, if they (shall) gain the day.
244 11 iniquum ... fastigium, the unfavorable downward slope of the ground (see 243 8). The Romans always aimed to have their camp where no higher ground could command it.

244 13 agger: i.e. earth, stones, or anything else handy.
244 15 occultaverant: i.e. the stimuli, scrobes, etc., described in ch. 73.
244 17 Chap. 86. Labienum: he was encamped on the heights of Bussy. See plan.

244 19 deductis ... pugnet, to draw off his cohorts and make a sally.
244 22 interiores: i.e. the Gauls within the town.
244 23 loca praerupta: probably the Heights of Flavigny.
244 24 [ex]: may be omitted.
244 26 vallum ac loricam: see 235 10 ff.
245 1 Chap. 87. integros: i.e. troops that had not yet been engaged. The cohorts of Brutus and Fabius were probably of those that had been defending the works in the plain.
245 2 eo, etc.: i.e. to the works on Mont Rea.
245 10 Chap. 88. ex colore: the purple or scarlet paludamentum. The bracketed words may be omitted.
245 12 de locis superioribus, from the high ground occupied by the Gauls.
245 13 declivia, the downward slopes.—cernebantur, were in plain sight.
245 14 excipit clamor: i.e. the shout of the combatants is taken up and re-echoed all along the lines. Notice the vividness and power of the following description, the short quick sentences, the absence of connectives, and the rapidity of the whole.
245 16 equitatus: who had been sent for that purpose as told above.
245 22 conspicati: agrees with the subj. of reducunt; sc. Galli.
245 24 quod: lit. as to which, referring to the preceding sentence; § 397. a (240. b); B. 185. 2; G. 610. r.²; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); cf. H-B. 388. a. n.; translate and.
245 25 crebris subsidis, constant service in relief parties.
246 8 Chap. 89. Vercingetorix deditur: the fate reserved for this gallant and ill-fated chieftain was to be kept for six years in chains, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. Plutarch in his "Life of Cæsar" describes the surrender as follows: "Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, and adorning his horse, came out of the gate, and rode round Cæsar as he sat, then dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and remained sitting quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."
246 9 si [to try], whether, indir. quest.
246 10 capita singula, one apiece.
246 17 Chap. 90. huic: i.e. Labienus.
246 25 Bibracte: loc. abl.
246 26 Cf. the close of Bks. ii and iv.

From 1862 to 1865 careful excavations were made under direction of the emperor Napoleon III on the site of the works at Alesia. The discoveries that resulted were most interesting. There were found the remains of Cæsar's four infantry camps and of his four cavalry camps. Of the twenty-three redoubts, remains of only five could be traced. It is likely that the rest were mostly of wood, so that they had crumbled entirely away.
Close of the Campaign.

The trench twenty feet wide remains in its entirety. Of the pits (scrobæs) in which the sharp stakes were buried, more than fifty were discovered. They are all three feet deep, two feet wide at the top, and one foot wide at the bottom. Of course they do not retain the original dimensions. In the trenches were found a great number of coins, Roman and Gallic, swords, daggers, spear-heads, and the like. The result of these researches was a very striking corroboration of Cæsar's narrative.

Close of the Campaign.—If Cæsar was merciless in war, he was wise and humane in victory. Even in the moment of the fall of Alesia, he uses his prisoners to make terms with the more important states (si per eos, etc.). His aim was "not to enslave the Gauls, but to incorporate them in the Empire; to extend the privileges of Roman citizens among them, and among all the undegenerate races of the European provinces. He punished no one. He was gracious and considerate to all, and he so impressed the central tribes by his judgment and his moderation that they served him faithfully in all his coming troubles, and never more, even in the severest temptation, made an effort to recover their independence."

Cæsar's own narrative closes with the great and decisive victory at Alesia. The short remainder of the story is told by his faithful officer and friend, Hirtius Pansa, in the Eighth Book. A rising of the Carnutes and Bituriges in the west, undeterred by the fate of Avaricum, was crushed by a rapid winter march across the Loire. The Remi in the north, who alone of the Gauls had been steadily true to Rome, were attacked by the Belovaci under Commius, but the latter were crushed in a single battle, and Commius fled to Germany. The final rally of the patriot party was made at the stronghold of Uxelloodunum, on a branch of the Garonne, in the southwest; but this was also reduced by a siege of extreme difficulty, and the one act of vindictive barbarity which stains Cæsar's record was inflicted after its fall by cutting off the hands of the desperate defenders who had held out to the last for the independence of Gaul. Cæsar then "invited the chiefs of all the tribes to come to him. He spoke to them of the future which lay open to them as members of a splendid imperial state. He gave them magnificent presents. He laid no impositions either on the leaders or their people; and they went to their homes personally devoted to their conqueror, contented with their condition, and resolved to maintain the peace which was now established,—a unique experience in political history."
GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

N.B. — These lists are not intended to be exhaustive, and pupils may do well to add to them as they increase their vocabularies.

1
acer, sharp, violent.
acriter, violently.
acerbos, bitter, cruel.
acerbis, bitterly.
acerbos ferre, take hard.
acerbetas, bitterness, suffering.
acervus, heap.
acies, sharp edge, line.
[acus, needle.]
acuo, sharpen.
acutus, sharp.

2
alacer, lively.
alacriter, promptly.
alacritias, readiness.

3
aedes, fireplace, house.
aedificium, building.
aedifico, build.
aestas, heat.
aestivus, hot.
aestus (boiling), tide.
aestuarium, tideway.

4
aequus, even, level.
iniquus, uneven, unfavorable.
iniquitas, unfavorableness.
aequitas, fairness.
aequalis, equal.
aequaliter, evenly.
aequinoctium, equinox.
aequo, equalize.
adaequo, make equal.

5
ago, drive.
actuarius, fast sailing.
agmen, line of march.
ager, field.
cogo, compel.
cogito, think.
adigo, force.
agito, pursue.
examino, weigh.

6
alo, foster.
alis, grown high.
altitudo, height.

7
alius, other.
alienus, of another.
alieno, alienate.
alias, elsewhere.
aliter, otherwise.
aliao, elsewhither.
Groups of Related Words.

8  animus (breath), soul, mind.
    anima, breath.
    animal, animal.
    exanimis, out of breath.

9  ante, before.
    antea, before.
    antiquus, ancient.
    antiquitus, anciently.

10 ars, art.
    articulus, joint.
    arma, arms.
    armo, equip.
    armamentum, rigging.
    armatura, equipment.

11 arx, citadel.
    arceo, keep off.
    co-erceo, restrain.
    exerco, exercise.
    exercitus, training, army.
    exercitatio, exercise.

12 augeo, increase.
    auctor, responsible party.
    auctoritas, influence.
    autumnus, harvest season.
    auxilium, help.
    auxiliaris, helping.
    auxilior, assist.

13 cado, fall.
    casus, fall, chance.
    cadaver, body.
    caedo, fell.
    caedes, murder.

accido, befall.
accido, cut into.
concido, fall down.
concido, cut down.
incido, happen.
incido, cut into.
occido, fall.
occasio, occasion.

14 capio, take.
captus, capacity.
captivus, captive.
accipio, receive.
decipio, deceive.
excipio, take up.
excepto, catch up.

15 caput, head.
capillus, hair.
aniceps, double-headed.
praeiceps, head-foremost.

16 cerno, separate, distinguish.
certus, fixed, certain.
crimen, charge.
certe, surely.
[certo, decide by contest.]
certamen, contest.
concerto, contend.
decerno, decide.
decerto, decide by contest.
decretum, decision, decre.
discerno, decide.
discrimen, decision.

17 circum, around.
circa, circiter, about.
circinus, compasses.
circuitus, circuit.
Groups of Related Words.

18
colo, till.
cultus, cultivation.
cultura, cultivation, culture.
[colonus, husbandman.]
colonia, colony.
incolo, inhabit.
incola, inhabitant.

19
conscius, conscious.
[consciens, being conscious.]
conscientia, conscience.
conciscio, resolve.
inscius, not knowing.
inisciens, unknowing.

20
consto, be established (stand firm).
constans, firm.
constanter, firmly.
constantia, firmness.
consistio, take a stand.
constituo, establish.

21
consul, consul.
consulatus, consulship.
consulo, consult.
consilium, plan.
consultum, decree.
consulto, by determination, designedly.
consulto, consult.

22
cresco, grow.
creber, thick.
crebro, frequently.
creo, make to grow, create.
[Ceres, goddess of growth.]

23
curro, run.
currus, chariot.
Groups of Related Words.

27
dies, day.
diu, long, all day.
interdiu, by day.
diutinus, long continued.
diurnus, by day, daily.
diuturnus, long.
diuturnitas, length of time.
biduum, two days.
triduum, three days.

dies, day.
cotidie, every day.
cotidianus, daily.
hodie, to-day.
pridie, the day before.
postero die, the next day.
postridie, the day after.
[perendie, day after to-morrow.]
perendinus (adjective).

do, give.
dedo, give over.
deditus, devotion.
deditio, surrender.
dediticius, surrendered.
reddo, give back.
trado, hand over.
donum, gift.
don, present.

duo, two.
bis, twice.
bini, two a piece.
bellum, for duellum, war.
dubius, doubtful.
dubium, doubt.
dubito, doubt.
dubitatio, doubt.
duplex, double.
duplico, double.

31
emo (take), buy.
eximius, exceptional.
exemplum, specimen.

32
equus, horse.
eques, horseman.
equester, of cavalry.
equitatus, cavalry.
[equito], ride.
adequo, ride up.
perequo, ride over.

33
ex, out.
exter, outer.
extra, outside.
extremus, last.

34
facio, make, do.
beneficus, well doing, beneficent.
facilis, easy (to do).
facultas, facility.
difficilis, difficult.
difficultas, difficulty.
difficultuer, with difficulty.
factio, employment, party.
facies, face (the 'make').
factum, deed.
facinus, deed (usually evil).
artifex, artist.
conficio, make up.
perficio, accomplish.

35
fides, faith.
fidelis, faithful.
perfidus, faithless.
perfidia, perfidy.
Groups of Related Words.

40
fiducia, confidence.
foedus, treaty.
infidelis, unfaithful.
confido, trust.

36
finis, bound, boundary.
fines, country.
finio, set bounds.
finitimus, neighboring.
adfinis, connection.
adfinitas, connection (by marriage).
confinis, adjacent.
confinium, neighborhood.
definio, set limits, fix.

37
fors, chance.
fortuito, accidentally.
fortuna, fortune.
fortunatus, fortunate.
fruer, enjoy.
fructus, enjoyment.
fructuosus, fruitful.
fruges, grain.
frumentum, grain.
frumentor, forage.
frumentatio, foraging.
frumentarius, of grain.

39
fugio, fly.
fuga, flight.
fugo, put to flight.
fugitivus, a runaway.
effugio, escape.
perfuga, refugee.
perfugio, escape to.
perfugium, refuge.
profugio, flee forth.
refugio, run away.

41
fors, chance.
fortuito, accidentally.
fortuna, fortune.
fortunatus, fortunate.
fruer, enjoy.
fructus, enjoyment.
fructuosus, fruitful.
fruges, grain.
frumentum, grain.
frumentor, forage.
frumentatio, foraging.
frumentarius, of grain.

42
is, this.
item, likewise.
ita, so.
itaque, therefore.
iterum, again.
idem, the same.
ideo, therefore.
ipse, himself.
 eo, thither.
ea, that way.

43
iubeo, order.
iussu, by order.
iussu, without orders.

44
ius, right.
 iudex, judge.
iudicium, judgment.
iudico, judge.
 iudiudo, assign.
de iudico, decide (between).
inuria, wrong.
iustus, just.
iustitia, justice.
iuro, swear.
Groups of Related Words.

coniuro, conspire.
coniuratio, conspiracy.

45
[lego, choose.]
legio, levy, legion.
delectus, levy.
legionarius, soldier.
lex, law.
[lego, assign by law.]
legatus; lieutenant.
legatio, embassy.
deligo, select.
diligo, love.
intellego, understand.

46
[libet], it pleases.
libenter, willingly.
liber, free.
liberi, children.
libertas, freedom.
liberalis, generous.
liberaliter, generously.
liberalitas, generosity.
lbero, set free.

47
mane, in the morning.
maturus, early, ripe.
mature, early.
maturus, make haste.
maturesco, ripen.

48
memini, remember.
mens, mind.
[de mens], mad.
dementia, madness.
mentio, mention.
[memor], mindful.
memoria, memory.
moneo, remind.

reminiscor, remember.
commemoror, mention.

49
moveo, move.
motus, motion.
mobilis, mobile.
mobiliter, easily.
mobilitas, mobility.
momentum, means of motion
commuto, change.

50
nascor, be born.
natus, birth.
natalis, of birth.
nativus, native.
natura, nature.
natio, race.

51
navis, ship.
navicula, boat.
navalis, naval.
nauta, sailor.
nauticus, of a sailor.
navigo, sail.
navigium, vessel.
navigatio, voyage.

52
nosco, learn.
novi, be acquainted with.
notus, known.
notitia, acquaintance.
ignotus, unknown.
nobilis, famous.
ignobilis, ignoble.
nobilitas, nobility.
nomen, name.
nomino, name.
nominatim, by name.
ignominia, disgrace.
Groups of Related Words.

cognosco, investigate.
ignosco, pardon.

53
nuntius, messenger, news.
nuntio, announce.
denuntio, warn.
enuntio, report.
renuntio, bring back word.
pronuntio, make known.

54
obses, hostage.
obsideo, blockade.
obsidio, blockade.
obsessio, blockade.

55
[Ops], goddess of abundance.
opes, resources.
copia, abundance.
copiae, resources.
copiosus, well supplied.
inops, poor.
inopia, want.

56
[paciscor, agree.]
pango, join.
pactum, agreement.
pax, peace.
paco, pacify.
pacatus, subject.

57
pario, acquire.
parens, parent.
parento, sacrifice to ancestors.

58
ex-perior, try.
peritus, experienced.
periculum, danger (trial).
periculosus, dangerous.
pericilitor, be in peril.
aperio, open.
reperio, find.

59
paro, prepare.
impero, order.
imperium, power.
pareo, be on hand, obey.

60
parum, too little.
parvus, small.
parvulus, very small.
apucus, few.
apacitas, small number.
apulus, small.
apulatim, little by little.
apulum, a little.
apululum, a very little.
apulo, a little.
apulisper, a little while.

61
[pasco, feed.]
pabulum, forage.
pabulor, forage.
pabulatio, foraging.
pabulator, forager.
pater, father.
patrius, belonging to a father.
patronus, patron, protector.
patruus, uncle (on the father's side).

62
pes, foot.
pedes, footman (man on foot).
peditatus, infantry.
pedeater, of men on foot.
pedalis, a foot long, etc.
impedio, entangle.
impedimentum, hindrance.
impeditus, hampered.
expedio, disentangle.
expeditus, unincumbered.
exeditio, expedition.

pleo, fill.
compleo, fill up.
expleo, fill out.
plenus, full.
plene, fully.
plerique, most of.
plerumque, for the most part.
completus, filled up.
expletus, filled out.
plus, more.
plurimus, most.
complures, very many.
also
plebs, the populace.
populus, people.
publicus, of the people.
publice, publicly.
publico, confiscate.

porta, gate.
porto, carry.
adporto, bring in.
comporto, bring together.
deporto, carry away.
exporto, carry off.
reporto, bring back.
supporto, bring up.
transporto, carry over.
portus, harbor.
portorium, customs.

[putus], clean.
puto, clean up, reckon, think.
[purus, clean.]

impugno, clear, excuse.
compto, reckon.
disputo, discuss.
disputatio, discussion.

pro, before.
probus, good.
improbus, bad.
prope, near.
propinquus, neighboring.
propinquitas, nearness.
protinus, straight away, right away.
propter, near by, on account of.
propterea, for this reason.

prae, in front.
praeustus, burnt at the end.
praeter, along side, beside.
praeterea, besides.
praeterita, bygones.
prior, before.
primus, first.
pridie, the day before.

rego, direct, rule.
rectus, straight.
regio, direction.
regnum, kingdom.
regno, reign.
rex, king.
regius, royal.
[regula, rule.]
dirigo, direct.
directus, straight.
directe, straight.
pergo, keep on.

sancio, bind.
sacer, sanctus, sacred.
Groups of Related Words.

sacerdos, priest.
sacramentum, oath.
sacrificium, sacrifice.

70
sec, cut.
sectio, a cutting, a lot.
sectura, mine.
securis, axe.

71
sequor, follow.
secundus, second.
secus, otherwise.
secius, less.
sector, pursue.
socius, companion.
societas, society.

72
[sero, bind.]
servus, bondman.
ervio, be a slave.
erv, guard.
conservo, preserve.
ervilis, servile.
ervitus, slavery.
sermo, speech (connected discourse).
presasertim, especially (at the head of the row).

73
similis, like.
simul, at the same time.
simultas, quarrel.
simulo, pretend.
dissimulo, pretend not.
simulatio, pretence.
similitudo, likeness.
simulacrum, image.

74
species, appearance.
conspicio, behold.
conspicuo, sight.
conspicor, espy.
adspectus, view.
specto, gaze at.
exspecto, expect.
speculor, watch.
speculator, spy.

75
sto, stand.
statio, station.
statim, forthwith.
status, position.
statuo, set up.
constituo, establish.
stabilis, stable.
stabilitas, steadiness.
stabilio, make firm.

76
sub, under, up.
superus, above.
super, over.
superior, superior.
supero, overtop.
supra, over.
summus, \{highest.
supremus, \}
summa, total.
superbus, proud.
superbe, arrogantly.

77
tam, so.
tamen, nevertheless.
tametsi, although.
tandem, at last.
tantus, so great.
tantulus, so little.
tantum, \} only (so much and tantummodo, \} no more).

78				
tango, touch.
contingo, touch, happen.
Groups of Related Words.

contagio, contact.
contaminus, stain.
integer, untouched, whole.
redintegro, renew.

79
tempus, time.
tempestas, weather.
tempero, control.
temperantia, self-control.

80
teneo, hold.
tener, tender.
tenuis, thin.
tenuitas, scantiness.
tenuiter, scantily.
contineo, hold together.
continens, continuous (a continent).
continenter, without stopping.
continentia, self-control.
continuus, continuous.
continuo, forthwith.
continuo, continue.
continuatio, continuance.

also
tendo, stretch.
tento, try.
contendo, contend.
contentio, contest.
intendo, strain.
ostendo, show.
ostentatio, ostentation.

82
utor, use.
utilis, useful.
utilitas, advantage.
usus, use.
usitor, use.
usitatus, customary.

83
vero, turn.
versus, towards.
versus, verse.
universus, all together.
verso, deal with.
versor, engage in.
averto, turn aside.
adverto, turn to.
adversus, turned towards, opposed
adversarius, opponent.
animadverto, attend to.
converto, turn about.
revertus, turn back.
rursus, back, again.
transversus, across.

84
vetus, old.
veteranus, veteran.
inveterasco, grow old in.

85
vir, man.
virgo, maiden.
virtus, manliness.
viritim, man by man.

86
volo, wish.
volutas, will.
voluntarius, volunteer.
voltus, countenance.
voluptas, pleasure.
malo, wish more.
nolo, not wish, wish not.
ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES.

KEY TO DIACRITICAL MARKS.

ä as in fate    è as in mete    ì as in it    ã as in unite
å " senate    é " event    ò " old    ŋ " üp
ä " fat    è " mett    ô " obey    ŋ " fur
ä " arm    è " her    õ " nôt    ŋ " rule
ã " all    ó " cork    ŋ " pull
ä " ask    î " ice    ų " baby
a " what    î " idea    ŋ " üse    ý " babü
c as in call    g as in go    qu as in quit
ç " city    ġ " cage    ç " his
eh " school    ŋ " ink

All other unmarked consonants have their usual English sounds. Silent letters are italicized. Primary accents are heavy, secondary accents light.

Article 2
Pronunciation of Proper Names.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bat'a</td>
<td>Bα'tα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Běl'gaē</td>
<td>Běl'gaē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Běl'gi ūm</td>
<td>Běl'gi ūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Běl lŏv'ā či</td>
<td>Běl lŏv'ā či</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi brăc'ťē</td>
<td>Bi brăc'ťē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi' brăx</td>
<td>Bi' brăx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bī'rō či</td>
<td>Bī'rō či</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bī' zv'ā</td>
<td>Bī' zv'ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bō'tă</td>
<td>Bō'tă</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bō'ți</td>
<td>Bō'ți</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brăn'nō vĕte'şĕ</td>
<td>Brăn'nō vĕte'şĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brăn nō'vī</td>
<td>Brăn nō'vī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brăt'ū spănut'ī ŭm</td>
<td>Brăt'ū spănut'ī ŭm <strong>(sh)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brī tăn'ni</td>
<td>Brī tăn'ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brītan'nū</td>
<td>Brītan'nū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bry'tūs</td>
<td>Bry'tūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căb'īl lömnūn</td>
<td>Căb'īl lömnūn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Că bŭr'rūs</td>
<td>Că bŭr'rūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Că dūr'cĭ</td>
<td>Că dūr'cĭ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca'ē rō'sî</td>
<td>Ca'ē rō'sî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca'ē'sar</td>
<td>Ca'ē'sar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căltĕ tĕs</td>
<td>Căltĕ tĕs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căltē tī</td>
<td>Căltē tī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căm’ă lŏg’lĕ nŭs</td>
<td>Căm’ă lŏg’lĕ nŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căn’ăn’ū ŭs</td>
<td>Căn’ăn’ū ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căn’tă brī</td>
<td>Căn’tă brī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căn’tă ŭm</td>
<td>Căn’tă ŭm <strong>(sh)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cărnă tĕs</td>
<td>Cărnă tĕs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căr vīl’ī ŭs</td>
<td>Căr vīl’ī ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căs’si</td>
<td>Căs’si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căs’si ŭs</td>
<td>Căs’si ŭs <strong>(sh)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căs’si vēl lău’tūnŭs</td>
<td>Căs’si vēl lău’tūnŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căs’tăcăs</td>
<td>Căs’tăcăs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căt’a măn’ă lŏt’ătĕs</td>
<td>Căt’a măn’ă lŏt’ătĕs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Căt’ă răg’gĕs</td>
<td>Căt’ă răg’gĕs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăt’a vŏl’cūs</td>
<td>Ćăt’a vŏl’cūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
<td>Ćăv’a rĭl’ŭs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
English Pronunciation of Proper Names.

Hād’ūí
Hā’ry’dḕs
Hēl’vē’tī`
(śh)
Hēl’vī’
Hī’bē’tnī’ā
Hī’s pā’nī’ā

Lē’tcī’ūs
(śh)
Lī’lý’yī cūn
In dū’tī’ō mā’trūs
(śh)
Ī’tū ús
(śh)
Ī’nī’ūs
(ī)
Īnpī’tēr
(ī)
Īntrā
(ī)

Lā’bē’trī’ūs
Lā’hī’cūns
Lā’t’ō brī’ghī
Lē’m’ō vī’cēṣ
Lē’ pō’nī’tī’ī
(śh)

Leũ’cī
Lēvī’cī
Lē’ex ̲ō’vi’ī
Lv’ger
Līn’gō nē’s
Lī’scūs
Lī’tā vī’cūs
Lū’cā’hī’ūs
Lū’tcī’ūs
(śh)
Lūc tē’trī’ūs
Lū ̲gō’tō’ō’rī’x
Lū ̲tē’ttī’ā
(śh)

Mā’g’ē tō’b’rī’gā
Mān’dū’bī’ī
Mān’dū ̲brā’cī’ūs
(śh)

Mā’lī’ū’ūs
Mā’rē’cō’ mān’nī’
Mā’rē’cūs
Mā’rī’ūs
Mār’š
Mā’ tūs’cō’
Mā’rō’ nā
Māx’ī mūs
Mē’lī’ō mā’trī’ī’ē
Mē’lī’dī
Mē’ nā’pī’ī
Mē’s ̲sālā
Mē’tī’ō sē’dūm
(śh)
Mē’ ̲tī’ūs
(śh)
Mī nē’r’vā
Mī nū’cī’ūs
(śh)
Mō’nā
Mōr’ē’nī
Mōr’ē’ tūs’gūs
Mō’lsā
Mū ̲nā’ttī’ūs
(śh)

Nām mē’tī’ūs
(ī)
Nām’nē tē’s
Nā’tū’ā ̲tē’tē’s
Nār’tō’bō
Nā’stū’ā
(śh)
Nē’r’vī’ī
Nī’tī’ōb’rī’gō’s
(śh)
Nō rē’ti’ā
(ī)
Nō’vī’ō dū’nūm

Ōc’tē’lūm
Ōc’tō dū’trūs
Ōl’lōvī’cō
Ōr’c ̲yū’lā

Ôr gē’tō’ō’rī’x
Ô sī’st’mī

Pā’dūs
Pa’e’mā’nī
Pā’rī’sī’ī
(śh)
Pē’tī’ūs
Pē’ ̲t’ō cō’rī’ī
Pē’ ̲t’ō’nī’ūs
Pē’ ̲t’ō sī’dī’ūs
Pē’ ̲t’ō nē’s
Pl rū’st’lā’ē
Pl’sō
Plā’n’cūs
Plē’u mō’x’ī’ī
(ka’h)
Pō’m pē’tūs
(kī)
Prā’cō’ nī’mūs
Prō’cē’lūs
Ptī’ā’nī’ī
Plū’lī’ūs
Pu’lī’ō

Quad rā’tūs
Quin’tūs

Rā’u’trā’cī
Rē’bī’lūs
Rē’dō nē’g
Rē’gū’nūs
Rē’mī
Rē’mūs
Rō’scē’ūs
(śh)
Rū’fūs
Ru’tē’nī
Ru’tū’lūs

Sā’bī’nūs
Sā’bīs
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sám á rò brī'vá</td>
<td>Tār bēl'li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sān'tò nēg</td>
<td>Tār'ū sā'tēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sān'tò nī</td>
<td>Tās gēlt'ū ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scāl'dīs</td>
<td>Tāx'i māg'ū ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sē dū'li ās</td>
<td>Tēc tōs'ā āgē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sē dū'nī</td>
<td>Tēnl'ē rī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sē dū'sī ā (sh)</td>
<td>Tē'rr'ā sīd'ī ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēg'nī</td>
<td>Teā tōm'ā ātūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēg'o nāx</td>
<td>Teānt'ō nēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sē gōn'tī ā'sī (sh)</td>
<td>Ti tūr'ī ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sē gū'sī ā'vī (sh)</td>
<td>Ti'itūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēm prō'nī ās</td>
<td>Tō lō'sa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēn'tō nēg</td>
<td>Tō lōs'ā tēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēq'ūnā nē</td>
<td>Trāns rēh nān'ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēq'ūnā ni</td>
<td>Trēbī ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēr tō'vī ās</td>
<td>Trēvēr'ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēr'vī ās</td>
<td>Trībō ēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēx'tū ās</td>
<td>Trīn'ō bān'ēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sīb'ū sā'tēg</td>
<td>Tū lin'gī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sī lā'nūs</td>
<td>Tūl'ī ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sīl'ū ās</td>
<td>Tūl'ū ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sō'tū ā'tēg (sh)</td>
<td>Tū'rō nēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suē'sī d'ē'nēg (w) (sh)</td>
<td>Ür'ī ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suē'vī (w)</td>
<td>Ü sīpt'ē tēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sū gām'bri</td>
<td>Vāc'tā ā ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sūl'ā</td>
<td>Vā lēr'ī ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sūl pī'tčī ās (sh)</td>
<td>Vālf'ē tī ātēs (sh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vān ġīl'ō nēg</td>
<td>Vē lā'nī ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē lā'vī ās</td>
<td>Vēl lā'nu nūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē lā'vī ās</td>
<td>Vēl lā'vī ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē nēl'ī</td>
<td>Vēn'tī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē nēt'ī ā (sh)</td>
<td>Vēr'ā āgrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'ā āgrī</td>
<td>Vēr bīg'tē ānūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr cās'sī vēl lāun'ū ās</td>
<td>Vēr'cīn āgē't'ō rīx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'tī cō</td>
<td>Vēr'ū dōc'tī ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē sōnt'ū ā (sh)</td>
<td>Vē sōnt'ī ā (sh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē tēn'ā</td>
<td>Vi ēn'ēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'ī ā ā tā rūs</td>
<td>Vēr'ī ā ā vīx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'ī mān'dū ā i</td>
<td>Vo cā'tēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē cōn'tī ā (sh)</td>
<td>Vo cōn'tī ā (sh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl'cāē</td>
<td>Vo lēc'nūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl cā'tī ā ā s</td>
<td>Vo lēc'nūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl tū sē'nūs</td>
<td>Vo lēc'nūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vō rē'nūs</td>
<td>Vō rē'nūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōst'ē āgūs</td>
<td>Vōst'ē āgūs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOCABULARY

TO

CÆSAR'S GALlic WAR.

COVERING SEVEN BOOKs.
acclivis, -e, [ad-clivus, slope (weakened)], adj., sloping towards, rising, sloping, ascending: collis; aditus.

abripio, -ripere, -ripiú, -reptus, [ab-rapio, seize], 3. v. a., carry off (with violence), drag away.

abs, see ab.

abscidô, -cidere, -cidí, -císus, [abs-caedo], 3. v. a., cut off, lop off, tear off, tear away.

abscisus, p. p. of abscido.

absêns, -entis, see absum.

absimilis, -e, [ab-similis, like], adj., unlike.

absistô, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p., [ab-sisto], 3. v. n., stand off, stand away, withdraw.—Fig., leave off, keep aloof.

abstineô, -tinère, -tinuí, -tentus, [abs-teneo], 2. v. n., hold (one's self) off.—Fig., refrain, spare: proelio (refrain from giving); mulieribus (spare).

abstrâctus, p. p. of abstraho.

abstrahô, -trahere, -tráxi, -tráctus, [abs-traho], 3. v. a., drag off, drag away.

absum, -esse, -fuí (áfui), -futúrus, [ab-sum], irr. v. n., be away, be absent, be off (at a distance).—Fig., suspicio (be wanting); nomen (be far from helping); ab eo quin (be far from being); multum quin (lack much of, etc.); longius quin (be farther off than that); a bello (keep aloof, take no part in); ab hoc consilio (not be concerned in).—absens, p. as adj., absent, in one's absence.

abundô, -âre, -âvi, -âtûrus, [† abundant, lost adj. st., abounding; cf. abunde, abundantly], 1. v. n., over-flow.—Fig., abound.—Transf. (of the place, etc., containing the thing), be strong in, be rich in, abound in.

ac, see atque.

accédô, -cédere, -cessî, -cessúrus, [ad-cedo, go or come], 3. v. n., move towards, draw near, approach, come up, come (to), advance to, advance. — Fig., come to: Remis studium (be inspired in, cf. discedo).—Esp., be added, where often an explanatory word is necessary in Eng.: hoc accedere, be in addition to this; hoc accedebat ut, there was also this (disadvantage) that; so with quod, there was also the fact that, there was also the reason that, or simply moreover, then again.

accelerô, -âre, -âvi, -âtûs, [ad-celerô, hasten; cf. celer, swift], 1. v. a. and n., hasten.

acceptus, p. p. of accipío.

accessus, p. p. of accedo.

accidô, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p., [ad-caedo], 3. v. n., fall to, fall upon, fall. tela gravius (strike).—Fig., happen, befall, occur, present itself, turn out, arise. — Often euphemistically for death, defeat, etc.: si quid Romanis; gravius a Caesare (be done, severe measures be taken).

accidô, -cidere, -cidi, -císus, [ad-caedo], 3. v. a., cut into, partly cut.

accipió, -cipere, -cêpi, -ceptus, [ad-capio] 3. v. a., take, receive: exercitum (take command of).—Less exactly, volnus; incommodum (suffer, meet with).—Fig., accept, learn, hear, get, take: excusationem; usus (acquire); aliquid fama (hear of).—acceptus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., acceptable.

acclivis, -e, [ad-clivus, slope (weakened)], adj., sloping towards, rising, sloping, ascending: collis; aditus.
acclivitas, -tatis, [acclivi- + tas], \(\text{F.}, \text{slope (upward), inclination, steepness.}\)

Accō, -onis, [Celtic], m., one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans.

accommodātus, p. p. of accommodō.

accommodō, (ad-c-) -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [accommodō-fitting, or ad-commodo], 1. v. a., fit on, fit: insignia (put on, adjust). — accommodātus, -a, -um, p. p., fitted, adapted.

accurātē, [old case-form of accuratus, done with care], adv., with care, carefully.

accurrō, -currere, -currei (-cucurri), no p. p. [ad-currō], 3. v. n., run to, run up (on foot), rush up (on horseback), ride up.

accusō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-causo, assign as a reason or charge], 1. v. a., accuse, blame, find fault with.

ācer, -cris, -cre, [AC, sharp (cf. acus, needle), + ris], adj., sharp. — Fig., keen, active, violent. See acriter.

acerbē [acerbus], adv., bitterly. — Fig. (of the mind), ferre inopiam (suffer severely from, etc.).

acerbitās, -tātis, [acerbō + tas], \(\text{F.}, \text{bitterness.}\) — Concrete in plur., sufferings (with a change of point of view in Eng.).

acerbus, -a, -um, [acer (treated as st.) + bus (cf. superbus)], adj., bitter (to the taste). — Fig. (to the mind), bitter, hard to bear, cruel.

ācerrimē, superl. of ācrīter.

acerbūs, -ī, [acer (shortened as st.) + vus], m., (pointed?), a heap, a pile.

acciēs, -ēī, [AC (sharp) + ies (cf. materies)], \(\text{F.}, \text{point, sharp edge, edge: oculorum (keen glance, glare).}\)

— Esp., line, battle line, array, army (in battle array, cf. agmen), rank (of an army in several ranks): acie instructa depugnare, fight a pitched battle.

acquirō, see adquiro.

ācriter [acri- + ter], adv., sharply.

— Fig., fiercely, violently, hotly (of fighting), with spirit: acriter pugnatum est, a fierce battle was fought, there was hot fighting.

āctuārius, -a, -um, [actu- , movement (AG in ago) + arius], adj., fast sailing (provided with both sails and oars).

āctus, p. p. of ago.

acus, -ure, -uī, -ūtus, [acu-, sharp (in acus, needle)], 3. v. a., sharpen. — acūtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., sharpened, sharp.

acūtus, p. p. of acuo.

ad [?], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with acc. With idea of motion, to, towards, against. — Where the idea of motion is more or less obliterated, to, towards, for, at, on, against, in, near, in regard to. — Of time, till, at, on; ad diem, on the day. — With numerals, about. — Esp., deferre ad, lay before; recepti ad se (among); ad fortunam Caesarī defect (Caesar lacked to complete, etc.); contendere ad occupandam (to, for), and often with the gerund or gerundive expressing purpose; ad certum pondus (up to, i.e. of); ad modum (in); commere ad, visit; ad impedimenta (by); ad auxilium
adfectus, p. p. of adicio.

adferō (aff-), -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., bring to, bring: litteras. — Fig., cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce: fortuna casus (bring about, give).

adficio (aff-), -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [ad-facio], 3. v. a., do to, affect. — With acc. and abl., affect with, inflict upon, produce in, cause to, visit with, fill with. — In passive, suffer, receive, be in (a condition), be afflicted by, suffer from: beneficio adfectus, having received favors; magno dolore adfici, be greatly distressed.

adfigō (aff-), -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [ad-figo, fix, fasten], 3. v. a., fasten to (by insertion or the like).

adfingō (aff-), -fingere, -finxi, -fictus, [ad-fingo], 3. v. a., make up in addition. — Of rumors, invent more, add.

adfinitās (aff-), -tātis, [adfini- (close to, fr. finis, boundary) + tas], F., nearness. — Esp. of relation by marriage, relationship, alliance, connection. — Concretely, a connection: adfinitatibus coniuncti (marriages).

adfirmātiō (aff-), -ōnis, [adfirmatio, cf. adfirma, assert], F., assurance. — Concretely, an assertion.

adfixus (aff-), p. p. of adfigo.

adflictō (aff-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-
dicto, cf. adfligo], i. v. a., dash against, dash upon, dash to the ground. Hence, overthrow, overwhelm, wrench.

adflicus (aff-), p. p. of adfligo.
adflīgo (aff-), -fligere, -flīxi, -flīctus, [ad-fligo], 3. v. a., dash upon. Hence, overthrow, wrench, overthrow: navis (shatter, damage); arbores (throw down).

adfore (aff-), see adsum.
adgregiator (agg-), -gredi, -gressus, [ad-grador, step, go], 3. v. dep., go towards, go to, march against, attack.
adgregō (agg-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-grego, flock, cf. grex, flock], i. v. a., unite in a flock, gather: se (gather around, flock to); se ad amicitiam (attack one's self to).

adhaerēo, -haerēre, -haesi, -hae-sūrus, [ad-haereō], 2. v. n., stick (to), cling (to), get caught (in).

adhaerēscō, -ere, [ad-haeresco], 3. v. n., same meaning as adhaereō.

adhibēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itus, [ad-habeō], 2. v. a., have in. Hence, call in, admit, bring with (one).—Fig., employ, use.

adhibitus, p. p. of adhibeo.

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus, [ad-hortor], i. v. dep., encourage, address, urge, rally (soldiers).

adhūc [ad-huc, hither], adv., hitherto (of place).—Of time, up to this time, till now, to this day.

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacui, no p. p., [ad-aceō], 2. v. n., lie near, border on, be adjacent.

Adiatunnus, -ī, [Celtic], m., chief of the Sotiates.

adiciō (adiic-), -icere, -iicī, -iectus, [ad-iacio], 3. v. a., throw to, hurl, fling; telum adici (be thrown to, i.e. reach); aggerem (throw up).—Fig., join to, add: adiecta planities (with the addition of).

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [ad-ago], 3. v. a., drive to, drive up (of cattle, etc.).—Less exactly, drive in, drive home (of piles), move up (of towers), shoot (of weapons).—Fig., force, bind (by oath.)

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptus, [ad-emō, take], 3. v. a., take away (the action being looked upon as done to somebody, usually in the dat.).—Fig., destroy, cut off, spem; prospectum (intercept, cut off).

adipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus, [ad-apiscor, lay hold of], 3. v. dep., obtain, secure: victoriam (win, gain).

aditus, -ūs, [ad-itus, cf. adeo, go to], m., approach, arrival, coming, access: defugere (contact, intercourse).—Concretely, an avenue (of approach), access (excuse for approaching), admission, means of approach, means of access, way of approach, approach (in military sense); sermonis (occasion for intercourse); ad uxorem (intercourse).

adiectus, p. p. of adicio.

adiūdicātus, p. p. of adiudico.

adiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-idiuco, cf. iudex, judge], i. v. a., adjudge, assign (by deliberation).

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iunctus, [ad-iungō], 3. v. a., join to, unite to, attach, unite with.

adiutor, -tōris, [ad-itiutor, cf. adiuvo, help], m., helper, assistant, abettor.

adiūtus, p. p. of adiuvo.
adquiro, -iuvāre, -īūvī, -īūtus, [ad-

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -īūvī, -īūtus, [ad-

adiuvo, help], i. v. a., assist, help, help

on, be of advantage, be an assistance to; ad spem (encourage).

adlātus (all-), p. p. of adfero.

adliciō (all-), -licere, -lexī, -lectus,

[ad-lacio], 3. v. a., allure to, invite,

enticē, invitō, iliuvō, rificiā

more to, on, execution,

ministro, wonder], duties

duties) out, [ad-lacio], being

ratus, allow

admisso

-um, permitted,

Also

permit

{ad-mitto, p. p. of admitter.

admissus, p. p. of admitto.

admitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,

[ad-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go to), let go:

admissō equo, at full speed.— Fig.,

allow (cf. com- and per-mitto) : in se

facinus (commit a crime); dedecus

(permit to be incurred, incur).—

Also pass. without in se, be com-

mited.

admodum [ad-modum, measure,

limit], adv., to a degree. Hence,

very, very much, greatly, exceedingly,

so (very) much.

admoneō, -ēre, -uiī, -ītus, [ad-mo-

neo], 2. v. a., warn, urge.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus,

[ad-olesco, grow], 3. v. n., grow up

to maturity), mature. See also

adulescens.

adorior, -orīri, -ortus, [ad-oriōr],

4. v. dep., (rise up against), attack,

assail.

adortus, -a, -um, p. p. of adorior.

adparō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus,

[ad-paro, make ready, cf. parea, be

on hand], i. v. a. and n., prepare, get

ready, make preparations.

adpellō (app-), -pellere, -pulī, -pul-
sus, [ad-pello, drive], 3. v. a. and n.,

land (ships), bring to land.

adpetō (app-), -petere, -petīvī,

-petitus, [ad-peto, aim at], 3. v. a.

and n., seek to gain, desire, aim at. —

Abs., approach.

adplicō (app-), -plicāre, -āvī (-ui),

-plicātus (-plicitus), [ad-plico, fold],

1. v. a., (bend towards). With re-

flex., lean against.

adportō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus,

[ad-porto, carry], 1. v. a., bring in,

bring (to some place).

adprobō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus,

[ad-probo, esteem good, cf. probus,

good], 1. v. a., approve of, agree with

(an opinion or action).

adpropinquō (app-), -āre, -āvī,

no p. p., [ad-propinquō, cf. propin-
quus, near], 1. v. n., approach, come

easier, come near.

adpuslus (app-), p. p. of adpello.

adquirō (acq-), -quisere, -quisīvī,

-quīsitus, [ad-quero, seek], 3. v. a.

(get in addition), acquire: aliquid

(gain some advantage).
adripiō (arr.-), -ripere, -ripuī, -rep-tus, [ad-rapiō], 3. v. a., snatch up, seize.

adroganter (arr.-), [adrogant- (st. of p. of adrogo, assume] + ter], adv., with presumption, presumably, with insolence.

adrogantia (arr.-) -ae, [adrogant- (see preceding) + ia], F., insolence, insolent conduct, presumption.

adscendō, see ascendo.

adscensus, see ascensus.

adsciscō (asc-), -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītus, [ad-sciscō, approve, fr. scio], 3. v. a., attach (by formal decree). — Less exactly, attach to (one’s self), unite with (one’s self).

adsiduus (ass.-), -a, -um, [ads-i-siduus (sed in sedeō, sit] + uus], adj., (sitting by), constant, continued, incessant.


adspectus (asp-), -ūs, [ad-спектus, cf. adspicio, look at], M., a looking at. — Transf., an appearance, aspect.

adsuēfaciō (ass.-), -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [adsuē- (cf. suesco, become accustomed) -facio, make], 3. v. a., accustom, train. — Pass., be accustomed.

adsuēfactus (ass.-), -a, -um, p. p. of adsuēfacio.

adsuēscō (ass.-), -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus, [ad-suesco, become accustomed], 3. v. a. and n., accustom, become accustomed, become wonted (of animals).

adsuētus (ass.-), -a, -um, p. p. of adsuēsco.

adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, [ad-sum], irr. v. n., be near, be by, be present, be at hand, be there, appear.

Aduatuka, -ae [Celtic, a fortress?], r., a fortress of the Eburones (prob. Tongres), near the Meuse.

Aduatucī, -ōrum [Celtic], m., pl., a tribe of the Belgæ (originally Germans) living on the west bank of the Meuse (later, Tongri).

adulescēns (adol-), -entis [p. of adolesco, grow up], adj., young. — As noun, a youth, young man. — With proper names, the younger (Jr., to distinguish one from his father).

adulescentia (adol-), -ae, [adulescent- + ia], F., youth.

adulescentulus (adol-), -i, [adulescent- + ulus, dim. end.], m. (often as adj.), a mere boy, very young.

adventus, -ūs, [ad-ventus, cf. advenio, come to], m., a coming, arrival, approach.

adversārius, -a, -um, [adversō- (reduced) + arius], adj., (turned towards), opposed. — As noun, opponent, adversary, foe, enemy.

adversus, p. p. of advertō, in various uses.

adversus, prep. with acc., see advertō.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ad-verte], 3. v. a., turn towards: animum (turn the attention, notice, see animadvertō), turn against, turn (to anything). — adversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., in front, opposed, opposite, in opposition, adverse, un-
favorable, in the face of: proelium
(unsuccesful); hostibus adversus oc-
currebant (right against, in their
front); in adversum os, right in
the face; flumine (up, cf. secundo);
res adversae, adversity, want of
success. — adversus [petrified as
adv., cf. versus], prep. with acc.,
against.

advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [adv-voco],
1. v. a., call (to one), summon.
advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [adv-
volō], 1. v. n., fly to, fly at. — Less
exactly, of cavalry, rush at, fly at,
charge upon.

aediūcium, -ī, [tāediific- (cf. aedi-
ifico) + ium], N., building. — Esp.
buildings standing singly, opposed
to villages, farm houses.

aediificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tāedi-
ifico (aedes, house, FAC in faciо)], 1. v.
a., build (of houses). — Less ex-
actly, of ships.

aeger, -gra, -grum, [?], adj., sick,
disabled.

aegerrimē, superl. of aegre.

aegrē [old case-form of aeger],
adv., feebly. Hence, with difficulty,
hardly, scarcely, barely.

Aemilius, -ī, [?], M., (Lucius), a
Gaul, a subaltern in Cæsar’s Gallic
cavalry. Probably named from some
Roman Aemilius from whom he had
received the citizenship.

aequāliter [aequali- (fr. aequus,
even) + ter], adv., evenly, uniformly.

aequinoctium, -ī, [as if aequinoct-
 indirectly fr. aequo-, equal, nox
(night) + ium], N., the time of the
equinox, the equinox.

aequitās, -tātis, [aequō- (even,
equal) + tas], F., evenness. Hence
(cf. aequus), fairness, justice. — Esp.,
eaquitas animi, evenness of mind,
contentment, resignation.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aequō-
equal], I. v. a., make equal, equalize.
aequus, -a, -um, [?, perh. akin
to unus, formed with -cus instead of
-nus], adj., even, level, equal.

Hence, fair, just, equitable. — Esp.,
eaequus animus, equanimity, content-
ment, resignation; aequo animo
aliquid facere (be resigned to, be
satisfied to, be content to); contentio
(on equal terms); aequo Marte, on
equal terms, with equal success.

aerārius, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of
aes, copper) + arius], adj., (having
to do with copper). — Fem. as noun,
a mine.

aereus, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of
aes, copper) + eus], adj., of copper,
copper (as adj.).

aes, aeris, [?], N., copper (as
metal for ships, or as money).
Hence, money. — Esp., alienum (debt,
another man’s money).

aestās, -tātis, [st. akin to aedes
(hearth) + tas], F., (heat), summer
(the season for military operations).

aestimātiō, -ōnis, [aestimā-
(st. of aestimo, value) + tio], F., valua-
tion, estimation, value.

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aestim-
ō-, assayer], 1. v. a., value, esti-
mate. — Less exactly, regard: gra-
vius (consider more serious, of
calamities).

aestivus, -ā, -um, [tāestu-
(cf. aestus, heat) + ivus], adj., hot.
Hence, summer (as adj.): tempus.
aestuarius, -a, -um, [aestu- (cf. aestus, tide) + arius], adj., (relating to the tide).—Only in neut., as noun, creek, estuary, marsh.
aestus, -tūs, [AID (in aedes, hearth) + tus], M., heat (plur. in same sense). Hence, boiling, tide.
aetās, -tātis, [for aeвитas, fr. aevus) (st. of aevum, age) + tas], F., age (of old or young): aetate suffossus, oppressed with years.
aeternus, -a, -um, [aevus (st. of aevum, age) + ternus], adj., (relating to age), eternal, lasting.
aff-, see adf-.
Āfricus, -a, -um, [Afro- (st. of Afer, African) + cus], adj., of Africa.
—Esp., sc. ventus, the S.W. wind (blowing from Africa to Italy).
āfuisse, āfutūrus, see absum.
Agēdicum, -i, [Celtic], N., chief town of the Senones, on the Yonne; now Sens.
ager, agrī, [AG in ago (drive?) + rus, akin to Eng. acre], M., land (cultivated), fields, country (opposed to city), territory (country), cultivated lands, fields (as opposed to woods).
agger, -eris, [ad-ger (for ges in gero, as st.) M., (that which is carried to a place), earth (for a wall), earth of a wall, a mound of earth, a wall, a rampart, a mole, a dike (either the regular earthwork of the Romans for an entrenched camp or line of circumvallation, or the dike of approach, a long sloping mound leading up to the height of the walls): cotidianus (daily addition to the dike or walls).
agg- (except agger), see adg-.
agito, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [agitō- (freq. of ago, put in motion)], 1. v. a., drive, chase. Hence, vex, trouble. —Fig., turn over (in mind), propose, discuss, purpose.
agmen, -minis, [AG (in ago, put in motion) + men], N., a moving, a march.—Concretely (of bodies in motion), a body in motion, a column, an army, a line (of troops in march), a train, a fleet. —Less exactly, an army (not in march). Phrases: primum (the van); novissimum (the rear); claudere (bring up the rear); conferto agmine, in close order; agmine, on the march; agmen legionum (the main column); extremo agmine, in the rear.
agō, agere, ēgī, ēactus, [AG, put in motion], 3. v. a., drive (apparently from behind, cf. duco, lead): sublicas (drive down); vineas, turres, etc. (set in motion, move on, advance); cuniculos (extend); ac portare (of live stock as booty, drive off).—Loosely, do (cf. “carry on”), act, treat, discuss, plead. —Phrases: conventum (hold); gratias (render, give, express, cf. habere and referre); quid agit, what is one about?; quid agitur, what is going on?; de obsessione agere (do anything about, engage in).
agricītūra, see cultura.
alacer, -cris, -cre, [?], adj., active, eager, spirited.
alacritās, -tātis, [alacri- (eager) + tas], F., eagerness, readiness, spirit, promptness.
ālārius, -a, -um, [alāri- (st. of
**ala, wing, + ris) + ius**, adj. (belonging to the wings). Hence, of the allies (who held the wings of the army). — m. plur. as noun, allies, auxiliaries.

**albus, -a, -um, [cf. Alpes], adj., white (pale, opp. to ater, cf. candidus, shining white, opp. to niger): plumbum album, tin.**

**alcēs, -is, [Teutonic, cf. elk], F., the elk** (a large beast of the deer kind, resembling the moose).

Alesia, -ae, [Gallic], F., a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now Alise Ste. Reine.

**aliās** [unc. case-form of alius, but cf. foras], adv., elsewhere. — Of time, at another time: alias ... alias, now ... now (cf. alius ... alius).

**aliēnātus, p. p. of alieno.**

**aliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [alienō, another's], i. v. a., make another's.** — Also, make strange, alienate, estrange: alienata mente, in a frenzy.

**aliēnus, -a, -um, [unc. st. akin to alius, other, (prob. imitated from verb-stems of 2d conj.) + nus], adj., another's, of others, other people's: fines (others'); aes (debt).** Hence, strange, foreign, unfavorable (cf. suus), foreign to the purpose. — Superl., m. plur. as noun, perfect strangers.

**aliō [old case-form of alius], adv., elsewhere, elsewhere (of end of motion).**

**aliquamdiū [aliquam-diü, cf. quam diu], adv., for some time, some time, a considerable time.**

**aliquandō [ali- (in alius, other) -quando, when], at some time. — Emphatically, at last (at some time, though not before).**

**aliquantō, see aliquantus.**

**aliquantus, -a, -um, [ali- (in alius, other) -quantus, how great (cf. alius)], adj., considerable. — Neut., as noun, a good deal, a considerable part. — aliquantō (as abl. of measure), by considerable, considerably, a good deal.**

**aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), [ali- (in alius, other) -quis, any], indef. pron. (more forcible than quis; not universal, like quisquam), some, any. — Emph., some (considerable), any (important). — As noun, some one, any one, something, anything.**

**aliquot [ali- (in alius, other) -quot, how many], indecl. adj., several, some (more than one, but not conceived as many).**

**aliter [ali- (in alius, other) + ter], adv., otherwise, differently. — Often rendered by a noun or adjective implied in the context, aliter se habere ac, be different from what, etc.; nec aliter sentire quin, have no other idea but that.**

**alius, -a, -ud, [unc. root (cf. else) + ius], adj. pron., another (any one, not all), other, different, else, another (of the second of three or more). — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in same), one ... another, one another, one one (thing), another another: alius alia causa illata, alleging different reasons; alius ex alio (from different, etc., one from one, another from another). — Esp. in a partitive use, ex alii (with superl., most of all others, cf. the
fairest of her daughters, Eve’’); alius atque (see atque).

all-, see adl-.

Allobroges, -um, [Celtic], m. plur.; a Celtic people (of Gaul), living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps (in Dauphiny and Savoy). They were conquered in B.C. 121 by Fabius Maximus.

alo, alere, alui, altus, [Al, nourish], 3. v. a., cause to grow, feed, nurse, support (supply with food), foster, raise, keep (of animals): staturam (increase). — Fig. foster, foment, feed.

Alpēs, -ium, [Celtic form, (cf. albus) + is], F. pl., the Alps, more or less loosely used of the whole mass of mountains between Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), Gaul, and Germany.

alter, -era, -erum, [AL- (in alius, other) + ter (for -terus, compar. suffix)], adj. pron., the other (of two). — In plur., the other party. — Repeated (cf. alius), one the other, one another (of two), one . . . the other. — In plur., one party . . . the other. — Also, the second (of more than two), another (the second of three): dies (the second). — Also (esp. with negatives), another (beside one’s self, where all are conceived as two parties, one’s self and all the rest).

alternus, -a, -um, [alter- (as st.) + nus], adj., alternate, reciprocal, mutual, alternating.

altitūdō, -inis, [altō- (high) + tudo], F., height, depth (cf. altus), thickness (of a timber).

altus, -a, -um, [p. p. of alo (nourish), as adj.] (grown high by nourishing), high. — From opposite point of view, deep. — Neut., as noun, the sea, the deep: in alto, in deep water; ex alto, from the sea.

alūta, -ae, [cf. alumen, alum], f., leather (of a fine sort, like morocco?).

amb- [akin to ambo, both], prep. only in comp., about, round about.

ambactus, -i, [prob. German], m., a retainer, a vassal.

Ambarī, -orum, [Celtic], plur. of adj., a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hædui, and are called Hædui Ambarī.

Ambiānī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriva, is now called from their name, Amiens.

Ambibariī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., an Aremorican tribe living in a part of Normandy.

Ambiliātī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme (possibly part of the preceding).

Ambiorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], m., an able prince of the Eburones. He caused a revolt of his nation against Cæsar, which was partially successful, and came near being entirely so. He caused Cæsar uneasiness for several years, and eluded every effort to capture him.

Ambivaretī (Ambila-), -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Ambivaritī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe on the west bank of the Meuse.
ambō, -ae, -ō (-ōrum), [akin to amb-, round about], num. adj., both (together, cf. uteque, both separately).

āmens, -entis, [ab-mens], adj. (having the mind away), mad, crazy.

āmentia, -ae, [ament- (mad) + iæ], F., madness, frenzy, (mad) folly.

āmentum, -ī, [? unc. root + mentum], N., a thong (attached to a javelin, and wound around it to give it a twisting motion in throwing, as with rifle balls).

amicitia, -ae, [amicō- (friendly) + tia], F., friendship, friendly relations, alliance. — Opp. to hospitium, personal friendship.

amicus, -ā, -um, [unc. st. fr. AM (in amo, love) + cus], adj., friendly, well disposed: praesidium (devoted).

āmissus, p. p. of amitto.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., let go (away), let slip, let pass. Hence, lose (esp. of military losses).

amor, -ōris, [AM (in amo, love) + or (for os)], M., love, affection.

amplē [old case-form of amplus], adv., widely, largely. — amplius, compar., farther, more, longer: amplius quingenti, five hundred and more; ne quis, ... amplius (any more); amplius obsidum (see amplius); munera amplissime missa (generous gifts).

amplificātus, p. p. of amplifico.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [amplificō-, (amplō-) with fac, make], 1. v. a., increase, enlarge, extend, heighten.

amplitūdō, -inis, [amplō- (large) + tudo], F., size, extent, greatness: cornuum (spread).

amplus, -a, -um, [? perh. amb- (about) + st. akin to plus, plenus], adj. Of size and extent, lit. and fig., large, wide, great. — Esp., prominent, of consequence, splendid, noble, distinguished: munera (lavish, valuable); dimissis amplioribus copiis (the greater part of). — amplius, neut. comp. as noun (cf. plus), more, a greater number: amplius obsidum.

an, [?], conj. introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather. — Often with the first member only implied, or: quid venirent, an speculari causa ((or) was it).

Anartēs, -ium, [?], M. plur., a people in Dacia (Transylvania), on the river Theiss, at the eastern end of the Hercynian forest.

Ancalites, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a nation of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis, [amb-, about, caput, head], adj., (having a head on both sides), double-headed. — Less exactly, twofold, double: proelium (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways).

ancora, -ae, [Gr.], F., anchor: in ancoris, at anchor.

Andēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul north of the Loire, in modern Anjou.

Andi, -ōrum, the same as the Andes.

Andocombogius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief man of the Remi.

ānfractus (āmf-), -ūs, [am(b)-,
\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{\text{angulus}}, i, [prob. ancō- (st. of ansus, bent) + lus], M., (a little hook), a corner.
\item \textit{\text{angustē}} [old case-form of angust\-\text{us}], adv., narrowly, in narrow quarters (closely). — Fig., sparingly (cf. ample), in small quantity.
\item \textit{\text{angustiae}}, -ārum, [angustō- (narrow) + ia], F. plur., narrowness (prop. concrete, narrow); itinerum (a narrow pass); propter angustias (narrowness of the passage). — Fig., straits (difficult position, etc.), hard straits, difficulties: angustiis premi, to be hard pushed.
\item \textit{\text{angustus}}, -a, -um, [angor (squeezing) + tus], adj., narrow, confined: angustiora castra (less extensive); angustiore fastigio (narrowing, sloping, drawing in). — Fig., in angusto res est, the position is critical (cf. ‘in a tight place’).
\item \textit{\text{anima}}, -ae, [ani- (treated as root, fr. \text{an}, blow) + ma (fr. of mus), cf. animus], F., breath. Hence, soul. — Plur., the soul (of man, abstractly).
\item \textit{\text{animadvertō}}, -vertere, -verti, versus, (also animum adverto), [animum adverto], 3. v. a., turn the mind to, attend to: in aliquem (punish, cf. the domestic “attend to”). — Less exactly, observe, notice, learn.
\item \textit{\text{animal}}, -alēs, [anima- + lis, N. of adj.], N., (a creature endowed with life), an animal (including man), a living creature (opp. to booty).
\item \textit{\text{animus}}, -ī, [ani- (st. as root, fr. \text{an}, blow) + mus], M., breath, life, soul (vital). — Usually (the above meanings being appropriated to anima, wh. see), soul (as thinking, feeling), mind, feelings, feeling, intellect (but cf. mens), spirit: effeminate; levitas animi (disposition, nature, or together, want of constancy); animus relinquit aliquem, one faints, loses consciousness; animi mollitia, want of energy or endurance; animo paratus, resolute; animum advertere (see animadverto). — Esp. (in a good sense, often in plur.), spirit, constancy, courage, resolution: confirmare (encourage any one); reganguescere; promptus; paratus ad aliquid. — Also (as opp. to mens, wh. see), the moral powers, will, desires, affections, etc., the heart, the feelings, the disposition: bono animo esse, be well disposed, be of good cheer; esse in animo aliquid, to have in mind, as a purpose; offendere or avertere (feelings); magni animi, of great ambition. — Also, animus magnus, courage, magnanimity, lofty spirit; animi magnitudo, lofty spirit; permulcere (angry spirit); mentes animosae perturbare (minds, as thinking, and hearts, as feeling, etc.); animi virtus, nobleness of soul; animi causa, for pleasure, for amusement, for fancy.
\item \textit{\text{annōtinus}}, -ā, -um, [some form of annō- (year) +inus (cf. diutinus)], adj., last year’s, old (of ships made the year before).
\item \textit{\text{annus}}, -ā, [?], M., a year (as a point of time, as the course of the year, or as a period).
\end{itemize}
annuus, -a, -um, [annō- (year) + us], adj., annual: magistratus creatur (annually).

ānser, -eris, [for hanser, akin to goose], M., a goose.

ante [old case-form], adv., before (of place and time), in front: ante dictum (above, before, previously); ante habuerat (formerly, once); iam ante, already before, already; pau- cīs ante diebus, a few days before. — Prep. with acc., before (of place or time): ante se mittit (in advance of).

— In dates, ante diem (a. d.) (on such a day before). — In comp., be- fore (of place, time, and succession).

anteā [ante ea, case-form of is], adv. (of time), before, previously, once.

anteūdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [ante-cedō], 3. v. n. and a. (fr. force of prep.), go forward, advance, sur- pass (in size, etc.), exceed, precede, go in advance of.

antenātor, -ōris, [ante-ātor, runner], M. (a forerunner). — Esp. of the army, a scout, pioneer.

antefero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [ante- ferō], irr. v. a., place in advance, prefer. — Pass., be preferred, be the first, have the superiority.

antenna, -ae, [?], F., a yard (for sails).

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posi- tus, [ante-ponō], 3. v. a., (place in advance, cf. antefero), think of more importance.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ante-verto], 3. v. a., (turn in front, cf. antepōnō), prefer.

antiquitās [antiquō- + tus], adv., from ancient times, from early times.

— Less exactly, long ago, in early times, anciently.

antiquus, -a, -um, [anti- (cf. ante) + us], adj., old (existing from early times, not so much in reference to present age as to former origin. cf. vetus), ancient.

Antistius, -i, [antisti- (antistes, overseer) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius Antistius Reginus, a legatus of Cæsar.

Antōnius, -i, (?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus, Mark Antony, the famous trium- vir, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul; also 2, his brother, Gaius, a legatus of Cæsar.

Ap., for Appius.

aperīō, -perire, -peruī, -pertus, [ab- pario, get off, cf. operio, cover], 4. v. a., uncover, open.—apertūs, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., open, exposed, uncovered, unobstructed, unprotected: latus (the right side, not covered by the shield); collis (without trees); loca (open country); impetus maris (unbroken).

apertē [old case-form of apertūs].

adv., openly.

Apollō, -inis, [?], M., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana, god of the sun, of divina- tion, of poetry and music, and presi- dent of the Muses. He was also god of archery, of pestilence, and, on the other hand, of healing. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity.

apparō, see adparo.

1. appellō, see adpello.
2. appellō (adp.), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [tad-pellō-, cf. compello], i. v. a., call, name, address, call upon, style (declare one something or address in a certain character).

app-, see adp.-

Appius, -ī, [?, a Sabine word?], m., a Roman praenomen.

Apr., for Aprilis.

Aprilis, -ē, [prob. akin to aperio, open], (the month which opens the ground), adj., of April.

aptus, -ā, -um, [AP (in apiscor, lay hold of) + tus], adj., (fitted to), suited, adapted, fit, apt.

apud [akin to ab], prep. with acc., at, among, with, before, on one’s part, in relation to (a person); in one’s house (company, possession).

aqua, -ae, [?], F., water, a water-course: aqua atque igni interdicere (a form of banishment among the Romans); mensurae ex aqua, by the water-clock (a contrivance like an hour-glass for telling time by the running of water).

aquātiō, -ōnis, [aquā- (st. of aquor, fetch water) + tio], F., getting water (cf. pabulatio).

aquila, -ae, [F. of aquilus, dark gray, perh. remotely akin to aqua], F., an eagle. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff.

Aquilēia, -ae, [Aquila- + eius], F., a city of Cisalpine Gaul (Venetia), founded by a Roman colony in B.C. 182 as an outpost on the northeast.

aquilifer, -ēri, [aquila-fer (reduced fr. -ferus, FER (in fero, bear) + us)], m., a standard bearer (of the eagle).

Aquitānia, -ae, [F. of adj. developed fr. Aquitanus], F., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean (see I. i).

Aquitānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., of Aquitania. — Plur., as noun, the people of Aquitania. — Sing., a man of Aquitania, an Aquitanian.

Arar, -aris, [?], m., the Saône, a river of Gaul rising in the Vosges and flowing into the Rhone at Lyons.

arbiter, -trī, [ad-bitō (go) + trus, cf. -trum], m., (a bystander), a witness. — Less exactly, a referee, an arbitrator.

arbitrium, -ī, [arbitrō- (umpire, judge) + ium (cf. iudicium)], n., judgment, will, pleasure (what one sees fit to do).

arbitor, -āri, -ātus, [arbitrō-, umpire, judge], i. v. a. and n., think, suppose (judge).

arbor, -oris, [?], F., a tree.

acessō, -sere, -sivī, -situs, [akin to accedo, but the exact relation uncertain], 3. v. a., summon, invite, send for (persons), call in: aliquem mercede (call in to serve for pay).

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus, [prob. aridō-, dry], 2. v. n., be hot, be on fire.

— Fig., be excited, be in a blaze, burn.

Arduenna, -ae, [?], F., the Ardennes (a very large forest region in northeastern Gaul).

arduus, -a, -um, [?], adj., high, steep, difficult (of ascent).

Arecomīci, -ōrum, [?], m. plur., a branch of the Volcae.

Aremoricus (Arm-), -a, -um, [Celtic are, near, and mor, the sea].
argimentum, -i, [akin to arguo, make bright], N., (the shining metal), silver. Also, of things made of the metal, silverware, silver.

argilla, -ae, [dim. akin to arguo, make bright, F., (white clay)], clay : fusiles (some vitrifying earth, such as porcelain is made of).

āridus, a-, -um, [tārō- (wh. areo, be dry) + dus], adj., dry. — Neut. as noun, dry land.

ariēs, -ietis, [?], m., a ram. — Fig., a battering ram (a long timber armed at the end with metal for demolishing walls). — Less exactly, a buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge).

Ariovistus, -ī, [?], m., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans.

Aristius, -ī, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Marcus, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar’s army.

arma, -ōrum, [AR, fit (cf. armus, the shoulder joint) + mus], N. plur., arms, equipment: armis ius exsequi (by force of arms): in armis esse, to be under arms, to be ready for service, to be in service; parati in armis, armed for war; ab armis discedere, to abandon hostilities; in armis, in battle; armis congressi (in battle), and the like.

armāmenta, -ōrum, [armā- (st. of armo) + mentum], N. plur., implements. — Esp., rigging, tackle.

armātūra, -ae, [armā- (st. of armo) + tura], F., equipment: levis armaturae Numidae (light armed, without the heavy defensive armor of the legionary).

armātus, -ā, -um, p. p. of armo.

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [armō- (st. of arma)], i. v. a., equip, arm. — Pass., arm (one’s self). — armātus, -ā, -um, p. p. as adj., armed, in arms, equipped.

Arpinēius, -ī, [Arpinō- (st. of Arpinum) + eius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius, a Roman knight in Cæsar’s army, possibly of Gallic origin, of a family enfranchised by Marius, who came from Arpinum.

arr-, see adr-.

ars, artis, [AR (fit) + tis (reduced)], F., (skill in fitting), skill, art. — Plur., the arts, the useful arts.

artē [old case-form of artus], adv., closely, tightly.

articulus, -ī, [artu- (joint) + culus], m., a little joint. — Less exactly, a joint.

artificium, -ī, [artifīc- (artificer) + ium], N., a skilful contrivance, an artificer, a trick. Also, a trade (opp. to ars, a higher art).

artus, -ā, -um, [p. p. of arceo (shut up)], as adj., tightly bound, close: silva (thick).

Arvernum, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Arverni (a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne). — M. plur., the Arverni.

arx, arcis, [ARC (in arceo, shut up), + is (reduced)], F., a stronghold, a fortress, a citadel.
ascendō (ads-), -scendere, -scendi, -scensus, [ad-scando, climb], 3. v. a. and n., climb up, climb, ascend: val- lum (mount, scale).

ascensus (ads-), -us [ad-†scensus, cf. ascendō], m., a climbing up, an ascent, a going up. — Concr., a way up, a means of ascent: prohibere ascensu (from climbing up).

asciscō, see adscisco.

aspectus, see adaspectus.

asper, -era, -erum (?), adj., rough, harsh. — Fig., fierce, violent.

ass-, see ads-.

at [prob. form of ad], conj., but, but yet, at least.

atque (ac), [ad-que], conj., and (generally introducing some more important idea), and even, and especially. — Also, as, than: par atque, idem atque, the same as; simul atque, as soon as; similis atque, just like; aliter ac, otherwise than, different from what, etc.; aliud atque, different from, etc.

Atrebās, -ātis, [Celtic], adj., Atre- 

atric, -ātis, [Celtic], adj., Atrei- 

atrus, -ī, [aetrō- (st. of ater, black) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus, a soldier in Cæsar’s army.

attēxō (adt-), -texere, -texuī, -textus, [ad- theano], 3. v. a., weave on, make on (by weaving).

attingō (adt-), -tingere, -tīgī, -tāctus, [ad-tangō], 3. v. a., touch upon, touch, reach, join (of a nation’s boundaries).

attribuō (adt-), -buere, -buī, -būtus, [ad-tribuo], 3. v. a., allot to, assign.

attuli, see adfero.

auctor, -ōris, [AUG (in augeō, in- crease) + tor], m., a voucher (for any act or statement), an authority, an adviser: defectionis (leader); auctor esse, approve, advise; eis auctori- bus, with their approval; auctore hoste, on the authority of the enemy.

auctūritās, -tātis, [auctor- (as if i-st.) + tas], f., influence, prestige, authority (not military or political, cf. imperium and potestas).

auctus, -a, -um, p. p. of augeō.

audācia, -ae, [audac- (bold) + ia], f., daring, boldness, effrontery.

audācker, [audac- (bold) + ter], adv., with daring, boldly, fearlessly (but of an enemy): audacissime, with the greatest daring.

audāx, -ācis, [audā- (as if st. of audēo) + cus (reduced )], adj., dair- ing, bold. — See audacia and audacter.

audeō, audēre, ausus, [prob. avido-, eager], 2. v. a. and n., dare, venture, risk, dare to try (or do). — ausus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, daring.

audīō, -dīre, -dīvī, -dītus, [prob. akin to auris, ear], 4. v. a., hear, hear of. — audiēns, -entis, p. as adj., obedient (with dicto).

audītīō, -ōnis, [audī- (st. of audio) + tio], F., a hearing, hearsay, report.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, [AUG (causative or fr. unc. nounstem )], 2. v. a., increase, magnify, enhance. add to (something). — Pass., increase.

Aulercus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj.
of the Aulerci (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul).—Plur., the Aulerci.

Aulus, -i, [?], m., a Roman praenomen.

auriga, -ae, [poss. akin to auris and ago, cf. aura, headstall], c., a charioteer, a driver.
auris, -is, [akin to ear, st. †auri- (cf. audio)], F., an ear.

Aurunculéius, -i, [Aurunculó- (dim. of Auruncus, name of an Italian tribe) + eius], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Lucius Aurunculéius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar.

Auscì, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a tribe of Aquitania.

ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of audeo.

aut [?, but cf. autem], conj., or (regularly exclusive, cf. vel).—Repealed, either ... or.

autem [?, akin to aut], conj., but (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. sed), on the other hand, then again, now (explanatory), whereas (in slight opposition to something preceding).

autumnus (auct-), -i, [for †autumnonis, †autó- (cf. augeo) + minus], m., autumn (the season of increase).

auxiliāris, -e, [auxilí-, help (as if auxilig) + ris], adj., auxiliary.—Plur. as noun, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops (not Roman legionaries).

auxiliōr, -āri, -ātus, [†auxilīō-, help], i. v. dep., give assistance.

auxilium, -i, [†auxili- (akin to augeo, increase) + ium], n., assistance, aid, remedy, relief: extreim (the last resource); ferre (to assist, to aid); auxilio (as a reinforcement); quos auxili causa habebat (as auxiliaries, etc.).—Plur., auxiliaries (as opp. to the regular heavy-armed infantry); reënforcements: auxilia tardare, hinder from rendering assistance.

Avaricēnsis, -e, [Avaricō- + ensis], adj., of Avaricum.—Plur., the people of Avaricum.

Avaricum, -i, [Celtic], n., a town of the Bituriges, now Bourges.

avāritia, -ae, [avarī- (greedy) + tia], F., covetousness, greed, avarice.
āvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, - vectus, [ab-vehō], 3. v. a., carry off, carry away.
āversus, -a, -um, p. p. of averto.
āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ab-vertō], 3. v. a., turn aside, turn off, push aside.—Fig., alienate, estrange.—āversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., turned away. Hence, flying, or, with a change of point of view in translation, in the rear (of that to which the word is applied): ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur (by the enemy getting in their rear, etc.).
avis, -is, [unc. root + is], F., a bird.
avus, -i, [?], m., a grandfather.

Axona, -ae, [Celtic], F., a river of Gaul (now Aisne), a tributary of the Isara (Oise).
Bacenis, -is, [Teutonic], F., with Silva, a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suevi.

Baculus, -i, [baculus = baculum, staff], m., agnomen of Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāris, -e, [?], adj., Balearic (belonging to the Balearica insulae in the Mediterranean, now Ibiza, Majorca, and Minorca, famous for their slingers).

Balcus, -i, [baculus = baculum, M., magnomen of Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baalventius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name, only with Titus, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Barbarus, -a, -um, [prob. fr. imitation of unintelligible speech, cf. balbus, stammering], adj., foreign (not Greek or Latin), uncivilized, savage, barbarian, of the barbarians. — Plur., the barbarians or savages (used of the Gauls).

Basilus, -i, [?], m., agnomen of Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer in Caesar's army.

Batavi, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., the Batavi or Batavians, a nation occupying the region about the mouths of the Rhine.

Belgae, -arum, [?], m. plur., the Belgae or Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul. — Perh. also a small tribe of that nation with this special name.

Belgium, -i, [Belga- + ium], N., the country of the Belgae.

Belliōsus, -a, -um, [bellicō- (of war) + osus], adj., warlike.

Belliicus, -a, -um, [bellō-(war) + cus], adj., of war, in war.

Bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [bellō-], i. v. n., fight, make war: studium bellandi, a passion for war.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, [?], m. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise, about modern Beauvais.

Bellum, -i, [old duellum, (fr. duo), a strife between two], N., war, a war: bello persequi, etc. (in arms); bellum inferre, make war (offensive); bellum defendere, defend one's self from war; parare bellum, make warlike preparations.

Bene [old case-form of bonus, good], adv., well: bene gerere negotium, be successful in, etc.

Beneficium, -i, [beneficē- (reduced) (cf. bene, fac in facio) + ium], N., well-doing, a service, a favor, often rendered by Eng. plur., services, favors shown, services rendered: sortium beneficio, thanks to the lot; beneficio suo adductus, by gratitude for his favors.

Benevolentia, -ae, [benevolent- (cf. bene, vol in volo) + ia], F., goodwill, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, [Celtic], N., the chief town of the Haudui (Mont Beuvray) near Autun, which was founded later.
Bibrax, -ctis, [cf. last word], F., a town of the Remi.

Bibroci, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of southeast Britain.

bīduum, -ī, [bi- (≡ dvi, akin to duo, -duum (akin to dies)], N., two days' time, two days.

biennium, -ī, [bienni- (bi, akin to duo, -annō- (year) + ium], N., two years' time, the space of two years, two years.

Bigerriōnes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Pyrenees (cf. Bīgorre).

bīnī, -ae, -a, [bi- (= dvi, akin to duo) + nus], distrib. num. adj., plur., two each, two sets of, two (of things in pairs or sets).

bipartītō, [abl. of bipartitus, parted in two], adv., in two divisions: bipartito conlocatis insidiis (in two places).

bipedālis, -e, [biped- (bi-ped-, in pes, foot) + alis], adj., of two feet (in measure), two feet (long, wide, etc.).

bis [for dvis, unc. case-form of duo], adv., twice.

Biturīges, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, in two branches, Vibisci (around Bordeaux) and Cubi (around Bourges).

Boduōgnātus, -ī, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Nervii.

Bōia, f. sing. of Bōī, Boia.

Bōīi, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic nation, of which a part occupied lands in Cisalpine Gaul, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part joined the Helvetii in their emigration.

bonitās, -tātis, [_bonus- (good) + tas], F., goodness: agrorum (fertility).

bonus, -a, -um, [?], adj., good: bono animo esse, to be well disposed; optimum est, it is best; optimum iudicium facere, express so high an opinion. — Neut. as noun, good, advantage; plur., goods, property, estate.

bōs, bovis, [akin to cow], c., a bull, a cow, an ox. — Plur., cattle.

bracchium (brāch-), -ī, [?], N., an arm.

Brannovīces, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a division of the Aulerci living near the Hāeduī.

Brannoviī (Bl-), -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe, dependents of the Hāeduī.

Bratuspantium, -ī, [Celtic], N., a fortified town of the Bellovaci, not certainly identified.

brevis, -e, [for bregus, (bragh, break) + us], adj., short (of space or time): brevi, in a short space.

brevitās, -tātis, [brevi- (short) + tas], F., shortness, short stature: brevitās temporis, want of time.

breviter [†brevi- (short) + ter], adv., briefly.

Britanni, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., the Britons (including all the tribes of Britain).

Britannia, -ae, [†Britannō- + ia (F. of ius)], F., Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um, [†Britannō- + cus], adj., of Britain, Briton: bellum (with Britain).

brūma, -ae, [†brevi- (short) + ma (superl.), sc. dies], F., the winter solstice.
Brūtus, -i, [brutus, heavy], a family name at Rome. — Esp., Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Caesar. He distinguished himself in command of Caesar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the civil war on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins. He was afterwards killed in Gaul by order of Antony.

carimônia, -ae, [?], f., a rite, a ceremony.
Caerōsi, -orum, [?], m. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
cærulēus, -a, -um, [perh. akin to caesium, bluish], adj., dark blue.

Caesar, -aris, [?], m., a family name in the gens Iulia. — Esp.: 1. C. Iulius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the Commentaries. — 2. L. Iulius Caesar, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul.

cæspes, -itis, [?], m., a sod (used in fortification).

caesus, -a, -um, p. p. of caedo.
calamitās, -ātis, [?], f., disaster (orig. to crops?), defeat, misfortune (also euphemistically for death): ejus (any accident to him).

Caleti, -orum, same as the preceding.

callidus, -a, -um, [called- (cf. callum, thick skin) + dus], adj., (tough?), shrewd, cunning, skilful.
cālō, -onis, [?], m., a servant (of a soldier), a camp follower.

campester, -tris, -tre, [campō- (plain) + ster, as if campet + tris
(cf. equestris], adj., of the plain: loca (level plains).
campus, -i, [?], M., a plain.
Camulogenus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Aulerci.
Caninius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.— Esp., C. Caninius Rebilus, a legatus of Cæsar.
canō, canere, ceclinī, cantus, [CANC].
3. v. a. and n., sing, sound (with voice or instrument).
Cantaber, -bra, -brum, [Celtic], adj., of the Cantabri (a warlike people in the north of Spain, allied with the Gauls of Aquitania).— Plur., the Cantabri, the Cantabrians.
Cantium, -i, [Celtic], N., Kent (the southeast corner of Great Britain).
caper, -pī, [?], M., a goat, F.
capra, -ae, a she-goat.
capillus, -i, [adj. form akin to caput, head], M., the hair (collectively).
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, [CAP], 3 v. a., take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize: stipendium; nomen; arma (take up); montem (occupy).— Less exactly, choose, select: locum. — So also (esp. of ships, etc.), reach: portus (arrive at, make).— Fig., take in (deceive), captivare, beguile, also experience: dolorem; coniecturam (make); quitem (take, enjoy); fugam (take to flight).
caprea, -ae, [†caprō— (reduced) (cf. caper, goat) + ea (F. of -eus)], F., a roe (a small animal of the deer kind).
Another reading for capra in vi, 27.
captivus, -a, -um, [as if †capti-
(imaginary st. of capto, fr. capio) + vus], adj., captive. — Masc. as noun, a captive, a prisoner.
captus, -a, -um, p. p. of capio.
captus, -ūs, [CAP (in capio) + tus], M., a seizing. Hence, what one can grasp.— Fig., capacity, character, nature.
caput, -itis, [?, akin to head], N., the head: capite demisso; capite solo ex aqua extare, have only the head above water.— Less exactly, person (cf. “head of cattle”); mouth (of a river).— Fig., life: poenam capitis (of death); capitis periculo (of life).
careō, -ēre, -ui, -īturus, [?], 2. v. n., be without, go without.
carina, -ae, [?], F., keel, bottom (of a ship).
Carnutes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic people between the Loire and the Seine, about Orléans.
carō, carnus, [akin to crudus and raw], F., flesh, meat.
carpō, -pere, -psi, -ptus, [akin to harvest], 3. v. a., pluck. — Fig., find fault with (cf. “pick at”).
carrum, -i, [Celtic], N., a cart (of the Gauls).
carrus, -i, M., another form for carrum.
cārus, -a, -um, [?], adj., dear, precious, valuable.
Carvilius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.— Also, a king of part of Kent.
casa, -ae, [?], F., a cottage, a hut.
cāseus, -i, [?], M., cheese.
Cassi, -orum, [Celtic, cf. Veli-
casses and Cassivellaunus], m. plur., a British tribe.

Cassianus, -a, -um, [†Cassiō- (reduced) + ānus], adj., of Cassius: bellum (the war in B.C. 107, in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigurini, near Lake Geneva, and killed).

cassis, -idis, [?], f., a helmet (of metal, for horsemen, cf. galea).

Cassius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentle name.—Esp., L. Cassius Longinus, consul B.C. 107 (see Cassianus).

Cassivellaunus, -i, [Celtic], m., a British chief ruling north of the Thames, who took command of the general resistance of his countrymen to Caesar, but was finally reduced to submission.

castellum, -i, [†castrō- (fortress) + lum (N. of -lus)], n., a fortress, a fort, an outwork, a redoubt.

Casticus, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Sequani.

castrum, -i, [SKAD (cover) + trum], n., a fortress.—Plur., a camp (fortified, as was the manner of the Romans): in castris, in camp, also in service; castra ponere, pitch a camp; castra movere, break camp, move; quintis castris, after five days' journey, as the Romans encamped every night.

cāsus, -ūs, [CAD (in caedo, fall) + tus], m., (what befalls), an accident, a chance (good or bad), a mishance: hoc ipso tempore et casu (emergency); casu, by accident, by chance; casu devenit, chanced to, etc.; quarum rerum casus (the occurrence, the happening, the possibility); eundem casum ferre (fate); belli casus sustinerē (take the chances); in eiusmodi casu (a case); ad extremum casum, to the most critical position; ad omnes causas, against all accidents; in eum casum deduci (that pass).

Catamantāloēdēs, -is, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Sequani.

catenā, -ae, [?], f., a chain (for prisoners), a cable: in catenis conicic (into prison); in catenis tenere.

Caturiges, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a people in Roman Gaul (Provincia).

Catuvolcus, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, [?], f., a cause, a reason, an excuse, grounds, a motive (for an act), a right (to anything): satis causae, sufficient reason. Abl. after a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for, on behalf of: libertatis causa; potentiae causa (to gain); praedandī causa (to, etc.); insidiārum causa, for an ambush; animi causa, for amusement, for fancy.—Also, a cause (in law), a case: causa cognita, after trial; causa indicata (unheard); causam dicere, plead one's cause, stand a trial, be tried; causae dictio (a trial). Hence, also, a situation, a case: Germanorūm unam esse causam (the case . . . the same); in eadem causa, in the same situation, also, on the same side.

cautē [old case-form of cautus], adv., with caution, cautiously.

cautēs, -is, [akin to cos, whetstone], f., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cautus, p. p. of caveo.
Cavarillus, -i, [Celtic], m., a prince of the Hædui.

Cavarinus, -i, [Celtic], m., one of the Senones, made their king by Cæsar.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cætus, [perh. skv, cover], 2. v. n. and a., be on one's guard, guard against (something), take or give security.

cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessūrus, [?], 3. v. n., make way (in any direction).
— Esp., give way, retreat, retire:

cedentes, the flying; cedere loco, abandon a position, a military term.
— Fig., yield: fortunae.

celer, -eris, -ere, [cel (in cello, rush) + ris], adj., swift, quick, speedy, fast: motus (sudden).

celeritās, -tātis, [celer- (in celer) + tas], f., swiftness, activity, speed, promptness: ad celeritatem onerandi, to secure quick loading; itineris (quick marching).

celeriter [celeri- (in celer) + ter], adv., quickly, speedily, very soon, soon.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], akin to clam, secretly, and caligo, mist], i. v. a., conceal, hide: arma. — Pass., pass unnoticed.

Celtae, -ārum, [Celtic], m. plur., a great race in Gaul and Britain. —
More particularly, the Celts (in a narrower sense, occupying the interior of Gaul).

Celtillus, -i, [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsis, -e, [Cenabō- + ensis], adj., of Cenabum, of the Cenabenses, the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum (Gēn-), -i, [Celtic], n.,

the chief city of the Carnutes, now Orleans (from its later name, urbs Aurelianensis).

Cēnimāgni, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a British tribe.

Cēnomāni, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a division of the Aulerici.

Cēnēsō, cēnēre, cēnōs, cēnsūi, cēnsus, [?], 2. v. a., (perh. fine), reckon, estimate. — Less exactly, give one's opinion, advise, decree (of the Senate), determine.

cēnus, -ōs, [akin to censeo], m., a numbering, a count, a census.

centum (C), [akin to hundred], indecl. num. adj., a hundred.

centuriō, -onis, [centuria- (century) + o], m., a centurion. A subaltern officer from the ranks, commanding a century, originally a hundred men.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, (sifted), certus, (determined), [cer-, separate], 3. v. a., separate. Hence, distinguish, see, behold, descry. —
Also, determine.

certāmen, -inis, [†certā- (in certo, fr. cerno) + mēn], n., a struggle, a contest, rivalry.

certē [old case-form of certus], adv., certainly, surely, at least (surely what is mentioned, if nothing more).

certus, -a, -um, p. p. of cerno as adj., determined, fixed, certain (of the thing as well as the person), sure, established, regular: certiorem facere, inform, order; certissimae res, absolutely certain facts; dies certa, an appointed day; certa subsidia (regular, as organized beforehand); certum in locum (particular).
cervus, -i, [root of cornu (horn) + vus], M., a stag; plur., in military language, a structure of forked stakes (like stags' horns), chevaux-de-frise.

(cēterus), -a, -um, [CE (in ecce, behold, hic, this) + terus (cf. alter)], adj., the rest of (cf. alius, other, not including all). — Usually plur., the rest, the remaining, the others; frumento ceterisque rebus (everything else necessary, where allis would mean some other things).


Cévenna, -ae, [Celtic], f., the Cévennes (a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley).

Chēruscī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a tribe of the Germans between the Weser and the Elbe.

cibārius, -a, -um, [cibō-, food (reduced) + arius], adj., pertaining to food. — Neut. plur. as noun, provisions: molīta (ground corn).

cibus, -ī, [?], M., food.

Cicerō, -ōnis, [cicēr (chickpea) + o, orig. a nickname, possibly from excrescences on the nose], M., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — Esp.: 1. Marcus Tullius, the great orator. — 2. Quintus (Tullius), his brother, in Cēsar’s service in Gaul as legatus.

Cimberius, -i, [akin to Cimbri], M., a prince of the Suevi.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered at Aquae Sextiae and Vercellae by Marius and Catulus, B.C. 102 and 101.


cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnxus, [?], 3. v. a., surround, encircle: flumen oppidum (run around). — Less exactly, man (occupy in a circuit, of walls).

cippus, -i, [?], M., a stake, a pillar, a post. — Plur., apparently jocosely used of a peculiar form of palisades, boundary-posts (?), chevaux-de-frise.

circā [case-form (instr.?) of circus (cf. circum)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around. — See circiter.

circinus, -i, [circō- (cf. circum) + nus], M., a pair of compasses, a compass.

circiter [circō- (around) + ter], adv. and prep. with acc., about. — Fig. (of time, number, and quantity), about (in the neighborhood of), near, not far from.

circuitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumceo.

circuitus, -tūs, [circum-itus], M., a circuit (a going round), a circuitous route, a circumference: in circuitu, all around.

circum [acc. of circō-, around (cf. curvus)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around.

circumdīdō, -cīdere, -cīdi, -cīsus, [circum-caedo], 3. v. a., cut around,
cut (the idea of around being implied in the context). — circum-
cisis, -a, -um, p. p. — Fig., isolated: collis.
circumcludō, -cludere, -clūsī, -clū-
sus, [circum-claudō], 3. v. a., en-
close around, encircle, place a band
around.
circumdatūs, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumdo.
circumdō, -dale, -dedī, -datus,
[circum-do], 1. v. a., put around:
murus circumdatūs (encircling,
thrown around). — By a confusion
of ideas, surround, encircle: aciem
rhedis.
circumdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -duc-
tus, [circum-duco], 3. v. a., lead
around. — Less exactly, of a line,
draw around.
circumdūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumduco.
circu(m)eō, -eire, -iī, -itus, [circum-
eo], irr. v. n., go around. — Becom-
ing active, visit, make a tour of:
hiberna.
circumfundeō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūs-
sus, [circum-fundēo], 3. v. a., pour
around. — Pass. (as reflexive), pour
in, rush around, rush in on all sides.
— Also (cf. circumdo), surround:
multitudine praesidīa (surround with
a swarming multitude).
circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus,
[circum-iacio], 3. v. a., throw around.
— Esp. in a military sense, hurl
around, throw around: circumiecta
multitudine (assailing on all sides).
circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumicio.
circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-
sus, [circum-mitto], 3. v. a., send
around.
circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [cir-
cum-muniō], 4. v. a., fortify around,
throw fortifications around, fortify,
protect (by a fortification).
circummūnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circummunio.
circumplector, -plēctī, -plexus,
[circum-plectō, twine], 3. v. dep.,
embrace, surround.
circumsistō, -stistere, -stetī, no
p. p., [circum-sistō, place (one's
self)], 3. v. a., stand around, flock
around, rally around, surround, hem
in, beset.
circumspiciō, -spiciere, -spēxi,
-spectus, [circum-spectō], 3. v. a.,
look about for. — Fig., think over,
consider, cast about for: animo con-
silia (by way of investigating or
divining).
circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, no p. p.,
[circum-sto, stand], 1. v. a., sur-
round.
circumvāllātus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumvallo.
circumvāllo, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [cir-
cum-vallo, intrench], 1. v. a., sur-
round with walls, blockade, invest.
circumvectus, p. p. of circum-
veho.
circumvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vec-
tus, [circum-vehō], 3. v. a., carry
around. — Esp. pass. as dep., ride
around, sail around.
circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-
tus, [circum-veniō, come], 4. v. a.,
surround. — Fig. (cf. 'get round'),
impose upon, defraud, betray, cir-
cumvent.
circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumvenio.

cis [case-form of ce (cf. ec-ce, cetera)], adv. and prep. with acc., this side, this side of.

Cisalpinus, -a, -um, [cis Alpes (as if cisalpi-) + nus], adj., being this side the Alps, Cisalpine. Gallia (that part of Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps).

Cisrhenanus, -a, -um, [cis Rhe-num (as if cisrhenā-) + nus], adj., being this side the Rhine, this side the Rhine (as adj. phrase). — Plur. as noun, the people this side the Rhine (i.e. towards Gaul).

Cita, -ae, [perh. ci (in cieo) + ta (cf. nauta)], M., a Roman family name. — Only, C. Fusius, a Roman knight doing business in Cenabum.

citatus, -a, -um, p. p. of cito.

citer, -ra, -rum, [CE (cf. cis) + terus (reduced, cf. alter)], adj., on this side (rare and antiquated). — Usually citerior (compar.), nearer, hither (as adj.) : provincia, Gallia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps as opp. to Farther Gaul, cf. Cisalpinus); Hispania (the eastern part of Spain).


citō [abl. of citus (fr. cieo, put in motion)], adv., quickly : citissime (very rapidly).

citrā [case-form f. of citer], adv. and prep. with acc., this side, within (as opp. to beyond).

citrō [dat. of citer], adv., to this side: ulterior, back and forth, to and fro.

civis, -is, [ci (in quies, rest) + vis (weakening of -vus)], c., a citizen, a fellow-citizen.

civitās, -tātis, [civi- + tas], F., the state of being a citizen, citizenship. — Esp., Roman citizenship, the Roman franchise. — Less exactly, a body of fellow-citizens, the citizens (as a body), one’s fellow-citizens, a state (composed of citizens), a city (because the city was the state), a nation, a tribe (politically): expellet e civitate (from the country).

clam [case of st. akin to caligo, mist, etc.], adv. and prep. with abl., secretly.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of clam], 1. v. a., keep crying out, vociferate, cry out.

clāmor, -ōris, [clam (as if root of clam) + or], M., a shouting, a shout, a cry, an outcry.

clandestinus, -a, -um, [unc. st. (perh. manufactured from clam) + tunus], adj., secret, clandestine.

clārus, -a, -um, [CLA (in clam, cry out) + rus], adj., bright, clear. — Fig., famous. — Also (of sound), loud, distinct.

classis, -is, [CLA (in clam, cry out) + tis], F., (a summoning). — Less exactly, the army (called out). — Esp., an army (called out for duty at sea), a fleet (the most common later meaning).

Claudius, -i, [claudō- (lame) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name, probably borrowed from the Sabines. — Esp.,
Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius in B.C. 54.

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus, [of unc. form., akin to clavis, key], 3. v. a., close, shut, fasten. — Esp., claudere agmen, close the line of march, bring up the rear.

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of claudio.

clāvus, -ī, [CLAU- (cf. claudio) + us], M., a nail, spike.

clēmēns, -entis, [perh. CLA (in clarus, bright) + mens (cf. vehementes)], adj., (bright?), gentle (of weather). — Fig., gentle, kind, merciful. — See clementia.

clementia, -ae, [clement- + ia], F., kindness, gentleness, humanity, clemency.

cliēns, -entis, [= cluens, p. of clueo, hear, obey], c., (a hearer), a dependant, a vassal, a retainer.

clientēla, -ae, [client- + ēla (imitating suadela, etc.)], F., vassalage (as condition of a cliens). Hence (viewed fr. the other side), protection. — Phrases: magnae clientelae, many vassals (extensive relations of "clientage"); Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt (surrendered themselves as vassals to, etc.).

clīvus, -ī, [CLI (lean) + vus], M., a slope, a declivity, an acclivity; ad molliendum clivum, to make the ascent easier.

Clōdius, -ī, [the popular form of Claudius], M., a Roman gentile name, belonging to the plebeian branch of the gens Claudia. — Esp., P. Clodius, a most bitter enemy of Cicero. He was killed in a fray by T. Annius Milo, who was defended by Cicero in a famous oration still extant.

Cn., for Gnaeus.

coacervō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-+acervo], i. v. a., heap up, mass together, heap on top (of others).

coāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of cogo.

coāctus, -tūs, [con-actus (cf. cogo, force)], M., compulsion.

coagmentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [coagment- + joint], i. v. a., fasten together.

coartō (-arc-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-arto], i. v. a., press together, confine.

Cocosātes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.

coemō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [con-emo], 3. v. a., buy up.

coeō, -ire, -īvi (-ii), no p. p., [con-eo], irr. v. n., come together, unite, meet.

coepī, -isse, coeptus, [con-tapi (perf. of āpo, cf. apiscor)], def. v. a., (have taken hold of), began, undertook, started. — coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. used in same sense as the active with pass. infinitives.

coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of coepti.

coerceō, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus, [con-arceo], 2. v. a., confine, keep in check.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-agite (in sense of revolve, discuss)], 1. v. a., consider, think over. — Esp. (as to some plan of action), think about, discuss (what to do), have an idea of, intend, consider (that something may happen), expect (contemplate the possibility): cogitare ne, see that not, think how not, plan to prevent; nihil cogitare de bello (have no thought of, etc.).
cognatiō, -onis, [con-(g)natio, birth], F., connection by birth. — Concretely, a family, a clan: magnae cognitionis, having connections (by blood).

cognitus, -a, -um, p. p. of cognosco.

cognoscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitūs, [con-(g)nosco, learn], 3. v. a., learn, find out, find, become aware. — Esp., investigate, inquire into, learn about, study. — In perf. tenses (cf. nosco), know, be aware: cognitum est de aliqua re (something was known); causa cognita, upon a full investigation, after trial; egregia virtute erant cogniti (had been found to be of, etc.); ad cognoscendum, for inquiry.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, [con-ago], 3. v. a., bring together, collect, assemble, get together. Hence, force, compel, oblige: coactus, by compulsion.

cohors, -hortis, [con-†hortis (reduced), akin to hortus, garden] F., an enclosure. Hence, a body of troops, a cohort (the tenth part of a legion, corresponding as a unit of formation to the company of modern tactics, and containing from 300 to 600 men).

cohōtātiō, -onis, [con-hortatio (cf. cohortor)], F., an encouraging, encouragement. — Esp. (to soldiers), an address (almost invariably a preliminary to an engagement).

cohōtor, -ārī, -ātus, [con-hortor], 1. v. dep., encourage, rally, address (esp. of a commander): cohortati inter se, encouraging, urging one another.

coll- (except collis), see conl-.

collis, -is, [?], m., a hill.

colō, colere, colūi, cultus, [?], 3. v. a., till, cultivate. — Fig., attend upon, court, cultivate (as a friend), pay court to, worship (of divinities).

colōnia, -ae, [colonō- (cf. color) + ia], F., (state of a colonist). — Concretely, a colony (both of the establishment and the persons sent). The Roman colonists were and continued to be Roman citizens, and served as armed occupants of the soil where they were sent in the interests of the mother country.

color, -ōris, [prob. akin to cāligō, as opp. to white], m., color.

com- (con-, co-) [the same as cum], adv. in comp., with, together, up. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [con-†buro (?)], relation to uro very uncertain, cf. bustum, funeral pyre], 3. v. a., burn up, consume.

comes, -itis, [con-†mitis (MA in meo, go) + tis], c., a companion (esp. an inferior as attendant or follower).

cōminus [formed by some false analogy from con manus], adv., hand to hand (cf. ēminus, at a distance), in close combat, at short range.

comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of comitor.

comitium, -ī, [?], perh. comit- (sec comes) + ium, the assemblage of followers (cf. servitium)], N., a part of the Forum at Rome. — Plur., an election (assembly of the people for voting).
comitor, -āri, -ātus, [comit-, companion], i. v. dep., accompany. — comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, accompanying.

commēātus, -tūs, [con-meatus, cf. commeo, go to and fro], m., a going to and fro, an expedition (back and forth), a trip. Hence, communications (of an army). — So also, supplies (of an army), provisions.

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [conmemoro, call to mind], i. v. a., remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (in a narrative).

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [commando, committ], i. v. a., intrust, commend, recommend, surrender.

commēo, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [commeo], i. v. n., go back and forth. — With ad, visit, resort to.

commīlītō, -ōnis, [con-milit- (soldier) + o], m., fellow-soldier, comrade.

commimus, see cominus.

commissūra, -ae, [con-missura (cf. committ)], f., a joint, a seam.

commissus, -a, -um, p. p. of committo.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, missus, [con-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go (send) together or altogether). Hence, join, unite, attach: proelium (engage, begin the engagement). — Also, trust: se barbaris committere (put one's self in the hands of, etc.); nihil his committere (place no confidence in, etc.). — Also, admit, allow (to happen), commit (suffer to be done, cf. admitto), perpetrate: neque commissum a se, nothing had been done by them; committere ut posset, leave it possible; nihil committebant, did nothing.

Commius, Í, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Atrebates.

 commodē [old case-form of commodus], adv., advantageously, conveniently, fitly, readily, to advantage: satis commodē, to much advantage; non satis commodē, not very easily.

 commodum, see commodus.

 commodus, -a, -um, [con-modus, measure, adj., (having the same measure with), fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous: commodissimum est, it is the best thing, most advantageous. — Neut. as noun, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: commodō rei publicae, without prejudice to the public interests; omnibus in vita commodis, all the blessings of life; rei familiaris commodum, the interests of one's property; quas sui quisque commodi fecerat (for his own convenience).

 commonefaciō, -facere, -fecī, -factus, [unc. case-form (of st. akin to moneo, warn) -facio], 3. v. a., remind.

 commorātus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoror.

 commoror, -āri, -ātus, [con-moror], i. v. dep., delay, stay, linger.

 commōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoveo.

 commoveō, -movēre, -móvī, -móitus, [con-moveo], 2. v. a., move, stir, agitate. — With reflex., or in pass., be moved, move (intrans.), stir. — Fig., disturb, agitate, affect, alarm, influence (with idea of violent feeling).
communicatus, -a, -um, p. p. of communico.

communicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [communicō (st. of communicus, communī- + cus)], 1. v. a., (make common), share, communicate, consult (with a person about a thing, and so make it common), add (a thing to another), put in along with (something else).

communicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [communicio], 4. v. a., strongly fortify, fortify, intrench, build (make by fortification).

communicis, -e, [con- + munis (cf. munia, duties)], adj., (having shares together), common, general, in common: ex communi consensu, by general agreement; consilium (general plan, concerted action); res (the common interest).

communicatio, -onis, [communicatio (cf. communio)], F., change: aestus (turn).

communicatus, -a, -um, p. p. of communio.

communicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [communicō], 1. v. a., change, exchange: studium belli agricultūra (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture).

comparatus, -a, -um, p. p. of comparo.

1. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [comparo], 1. v. a., get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together, prepare for (with a different view of the object in English): omnibus rebus comparatis, having made all arrangements.

2. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [comparo], 1. v. a., (pair together), compare.

compellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [compello], 3. v. a., drive together (or altogether), drive in, force, drive.

compendium, -i, [com + pendium], N., (a weighing in, cf. expendo, weigh out), a saving, profit.

comperio, -periere, -peri, -pertus, [con-pario], 4. v. a., (get together), find out (by inquiry), ascertain, discover. — compertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., certain (cf. exploratus).

comperio, -periere, -peri, -pertus, [con-pario], 4. v. a., (get together), find out (by inquiry), ascertain, discover. — compertus, -a, -um, p. p. of compierio.

complector, -plecti, -plexus, [complecto, fold], 3. v. dep., embrace, include, enclose.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [con-pleo], 2. v. a., fill up, fill. — With a different conception of the action from Eng., cover, man (of walls).

complexus, -a, -um, p. p. of complector.

complurēs, -plūra (-ia), [con-plus], adj. plur., very many, a great many, a great number of.

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [comporto], 1. v. a., bring together, collect.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus, [comprehendo], 3. v. a., seize, catch, arrest, capture, grasp (one by the hand or clothing). — Fig., take, catch (of fire).

comprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of comprehendo.

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [comprobō], 1. v. a., prove, approve: consilium fortuna (justify).
condicio, -onis, [con-DIC, say (cf. condemn)]
condico, agree], F., terms, condition, terms of agreement, terms (of fighting), state (of slavery): ad iniquam condicionem pugnandi, to fight on unequal terms.

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [con-done], 1. v. a., give up, pardon for the sake of.

Condūsī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse, clients of the Treveri.

condūcō, -duere, -düxi, -ductus, [con-duco, lead], 3. v. a., bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire: manus conducta, a band of mercenaries.

confectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conficio.

conferciō, -fercire, -fersi, -fertus, [con-farcio], 4. v. a., crowd together.
—confertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.

conferō, -erre, -tulī, -lātus, [confero], irr. v. a., bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect.—With or without culpam, lay the blame on, charge. —With reflexive, betake one's self, remove, take refuge. —So with other words, fortunas, (remove, transfer). —Also, postpone, delay.

confertus, -a, -um, p. p. of confercio.

confestim [acc. of †con-festis (cf. festino, hasten)], adv., in haste, immediately, at once.

conficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [con-facio], 3. v. a., (do up), accomplish, complete, finish up, carry out, finish, perform. —Also, make up, write up (of a document), work up, dress (of skins). —Also (cf. Eng. "done up"), finish up, exhaust, wear out: nondum confecta hieme, when the winter was not yet spent, before the end of, etc. —See also confio.

confīdō, -fidere, -fisus sum, [consolidate, trust], 3. v. n., (trust fully), be confident, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on, feel assured. —confisus, -a, -um, p. p. in act. sense, trusting in.

confīgō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [con-figo, fix], 3. v. a., fasten together, fasten.

confinis, -e, [con-finis], adj., having boundaries together, adjacent: confines Senonibus, neighbors of the Senones.

confinium, -i, [confini- + ium], N., neighborhood, confines, common boundaries.

confiō, -fieri, -fectus, [con-fio], irr. v. n. (used rarely as pass. of conficio), be accomplished, etc. (see conficio).

confirmātiō, -ōnis, [con-firmatio, cf. confirmo], F., (positive) assurance, confirmation.

confirmātus, -a, -um, p. p. of confirmo.

confirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [confirmo, make firm], 1. v. a., strengthen.—Fig., strengthen, establish (pacem), reassure, encourage, confirm, assure (by oath): se (resolve). Hence (of things and statements), confirm, declare.

confisus, -a, -um, p. p. of confido.

confiteor, -fitēri, -fessus, [con-
fateor, confess], 2. v. dep., confess, acknowledge, admit.

cōnfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of conficio.

conflagrō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-flagro, blaze], 1. v. n., be on fire, burn.

conflictātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conflictō.

conflictō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-\text{f}lictō, cf. confilio], 1. v. a., dash against (one thing against another), assail, harass.

confilgō, -ligere, -lixī, -lixīs, [con-flīgo, \textit{strike}], 3. v. a. and n., dash against, contend, fight.

confluēns, -entis, [pres. p. of confluō], m., a meeting of two rivers, confluence.


confugīō, -fugere, -\textit{fugī}, no p. p. [con-fugio], 3. v. n., flee, take refuge.

confundō, -fundere, -\textit{fundī}, -\textit{fundus}, [con-fundo], 3. v. a., pour together.

— Less exactly, mingle, mix indiscriminately, unite without distinction, unite, combine.

congregō, -gregēri, -gressus, [con-gradior, \textit{step}], 3. v. dep., come together. — In peace, unite with. — Esp. in war, come in contact with, engage, fight.

congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of congregō.

congressus, -sūs, [con-gressus, cf. congregō], m., an engagement, encounter.

coniciō (-iicio), -icere, -icēri, -ictus, [con-iacio], 3. v. a., throw together, hurl, cast, discharge: se conicere, throw one’s self, rush. — Less exactly (esp. in a military sense), throw (into prison), put (to flight), place, station (cf. military throw troops into, etc.), force. — Fig., put together (of ideas).

coniectūra, -ae, [con-iactura, cf. conicio], F., a guess (“putting two and two together”), a conjecture: coniecturam capere, form a conjecture, infer.

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conicio.

coniunctīm [acc. of tconiunctis (iung (as root) + tis, cf. coniungo)], adv., unitedly, in common, altogether.

coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniungo.

coniungo, -iungere, -iūnīxi, -iūnīctus, [con-iungo, \textit{join}], 3. v. a., unite, connect, fasten together. — In pass., or with reflexive, unite (neut.), connect one’s self, join. — coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., united, closely connected.

coniünx, -iugis, [con-tiux (iug, yoke, as st., with intrusive n from iungo)], c., a spouse. — Esp., f., a wife.

coniūrātiō, -onis, [con-iuratio, cf. coniuro], F., conspiracy, a confederacy.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [coniuro], 1. v. n., swear together, take an oath (together), swear mutual oaths. Hence, conspire, plot.

conlātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of confero.

conlauδātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conlauδō.

conlauδō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
conlectus

[con-laudo], i. v. a., praise (in set terms).

conlectus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conligo.

conligō (coll-), -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [con-legō], 3. v. a., gather together, gather, collect, acquire (by accumulation). — With reflexive, collect one's self, recover.

conligō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-ligō], 1. v. a., bind together, fasten together: scuta (lock together).

conlocātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conlocō.

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-loco, place], 1. v. a., place, set, station (of troops, etc.): angustius milites (stow, in a vessel). — Esp. (with or without nuptum), give in marriage, marry (of a father or guardian). — Fig., settle: rebus conlocandis, making dispositions.

conloquium (coll-), -i, [con-loquium, cf. conloquor], n., a conference, an interview, a parley.

conloquor (coll-), -loqui, -locūtus, [con-loquor], 3. v. dep., (talk together), confer, hold an interview (or parley), parley, converse.

conor, -ārī, -ātus, [from con- to onus, burden], 1. v. dep., attempt, try, endeavor: idem conari, make the same attempt.

conquiēscō, -quīescere, -quīēvī, -quīētūrus, [con-quesco, rest], 3. v. n., rest, repose.

conquīrō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītus, [con-quaero, seek], 3. v. a., search for, seek for, hunt up.

conquisītus, p. p. of conquiro.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, [con-sanguine- (blood) + eus], adj., akin (by blood). — As noun, a kinsman.

cōnscondō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus, [con-scando, climb], 3. v. a., climb, climb upon: navis (in navis) (go on board); vallum (man, mount).

cōnscentia, -ae, [con-scientia, cf. conscius], f., consciousness, privity, conscience, knowledge.

cōnsiciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītus, [con-scisco, decree], 3. v. a., resolve. Less exactly, with dat. of reflex., take to one's self: mortem (commit suicide).

cōnsicius, -a, -um, [con+sicius, sci (in scio, know) + us], adj., knowing (with one's self or another), conscious, aware of.

conscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [con-scribo], 3. v. a., write down. — Esp., enrol, conscribe, levy, enlist.

conscriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of conscribo.

consecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consecro.

consecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-sacro, make sacred], 1. v. a., hallow, consecrate. — consecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., consecrated, sacred.

consector, -ārī, -ātus, [con-sector, freq. of consequor], 1. v. dep., overtake, follow up.

consecutus, -a, -um, p. p. of consequor.

conscensīo, -ōnis, [con+sensio, cf. consentio], f., agreement, unanimity.

conssensus, -sūs, [con-sensus, cf. consentio], m., agreement, consenii, harmonious (or concerted) action.

consentīō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēn
sūrus, [con-sentio, feel], 4. v. n., agree, conspire, make common cause, act with (some one).

conssequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [consequor], 3. v. dep., follow (and stay with), overtake. Hence, obtain, secure, attain, succeed in (some purpose).—Also, follow close upon, succeed, ensue.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [conservo, save], t. v. a., save, preserve, spare. —Also, observe (law, right), regard.

Cōnsidius, -ī, [con-†sidius (akin to sedeō, sit)], a Roman name.—Esp., Publius, a Roman soldier.

cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessūrus, [con-sido], 3. v. n., sit down (in a place).—Less exactly, take a position, halt, encamp, settle.

cōnsilium, -ī, [con-†silium (cf. consul, akin to salio, in some earlier unc. meaning)], N., deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium).—Esp., wise counsel, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, counsel, design, purpose. —And so (design carried out), course, measure, conduct. —Phrases: ipsorum esse consilium (a matter for them to decide); quasi consili sit res, as if it were a matter for consultation; commune consilium, concerted action; publicum consilium, action of the state, official action; barbaris consilium non defuit (an intelligent plan of action).

cōnsimilis, -e, [con-similis], adj., very like, just like.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p., [con-sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v. n., take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (of troops). —In perf. tenses, have a position, stand. Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay. —With in, occupy, rest on. —Fig., depend on, rest on.


cōnsolātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consolor.

cōnsōlor, -āri, ātus, [con-solor, comfort], i. v. dep., console, cheer.—cōnsolātus, -a, -um, p. p. as pres., consoling.

cōnspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicio.

cōnspectus, -tūs, [con-spectus, cf. conspicio], M., sight.—in conspectum, in one's presence; in conspectum proferre (display).

cōnspicatūs, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicor.

cōnspicō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [con-specio, look at], 3. v. a., catch sight of, esp'y, see.

cōspicor, -āri, ātus, [†conspic-, cf. spec, see], i. v. dep., catch sight of, esp'y, see.

cōspirō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [conspiro, breathe], i. v. n., sound together.—Fig., harmonise, agree. —Also, conspire, league together.

cōstanter, [constant- (standing firm) + ter], adv., consistently, uniformly, steadily, with constancy, firmly.

cōstantia, -ae, [constant- (stand-
cōnstitum, consul, -ulis, [con-sul (cf. prae-
sul, exsul), root of salio in some earli-
er unc. meaning], M., a consul (the title 
of the chief magistrate of Rome, cf. consilium).— With proper 
names in abl., the usual way of 
indicating dates: M. Messala et 
M. Pisone consulibus, in the consul-
ship of, etc.; se console, in his con-
sulship, as a date or occasion.

cōnsulātus, -tūs, [†consulā | (cf. consul) + tus], M., consulship.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -sulū, -sultus, [prob. consul, though poss. a kin-
dred or independent verb], 3. v. a. and n., 
deliberate, consult, take coun-
sel, decide. — With acc., consult, take 
the advice of. — With dat., take coun-
sel for, consult the interests of, con-
sult for the welfare of, look out for, 
do a service to: vitae (spare).— 
Phrase: sortibus consultum (est), 
lots were drawn to decide.

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cons-
ultō, decision], 1. v. n., consult: 
de bello (take measures for).

cōnsultō, [prob. like abl. abs. 
used impersonally], adv., with de-
liberation, purposely, designedly.

cōnsultum, i, [N. p. p. of cons-
ulo], N., a decision, an order, a 
decree. — Esp., senatus consultum, 
an order of the senate.
cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmp-
tus, [con-sumo], 3. v. a., (take out
of the general store). Hence, waste,
consume, destroy, spend, exhaust.
cōnsūmp tus, -a, -um, p. p. of
consume.
cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrē-
ctus, [con-surgeo, rise]. 3. v. n., rise,
rise up. — Esp. of a session, break up.
contabulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-
tabulo, cf. tabula, board], i. v. a.,
build up (with floors in stories), floor
with planks. — Also, build up (gen-
erally, as of a wall with towers).
contāgiō, -ōnis, [con-ťtagio, fr.
tAg in tango, touch, cf. contingo],
F., contact. — Esp. with something
noxious, implying contagion.
contāminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of
contamino.
contāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-
tamin- (st. of con-tāmen, i.e. TAG
touch + men)], i. v. a., bring into
contact, unite. — Esp. with notion
of contagion (cf. contagio), contami-
nate: facinore contaminatus (implied
in).
contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēcticus,
[con-ťego], 3. v. a., cover up, cover.
contemnō, -temnere, -tempsi,
-tempts, [con-temno, slight], 3. v.
a., despise, disregard, hold in con-
tempt.
contemptīō, -ōnis, [con-ťemptio,
cf. contemno], F., contempt, scorn:
in contemplationem venire, incur the
contempt, etc.
contemptus, -tūs, [con-ťemptus,
cf. contemno], M., contempt, scorn:
contemptui est, is a matter of ridi-
cule.
contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -ten-
tus, [con-tendo, stretch], 3. v. n.,
strain, struggle, strive, try, endeavor,
exert one’s self, attempt, be zealous:
id contendere et laborare, strive and
exert one’s self for, etc. — Esp. with
verbs of motion, press on, hasten.
— Also, fight, contend, wage war.
— With ad and in like constructions,
hasten, march, start to go (in haste):
vi contendere, to force a passage;
peteret contendit, seek earnestly.
contentīō, -ōnis, [con-ťentio, cf.
contendo], F., struggle, efforts.—Esp.,
contest, fighting, dispute.
contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of
contendo and contineo.
contexō, -textere, -texui, -textus,
[con-ťexo], 3. v. a., interweave, weave
together. — Also, weave (make by
weaving).
contextus, -a, -um, p. p. of con-
texo.
continēns, -entis, pres. p. of con-
tineo, wh. see.
continenter [continent- (holding
together) + ter], adv., continually,
without stopping, continuously, inces-
tantly.
continentia, -ae, [continent- (hold-
ing together) + ia], F., self-restraint,
moderation.
contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tensus,
[con-ťeneo], 2. v. a., hold together,
hold in. Hence, in many fig. mean-
ings, restrain, hold in check, keep
(within bounds), hem in, retain (in
something). — Pass. or with reflex.,
keep within, remain, be included in,
be bounded, consist in (be contained
in). — Also, hold on to, join. — con-
tinēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., (holding together), continual, contiguous, continuous. — Also, restraining one's self, continent. — As noun, the continuous land, the continent.—contentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., satisfied, content.

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [con-tango, touch], 3. v. a. and n., touch, reach, join. — With dat., happen.

continuātiō, -ōnis, [continuā- (cf. continuō) + tio], F., continuation: continuatio imbrimum, incessant rains. continuō [abl. of continuus], adv., immediately, straightway, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um, [con-tenuus (ten in teneo (hold') + uus)], adj., continuous, successive: dies (successive).

contiō, -ōnis, [prob. for conventio, F., an assembly. — Less exactly, an address, a harangue (to an assembly or to soldiers).

contionātus, -a, -um, p. p. of contionor.

contionor, -āri, ātus, [contion-, address], 1. v. dep. harangue, address (an assembly or an army).

contrā [unc. case-form (instr.?)] of contrerus (con- + terus, comp. ending)], adv. and prep. with acc., opposite, contrary to, against, in opposition, on the other hand: contrā atque, contrary to what, etc.

contrahō, -thare, -trāxi, -trāctus, [con-traho], 3. v. a., draw together, draw in, bring together, gather together, contract, narrow, make smaller, bring into smaller compass.

contrārius, -a, -um, [†conterō (see contra) + arius], adj., opposite (lit. and fig.), contrary: ex contrario, on the contrary; in contrariam partem, in the opposite direction.

contrōversia, -ae, [controversō- (opposite) + ia], F., a dispute, a quarrel. — Plur., grounds of quarrel.

contumēlia, -ae, [unc. form., akin to contumax and tumeo, swell], F., (swelling pride?), an outrage, an insult, an affront. — Fig., violence (of waves), buffeting.

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, no p.p., [con-tvalecto, cf. valeo, be well], 3. v. n., recover, get well.

convallis, -is, [con-vallis], F., a valley (enclosed on all sides). — Less exactly, a defile, a valley (of any kind).

convēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of convēho.

convēhō, -vehere, vēxī, vectus, [con-vehō], 3. v. a., bring together, bring in, collect.

conveniō, -venire, -venī, -ventus, [con-venio], 4. v. a. and n., come together, meet, assemble, come in, arrive, agree upon, agree. — With acc., meet, come to. — Also, of things, be agreed upon, be fitting, be necessary (in a loose sense in Eng.).

conventus, -tūs, [con-ventus (cf. convenio and adventus)], m., an assembly, a meeting. — Esp., an assize, court (the regular assembly of Roman citizens in a provincial town on stated occasions, at which justice was dispensed).

conversus, -a, -um, p. p. of convertō.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [con-verteo], 3. v. a., turn about, turn.
— Fig., change: signa (change front, wheel); conversa signa bipartito intulerunt, wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions; conversa signa in hostes inferre, face about and charge, etc.; in fugam conversa, put to flight; conversam [materiam] ad hostem collocabat, placed [fallen trees] with their tops towards the enemy; contra vim fluminis, against the current; itinere converso, altering his course; mentes conversae sunt, their state of mind was changed.

Convictolitavis, -is, [Celtic], m., a young Haeduan nobleman.

convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of con vincio.

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, [con-vinco, conquer], 3. v. a., prove, make good (a charge, etc.): avaritia convicta, found guilty of avarice (changing the point of view for the Eng. idiom).

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con voco], 1. v. a., call together, summon, call (a council).

coorrīor, -oriī, -ortus, [con-orrīor, rise], 3. (and 4.) v. dep., aris, spring up, break out (of a war).

coōrtus, -a, -um, p. p. of coorrīor.

cōpia, -ae, [tōpī- (con-ops, aid) + ia, cf. inopia, inops], f., abundance, plenty, supply (both great and small), quantity, number. — Esp., luxury (abundance of everything). — Plur. (esp. of forces), forces, resources, supplies. — Phrases: copiam facere, afford a supply, give an opportunity; magna copia locorum (choice); copia atque usus, necessary supplies.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, [copia (reduced) + osus], adj., (abounding in wealth), well supplied, wealthy.

cōpula, -ae, [con-tāpula (from ap, lay hold of)], f., (holding together), a grappling-hook.

cor, cordis, [root as st. (akin to Eng. heart)], n., the heart. — Phrase: cordi esse, be dear.

cōrām [unc. case, formed from con and os, face], adv. and prep. with abl., face to face, present, in person.

Coriosolites, -tum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Aremoric Gaul.

corium, -ī, [?], n., a hide, a skin.

cornū, -ūs, [?], n., a horn. — Fig., a wing (of an army).

corōna, -ae, [?], f., a garland. — Fig., a circle (line, of soldiers). — Phrase: sub corona, at auction (the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction).

corpus, -oris, [unc. root + us], n., the body, the person. — Also, a body (dead). — Less exactly, extent (of a camp). — Phrase: magnitudo corporis, size, stature.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī,-ruptus, [con-rumpo, break], 3. v. a., spoil, ruin.

cortex, -icis, [?], m. (also f.), bark.

Cōrus (Caurus), -ī, [?], m., the northwest wind.

cōtēs, -is, (cau-) [akin to cos, whetstone], f., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cotidiānus (quo-), -a, -um, [cotidie- + anus], adj., daily: cotidiano labore.

cotidiē (quo-), [quot (how many)
-die, loc. of dies], adv., daily, every day.

Cotta, -ae, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Aurunculus Cotta, a legatus of Caesar.

Cotuātus, -i, [?], m., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -i, [Celtic], m., a young Hœduan nobleman.

Crassitūdō, -inis, [crassō- + tudo (as if crassitu- + do)], F., thickness.

Crassus, -i, [crassus, fat], m., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus (Licinius) Crassus, consul with Pompey, b.c. 55; one (with Caesar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. Publius Crassus (called Adulescens, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the Triumvir, serving with Caesar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. Marcus Crassus, another son of the Triumvir, quaestor, b.c. 54, in Caesar's army.

Crātēs, -is, [?], F., a hurdle, a fascine (a hurdle used to hold up earthworks in fortification). — Also, wicker (for hurdles).

Crētus, -a, -um, p.p. of creo.

Crēber, -bra, -brum, [crē- (in creo, bring forth) + ber], adj., thick, close, numerous, frequent: arbores (thickly growing); praesidia (continuous, not far apart, at short intervals).

Crēbrō, [prob. abl. of creber], adv., frequently, constantly, in rapid succession, at short intervals.

Crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, [†cred-, faith (of unc. formation) + do, place], 3. v. a. and n., trust, entrust, believe, suppose.

Cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], i. v. a., burn, consume: igni cremari, be burned alive, be burned to death.

Creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [unc. form., akin to cresco], i. v. a., (cause to grow), create. — Esp., elect, choose, appoint.

Crēs, Crētis, [Gr.], m., a Cretan. — As adj., Cretan.

Crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, [st. cré- (also in creō, bring forth) with -soc], 3. v. n., grow, increase, swell (of a river), be swelled, increase in influence (of a man), grow great, grow powerful.

Criticōgnātus, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Arverni.

Cruciātus, -tīs, [cruciā- (st. of crucio, torture) + tus], m., crucifying. Hence, torture. — With a change of relation, suffering (of the person tortured).

Crūdēlis, -e, [†crudē- (in crudescō, akin to crudus, bloody) + lis, cf. Aprilis, animālis], adj., (bloody?), cruel. — See the following.

Crūdēlitās, -tātis, [crudelī- + tas], F., cruelty.

Crūdēliter [crudelī- + ter], adv., cruelly, with cruelty.

Crūs, crūris, [?], N., the lag.

Cubīle, -is, [†cubī- (st. akin to cumbo) + lis (cf. crudelis), N. of adj.], N., a couch, a resting-place, a bed, a lair.

Culmen, -inis, [unc. root (in colo?, rise) + men], N., a height, a top, a summit, a roof.

Culpa, -ae, [?], F., a fault, blame, guilt.

Cultūra, -ae, [cultu- (cf. colo, till)
culturæ: agri cultura, or agricultura, the cultivation of the soil, agriculture.

cultus, -tus, [col (in colo, till) + tus], M., cultivation. — Esp. of one's self, care. Hence, civilization, manner of life, state of civilization.

cum [?], prep. with abl., with.

cum (quom), [case-form of qui], conj., when, while, whenever. — Often rendered by a different construction in Eng.: cum non possent, not being able; cum prohibent, while defending. — Of logical relations (usually with subjv.), when, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although: cum ... tum, while ... so also; cum ... tum maxime, not only ... but especially; cum primum, as soon as.

cumulus, -i, [tcumō + lus], M., a mass, a heap, a pile.

cunctatiō, -onis, [cunctā- (st. of cunctor) + tio], F., hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight.

cunctor, -āri, -ātus, [?], i. v. dep., hesitate, hang back, be reluctant: non quin (have no hesitation in, etc.).

cūncus, -a, -um, [for coniunctus ?], adj., all, all together.

cuneātīm [cuneō-, wedge (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of t cuneātis], adv., in the shape of a wedge. — Esp. of soldiers, in (a peculiar wedge-shaped) column of attack.

cuneus, -i, [akin to conus, cone], M., a wedge.

cuniculus, -i, [Gr ], M., (a cony). — Transf., a burrow. Hence, a mine (esp. in a military sense).

cupidē [old case-form of cupidus], adv., eagerly, zealously, earnestly.

cupiditās, -tātis, [cupidō + tas], F., desire, eagerness, greed. cupidi
tate adductus, through over secal.

cupidus, -a, -um, [noun st. akin to cupidō + dus], adj., eager, c. sirous, longing (for), fond of, ambitious (for), with a passion (for).

cupiō, -pere, -pīvī, -pitus, [partly root verb, partly from t cupi- (cf. cupidus)], 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., be eager (for), be anxious, desire, (stronger than volo). — With dat., wish well to, be zealous for. — Phrase: cupientibus signum dat, gives the sig
nal to his impatient soldiers.

cūr (quōr), [perh. for qua re], adv., why (rel. and interr.).

cūra, -ae, [akin to caveō, beware], F., care, anxiety, attention: curae alicui esse, be one's care, object of one's attention.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cūra], 1. v. a. and n., take care, provide for. — With gerundive, cause (to be done), have (done).

currus, -ūs, [CUR (?) + us, cf. cur-
ro, run], M., a chariot (= essedum).

cursus, -sūs, [CUR (?) + tus, cf. curro, run], M., a running, running, speed, a run (in concrete sense), a course (space or direction run): cursu
sum adaequare (keep up with); cursu incitato or magno, at full speed: eodem cursu, with the same impetus, without stopping; in hoc medio cursu, midway of this passage, from Britain to Ireland.

custōdia, -ae, [custōd- (guard) + ia], F., custody, guard (state of being guarded). — Plur. (concretely) guards, keepers.
custōdiō

custōdiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [custōd-, guard, as if custodi-], 4. v. a., keep under guard, guard.

custōs, -tōdis, [unc. st. + dis (cf. merces, -ēdis, palus, -ūdis)], c., a guard, a watchman, a keeper, a spy.

D.

D, [half of CÌ = M], 500.

D., for Decimus.

Dācus, -a, -um, [?], adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary, Gallicia, Wallachia, etc.).— Plur., the Dacians.

damnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of damnō.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnō-, loss], I. v. a., (fine), find guilty, condemn.

damnum, -ī, [?; DA (give) + menus (cf. alumnus)], N., (fine), loss.

Dānuvius (-bius), -ī, [?], M., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

dātus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in idem, dum)], adv. (only in comp.) and prep. with abl., down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason; de populo mereor (deserve well or ill of; properly, win from); de consilio (by, cf. ex).— Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris.— Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for: de regno desperare; nihil de bello timere, have no fear of war; de potentatu contendere; de iniuriis satisfacere. — In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia.—

custōdīa, -e, [Celtic], a city of the Hædui, on the Loire, Decise.
decidō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p., [decadō], 3. v. n., *fall off* (or down), fall (from one’s horse).

decimus, -a, -um, [tēdecī- (as st. of decem) + mus], adj., tenth. — Masc. as noun, a Roman prænomen (see Brutus).

decipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [de-capio], 3. v. a., (take off, catch), beguile, deceive.

declārō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, [de-claro], 1. v. a., (clear off), make plain, declare (decide and state).

declīvis, -e, [de-clivis (or clivus, slope)], adj., sloping down, inclined. — Plur. as noun, slopes.

declīvitās, -tātis, [declivi- + tas], F., slope: ad declivitatem, downward.

decrētum, -ī, [prop. N. of decre-tus], N., a decree, a decision.

decrētus, -a, -um, p. p. of decerno.

decumānus, -a, -um, [decumō (reduced) + anus], adj., belonging to the tenth : porta (the rear gate, of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted).

decurīō, -ōnis, [decuria- (reduced) + o], M., a commander (of a decuria of cavalry, a small squadron).

decurrō, -currere, -currī (cucurrī), -cursūrus, [de-curro], 3. v. n., run down, run away, hurry off.

decus, -oris, [unc. root (cf. deceit, it becomes) + us], N., honor, glory.

dēdecus, -oris, [de-decus], N., disgrace, dishonor.

dēditicīus, -a, -um, [dēditō- (reduced) + cius], adj., surrendered. — Plur. as noun, prisoners (taken by surrender), subjects, persons surrendered.

dēdītio, -ōnis, [de-datio, cf. dedo], F., surrender: in dēdītionem accipere, receive one’s surrender; in dēdītionem venire, to surrender.

dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of dedo.

dēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [de-do], 3. v. a., give over, surrender, give up, devote. — In pass. or with reflex., surrender one’s self, submit.

dēducō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus, [de-duco], 3. v. a., lead down or off, lead away, withdraw, draw off (praesidia), take away (of men), bring away, lead (from one place to another), bring (into a situation). — Fig., induce, bring, lead. — Esp. of ships, launch (draw down); of women, marry (used of the man, cf. nubo); of things, bring, draw, turn. So, raise (a man to fortune). — Also, rem in periculum (cause a perilous situation); re in controversiam deducta (coming to, etc.); deduci milites (march out, led by their commander).

dēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of deduco.

dēfatīgātiō (-fet-), -ōnis, [de-fatigatio], F., exhaustion.

dēfatīgātus (-fet-), -a, -um, p. p. of defatigo.

dēfatigō (-fet-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-fatigō], 1. v. a., wear out, exhaust, worry, tire out.

defectīō, -ōnis, [de-factio, cf. deficio, fail], F., falling off, defection, falling away, revolt.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fensus, [de-fendo, strike], 3. v. a., ward off, defend one’s self against. — Also, with changed relation, defend, protect.
défensio, -onis, [de-tfensio, cf. defendo], F., a defence.

defensor, -bris, [de-tfensor, cf. defendo], M., a defender. — Also, a means of defence, a defence, a buffer.

Phrase: speciem defensorum, a show of defence.

deférō, -ferre, -tuli, -látus, [defero], irr. v. a., carry down, carry away, bring, land (of ships). — Pass., be borne down or on, drift (of ships), turn aside: delati in scrobès (falling). — Fig., confer upon, put in one's hands, hand over, report, lay before.

defēsus, -a, -um, p. p. of defetscor.

defētīscor, -etīscti, -fessus, [defatiscor, gaffe], 3. v. dep., crack open.

— Fig., become exhausted. — défēsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., exhausted: défēsus, an exhausted man.

deficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [defacio, make], 3. v. a. and n., fail, fall away, revolt, fall off, abandon (with ab): animo (despond).

defigō, -figere, -fixi, -fuxus, [de-figo, fasten], 3. v. a., fix (in or down), plant, set, fasten, drive down.

definīō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [de-finio, end], 4. v. a., set limits to, fix, appoint.

defixus, -a, -um, p. p. of defigo.

defluō, -fluere, -fluxī, -fluxūrus, [de-fluo], 3. v. n., flow down, flow apart, divide (of a river).

defore, see desum.

deformis, -e, [de-forma (shape), weakened and decl. as adj.], adj., uncomely, unshapely, ugly, bad-looking.

defugiō, -fugere, -fugi, no p. p., [de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., fly from, avoid, fly, flee.

deficiō (déic-), -icere, -icēt, -lectus, [de-iacio], 3. v. a., cast down, throw down, drive off, drive out, dislodge, kill (pass., fall), overthrow, throw on shore (of ships), deprive, reduce: ea spe deiecti, disappointed in this hope.

defiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deicio.

defiectus, -tūs, [de-ictus, cf. iacio, throw], M., a declivity, a slope.

deinceps, [dein- (cf. deinde) + ceps, cf. CAP in capio], adv., in succession.

deinde (dein) [de-inde, thence], adv., then, next.

defātus, -a, -um, p. p. of defero.

deflectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-flecto, cf. delicio], 1. v. a., delight.

— Pass., take delight, delight.

deflectus (dī-), -tūs, [de-lectus, cf. deligo, select], M., a levy, a conscription.

deflectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo.

defēleō, -lēre, -lēvi, -lētus, [de-fleo (akin to lino)], 2. v. a., (smear out), blot out, wipe out (of a disgrace). — Fig., annihilate, destroy.

defētus, -a, -um, p. p. of deleo.

defēlibēro, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-libero, perh. akin to libra, balance], 1. v. a. and n., discuss, consult, deliberate: re deliberata, after discussing the matter.

defēlibrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†de-librō, bark (adj. de-liber)], 1. v. a., peel, strip (of bark).

deflictum, -i, [N. p. p. of delinquo], N., thing left undone, failure, offence.
dēligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of de-ligo (āre).

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [de-legō], 3. v. a., choose out, select.—
dēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., chosen, picked.

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-ligo, bind'], 1. v. a., tie down, moor, tie.


dementia, -ae, [dement- + ia], F., madness, folly.

dēmessus, -a, -um, p. p. of demeto.

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus, [de-meto, reāp], 3. v. a., reāp, cut down.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [de-migro, decēr], 1. v. n., move away (change residence), move one's effects, emigrate.

dēminuō, -uere, -uī, -utus, [de-minuō, cf. minus], 3. v. a. and n., diminish, curtail, lessen, detract: de voluptate quicquam (make any diminution of): quid de legibus (disregard in any manner); de sua benevolentia (lessness his good-will).

dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of demīnuo.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mēsi, -missus, [de-mitto], 3. v. a., let go down (cf. mitto), let down, stick down (at the bottom of a ditch).— In pass. or with reflex., let one's self down, descend, set one's self down.— Fig., despond (se animo), be discouraged.— dēmissus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., low-hanging, bowed (of the head).

dēmō, dēmere, dēmūsi, dēmptus, [de-emo, take], 3. v. a., take down, take off, remove, take away.

dēmōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of demonstrō.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-monstro, show], I. v. a., point out; show, represent, mention, state, speak of, make known.

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus, [de-morōr], I. v. dep., delay, retard.

dēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of demo.

dēmum [acc. of ādēmus (superl. of de), nethermost, last], adv., at last, at length (not before).

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-nego], I. v. a. and n., deny, refuse, say not.

dēni, -ae, -a, [for decni, decem reduced + nus], distrib. num. adj. plur., ten each, ten (on each side), ten (in sets of ten).

dēnique [ādenē- (de + nus, cf. demum) que], adv., at last: mulit denique die, not till late, etc.— Of order, finally, in a word, in short. — Of preference, at any rate (if no better, etc.).

dēnsus, -a, -um, {?}, adj., thick, crowded, dense.

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-numtio], I. v. a., announce (with notion of threat), threaten, declare, warn, order.

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [de-pello], 3. v. a., drive off, drive (away), dislodge, avert.

dēperdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [de-perdō], 3. v. a., lose, be deprived of: tantum opinionis (forfeit).

dēpereō, -pērīre, -perīi, -perītūrus, [de-pereō], irr. v. n., be lost.
dépōno, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, [de-pono], 3. v. a., lay down, lay aside, deposit. — Fig., lose, abandon (hope), blot out (memory), resign.

dépopulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépopulor.

dépopulor, -āri, -ātus, [de-popol-or], 1. v. dep., ravage, lay waste; p. p., pass., laid waste.

déportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-porto], 1. v. a., carry off, carry away, remove.

déposcō, -poscere, -possci, no p. p., [de-posco], 3. v. a., demand earnestly, demand, call for, claim.

dépositus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépōno.

déprecātor, -ōris, [de-precator, cf. deprecor], M., a mediator (to beg off something for somebody): eo deprecatore, by his mediation.

déprecor, -āri, -ātus, [de-precor], 1. v. dep., pray to avert something, pray (with accessory notion of relief), beg, beg off, pray for pardon, pray to be spared, resort to prayers, ask for quarter, beseech.

déprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, hēnusus, [de-prehendo, grāpō], 3. v. a., capture, catch, seize, take possession of. — As in Eng., catch (come upon), surprise.

déprehēnusus, -a, -um, p. p. of déprehendo.

dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-pugno], fight decisively, fight it out.

dēpulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépello.

dērēctē (dī-) [old case-form of derectus], adv., straight: ad perpendiculum (perpendicularly).

dērēctus (dī-), -a, -um, p. p. of derigo.

dērigō (dī-), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [de-regō], 3. v. a., straighten out, direct: aciem (form); opera (set in order, arrange). — dérēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., straight, straight up and down, perpendicular.

dērīvātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dérivo.

dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [perh. immediately fr. de-rivus (brook), prob. through adj. st.], 1. v. a., draw off (water), divert.

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-rogo, in its political sense], 1. v. a., take away, withdraw.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēn-sūrus, [de-scando], 3. v. n., climb down, descend. — Fig., resort to, have recourse to, adopt (with ad).

dēsecō, -secāre, -secui, -sectus, [de-seco], 1. v. a., cut off.

dēserō, -serere, -serui, -ser tus, [de-sero, join], 3. v. a., disunite. — Esp., abandon, forsake, give up, leave in the lurch. — dēsēr tus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., deserted, solitary.

dēsertor, -ōris, [de-īser tor, cf. desero], M., a deserter.

dēsertas, -a, -um, p. p. of dēsero.

dēsiderātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēsidero.

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, cf. considero], 1. v. a., feel the want of, desire, miss, need, desire (want to see), lose (of soldiers). — Pass., be missing (lost): perpauci desiderati quin cuncti, etc. (all with very few exceptions).
dèsidia, -æ, [desid- (st. of déses, de-SED as st.}], F., idleness, sloth.

dèsignâtus, -a, -um, p. p. of désigno.

dèsignò, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [designo], 1. v. a., mark out, indicate, mean.

dèsiliiô, -silire, -silui, -sultus, [desalio], 4. v. n., leap down, leap (down), jump overboard, dismount.

dèsistô, -sistere, -stīt, -stītūrus, [desisto], 3. v. n., stand off, cease, stop, desist from, abandon: fuga (cease flying).

dèspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio.

dèspectus, -tūs, [despectus, cf. despicio], m., a view down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet despectūs (sheer precipices).

dèspērātiô, -ōnis, [desperatio, cf. despero], F., despair, desperation.

dèspērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of despero.

dèspērō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [déspero, cf. spes, hope], 1. v. n. (but see below), cease to hope, despair.—

dèspērātus, -a, -um, as pass., despaired of. — Also as adj., (hopeless?), perh. orig. despaired of), hence desperate.

despiciô, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [despecio], 3. v. a. and n., look down, look down upon. — Fig. (cf. Eng. equivalent), look down upon, despise.

despoliô, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [despolio], 1. v. a., strip off. — With change of relation, strip (also fig., as in Eng.).

dèstinâtus, -a, -um, p. p. of destino.

dèstinô, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [perh. dèstina, a prop (fr. de-STA-nus)], 1. v. a., fasten, make fast, make firm, get fast hold of, catch firmly. Hence, fig., fix upon, appoint, choose, destine.

dèstituô, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus, [dèstātuo], 3. v. a., set apart (from one's self), abandon, desert.

dèstitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of dèstituo.

dèstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of dèstringo.

dèstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus, [dèstringo], 3. v. a., strip off. — Also (cf. despolio), strip, draw (of swords, stripping them of their scabbards).

dèsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [dèsum], irr. v. n., (be away), be wanting, be lacking, fail. — Esp., fail to do one's duty by, etc. — Often, lack (changing relation of subj. and following dat.), be without, not have.

dèsuper [de super], adv., from above.

dèterior, -ius, [comp. of dêter (de + terus, cf. interior)], adj., (farther down), inferior, worse: deteriora vectigalia facere (impair).

dèterreô, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, [dèterreo], 2. v. a., frighten off, deter, prevent (esp. by threats, but also generally).

dètestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dètestor.

dètestor, -āri, -ātus, [dètestor], 1. v. a., (call the gods to witness to prevent something), entreat (from a thing). — Also, curse.

dètineô, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus,
détrictō, 3. v. a., hold off, deter, delay, stop.

détractō (-trecto), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-trecto], i. v. a., (hold off from one's self), avoid, shun.

détractus, -a, -um, p. p. of détthora.

détrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, [de-trahō], 3. v. a., drag off, snatch (away). — With less violence, take away, take off, withdraw (with no violence at all).

détrectō, see detrimentō.

détrimentōsus, -a, -um, [detrimentō- (reduced) + osus], adj., detrimental, hurtful.

détrimentum, -i, [de-trimentum (tri- in tero, rub, + mentum), cf. dētero], N., (a rubbing off), loss, injury. — Esp., defeat, disaster.

déturbaōs, -a, -um, p. p. of déturbo.

déturbo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-turbo, disturb], i. v. a., drive off (in confusion).

dēurō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [de-uro], 3. v. a., burn off, burn up.

deus, -i, [akin to divus, Iovis, dies], M., a god.

dēustus, -a, -um, p. p. of deuro.

dēvehō, -vēhere, -vēxī, -vectus, [de-veho], 3. v. a., carry away, bring (to a place), bring along.

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [de-venio], 4. v. n., come away, land (come down from the sea), come (from one place to another).

dēvexus, -a, -um, [prop. a p. p. of déveho], adj., sloping. — Neut. plur. as noun, slopes, hillsides.

dēvictus, -a, -um, p. p. of devinco.

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, [de-vinco], 3. v. a., conquer (so as to prostrate), subdue (entirely).

dēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-voco], i. v. a., call down (or away). — Esp., fig., invite, bring : fortunas in dubium (riskē).

dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of dévoveo.

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, [de-voveo], 2. v. a., vow (away). — Less exactly, devote. — dévōtus, -a, -um, p. p. as noun, a devoted follower (sworn to die with his companion).

dexter, -era, -erum, (-tra, -trum), [unc. st. (perh. akin to digitus?) + terus], adj., right (in the right hand). — dextra, F., (sc. manus), the right hand (esp. used as a pledge of faith, as with us).

Diablintes (-tres), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci.


dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dicō- (cf. causi-dicus)], i. v. a., adjudge, assign (in some legal manner). — Less exactly (esp. with reflex.), assign, make over : se in clientelam (bind one's self, attach one's self ); se in servitutem (surrender).

dicō, dicere, dīxi, dīctus, [DIC, in dico and dicins], 3. v. a. and n., (pointout?), say, speak, name. — Esp., with authority, name, appoint, fix: ius (administer, cf. dico); sententiam (give). — Special uses : dicunt, they
say; causam dicere, plead one’s cause, hence be tried, be brought to trial. — See also dictum.

dictiō, -onis, [dic (as root of dico) + tio], F., a speaking, a pleading (cf. dico): causae (pleading one’s cause, trial).

dictum, -i, [N. p. p. of dico], N., a thing said, a statement, a remark, a command: dicto audiens esse aliqui (be obedient, obey).

dīducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus, [dis-duco], 3. v. a., draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide.

diēs, -ēī, [prob. for dives, DVI + AS], M. (rarely F. in some uses), a day (in all Eng. senses). — Also, time: in diēs, from day to day, with idea of increase or diminution: diem ex die duce, put off a thing day after day; ad diem, on the day; dies longior, a later time.

differō, differre, distulī, dilātus, [dis-fero], irr. v. a. and n., bear apart, spread. — Also, postpone, defer, differ.

dificilis, -e, [dis-facilis, easy], adj., not easy, difficult: iter (hard to pass over).

difficultās, -tātis, [difficili- (weakened) + tās], F., difficulty: magna difficultate adficioebatur, was much troubled; rei frumentariae (difficulty of supplying grain).

dificulter [difficili- (weakened) + ter], adv., with difficulty; compar., with greater difficulty.

diffidō, -fidere, -fusus sum, [dis-fido], 3. v. n., distrust, not have confidence.

diffīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of diffido.
discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, [dis-cerno, separate], 3. v. a., separate, distinguish.

dissensus, -sūs, [dis-Ńcensus, cf. discendo], M., a departure, a withdrawal.

disciplīna, -ae, [discipulō- (reduced) + ina, cf. rapina], F., (pu-pillage?), discipline, instruction, a system (of doctrine, etc.), a course of instruction.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [dis-claudo], 3. v. a., shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide.

discoī, discere, didicī, discītūrus, [for ċdiscō (DIC + sco)], 3. v. a. and n., learn: discendi causa, for instruction.

discrimen, -inis, [dis-crimen, cf. discerno], N., a separation, a decision. Hence, a moment of decision, a crisis, critical condition, danger.

discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of discutio.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [dis-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., strike (or shake) apart, beat away, drive away, clear away, dislodge, shatter.

disiciō, -icare, -iecī, -lectus, [dis-iacio], 3. v. a., hurl apart, break up (a phalanx), disperse, tear off (yards).—disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., scattered, broken, in disorder: pabulatio (in widely scattered places).

disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of disicio.

dispūr, -paris, [dis-par], adj., unequal, inferior, ill-matched, different.

disparō, -are, -āvi, -ātus, [dis-
paro], 1. v. a., scatter, separate, (cf. dissipungo).

dispersgō, -spergere, -spersi, -sper-
sus, [dis-spargo, scatter], 3. v. a.,
scatter, disperse.

dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. of dis-
pergo.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuí, -positus,
[dis-pono], 3. v. a., place about (in
various places), station (variously),
array (at several posts).

dispositus, -a, -um, p. p. of dis-
pono.

disputātiō, -ōnis, [dis-putatio, cf.
disputo], F., discussion, dispute.

disputō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dis-
puto, reckon], 1. v. n. and a., discuss,
investigate.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, [dis-†sensio (cf.
dissentio)], F., difference of opinion,
disagreement, dissension.

dissentīō, -sentīre, -sēnsi, -sēn-
sūrus, [dis-sentīo, feel], 4. v. n.,
differ in opinion (cf. sentio), be at
variance, disagree (ab, with).

disserō, -ere, [dis-sero], 3. v. a.,
plant here and there, place at inter-
vals.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dis-
simulo, make like], 1. v. a. and n.,
(pretend something is not), conceal
(what is), dissemble.

dissipātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dis-
sipo.

dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dis-
tsupo, throw], 1. v. a., scatter, dis-
perse: dissipati, straggling troops.

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suā-
sus, [dis-suadeo], 2. v. a., advise to
the contrary, oppose (in argument),
dissuade.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus,
[dis-teneo], 2. v. a., keep apart, hold
asunder, keep from uniting, cut off
(in military sense), isolate.

dīstō, -stāre, [dis-sto], 1. v. n.,
stand apart, be distant: quantum
iunctura distabat (as far as the dis-
tance between, etc.); quantum summa
labra distabant (the width of the
ditch) at the top.

distrāhō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus,
[dis-traho], 3. v. a., drag asunder,
separate. Hence, distract.

distribuō, -buere, -buī, -būtus,
[dis-tribuo, assign], 3. v. a., assign
(to several), distribute, divide.

dītissimus, -a, -um, superl. of
dives.

dīū [prob. acc. of st. akin to
dies], adv., for a time, a long time, for
some time, long: tam dīū, so long;
quam dīū, how long, as long as,
dīutius, any longer; dīutissime,
for the longest time, longest.

diurnus, -a, -um, [dīius, akin to
dīu and dīes, + nus], adj., of the
day, daily (as opposed to nightly):
nocturnis diurnisque itineribus (by
night and day).

diūtīnus, -a, -um, [dīu + tinus],
adj., (long in time), long continued.

dīuturnitās, -tātis, [diuturno- +
tas], F., length of time, long continu-
ance, length (in time).

diūturnus, -a, -um, [dīu + turnus,
cf. hesternus], adj., long continued,
long (in time).

diversus, p. p. of divertō.

dīvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus,
[dis-vertō], 3. v. a. and n., turn
aside (or apart), separate. — diver-
sus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate, distant, diverse, different.

dives, -itis, [?] adj., rich.

Diviciacus, -i, [Celtic], m.: 1. A leader of the Hædui, brother of Dunmorix.— 2. A leader of the Suessiones.

Dividō, -onis, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Helvetii.

Dolos, -a, -um, [divō- (as if divi) + nus], adj., of the gods, divine: res divinae, matters of religion, religion.

1. dō, dare, dedi, datus, [da, give, cf. 2. dō], 1. v. a., give, afford, offer, allow, concede, assign, grant: responsum (answer, reply); sibi minus dubitationis dari, that he had less hesitation; filiam in matrimonium (marry); se vento (run before the wind); manus (submit, yield, from holding out the hands to be bound); hostes in fugam (put to flight); operam (take pains, exert one's self, see to it that, etc.); negotium uti (employ one to, etc., engage one to, etc.); suspicionem (afford, make a show, but also have an appearance); arbitros (assign referees, a judicial function).

2. dō [DA, place], confounded with 1. dō, but appearing in comp., place, put, as abdō, condō.

Docēō, docère, docēf, doctus, [unc. formation akin to dico and disco], 2. v. a., teach, show, inform, represent, state (in the course of the narrative).

Documentum, -i, [docu- (?) (as st. of doceō) + mentum], n., a means of teaching, a proof, a warning, an example.

Doleō, dolère, dolui, dolitūrus, [perh. dōl- (st. of dolus, craft)], 2. v. n., feel pain, suffer. — Esp. mentally, be pained, grieve.

Dolor, -ōris, [dol- (as root of doleo) + or], m., pain (physical or mental), distress, indignation, chagrin, vexation: magno dolore ferre, be very indignant, feel much chagrin; magno esse dolori, to be a great annoyance or sorrow; almost concrete, a grievance.

Dolus, -i, [perh. akin to doleo, originally stroke ?], m., an artifice, deceit, tricks, a stratagem.

Domesticus, -a, -um, [domō- (as if domes-, cf. modestus) + ticus], adj., (of the house), of one's home, one's own, at home: bellum (domestic, internal, intestine).

Domesticum, -i, [perh. domō- + ticium (fr. root of colo)], n., an abode, a house, a dwelling-place, a house (as a permanent home).

Dominor, -ārī, -ātus, [dominō-], 1. v. dep., rule, be master.

Dominus, -i, [domō- (ruling) + nus], m., a master, an owner.

Domītius, -i, [domītō- (reduced) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul in B.C. 54.

Domus, -i (-ūs), [DOM (build ?) + us (-os and -us)], f., a house, a home: domi, at home; domum, home,
to one's home; domo, from home; domo exire, go away, emigrate.

donátus, -a, -um, p. p. of dono.

Donnotaurus, -i, [Celtic], m., a Gallic name. — Esp., Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus, a chief of the Helvetii, son of C. Valerius Caburus, and brother of C. Valerius Procillus. The first two names of these persons are Roman, taken from the name of their patron.

donō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [donō-], i. v. a., present, give (as a gift). — Also, honor with a gift, present (one with a thing); civitate aliquem donare, give one the rights of citizenship.

dōnum, -i, [DA (give) + nus], n., a gift.

dorsum (-us), -ī, [?], n. (and m.), the back. — Less exactly, a summit (of a long ridge).

dōs, dōtis, [DA (give) + tis (reduced)], F., (a gift). — Esp., a marriage gift, a dowry, a portion (given at marriage).

druides, -um, [Celtic], m., the Druids, the priests of the Gallic religion.

Dubis, -is, [Celtic], m., the Doubs, a river of Gaul, flowing from the Jura into the Saône.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, [dubitā- (st. of dubito) + tio], F., doubt, hesitation: aliqui minus dubitationis dari, to feel less doubt or hesitation.

dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, [dubito- (partic. of lost verb dubo ?), cf. dubius], i. v. n., doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful. — Also (absolutely, or with inf., rarely with quin), hesitate, feel hesitation, vacillate.

dubius, -a, -um, [dubio + bius, cf. superbus and dubito], adj., doubtful: est dubium, there is doubt, it is doubtful.

ducentī, -ae, -a, [duō-centi (plur. of centum)], adj., two hundred.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [duc (in dux)], 3. v. a., lead, draw, bring (of living things): primum pilum (be first centurion). — Esp. of a general, lead, march. — With or without in matrimonium, marry (of the man). — Less exactly, run (a line, a ditch), draw, make. — Fig., prolong, drag out. — As mercantile word, and so fig., reckon, consider.

ductus, -tūs, [duc + tus], m., lead, command.

dum [pron. DA, prob. acc., cf. tum], conj., at that time. — Also, while, so long as. Hence, till, until.

Duennorix, -īgis, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Hædui, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o, [dual, of st. ḍwój-, cf. bis], num. adj., two.

duodecim [duo-decem], indecl. num. adj., twelve.

duodecimus, -a, -um, [duo-decimus], num. adj., twelfth.

duodeñi, -ae, -a, [duo deni], num. adj., twelve (in a set).

duodeviginti [duo de viginti, twenty], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.

duplex, -plicis, [duo + plex, cf. plico, fold], adj., two-fold, double: acies (in two divisions, arranged for successive attacks in the same direction, or for the same tactical purpose).
duplicō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [duplic-], t. v. a., duōdλε, increase two-fold.

dūritia, -ae, [durō + tia], f., hardship, hardship.

dūrō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [durō-], t. v. a., harden, toughen, make hardy.

Dūrocortorum, -i, [Celtic], N., the chief city of the Remi, now Rheims.

ē, shortened form of ex (esp. in composition), which see.

eā [instr. or abl. of is], adv., this way, that way, thus, in that direction, in that quarter.

Eburōnes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Belgian tribe, dependents of the Treveri, living north of these between the Meuse and the Rhine.

Eburōvīces, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci living in the region of modern Perche.

ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, no p.p., [ex-disco], 3. v. a., learn off, learn by heart, commit to memory.

ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of edo.

ēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [ex-do], 3. v. a., put forth, give forth: exempla cruciatussque (make an example by inflicting severe torture). — ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., elevated, raised, high.

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -docutus, [ex-doceo, teach], 2. v. a., show forth, explain, inform, tell, instruct.

ēducō, -ducible, -duxī, -ductus, [ex-duco], 3. v. a., lead out, lead forth, draw (a sword), bring out (baggage-train).

ēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of educo.

effariō (-ferc-), -farcire, -farsi, -fertus, [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., stuff out, fill in (solid).

effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-tfemino, or perch. ἐfēminō- (or -i)], in either case from femina], t. v. a., make into a woman. — Less exactly, (make like a woman), enervate, weaken: animos (enfeeble, debauch).

effereō, efferre, extuli, ēlatūs, [ex-ferō], irr. v. a., carry out, bring out, carry away. — Less exactly and fig., spread abroad, make known, publish abroad, puff up, elate (cf. Eng. “carried away”). — Also (cf. edo), raise up.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ex-facio], 3. v. a., make out, make, enable, accomplish, cause, produce, cause to be, make into, make out (furnish): ut praebērent (make them afford); ut sint laboris (make capable of); ut posset (make possible); classem (get together, construct).

effodīō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus.
effossus, -a, -um, p. p. of effodio.

effugio, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitūrus, [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., escape, flee (absolutely), fly from.

gēns, pres. p. of egeo.
gegēo, egeère, eguī, no p. p., [† egō- (cf. indigus, in want)], 2. v. n., want, need, be in want.— egnēs, -entis, pres. p. as adj., needy, destitute.

egestās, -tātis, [unc. st. (perh. egent-) + tās], F., poverty, destitution.

ego, meī, [cf. Eng. I], pron., I (me, etc.). — Plur., nōs, we, us, etc.

egomet, nōsmet, etc., pron. emph., with encl. -met, I, we.

ēgregior, -gredī, -gressus, [ex-gradior, step], 3. v. dep., march out, go out, move beyond: finis (pass beyond); navi (land, disembark); unde erant egressi, the place they had left; ex oppido (evacuate).

ēgregiē [old case-form of egregiōs, adv., remarkably, finely, extremely well.

ēgregiōs, -a, -um, [ex grege (out of the herd) + ius], adj., out of the common, remarkable, superior, excellent, uncommon, special.

ēgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of egridior.

ēgressus, -sūs, [e-gressus, cf. ingressus and egredior], m., a landing.

ēciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus, [ex-iacio], 3. v. a., cast out, drive out, cast up (cf. edo). — With reflex., rush out, rush.

ēciusmodi [eius modi], as adj. phrase, of this kind, of such a kind, such, of such a nature, of this nature.

ēlabor, -lābī, -lāpsus, [ex-labor], 3. v. dep., slip out, escape.

ēlāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of elabor.

ēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of effero.

Elaver, -veris, [Celtic], N., a tributary of the Loire, now Allier.

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of eligo.

elephantus, -i, [Gr. acc. έλεφαντα, declined], M., an elephant.

Eleuteti, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people dependent on the Arverni.

ēliciō, -licere, -licui, -licitus, [ex-lacio], 3. v. a., entice out, draw out.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lectus, [ex-lego], 3. v. a., pick out, select.— īlectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., picked (troops).

Elusātēs, -ium, [Iberian], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [ex-migrō], 1. v. n., remove (permanently), emigrate. — With domo (in same sense).

ēmineō, -nēre, -nūi, no p. p., [ex-łmineo, project], 2. v. n., stand out, project.

ēminus [ex manu, hand, cf. cominus], adv., at a distance, at long range.

ēmittō, -mittere, -misci, -missus, [ex-mitto], 3. v. a., let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl, discharge. — Pass., or with reflex., rush out.

ēmō, emere, ēmi, ēemptus, [EM, orig. take], 3. v. a., (take, only in compounds). — Esp., buy (cf. Eng. sell, orig. give), purchase.
ėnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus, [ex-nāscor], 3. v. dep., spring out, grow out.
ėnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enascor.
ėnīm [prob. e (in en, eccē) + nam], (always postpositive) conj., really.—Esp. as explanatory, for, but, now, for in fact: neque enim, for of course . . . not, for you see . . . not.
ėnūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enuntio.
ėnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-nuntio, announce], I. v. a., make known, report, disclose, reveal: hostibus enuntiari, (that) the enemy were informed of.
ēō, īre, īvī (iii), itūrus, [root i], irr. v. n., go, pass, march, advance, proceed.—Pass. inf. īri used with verbs to form the fut. pass. inf.
eō [old dat. of is], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither).—Often translated by more def. expressions in Eng., to the place (where, etc.), on them (it, him, etc.): usque eo ut, to that degree that, so far that.
ēō, abl. neut. used as the abl. of degree of difference; see is.
eōdem [old dat. of idem, cf. eo, thither], adv., to the same place, in the same place (cf. eo), there also: eodem conduxit (to the same place [as himself]); eodem pertinere, look in the same direction, tend the same way; eodem illo pertinere . . . ut, favored the same idea . . . that, belonged to the same design . . . that.
ephippiātus, -a, -um, [ephippiā- (as if st. of verb, cf. auratus) + tus, see ephippium], adj., saddled, capar-isoned: equites (riding on saddles, as a less manly form of horsemanship).
ephippium, -ī, [Gr. ἐφιππίων (ἐπί, upōn; ἵππος, a horse)], n., a horse-cloth, caparison, housing.
epistula (epistola), -ae, [Gr.], F., a letter, a note, a message (in writing), a despatch.
epulum, -ī, plur., -ae, -ārum, [?], N. (sing.), F. (plur.), a feast, a banquet.
eques, -ītis, [equō- + tis (reduced)], m., a horseman, a rider.—Plur., cavalry.—Esp. (as orig. serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate).—So also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class).
equester, -tris, -tre, [equit- + tris], adj., of knights, of cavalry.
equitātus, -tūs, [equitā- (as st. of equito, ride) + tus], m., cavalry, horse (troops serving on horseback).
equus, -i, [AK (swift) + vus], m., a horse.
Eratosthenēs, -is, [Gr.], m., a Greek philosopher and mathematician of Alexandria, born at Cyrene B.C. 276. He was famous for his investigations in geography and astronomy.
ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of erigo.
ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of eripio.
ergā [prob. instr. of same st. as ergo], prep. with acc., towards (of feeling and conduct): fides erga alium.
ergō (-ō rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. ergā], adv., therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, [ex-rego, make straight], 3. v. a., set up straight, raise up. — With reflex., get up. — ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., high, high and straight.

ēripō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus, [ex-rapio], 3. v. a., snatch away, wrest (a thing from), deprive (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), take from, rescue: se eripere ne, save one's self from doing a thing.

errō, -ēre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [?], 1. v. n., wander, go astray, err, be mistaken.

ērupmō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [ex-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., burst out, sally out, make a sally.

ēruptīō, -ōnis, [ex-ruptio, cf. erumpo], F., a breaking out, a sally, a sortie.

essēda, -ae (-um, -ī), [Celtic], F. (and N.), a war chariot (of the Gauls).

esseedārius, -ī, [esseedō (-a) (reduced) + arius], M., a charioteer (a warrior fighting from an essedum).

Esuvīi, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the region of Normandy.

et, conj., and: et ... et, both ... and.

etiam [etiam], conj., also, even, even now, yet: quin etiam, nay more.

etsī [et si], conj., even if, although, though.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, [ex-vado, go], 3. v. n., escape.

ēvellō, -vellere, -velli (-vuli), -vulsus, [ex-vello], 3. v. a., pull out, pluck out.

ēvenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ex-venio], 4. v. n., come out, turn out, happen.

ēventus, -tūs, [ex-ventus, cf. conventus and evenio], M., result, issue, fate, success.

ēvocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of evoco.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-voco], 1. v. a., call out, call forth, summon, challenge (ad pugnam), carry away (cupiditas longius), invite (omnes ad se spe praedae). — ēvocātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, veteran (of soldiers who have served their time and are only called out in emergencies), veterans (almost equal volunteers).

ēvōlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [ex-volo], 1. v. n., fly out, rush out.

ex (ē) [?], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., out of (cf. ab, away from), out. — Less exactly, from (lit. and fig.), of (made of): facilia ex difficillimis redegerat, had made easy instead of most difficult, as they were. Hence, after. — Also, on account of, in accordance with, by means of. —

Also, above (raised from). — Also (cf. ab), in, on: una ex parte, on one side; ex itinere, on the march, starting from it; ex vinculis, in chains, doing something from them; so, ex equis, on horseback; ex eorum corporibus; ex ea civitate, from that nation, belonging there; ex fuga, in their flight. — Other phrases: ex commutatione dolere, suffer from the change; diem ex die, day after day; magna ex parte,
in a great degree, for the most part; quae rerex, ask of, ask, cf. ab; ex eo plus doloris capere (on this account, etc.); ex cratibus (of, made of); unus e filiis (one of, etc.); ex communi consensus, by common consent; ex percontatione, by inquiry, from one which was made; ex Hispania (a man from); ex eo die quintus (from, after); ex usu, for the advantage, cf. “of use”; ex planitie editus (above, raised out of); e regione, opposite; ex litteris (in accordance with, from facts stated in, etc.); ex tertia parte aestimare (as a third, cf. heres ex asse), ex contrario, on the contrary.—In comp. out, completely (cf. “out and out”), off, up, after, from, un—

exactus, a., -um, p. p. of exigo.

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-agito, freq. of ago, drive], 1. v. a., pursue, drive, harass, persecute.

examinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of examine.

examinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [examin- (st. of examen, tongue of the balance)], 1. v. a., weigh.

examinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of examine.

examinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [exanimō-], 1. v. a., deprive of breath (life), kill. — examinātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., out of breath, exhausted.

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsi, no p. p., [ex-ardesco, cf. ardeo, burn], 3. v. n., blaze up.—Fig., become enraged, become excited.

exaudīō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-audio], 4. v. a., hear (from a distance), hear distinctly.

exčēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus, [ex-cedo], 3. v. n., go out, leave (with abl.), withdraw, retire.—Absolutely, leave the fight.

excello, -ere, -ui,-sus, [ex-tcello], 3. v. a. and n., raise, rise, surpass, excel.—excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., high, elevated.

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of excello.

exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [excepto, cf. excipio], 1. v. a., catch up, take hold of.

exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of excipio.

excidō, -cidere, -cīdi, -cīsus, [ex-caedo], 3. v. a., cut out, cut off, break down (gates).

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [ex-capio], 3. v. a., take off, take up, pick up, receive, catch (of animals). Hence, follow, come after, come next: vada (stand, of vessels); vim fluminis (break); alios alii (succeed); hunc alii (follow, take up the cry in shouting).

excitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of excito.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-cito, cf. excieo, call up], 1. v. a., call out, rouse, stimulate (induce).—Also, raise (towers), kindle (fire).

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [ex-claudo], 3. v. a., shut out, cut off (from doing a thing), prevent.

exclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of exclude.

excīgito, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [excogito], 1. v. a., think out, devise.

excruciātus, -a, -um, p. p. of excrucio.

excrucīō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [excrucio, cf. crux, cross], 1. v. a., torture, torment.
excubitor, -tōris, [as if ex-†cu-"bitor, cf. excubo], M., a sentincl (as lying out of the camp or tent).

excubō,-cubāre,-cubui,-cubītūrus, [ex-cubo], I. v. n., lie outside.—Esp. of camp, stand guard, keep a night-watch, watch.

excuclo,-āre,-āvi,-ātus, [excalco], I. v. a., tread down, trample down.

excurre,-currere,-currī, (-cu-currī), -cursūrus, [ex-currero], 3. v. n., run out, make a sally.—See excursio.

excursio,-ōnis, [ex-icursio, cf. excurro], F., a sally, a sortie.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, [ex-tcausatio, cf. excuso], F., an excuse, an apology.

excūsō,-āre,-āvi,-ātus, [ex-†causo, cf. causa, reason], I. v. a., give as an excuse.—Also (with change of relation), excuse, exculpate.

exemplum,-ī, [ex-templum, E M (in emo, take) + I us with parasitic p], N., (something taken out), a sample, a copy, a precedent, an example.

exeō,-īre,-īvi,-ītus, [ex-eo], irr. v. n., go forth, go out, emigrate, march out, remove.

exesco,-ēcēre,-ercui,-ercitus, [ex-arceo, drive off], 2. v. a., train, practise, exercise.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, [exercitā- (st. of exercito) + tio], F., practice, exercise.

exercitātus,-a,-um, p. p. of exercito.

exercitō,-āre,-āvi,-ātus, [exercitō-, cf. exerceo], I. v. a., train, practise.—exercitātus,-a,-um, p. p. as adj., trained.—Superl., very well trained.

exercitus,-tūs, [as if ex-arctitus, cf. exerceo], M., (a training).—Concretely, (a body trained or in training), an army (large or small, acting independently), a force.

exhauriō,-haurīre,-hausi,-haus tus, [ex-haurio], 4. v. a., drain off.—Less exactly, carry off (earth).

exigō,-igere,-ēgi,-āctus, [ex-agō], 3. v. a., (lead out), pass, spend, finish, complete: exacta hiems, the end of winter; aestas exacta erat (was ended).

exiguē [old case-form of exiguus], adv., scantily, meagrely: exigu habere frumentum (have a scanty supply of, etc.).

exiguitās,-tātis, [exiguō- + tas], F., scantiness, meagre-ness: temporis (short time, want of time); pellium (small size); castrorum (narrowness, small size).

exiguus,-a,-um, [ex-†aguus (AG + uus), cf. exigo], adj., (exact ?), narrow, scanty, small, meagre.

eximius,-a,-um, [ex-temius, EM + ius, cf. eximo, take out], adj., (taken out), exceptional, remarkable, very high (opinio).

exīstimātiō,-ōnis, [ex-aestimatio, cf. estimo], F., estimate, opinion.

exīstimō,-āre,-āvi,-ātus, [ex-aestimo, reckon], I. v. a. and n., estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine.

exitus,-tūs, [ex-itus, cf. exeo], M., (a going out), a passage (out, concretely). Hence, an end, the last part: quem habere exitum (what is the result of, etc.).—Fig., a result, a turn (of fortune), an issue.
expediō, -ire, -īvī, -itus, [prob. expedī- (st. of adj. ex-pes, foot-free)], 4. v. a. and n., disentangle, desuncumber, set free (cf. impediō).
—Less exactly and fig., set in order, get ready, arrange, station (of troops).
—expeditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., unincumbered, easy (iter), not difficult, quick, active, light-armed (of troops), in light marching order (of troops without baggage), mobile (of troops), ready.

expeditiō, -onis, [as if ex-temptiō + tio, cf. expedio], F., (light-armed service?), a getting ready, a dispatching. Hence, an expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached).

expeditus, p. p. cf expedio.

expellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [ex-pello], 3. v. a., drive out. —Fig., dispel.

experior, -perīrī, -pertus, [ex-perī, pass. of pario, get], 4. v. dep., (get for one's self?), experience, try: fortunam (risk, try, bear, endure).

expertus, -a, -um, p. p. of experior.

explātus, -a, -um, p. p. of expio.

expio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-pio], 1. v. a., (purify), expiate. —Transferred to the signs of divine wrath, expiate: incommodum (wipe out, i.e. make good, retrieve).

explēō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [ex-pleō], 2. v. a., fill out, fill up, make up (filling the required measure).

explōrātor, -tōris, [as if ex-tplo-rator, cf. exploro], m., a scout, a pioneer (as a means of reconnoitring, cf. speculator, a spy).

explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exploro.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-ploro, prob. search by calling or crying], 1. v. a., investigate, explore, search, examine, reconnoitre. —explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p., assured, certain: explorata victoria, being assured of victory: habere omnia explorata, know certainly.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ex-pono], 3. v. a., place out, set out: exercitum (disembark, also draw up, array). —Fig., set forth (in speech), state.

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [exporto], 1. v. a., carry out, carry away, export.

exposcō, -poscere, -pospōscī, no p. p., [ex-posco], 3. v. a., demand (with eagerness).

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [ex-premo], 3. v. a., press out, force out: vocem (elicit, get out of one, extort). —Also (cf. edo), raise up: turris agger (as the mound of circumvallation rose with the towers on it as it approached the city).

expūgnātiō, -onis, [ex-pugnātio, cf. expugno], F., a storming (of a city), taking (of a city by storm).

expūgnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of expugno.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-pugno, fight], 1. v. a., take (by storm), capture (by storming a city or boarding a ship): stipendiariis expugnatiis, the cities of their tributaries sacked.

expulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of expello.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisī-
exquisitus, [-exquaero, seek]. 3. v. a., search out, inquire, ask for.

exquisitus, -a, -um, p. p. of exquito.
exsequor, -sequi, -secutus, [exsequor], 3. v. dep., follow out, follow up: ius (enforce).
exsero, -serere, -serui, -sertus, [exsero], 3. v. a., (disentangle), thrust out, uncover.
exsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of exsero.
exsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stibus(?), [ex-sisto], 3. v. n., stand out, rise up, come out: malacia (ensue); motus (break out); cornu (grow out, project).
exspectō, -äre, -ävi, -ätus, [exspecto], i. v. a. and n., look out for, wait for, wait, wait to see (si, whether, etc.), expect, anticipate.
exspoliō, -äre, -āvi, -ätus, [exspolio], i. v. a., strip off.— Also, strip of (cf. despilio).— Fig., deprive, rob (of, abl.).
exstinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of exstinguo.
exstinguō, -stinguere, -stini, -stinctus, [exstinguo], 3. v. a., (punch out, as in the woods?), extinguish (lit. and fig.), destroy, put an end to.
exstō, -stäre, -stiti, -stāturus(?)?, [ex-sto], i. v. n., stand out: ex aqua (be above).
exstruō, -struerere, -struxi, -struxtus, [ex-struō], 3. v. a., heap up, build up, pile up.
exsul, -ulis, [ex-sal (of salio), as st., with some lost connection of meaning, cf. consul], c., an exile.

exter, -tera, -terum, [ex + terus (reduced)], adj., outer, outside.—
extrimus, -a, -um, superl., farthest, extreme, last: extremi, as noun, the rear; in extremis lingulis (at the extremity of, etc., and often in this sense); ad extremum, till the last, at last; ad extremum producta casum (to the last extremity); ab extrema parte, at the very end; in extrema spe, almost in despair; in extremis suis rebus, in the last extremity; extrema fames, the last extremity of hunger.

exterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, [ex-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten away, frighten greatly, terrify.
exterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of exterreo.
extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, no p. p., [ex-timesco], 3. v. a. and n., fear greatly, fear (much), dread.
extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsi, -tor tus, [ex-torqueo, twist], 2. v. a., wrench from, wrest from, force from.
 extortionis, -a, -um, p. p. of extorqueo.
extrā [abl. or instr. (?) of exter, cf. supra], adv. and prep. with acc., outside, out of.
extrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of extraho.
extrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractus, [ex-traho], 3. v. a., drag out: multum aestatis (drag out, waste).
extrudō, -trudere, -trūsi, -trūsus, [ex-trudo], 3. v. a., thrust out, push out, shut out (by dikes).
exuō, -uere, -uī, -ütus, [ex- unc. verb, cf. induo], 3. v. a., strip off: armis exutis, deprived of arms.—
Also (cf. despolio), strip, deprive, despoil: Romanos impedimentis.

Faber, -brī, [fa (in facio) + ber (for brus)], (m. of faber, skilful), a mechanic, an engineer (in an army).


Facilis, -e, [†facéo- (cf. beneficus) + lis], adj., easy (to do, cf. habilis), convenient, without difficulty, easy (generally). —facile, n. as adv., easily, conveniently, without difficulty.

Facinus, -oris, [†facin- (as if root of †facino, longer form of facio) + us], n., a deed (of any kind). —Esp. (as in English), a deed (of crime), a misdeed, a crime, guilt (referring to some particular act), criminal conduct. See admitto.

Fació, facere, fécit, factus, [fac + io], 3. v. a. and n., make, do, act.—Used in a great variety of senses as in Eng.: coniurationem (form); sementes (do planting); iter (march, travel, proceed); vim (use violence, force a passage, offer resistance); rates (build); testudinem (form); ea (perform); pacem (as in Eng.); finem orandi (put an end to, stop, etc., cease, etc.); phalangem (form); fidem (give assurance, also gain be-

Exúrō, -úrere, -ussi, -ústus, [ex-uro], 3. v. a., burn up.

Exútus, -a, -um, p. p. of exuo.

F
bortatio], F., a business, an employment.—Also, a party, a faction.

factum, -i, see facio.

factus, -a, -um, p. p. of facio.

facultas, -tatis, [facul (for facili cf. simul) + tas], F., ease, facility.

—So, chance, power, opportunity.

quantum facultatis dari potuit, so far as opportunity was offered; sui conligendi (chance to, etc.). Hence, concretely, means, resources, supply: navium; facultates ad largiendum.

fagus, -i, [prob. BHAG, eat, + as (-us), from the fruit], F., a beech, beech (of the timber).

fallō, fallere, fefellē, falsus, [prob. SPHAL, trip up], 3. v. a. and n., deceive: spes aliquem (disappoint); fallendo, by deceit.—falsus, -a, -um, p. p., deceived.—Also (transferred to things), false, unfounded.

falus, -a, -um, p. p. of fallo.

fallx, falcis, [cf. falx], F., a sickle, a pruning-hook.—Also, a hook (of similar form for demolishing walls).

fama, -ae, [FA (in for, speak) + MA], F., speech, common talk, reputation.—Concretely, a rumor, a story.

famēs, -is, [cf. famā-], F., hunger, starvation: famem tolerare, keep from starving, appease hunger.

familia, -ae, [famulō-, servant (reduced), + ia], F., a collection of attendants, a household.—Applied to Gaul, a clan, retainers.

familīaris, -e, [prob. familī- + ris, but treated as famili- + aris (cf. animalis)], adj., of the household: res (estate, property).—Esp. as noun, a friend.

familiāritās, -tātis, [familiari- + tas], F., intimacy (with, genitive).

fās [FA (for, speak) + as], indecl. N., right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (permitted, allowed).

fastīgātē [old case-form of fastigatus], adv., sloping.

fastīgatus, -a, -um, p. p. of fastigo.

fastigium, -i, [fastigō- (unc. form akin to fastus, scorn, cf. castigo) + ium, cf. fastigo], N., elevation, slope, descent (of a slope).

fastīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [fastigō- (cf. fastigium)], 1. v. a., bring to a point.—Esp. fastigātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., inclined, sloping: leniter (with an easy slope).

fātum, -i, [N. of fatus, p. p. of for], N., (what is spoken, cf. fas), fate, lot, destiny.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, [prob.], 2. v. n., favor, be favorable to.

fax, facis, [cf. falx], F., a torch, a fire-brand, fire (lighted missiles).

fēlicitās, -tātis, [felici- (as if felici-) + tas], F., good fortune, good luck, lucky star: summa (perfect success).

fēliciter [felici- (as if felici-) + ter], adv., happily, fortunately, luckily, successfully.

fēmina, -ae, [FE, nurse, + mina, cf. alumna], F., a woman, a female.

femur, -oris (-inis), [cf. femur], N., the thigh.

fera, see ferus.

ferāx, -ācis, [reduced noun-st (akin to fero) + ax, as if ferā + cis (reduced)], adj., fertile.
ferē [?, old case-form of st. *ferō- (akin to fero)], adv., almost, about. — Also, almost always, generally, usually, for the most part. — With negatives, hardly.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (for tlātus), [Bhar, bear, and Tol (TLA) in tolo], irr. a. and n., bear, carry, endure, tolerate, stand, withstand, carry off, win. — Often in a loose sense, translated by various special words in Eng., commit, offer, etc. — With reflex. or in pass., rush, pass, proceed, roll (of a river). — With advs. indicating manner of receiving anything, suffer; bear, take it, feel: acerbius ferre inopiam (suffer severely from); magno cum dolore ferre, be much pained or indignant at; moleste (graviter) ferre, be annoyed at, take hard, be indignant at. — Special uses: responsa (carry away, receive); auxilium (carry aid, assist); arma (bear arms, fight); condicionem (propose); signa (bear on the standards, march); ventus ferебat (carried the ships, blew); consuetudo fert (is); opinio fert (goes); ut natura montis ferебat, according to the outline of the mountain.

ferramentum, -i, [as if ferrā- (st. of verb from ferrum) + mentum], N., a tool (of iron).

ferrāria, -ae, [F. of ferrarius, cf. ferrum], F., an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um, [ferrō- + eus], adj., of iron, iron (made of iron).

ferrum, -i, [?], N., iron, steel, sword.

tertilis, -e, [†feriti- + lis, (as if fer + tilis)], adj., fertile, fruitful.

fertilītās, -tātis, [fertili- + tas], F., fertility, productivity.

ferus, -a, -um, [FER (rush) + us, cf. deer], adj., wild, ferocious. — Fem. as noun, wild beast, game.

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [†ferve- (case-form akin to ferveo) + facio], 3. v. a., heat, heat red-hot (iacula).

fervefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of fervefacio.

ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī (fervī), no p. p., [noun-st. akin to febris], 2. v. n., be hot, be red-hot.

fibula, -ae, [FIG (in figo, fasten) + bula], F., a clasp, a buckle.

fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of fingo.

fidēlis, -e, [fidē- (st. of fides) + lis], adj., faithful.

fidēs, -eī, [FID (bind) + es], F., a promise, a pledge: laedere (break faith); fidem facere, give assurance: fidem praestare, keep faith, perform one’s duty. — Also, good faith, fidelity. — Transferred, confidence, faith (in); fidem facere, gain credence. — Esp. of promised protection, protection, dependence, alliance: quorum in fide erat civitas (to whom . . . was subject, under whose protection); Caesaris fidem sequi (come under, surrender one’s self to); in fidem se permettere (venire), place themselves under protection of, etc.

fidūcia, -ae, [†fiduc- (†fidu-, faithful, + cus, reduced) + ia], F., confidence, reliance.

figūra, -ae, [†figu- (FIG, in fingo, + us) + ra, F. of rus], F., shape, form.

fīlia, -ae, [F. of fīlius], F., a daughter.
filius, -i, [?], m., a son.

flamō, fingere, finxi, fictus, [fig, cf. figura]. 3. v. a., mould ; voltum (compose).— Fig., invent, contrive.
— fictus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, N. pl., figctions : ficta respondent, make up answers ; sibi (contruere) up.

finīō, -ire, -īvī, (-ii), -itus, [fini-], 4. v. a., set bounds to, limit, bound, measure (ending a division).

finis, -is, [?], m., a limit, an end : finem facere, put an end to, cease ; quem ad finem, as far as.— Plur. as noun, neighbors. — Also, finitimus.

fiō [FU in fu], as pass. of facio, which see.

firmiter [firmō- + ter], adv., firmly, stoutly, steadfastly.

firmitūdō, -inis, [firmō- + tudo], f., solidity, strength (of resistance).

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [firmō-], 1. v. a., make strong, strengthen, fortify.

firmus, -a, -um, [dhar, hold, + mus], adj., strong (for resistance), firm, steady : minime firma, weakest.

fistūca, -ae, [?], F., a pile-driver.

Flaccus, see Valerius.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [as if flagitō, p. p. of flago, akin to flagro, blaze], 1. v. a., ask (in heat?), demand earnestly : Haeduos frumentum, grain of the Haeduans.

flamma, -ae, [flag (blaze) + ma], F., flame, fire.

flectō, flectere, flēxi, flexus, [?], 3. v. a., bend, turn.

flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, [?], 2. v. a. and n., weep : flentes, in tears.

flētus, -tūs, [flē- (st. of fleo as root) + tus], M., weeping, lamentation : magno fletu, with many tears.

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, [?], 1. v. n. and a., blow.

flōrens, -entis, [pres. p. of floreo, bloom], as adj., blooming. — Fig., flourishing, prosperous, influential (iuvenis) : florentissimis rebus, in most prosperous circumstances.

flōs, flōris, [?], m., a flower. — Fig., the flower (of troops).

fluctus, -tūs, [FLU (c) (in fluo, cf. fluxi) + tus], M., a wave.

flūmen, -inis, [FLU (in fluo) + men], N., a river.

flūō, fluere, flūxi, fluxus, (fluxūrus, fluctūrus, fluitūrus), [FLU], 3. v. n., blow.

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, [?], 3. v. a., dig.

foedus, -eris, [FID (in fides, cf. fidus) + us], N., a treaty, a league, a compact.

fore, for futurum esse ; see sum. forem, for essem ; see sum.

foris [abl. plur. of fora], as adv., out of doors. — Less exactly, outside (of anything, as beyond the siege lines).

forma, -ae, [dhar (in firmus) + ma], F., shape, form.

fors, fortis, [FER (in fero) + tis (reduced)], F., chance. — forte, abl. as adv., by chance, perchance, accidentally, as it happened.
forte, see fors.

fortis, -e, [akin to firmus], adj., strong, brave, courageous: vir fortis, a man of courage.

fortiter [forti- + ter], adv., bravely, stoutly, undauntedly: fortius factum, any deed of prowess.

fortitudo, -inis, [forti- + tudo], F., bravery, prowess.

fortuitō [abl. of †fortuitus, p. p. of verb in -uo, cf. fortuna], adv., by chance, accidentally, fortuitously.

fortuna, -ae, [†fortu- (FER + tus, cf. fortuito) + na, F. of -nus], F., fortune, chance, fate, lot (one's fortune), chances (belli), success (good or bad). — Plur., fortunes, resources, chances (means) of success. — Esp., good fortune, success: fortunam temp-tare, try one's chances.

fortunātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of fortuno], as adj., fortunate, prosperous.

forum, -i, [akin to †fora], N., (an open place), a market-place.

fossa, -ae, [F. of fossus, p. p. of fodio, dig], F., a ditch, a trench.

fovea, -ae, [? perh. akin to foveo, as a pit for storage], F., a pitfall.

fractus, -a, -um, p. p. of frango.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, [FRAG], 3. v. a., break (as a solid body). — Esp. of ships, wreck. — Fig., break down, crush.

frāter, -tris, [prob. FER + ter, cf. pater], M., a brother.

frāternus, -a, -um, [frater + nus], adj., of a brother, fraternal: nomen (the name of brothers).

fraus, fraudis, [? akin to frustra], F., loss. Hence, treachery, deceit.

fremitus, -tūs, [freni- (st. of fremo, roar) + tus], M., a murmur, a confused noise, a roar.

frequēns, -entis, [orig. pres. p. akin to farcio, stuff], adj., crowded, numerous, in great numbers.

frētus, -a, -um, [root akin to firmus + tus], adj., relying on, confident in (on account of).

frigidus, -a, -um, [†frigō- (whence frigeo, be cold) + dus], adj., cold.

frīgus, -oris, [FRIG (in frigeo, etc.) + us], N., cold. — Plur., cold (cold "snaps," frosts).

frōns, frontis, [? akin to brow], F., brow: face: a media fronte, from the middle of the forehead. — Less exactly, front, brow: a fronte, in front.

frucctōsus, -a, -um, [fructu- + osus], adj., fruitful.

fructus, -tūs, [FRU(C) + tus], M., enjoyment. Hence, (what one enjoys), fruit, crops, income, profit, interest (from money): victoriae (advantages of victory).

frumentārius, -a, -um, [frumentō- (reduced) + arius], adj., of grain: loca (fruitful in grain); res (grain supply, provisions); inopia (scarcity of grain).

frumentātiō, -onis, [frumentā- (st. of frumentor) + tio], F., foraging, gathering grain, harvesting, foraging expedition.

frumentor, -tāri, -tātus, [frumentō-], 1. v. dep., forage, gather grain, get supplies.

frumentum, -i, [FRU (in fruor) + mentum], N., grain (cf. fructus). — Plur., standing grain, crops.

fruor, frui, fructus, [FRU, cf. fructus], 3. v. dep., enjoy.
fruístro [abl. or instr. of st. akin to fraus, loss], adv., to no purpose, without effect.

[frúx], frúgis, [FRÚ(g) in frúor as st.], F., fruit. — Plur., crops.

Fúlius (-sius), -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. See Cita.

fuga, -ae, [FUG + a], F., flight: fit fuga, a rout ensues; fugae mandare se, take to flight; in fugam dare, put to flight; fugam petere, seek safety by flight, escape; ex fuga evaserat, had escaped from the flying crowd.

fugátus, -a, -um, p. p. of fugo.

fugió, fugere, fúgī, fugitūrus, [FUG (in fuga)], 3. v. a. and n., fly, fly from, run away. — Fig., shun, avoid.

fugitivus, -a, -um, [fugi- (st. of fugio ?) + tivus], adj., runaway. — Plur. as noun, runaway slaves.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fuga-], i. v. a., put to flight, rout.

fúmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fumō-], i. v. n., smoke.

fúmus, -ī, [FU (DHU) + mus, akin to dūs], m., smoke. — Plur., smoke (in several columns).

fundā, -ae, [akin to fundo], F., a sling.

funditor, -tōris, [funda (as if verb-st.) + tor], m., a slinger.

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, [FUD], 3. v. a., pour. — Less exactly, scatter. — Esp. of battle, put to rout, rout.

fūnebris, -e, [cf. funus], adj., of a funeral. — N. plur. as noun, funeral rites.

fungor, fungī, fūncūs, [?], 3. v. dep., perform, discharge (abl.).

fūnis, -is, [?], m., a rope.

fūnus, -eris, [unc. root + us], n., (murder ?), death, a funeral.

furōr, -ōris, [FUR (cf. furo, rage) + or], m., madness, frenzy, fury.

fūrtum, -i, [N. p. p. of lost verb akin to fur, thief], N., theft, a thief.

fūsilis, -e, [fuso- (p. p. of fundo) + lis, cf. flexilis], adj., (capable of being poured), molten (of metals), vitrified, red-hot.

futūrus, see sum.

Gabali, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic people, dependants of the Arverni.

Gabinius, -ī, [Gabinō- (cf. Gabii) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Piso in B.C. 58.

gaesum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a javelin.

Gāius (Cāius, C.), -ī, [?], m., a Roman prænomen.

Galba, -ae, [Celtic, meaning fat], m., a Gallic and Roman family name.
Gallicus, -a, -um, [Gall- + cus], adj., *of the Gauls, Gallic.

gallīna, -ae, [gallo- (cock) + ina], F., a hen.

Gallus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of Gaul, Gallic. — As noun, a Gaul, the Gauls. — Also, as a Roman family name. See Trebius.

Гаrumna, -ae, [Celtic], C., a river of S. W. Gaul, now the Garonne.

Гарумни, -orum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees, on the head waters of the Garonne.

Гатес, -ium, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic people of Aquitania.

gaudēō, gaudère, gāvisus, [tga-viō-, cf. avidus], 2. v. n., be delighted, rejoice.

gāvisus, -a, -um, p. p. (neut. pass.) of gaudaeo.

Geidūmni, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Belgian tribe, dependants of the Nervii.

Генāva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Allobroges, at the outlet of Lake Levan, now Geneva.

gener, -eri, [?], M., a son-in-law.

geōrātim [as if acc. of ĭgeō-ratis (geōrā- + tis)], adv., by tribes.

gēns, gentis, [gen, beget, + tis (reduced)], F., a family, a tribe, a clan, a people.

genus, -eris, [gen, beget, + us], N., a generation, a race, a family (stock), a nation, a tribe. — Less exactly, a kind, a sort, a class. — Also, abstractly, kind, character, nature, method (pugnae): genus hominum, the character of the inhabitants.

Герговіа, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city in the lands of the Arverni.

Germania, -ae, [F. of adj. in -ius, cf. Gallia], F., Germany, the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Germānicus, -a, -um, [Germanō- + cus], adj., *of the Germans, German, Germanic.

Germanus, -a, -um, [?], adj., German (of the country of Germany or its people. The name of the people is the original, but as usual is an adj.). — Plur. as noun, the Germans.

gerō, gerere, gessū, gestus, [ges, of unc. kin], 3. v. a., carry (indicating a more lively action than fero), carry on, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business). — Pass., be done, go on (of operations) : rem bene (male) (operate successfully or otherwise, carry on operations, succeed well or ill); negoti bene gerendi, of successful action; his rebus gestis, after these operations; res gestae, exploits, operations, a campaign.

gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of gero.

gladius, -i, [?], M., a sword.

glāns, glandis, [?], F., a nut, an acorn. — Also, a ball (for shooting).

glēba (glæ-), -ae, [?], F., a clod (of earth), a lump.

glōria, -ae, [akin to inclutus, renowned], F., fame, glory.

glōrīor, -āri, -ātus, [glorīa-], 1. v. dep., glory in, boast of (abl.).

Гнaeus (Cnēius, Cn.), -i, [akin to gnauus, active], M., a Roman prænomen.

Gobannitīō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.
Gorgobina, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city in the territory of the Hædui, founded by the Boii emigrating from Cisalpine Gaul.

Graecus, -a, -um, [Gr.], adj., of the Greeks, Greek. — As noun, a Greek, the Greeks. Cf. Germanus for relation of noun and adj.

Graioceli, -orum, [?], m. plur., a people of the Alps, near Mt. Cenis.

grandis, -e, [?], adj., large, of great size.

gratia, -ae, [gratō- (reduced) + ia], F., “gratefulness” (in both Eng. senses of grateful), gratitude (that one has from others or towards others), good-will, favor. Hence, influence, friendship, source of influence, ground of friendship. — Esp.: gratias agere, express gratitude, render thanks, thank; gratias habere, feel gratitude, be grateful; gratias [gratiam] referre, make a grateful return, pay off an obligation, requite; gratiam inire, secure the gratitude of any one, conciliate. — With gen., for the sake of, on account of, for, to (for the purpose of): sui purgandi gratia, to excuse one’s self.

gratulatio, -onis, [gratulā- + tio, cf. frumentatio], F., a congratulation (of others or one’s self), rejoicing: fit gratulatio, there is great rejoicing.

gratulor, -āri, -ātus, [†gratulō- (gratō + lus)], i. v. dep., congratulate.

gratus, -a, -um, [p. p. of lost verb], adj., pleasing, grateful: gratum facere, do a favor.

gravis, -e, [for †garvis, †garus], adj., heavy. — Fig., serious, severe, hard: gravioris aetatis, of more advanced years; si gravius quid acciderit, if anything serious should occur; caerimonia (solemn, binding); ne quid gravius statueret, that he would not pass any very severe judgment.

gravitas, -tātis, [gravi- + tas], F., weight. — Fig., importance, power.

graviter [gravi- + ter], adv., heavily, with great weight, with force. — Fig., severely, seriously: graviter ferre, take to heart, suffer from; premere (press hard); multo gravius exsartis (more violently).

gravō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [gravō- (as if gravā-)], i. v. a., make heavy (cf. levo). — Pass. as dep., (make heavy for one’s self), be reluctant, be unwilling, object.

Grudii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Belgian people, dependants of the Nervii.

gubernator, -ōris, [gubernā-, steer, + tor], m., a pilot, a helmsman.

gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†gustō- (st. akin to gustus, Eng. choose)], i. v. a., taste, eat.

H

habeō, habēre, habui, habitus, [?], 2. v. a. and n., have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: sedes; equitatum circum se; aditum (have in itself, and so offer); castra (occupy); se habere, be; quantum in se habet (as
there is in, etc.); secum habere or apud se, have with him, also detain; censum and the like (hold, conduct); contentiones (carry on); orationem (deliver). — Esp. with p. p. as a sort of continued perfect (whence the perf. of modern languages), have, hold, keep: redempta habere, buy up and hold; civitates obstrictas (keep under obligation); equitatum coactum (get and keep). — Also, treat: pro amico. Hence, consider (cf. hold): pro explorato (consider certain). — Esp.: rationem habere, keep an account, take an account of, have regard for, consider, regard, act in view of: satis habere, be satisfied, be content; habere quemadmodum oppida defenderent (have any means of, etc.).

Haeduus (Aed-), -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Hœdui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — As noun, a Hœduan, the Hœdui.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrūs, [freq. of haerēo, stick, cf. dictīō], i. v. n., get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh).

hāmus, -ī, [?], m., a hook.

harpagō, -ōnis, [Gr. ἀρπαγή (Latinized) + o], m., a hook (esp. for walls, like a fire-hook), a grappling-iron.

Harūdes,-um, [Teutonic], m. plur., a German tribe originally from Jutland, remaining from the great expedition of the Cimbri.

haud [?], adv., not (negating single words), not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, [Helvetiō- (reduced) + cus], adj., Helvetian (see Helvetius).

Helvētius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). Cf. Germanus for the form. — Plur. as noun, the Helvetii.

Helviī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province.

Hercynius (Orcyn-), -a, -um, [Teutonic], adj. (only with silva), Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany).

hērēditās, -tātis, [hered-, heir (as if hered-)], + tas], F., inheritance, an inheritance.

Hibernia, -ae, [?], F., Ireland.

hibernus, -a, -um, [hiem- + ernus, cf. nocturnus], adj., of winter, winter (as adj.). — Neut. pl. (sc. castra), winter quarters, a winter encampment.

hīc [hi- (loc. of hi-c) ce], adv., here in this place, there (of a place just mentioned).

hīc, haec, hoc, hūius, [hi- (pron. st.) + ce, cf. ecce, cetera], dem. pron., (pointing to something near the speaker in place, time, or interest), this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing). — Referring to things before mentioned (but with more emphasis than is): hīc pagus unus, this one canton; ex his qui arma ferre possent (of these [before enumerated], those who, etc.). — Less commonly, of what follows: his mandatis (the following, as follows, these). — Esp.: haec memoria, the present generation: tempus (the
present); his paucis diebus, within a few days. — hoc, neut. abl., used adverbially, in this respect, on this account, by so much. — Often where a more definite word is used in Eng.: his ita respondit (to this embassy). — Often hic ... ille, the one ... the other, this (near by) ... the other (farther off), this last (nearer on the page) ... the other, the latter ... the former.

hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [hiem- (as if hiema-)], i. v. n., winter, pass the winter.

hiems (-mps), -emis, [?], F., winter.

hinc [him (loc. of hi) + ce], adv., from here, hence.


Hispānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., Spanish.

homō, -inis, [prob. humō- (the earth) + o], c., a human being (cf. vir, a man, as a male), a man (including women).

honestus, -a, -um, [honos- (orig. st. of honor) + tus], adj., esteemed, respected, worthy, honorable.

honor (-ōs), -ōris, [unc. root + or], m., honor, respect: honoris causā, out of respect. — Also, honorable position.

honōrificus, -a, -um, [honor (as if honor) -ficus (cf. beneficus)], adj., honorable, (giving honor).

hōra, -ae, [Gr.], F., an hour (of the day). — The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always so many twelfths of the solar day.

horreō, horrēre, horruit, no p. p., [horr-, (orig. horns, bristle) + us, prob. used orig. of the sensation called "goose pimples," where the hair seems to stand on end], z. v. n. and a., bristle (see above). Hence, shudder at, dread.

horribilis, -ē, [horrō- (as if st. of horreo) + bilis], adj., to be shuddled at, frightful, dreadful.

horridus, -a, -um, [horrō- (cf. horreo) + dus], adj., bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful.

hortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of hortor.

hortor, -tārī, -tātus, [for hortor, freq. of old hōtor, urge], i. v. dep., encourage, urge on, urge, address. — Less exactly, of things, urge, move, prompt.

hospes, -itis, [prob. ghās-patis, orig. host (lord of eating)], m., a host. — Also, a guest, a stranger. Hence, a guest-friend (in the peculiar relation of hospitium, which was a kind of hereditary friendship between persons of different countries, not personal, but of a family or state), a friend (of the kind above mentioned): familiaris et hospes, a personal and family friend.

hospitium, -ī, [hospit- + ium], N., the relation of host (or guest). Hence (cf. hospes), friendship: hospitium atque amicitia, alliance and friendship, family and personal friendship; hospitio Ariovisti ute-batur, was in friendly relations with Ariovistus.

hostis, -is, [ghās (cf. hospes) +
tis], c., (orig. guest), a stranger, an enemy (of the state), the enemy (collectively, either sing. or plur.).

hūc [ho- (dat. of hi-, see hic) + ce], adv., hither, here (in sense of hither), to this (place, etc., cf. eo):
huc accedebant, to these [ships before mentioned] were added (see accedo); accedebat huc, to this was added the fact that, etc.  

hūiusmodi, see hic and modus.

hūmānitās, -tātis, [humanō- + tas], F., humanity (as opp. to brutishness), civilization, cultivation, refinement, courtesy.

hūmānus, -a, -um, [st. akin to homo, man, + nus], adj., civilized, cultivated, refined.

humilis, -e, [humō- (ground) + lis], adj., low, shallow (cf. altus, deep).— Fig., low, humble, poor: Ubius humiliores redegerunt (humbled, rendered less important).

humilitās, -tātis, [humilī- + tas], v., lowness, shallowness.— Fig., humble position, insignificance.

I., for unus, etc., one.

iaceō, -cēre, -cuī, -citūrus, [?, cf. iaculum], 2. v. n., lie, lie dead: iacentes, the slain.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, [?, cf. iaceō], 3. v. a., throw, hurl, cast: aggerem (throw up); ancoras (cast, drop).

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iactō-], 1. v. a., (freq. of iacio), toss, toss about, bandy about (of talk), discuss.

iactūra, -ae, [iactu- + ra (F. of rus)], F., a throwing away, a loss, a sacrifice (of men in war), an offer (of reward).

iactus, -a, -um, p. p. of iacio.

iaculum, -i, [tiacēō (akin to iacio, throw)], N., a javelin.

iam [acc. of pron. st.], adv., now (of progressive time, cf. nunc, emphatic and instantaneous), by this time, at last, already, at length; iam non, no longer; iam ante, some time before, even before; iam utebatur, was getting to use; iam reverti (was at last, etc.; was beginning to, etc.); nihil iam, no longer; also with no idea of time, even, in fact.

ibi [old case-form of is (cf. tibi)], adv., there (in a place before mentioned).

Iccius, -ī, [?], M., a nobleman of the Remi.

ictus, -tūs, [Ic (in ico, strike) + tus], M., a stroke: ictus scorpionis (a shot of, etc.).

Id., for Idus.

idcirco [id (N. acc. of is) -circo (case-form of same st. as circa, circum)], adv., for that reason, for this reason, therefore.

idem, eadem, idem, [is dem, cf. dum], dem. adj. pron., the same.
— Often as noun, the same thing (things), the same: eadem quaerit, makes the same inquiries; idem castellum, this very fort.

identidem [cf. idem and tandem], adv., repeatedly, again and again.

idoneus, -a, -um, [?, akin to
idem], adj., fit, suitable, adapted: homo (capable); tempestas (favorable).

Idūs, -uum, [?], perh. akin to aestus], F. plur., the Ides (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, October, and the 13th of the other months, and used by the Romans to reckon dates).

ignis, -is, [?], same word as Sk. agnis, the god of fire], M., fire: igni necari, to be burned to death. — Plur., camp-fires.

ignōbilis, -e, [in- (g) nobilis], adj., not famous, obscure.

ignōminia, -ae, [ignomin- (in- (g)nomen, name) + ia], F., want of fame, disgrace. — Almost concretely, disgraceful defeat.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ignarō-, ignorant], 1. v. a., fail to notice, not know, be ignorant of. — Pass., be unobserved: non ignorans, not unaware of.

ignōsco, -noscere, -nōvī, -nōtus, [in- (unc. which meaning) (g)noscō, know], 3. v. n. and a., overlook, pardon.

ignōtus, -a, -um, [in- (g)notus], adj., unknown, strange.

ille, -a, -ud, [old ollus, fr. pron. root + lus (?)], dem. pron., that (of something remote, cf. hic). — Often as noun (opposed to some other emphatic word), he, she, it, they: hic . . . ille, this . . . that, the other, the latter . . . the former.

illīc [loc. of ille + ce, cf. hic], adv., there (more remote, opposed to hic, near by), in that place (nation, country, etc.): illic . . . quo, in the place to which, (but with more emphasis than ibi . . . quo).

illō [dat. of ille, cf. eo], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither), that way.

Illyricum, -i, [?], N. of adj., N., Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace. It belonged to Cæsar's province along with the two Gauls).

imbēcillītās, -tātis, [imbēcillō- (weak), + tas], F., weakness, feebleness: anīmi (feebleness of purpose, pusillanimity).

imber, imbris, [?], M., a rain-storm, a rain.

imitor, -tāri, -tātus, [imitō-, p. p. of timo (cf. imago)], 1. v. dep., imitate, copy.

immānis, -e, [in- (manus, good?), adj., ("uncanny"?), monstrous, huge, enormous.

immineō, -minère, no perf., no p. p., [in-mineo], 2. v. n., overhang, project. — Fig., threaten.

immissus, p. p. of immitter.

immitterō, -mittere, -missī, -missus, [in-mittero], 3. v. a., let in, let down (into), insert, throw (upon), send against.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [im- mola- (in-mola, meal)], 1. v. a., (sprinkle with the sacred meal), sacrifice.

immortalīs, -e, [in-mortalis], adj., immortal.

immūnis, -e, [in- (munis, cf. communis and munia)], adj., free from tribute.
immunitas, -tatis, [immuni-+tas], F., freedom from public burdens.

imparatus, -a, -um, [in-paratus], adj., unprepared, not ready.

impedimentum, -i, [impedi-+mentum], N., a hindrance: esse impedimento, to hinder.—Esp. in plur., baggage, a baggage train (including the beasts of burden), pack-horses.

impediō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus, [impedi-(in-pes, foot, as if impedi-)], 4. v. a., entangle, hamper, interfere with. — Fig., hinder, embarrass, impede: in iure (hinder in exercise of). — impeditus, -a, -um, p. p., hampered, entangled, occupied, difficult (navigation), impassable (loca): esse victoribus nihil impeditum (there is no obstacle in the way of, etc.); prospectus (interrupted).

impeditus, p. p. of impedio.

impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsius, [in-pello], 3. v. a., drive on. — Fig., instigate, incite, impel.

impendeō, -ère, [in-pendeo, hang], 2. v. n., overhang.

impensisus, -a, -um, [p. p. of impendo, expend], adj., expensive, very high (of price).

imperātor, -tōris, [imperā-+tor], m., commander (in chief), general.

imperātum, -i, [N. p. p. of impero], N., an order, a command: ad imperatum, at one's command.

imperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of impero.

imperfectus, -a, -um, [in-perfectus], adj., unfinished: re imperfecta, without accomplishing one's purpose, unsuccessful.

imperitus, -a, -um, [in-peritus, skilled], adj., unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in.

imperium, -i, [imperō- (whence impero, cf. pario, get) + ium], N., command, supreme authority, control, supremacy, supreme power, power (military), rule, sway (both sing. and plur.). — Concrete, an order, a command. —Esp.: novis imperiis studere (new forms of government); nullo certo imperio (command of any particular person); imperi aut potestatis, military or civil authority.

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [imperō- (in-parus, cf. pario, get)], 1. v. a. and n., demand (make requisition for, prob. orig. meaning), require (in same sense). Hence, order (in military sense), rule, command, give orders: illo imperante, under his command.

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [impetrō- (in-eparus, cf. pario, get)], 1. v. a. and n., accomplish (anything by a request), succeed in (obtaining), obtain (a request): impetro a, prevail upon, persuade; ab iis impetrari ut, they be persuaded to; ea re impetrata, this being granted; si non impetretar, if his request was not complied with; impetro ut, etc., obtain a request to, be allowed to, etc., succeed in having; impetrari posse, could be granted.

impetus, -tūs, [in-πetus (cf. pēto, aim at)], m., a rush, an attack, an onset, a charge, an assault, violence, fury: facere (inroad, charge, invasion); is impetus, such fury, etc.; impetus gladiorum exceperunt, re-
ceived the charge of the enemy with drawn swords.

impious, -a, -um, [in-pius], adj., impious (offending divine law).

implicatus, -a, -um, p. p. of implico.

implico, -äre, -āvī(-ui), -ātus (-itus), [in-plico, fold], i. v. a., entangle, interweave, entwine.

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-ploro, cry out], i. v. a., implore, beseech.

imponō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [in-pono], 3. v. a., place upon, mount (men on horses), place, impose (fig.).

importātus, -a, -um, p. p. of importo.

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-porto, carry], i. v. a., import.

impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of impono.

imprimēs [in primis], adv., among the first, especially, particularly (more than anything else).

impōbus, -a, -um, [in-probus, good], adj., bad, wicked, unprincipled.

impōvīsus, -a, -um, [in-provisus], adj., unforeseen: impromptus (de improviso), on a sudden, unexpectedly, unaware.

imprōdēns, -entis, [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., not expecting, incautious, unsuspecting, off one's guard, unguarded, not being aware.

imprōudentia, -ae, [imprudent- + ia], f., ignorance, want of consideration, want of forethought.

impūbēs, -eris (-is), [in-pubes], adj., beardless, immature. Hence, chaste, unmarried.

impūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [impugno, fight], i. v. a. and n., attack, invade, charge, fight (in an offensive warfare).

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of impello.

impulsus, -sūs, [in-pulsus, cf. impello, drive out], M., impulse.—Fig., instigation.

impūne [N. of impunis (in-poena, punishment, weakened and decl. as adj.)], adv., with impunity.

impūnitās, -tātis, [impuni- + tas], f., freedom from punishment, impunity.

īmus, -a, -um, superl. of inferus.

1. in- [cf. Eng. un-], neg. particle, only in composition.

2. in [?, cf. Eng. on; cf. also inde], prep. a. With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on (cf. ad, with terminus at or near), into, upon, within, to, against, among: in volgus elatum est (spread abroad among). — Of time, for, to, till. — Fig., without actual motion, but only direction, towards, against, upon: in eos exempla edere (visit upon); in se voluntas (good-will towards). — Often where Eng. has a different conception, in, on: abdere in silvas, hide in the woods; in civitatis conlocasse (had married in, etc.); in utram partem fluat (in which direction, etc.); in conspectum venire (in sight). — In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, in, according to, with, to: mirum in modum (cf. quem ad modum); in eam sententiam, to this purport; in speciem, with the appearance; in
altitudinem, in height, cf. to the height of. — Esp.: in Caesarem incindit, happened to meet Caesar; in perpetuum, for ever; in Morinos (into the country of, etc.); in catenas conciere, throw into prison; in fugam conciere, put to flight.

b. With abl., of rest (lit. and fig.), in, on, among, within: in tanta propinquitate (under circumstances of, in a case of); in tanto imperio P. R., when the R. people had such dominion. — Often, in the case of, in respect to: in eo, in his case, in regard to him. — Esp.: in Meldis (in the country of); in ancoris, at anchor; in eo manere, abide by, etc.; in praesentia, for the present; in potestate, under the power; in opere esse, to be engaged in the work; in illo vestigio temporis positum (depending on, etc.); in eo constare (depend upon, etc.). — In comp. as adv., in, upon, towards, and the like.

inānis, -e, [?], adj., empty. — Fig., empty, vain, idle, mere, bare.

incantē [old case-form of incantus], adv., incautiously, carelessly.

incantus, -a, -um, [in-catus, p.p. of caveo], adj., incautious, off one's guard.

incendium, -i, [in-ictandum, cf. incendo], N., a burning, a fire: incendia aediciorum, the burning of buildings, each one being conceived as a separate burning, as is usual in Latin.

incendō, -candere, -cendi, -census, [in-ictando, cf. candeo, glow], 3. v. a., set fire to, burn. — Fig., rouse, excite, fire.

incēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of incendo.

incertus, -a, -um, [in-certus], adj., uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy, (rumores): itinera (obscure, blind); ordinibus (in disorder).

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, [incado], 3. v. n., fall upon. — Less exactly and fig., fall in with, meet, occur, happen.

incipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [in-capio, take], 3. v. a. and n., begin, undertake.

incisus, -a, -um, p. p. of incidō.

incitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of incito.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-cito], 1. v. a., set in motion (in some particular direction) (lit. and fig.), urge on, drive, impel, excite, rouse. — incitātus, -a, -um, p. p., excited to anger, angered, spurred on: incitato quo, at full gallop; incitato cursu, at full speed. — Esp.: se aestus incitare (rush in).

incognitus, -a, -um, [in-cognitus], adj., unknown.


incolumis, -e, [?], adj., unharmed, unhurt, preserved, safe, safe and sound, uninjured.

incommodē [old case-form of incommodus], adv., inconveniently, unfortunately, badly, ill.

incommodus, -a, -um, [in-commodus], adj., inconvenient, unfortunate.
—Esp., incommodum, n. as noun, disadvantage, misfortune, euphemism for defeat, loss, disaster, harm.

crēdibilis, -e, [in-credibilis], adj., incredible, marvellous, extraordinary.

crepītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-crepīto-] (cf. increpo), i. v. a., upbraid, taunt, revile.

cumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, [in-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie upon.
—Esp., fig., bend to, exert one's self: animo et opibus in (bend one's mind and energies to).

cursūs, -sūs, [in-cursus, cf. incurro, rush upon], F., an inroad, an attack, an invasion, a raid.

incūsō, -āre,-āvī, -ātus, [in-causo], cf. causa, cause, 1. v. a., upbraid, rebuke, chide.

inde [tim (loc. of is, cf. interim, hinc) -de (form akin to -dem, dum, cf. indu, old form of in)], adv., from there, thence, from the place (which, etc.), after that, then.

indiciēm, -i, [indic- + ium], N., information: per indicium, through an informer.

indicō, -dicere, -dīxī, -dīctus, [indicō, say], 3. v. a., order, proclaim, appoint.

1. indicūs, -a, -um, p. p. of indicō.

2. indicūs, -a, -um, [i. in-dictus], adj., unpleaded (causa, cf. dico), untried, unheard.

indignē [old case-form of indignus], adv., unworthily, shamefully (unworthily of one's self or of the circumstances).

indīgnitās,-tātis, [indigno- + tas], F., unworthiness, disgrace (cf. indigna), outrage, an indignity.

indīgnor, -ārī, -ātus, [indignō-], 1. v. dep., be indignant (deem unworthy of one's self).

indignus, -a, -um, [in-dignus], adj., unworthy.

diligēns, -entis, [in-diligens], adj., negligent, careless, heedless.

diligēnter [in-diligenter, cf. indulgentia, -ae, [indigent- + ia], F., carelessness, want of care, want of energy (application).

indūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [in-duco], 3. v. a., draw on. Hence, cover: scutae pellibera. — Also, lead on. Hence, induce, instigate, impel.

inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of induco.

indulgentia, -ae, [indulgent- (pres. p. of indulgeō) + ia], F., indulgence, favor, clemency.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultus, [?, perh. st. compounded of indul- + cis, pleasant towards], 2. v. n., favor, treat with indulgence.

indūō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, [?, cf. exuo], 3. v. a., put on. Hence, fig., with reflex., pierce, impale (one's self): se vallis; se stimulus (be pierced by).

industriē [old case-form of industrius, active], adv., actively, promptly, with energy.

indūtiae (indūc-), -ārum, [?], F. plur., a truce, an armistice.

Indūtiomārus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Treveri.
ineō, -ire, -īvi (-ii), -itus, [in-eō], irr. v. a., enter upon, go into.— Fig., adopt, make, begin, gain, secure.— Esp.: inīta aestate, at the beginning of summer; inire rationem, take an account; inire consilium, form a plan; inire numerum, enumerate.

inermis, -e (usu, etc.), [in-arma], adj., unarmed, defenceless.

infāmia, -ae, [infami- (disreputable) + ia], F., dishonor, disgrace: latrocinia nullam habent infamiam (bring no dishonor, are not held dishonorable); infamiam et indignitas, shame and disgrace.

infāns, -antis, [in-fans, pres. p. of for, speak], c., a child, an infant, an infant child.

infectus, -a, -um, [1. in-factus], adj., not done.— Esp.: re infecta, without success, cf. imperfectus; re infecta discedere (without accomplishing one's purpose).

inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [in-ferō], irr. v. a., bring in, import, put upon: in equum (mount one on horseback); bellum (make, of offensive war); signa (make a charge, advance); vulnera (infect).— Fig., cause, infect, commit: periculum (create, cause); spem (inspire); causam (ad-duce, assign, allege).

inferus, -a, -um, [unc. st. + rus (cf. superus)], adj., low: inferior pars, the lower end; ab inferiore parte, down below, of a river.— Superl., infimus (imus), lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom: infimus collis, the foot of the hill, ad infimum, at the bottom.— Neut. as noun, the bottom.

infestus, -a, -um, [in-festus, fr. fendo, strike], adj., hostile, in hostile array: infestis signis, arrayed for fight, in a charge, in order of attack.

inficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [?, in-facio], 3. v. a., (work into?), dye, stain.

infidelis, -e, [in-fidelis], adj., unfaithful, wavering in faith.

infigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [2. infigo], 3. v. a., fasten in, fix in, fix on.

infimus, see inferus.

infinitus, -a, -um, [in-finitus], adj., unbounded, countless, endless, numberless, infinite.

infirmitās, -tātis, [infirmō + tas] V., feebleness, unsteadiness, inconstancy, fickleness.

infirmus, -a, -um, [in-firmus, strong], adj., weak, feeble: animus (feeble courage, want of courage); arbores (unsound, weakened); infirmior, less powerful; naves (unseaworthy).

infixus, -a, -um, p. p. of infigo.

inflectō, -flectere, -flēxī, -flexus, [in-flecto], 3. v. a., bend down.— Pass., or with reflex., become bent.

inflexus, -a, -um, p. p. of inflecto.

inflō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, [in-fluo], 3. v. n., flow into, empty into.

infodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossus, [in-fodio], 3. v. a., dig in, bury.

infrā [instr. (?) of inferus], adv. and prep. with acc., below, further down, less than.

ingēns, -entis, [in-gens, not be-
longing to the kind (?), adj., huge, enormous, very large.

ingratús, -a, -um, [in-gratus], adj., unpleasing.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ingredior, step], 3. v. dep., march into, enter, march in.

inió, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [in-iacio], 3. v. a., throw into, throw upon. — Less exactly, place in, put on, embark. — Fig., inspire.

iectus, -a, -um, p. p. of inicō. 

inimiciōtia, -ae, [inimicio- + tia], F., enmity, hostility.

inimicus, -a, -um, [in-amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile. — As noun, an enemy (personal, or not in war, cf. hostis, an enemy of the state, or an enemy at war), a rival, an opponent.

iniquitās, -tātis, [iniquō- + tas], F., inequality, irregularity, unevenness. — Fig., unfairness, unequal nature, unfavorableness.

iniquus, -a, -um, [in-aequus], adj., uneven. — Fig., unjust (of persons and things), unfavorable, unfair, disadvantageous. — Compar., iniquior locus, less favorable position.

inītium, -i, [in-initium (itō- + ium), cf. ineō], N., a beginning, the first of: inūtium capere, facere, begin, start; transeundī (the initiative, the first steps, the first attempt to, etc.); inītium fit ab, the start is first made at (also lit.); fugae factum (the first tendency to fly was shown); retinendi (the first detention); silvarum (the edge); Remorum (boundary); artificiorum initia (the first principles, the first knowledge of, etc.).

iniungō, -iungere, -iünxī, -iünctus, [in-iungō], 3. v. a., attach to. — Fig., impose upon (his . . . servitutem).

iniūria, -ae, [in-ius (right) + ia, cf. iniurius], F., injustice, outrage, wrong, violence (as opposed to right), abuse.

iniüssū [in-iussu, abl. of iusseus], adv., without orders.

inlātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of intero.

inligātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of inligō (ill-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inligō, bind], 1. v. n., bind on, attach, fasten to.

inlustrius (ill-), -e, [in-lustro- (or kindred st.), cf. lustro, light], adj., distinguished, renowned, remarkable, famous: inlustriore loco natus, of any prominence.

innāscor, -nascī, -nātus, [innascor], 3. v. dep., grow in, spring up in. — Fig., be inspired, be excited. — innātus, p. p. as adj., natural, innate.

innātus, -a, -um, p. p. of innascor.

innitor, -nītī, -nisus (-nīxus), [innitor], 3. v. dep., lean upon, support one's self on. — innīxus, p. p. in present sense, leaning on.

innīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of innitor.

innocēns, -entis, [innocens, p. of noceo, injure], adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent.

innocentia, -ae, [innocent- + ia], F., blamelessness, integrity.

inopia, -ae, [inop- (needy) + ia], F., scarcity, dearth, destitution, want, privation, want of supplies.

inopīnāns, -antis, [in-opinans], adj., unsuspecting, not suspecting.
inquam, [?], def. v. n., say.

inrideō (irr.-), -ridēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, [in-rideō, laugh], 2. v. n., ridicule, laugh at.

inridiculō (irr.-), [old case-form of inridicus], adv., without humor.

inrumpō (irr.-), -rumpere, -rūpī, -rūp tus, [in-rumpo], 3. v. n. and a., break in, break into, storm.

inruptiō (irr.-), -ōnis, [in- ruptio, cf. eruptio and inrumpo], F., a breaking in, an attack (on a fortified place), raid, incursion.

insciēns, -entis, [in-sciens, adj., not knowing, unaware: insciente Caesare, without C.'s knowledge.

inscientia, -ae, [in-scient- + ia], F., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.

inscius, -a, -um, [in- tscius, cf. conscious and scio], adj., not knowing, unaware, ignorant.

inscūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of inssequor.

inssequor, -sequi, -secūtus, [inssequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue.

inserō, -serere, -serūf, -sertos, [insero, join], 3. v. a., insert, stick in.

insidiae, -ārum, [tinsid- (cf. insiders, sit in) + ia], F. plur., an ambush, a stratagem, a trick, a plot, a trap, treachery: per insidias, with deception, treacherously.

insidiōr, -āri, -ātus, [insidiā-], 1. v. dep., lie in wait, make treacherous attacks.

insignis, -e, [insign-, mark, decl. as adj.], adj., marked, memorable, signal. — insignis, N. as noun, signal, sign, decoration (of soldiers).

insiliō, -silīre, -silūf, -sultus, [insalio], 4. v. a., leap upon.

insimulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of insimulo.

insimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [insimulo, make like], 1. v. a., charge, accuse.

insinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [insinuo], 1. v. a. and n., wind in. — With reflex., work one's way into, slip in.

insistō, -sistere, -stīt, no p. p., [in-sisto], 3. v. a. and n., stand upon, set foot upon, stand, keep one's footing. — Fig., adopt (rationem pugnae), devote one's self (in bellum).

insolenter [insolent- (cf. soleo, be wont) + ter], adv., (in an unusual manner), insultingly, insolently.

inspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inspecto], 1. v. a. and n., look upon, look on: inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes.

instābilis, -e, [instabilis, cf. sto], adj., unsteady. — Fig., changeable, uncertain.

instar [instā + ris (?), reduced], N. indecl., (an image), in the likeness of (with gen.), like, in the manner of.

instīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tin-stigō-(stig (goad) + us)], 1. v. a., goad, stimulate, drive on, urge on.

institūō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus, [instituō], 3. v. a., set up, set in order, array: opus (finish). — Also, provide, procure, get ready. — Also, set about, undertake, begin to practice, adopt (a plan, etc.), begin, set on foot. — So, teach, train, habituate.

institūtum, -i, [N. p. p. of instituō], N., a habit, a practice, an institution, a custom.
instō, -stāre, -stī, -stātūrus, [instō, stand], i. v. n., be at hand, press on. — Fig., threaten, impend, menace: tempus instantis belli, time of active, immediate war.

instructus, -a, -um, p. p. of instruō.

instrumentum, -ī, [instru- (cf. instruō) + mentum], N., furniture, equipment, tools and stores (of soldiers).

instrūō, -struerē, -struēxī, -struēctus, [in-struō, build], 3. v. a., build, fit up, fit out, array, draw up (of troops).


insuētus, -a,-um, [in-suētus], adj., unaccustomed, unused.

insula, -ae, [akin to in-salio ?], F., (‘tussocks’ in a swamp) an island.

insuper [in-super, above], adv., on the top, above, at the top.

integer, -gra, -grum, [in-†teger (tag, in tango, touch, + rus)], adj., untouched, unimpaired, unwearied, fresh; as noun, fresh troops. — Esp., not entered upon (of business); re integra, before anything was done, before being committed to any course of action.

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [in-tego], 3. v. a., cover over, face (turris coriis).

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [inter-lego], 3. v. a., (pick out [distinguish] between), learn, know, find out, discover, see plainly, be aware.

intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus, [in-tendo], 3. v. a., stretch, strain. — Esp. of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed: oculus intentis, with eyes intent; animis intentis in ea re, with their minds absorbed in this.

intentus, -a, -um, p. p. of intendo.

inter [in + ter, cf. alter], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., between, among: arbitros inter civitatis dat (to decide between); inter aciem, in the line. — Of time, within, for. — Often in a reciprocal sense: inter se, with, to, from, etc., each other, one another; cohortati inter se, encouraging each other, one another; obsides inter eos dandos curavit, caused them to exchange hostages.

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrūs, [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., come between, go between, lie between, intervene, exist between, occur between, be, pass (of time): ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere, exist between them and the Haeduī.

interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of intercipio.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [inter-capio, take], 3. v. a., intercept, cut off.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [inter-claudo, shut], 3. v. a., cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off).

interdīcō, -dicere, -dīxi, -dictus, [inter-dico], 3. v. a., (intervene by an order), forbid, prohibit: Gallia Romanīs interdici (exclude the Romans, etc., by order); aqua atque igni (expel, by forbidding fire and water, the regular form of exile); interdicere ne, forbid to, order not to.

interdiū [inter-diū (acc. or abl.?
akin to dies], adv., in the daytime, by day.

interdum [inter dum (orig. acc.)], adv., for a time, sometimes.

intereā [inter ea (prob. abl.)], adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

interēō, -ēre, -īvī (-īī), -ītūrus, [inter-ēo (go into pieces, cf. interficio)], irr. v. n., perish, die, be killed.

interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of interficio.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [inter-facio], 3. v. a., (cut to pieces, cf. interfereo), kill, put to death.

intericiō, -icere, -icēi, -icēctus, [inter-icacio], 3. v. a., throw in (between).
— Pass., lie between, intervene: spatio interiecto, intervening, i.e. leaving a short interval; portubus interiectis (lying at intervals); sagittariis (thrown in at intervals).

interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of intericiō.

interim [loc. of †interus, cf. inter, interior], adv., meanwhile.


interitus, -tūs, [inter-itus, cf. interfereo], destruction, death.

intermissus, see intermitto.

intermittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, [inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., (let go between), leave off, discontinue, stop, interrupt, cease: neque diem neque noctem (not cease day or night); spatiis intermissis, leaving intervals; brevi tempore intermisso, waiting a short time; spatio intermisso, after a time; triduo intermisso (leaving an interval of, etc.); nocte intermissa, a night intervening; flumen intermissit (discontinue, leave a vacant place); subeuntes non intermiserunt (did not cease, etc.); intermissa profectione (delaying); vento intermisso (ceasing, failing); nocturnis temporibus ad laborem intermissis, ceasing their toil in the night time; tempus ab opere, at any time cease the work; diem quin, etc. (let a day pass without, etc.); intermissae trubes (separated); intermissis magistratibus, passed over for a year; pars oppidi intermissa a flumine (left unprotected); planities intermissa collibus (broken by, lying between).

interneció, -ōnis, [inter-ncio, same root as necō, kill], f., extermination, annihilation (exercitus).

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inter-pello, cf. appello, -āre], 1. v. a., interrupt, interfere with.

interponō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [inter-pono], 3. v. a., put in between (lit. and fig.), interpose, allege (an excuse to break off something): nulla suspicione belli interposita, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder; fidem reliquis interponere (give a promise not to do something); decre-tum (put in, introduce, into the affairs of the Gauls); nulla dubita-tione interposita, with no hesitation to prevent, etc.

interpres, -pretis, [inter-pres (akin to pretium?)], c., a mediator, an interpreter.

interpreter, -āri, -ātus, [inter-pret-], 1. v. dep., interpret, explain.
interrogatus, -a, -um, p. p. of interrogo.

interrogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [interrogō], 1. v. a., (ask at intervals), question, interrogate, ask.

intrerrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [inter-rumpō], 3. v. a., break off (between two points), break down (bridges), destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissors, [inter-scindo], 3. v. a., cut off (between two points), break down, tear down.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [inter-sum], irr. v. n., be between, be among, be in, be engaged in: non amplius intersit, there is an interval of not more than, etc.; proelio, divinis rebus (be engaged in, take part in).—Esp., imper., it is of importance, it interests, it concerns; with neg., it makes no difference.

intervallum, -ī, [inter-vallus, distance between stakes in a rampart], n., distance (between two things), distance apart, interval.

intervenio, -venīre, -vēnī, -venītūrus, [inter-venio], 4. v. n., come between, come up (at a particular juncture), arrive.

interventus, -tūs, [inter-ventus, cf. eventus and intervenio], m., a coming (to interrupt something), intervention.

intexō, -texere, -texui, -textus, [in-texo], 3. v. a., weave in, weave together.

intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of intexo.

intoleranter [intolerant- (not enduring) + ter], adv., (with no patience or restraint over one's self), fiercely, violently.

intrā [instr. (?) of †interus, cf. inter and extra], adv. and prep. with acc., into, within, inside.

intritus, -a, -um, [in-tritus (p. p. of tero, wear)], adj., unworn.—Fig., unexhausted, unworned.

intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†interō-], 1. v. a., enter, go in.

intrōducō, -ducere, -ducī, -ductus, [intro-duco], 3. v. a., lead in, bring in, march in (troops).

introēō, -ēre, -īvi (-iī), -itus, [intro-eo], irr. v. a. and n., enter, come in.

introitus, -tūs, [intro-itus, cf. introeo], m., an entrance, an approach (means of entrance).

intromissus, -a, -um, p. p. of intromitto.

intromittō, -mittere, -miśi, -missus, [intro-mitto], 3. v. a., let go in, send in.—With reflex. or in pass., rush in: intromissus, rushing in.

intrōrsus [intro-vorsus (petrified nom., p. p. of verto, turn)], adv., into the interior, inside, within.

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptūrus, [intro-rumpō], 3. v. n., break in; burst in.

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus (-tūtus), [in-tueor], 2. v. dep., gaze upon, gaze at, cast one's eyes upon.

intuli, see infero.

intus [in + tus], adv., within.

inúsitātus, -a, -um, [in-usitatus], adj., unaccustomed: insusitator, less familiar.

inutilis, -e, [in-utilis], adj., of no use, unserviceable.—In a pregnant sense, unfavorable.
inveniō, -venire, -vĕni, -ventus, [in-venio], 4. v. a., find, (come upon, cf. reperio, find by search), learn.

inventor, -tōris, [in-venitor, cf. invenio], m., a discoverer, an inventor.

inventus, -a, -um, p. p. of invenio.

inveterāscō, -rāscere, -rāvī, -rātus, [in-veterasco], 3. v. n., grow old in, become established in.

invictus, -a, -um, [in-victus], adj., unconquered. — Also, unconquerable, invincible.

invideo, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsus, [invideo, see], 2. v. n. and a., (look askance at), envy, be jealous of, grudge.

invidia, -ae, [invidē- (envious) + ia], F., envy, odium.

inviolātus, -a, -um, [in-violatus], adj., inviolate. — Also (cf. invictus), inviolable, sacred.

invisus, -a, -um, p. p. of invidēo.

invitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of invito.

invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], I. v. a., invite, request, attract.

invitus, -a, -um, [?], adj., unwilling. — Often rendered as adv., against one’s will.

ipse, -a, -um, [is-potis (?)], intens. pron., self, himself, etc. (as opp. to some one else, cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject), he, etc. (emph.), he himself, etc.: hoc ipso tempore, at this very time; ipse per se, in and of itself; inter se (regular reciprocal), each other, with each other, by each other, etc.

irācundia, -ae, [iracundō- + ia], F., wrath (as a permanent quality, cf. ira, a temporary feeling), irascibility, anger, passion, animosity.

irācundus, -a, -um, [ira + cundus], adj., of a violent temper, passionate, irascible.

is, ea, id, [pron. 1], dem. pron., this (less emph. than hic), that (unemph.), these, those, etc., the, a, he, she, it: quae pars ea, etc., the part which, etc.; eo deceptus quod, etc. (by the fact that, etc.); et id, and that too; ea quae, the things which, what; Rhodanus influit et is transitur (and this river, etc.); cum ea ita sint, since this is so; is locus quo, a place where; neque eam plenissimam, and that not a very full one; manere in eo quod, etc., abide by what.—Abl. N., eo, the (old Eng. instrumental), so much, on that account, therefore; eo magis, all the more; eo gravius, so much the more severely.

iste, -a, -ud, [is-te (cf. tum, tantus, etc.)], dem. pron., that, that of yours.

ita [1 + ta (instr. (?) of ta)], adv., so, in such a way, in this way, thus, to such an extent, as follows: ut . . . ita, as . . . so, though . . . yet, both . . . and; ita . . . ut, in proportion as, as; non ita, not so very, not very.

Italia, -ae, [*Italō- (reduced) + ia (f. of ius)], F., Italy.

itaque [ita que], adv., and so, accordingly, therefore.

item [1-tem (acc.?, cf. idem)], adv., in like manner, so also, in the same way (before mentioned).

iter, itineris, [st. fr. 1 (go) + unc. term.], N., a road, a march, a way, a route, a course, a journey: in
iterum, on the road; in eo itinere, on the way; iter facere, march, travel; iter dare, allow to pass; itinere prohibere, forbid to pass, keep from passing; magnis itineribus, by forced marches; tutum iter, a safe passage.

iterum [i + terus, cf. alter], adv., a second time, again: semel atque iterum, again and again.

Itius [Celtic], adj., (with portus), the port where Cæsar embarked for Britain the second time; either Wissant or Boulogne.

iuca, -ae, [?] F., the mane.
iucaē, iubēre, iussī, iūssus, [prob. ius-habeo, cf. praebeo], 2. v. a., order, command, bid.
iūdicium, -i, [iudic-(in iudex, judge) + ium], N., a judgment, (judicial), a trial, an opinion (expressed officially); an opinion (generally), advice: optimum iūdicium facere, express (by some act) a very high opinion; iudicio, by design; often translated by court.
iūdicō, -ēre, -āvi, -ātus, [iudic-(in iudex, judge)], 1. v. a., formally decide, decide, judge, adjudge, think, consider: nihil gravis de civitate (think nothing harsh about, etc.).
iucaum, -i, [IUG (in iungo) + um], N., a yoke; sub iucaum mittere (an insult inflicted on a conquered army). Hence, a ridge, a crest (of a row of hills).
iumentum, -i, [IUG-(?)+mentum], N., a beast of burden, a pack-horse, a horse.
iunctura, -ae, [iunctu-+ra (F. of -rus)], F., a joining, a joint: quantum distabat iunctura, as far as the distance apart, of two things joined.
iuictus, -a, -um, p. p. of iungo.
iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūnctus, [IUG], 3. v. a., join, unite, attach together. — In pass. or with reflex., unite with, attach one’s self to.
iūnior, comp. of iuvenis.
Iūnius, -i, [?], prob. iuveni- + ius, but cf. Iuno], M., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Decimus Iūnius Brutus, see Brutus. — Also, Quintus Iūnius, a Spaniard in Cæsar’s service.
Iuppiter, Iovis, [Iovis-pater], M., the god of the visible heavens and the atmosphere, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans.
Iūra, -ae, [Celtic], M., a chain of mountains in Gaul, running N.E. from the Rhone to the Rhine, separating the Sequani and the Helvetii.
iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iur- (st. of ius)], I. v. n., swear, take an oath.
iūs, iūris, [Yu (akin to iug) + us], N., justice, right, rights (collectively), rights over (anything), claims. iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandi, [see the two words], N., an oath.
iūssus [abl. of iūssus], used as adv., by order, by command.
iūstitia, -ae, [iusto-+tia], F., justice (just behavior), sense of justice, fair dealing.
iūstus, -a, -um, [iurus + tus], adj., just, lawful. — Also, complete, perfect, regular: populi Romani iustissimum esse imperium, that the Romans were best entitled to dominion
**iuvenis** - e, [?], adj., young. — As noun, a young man (not over 45), a youth: iuniores, the younger soldiers.

**iuventūs**, -tūtis, [iuven- (orig. st. of iuvenis) + tus], f., youth. — Concretely, the youth, the young men.

**iuventus**, -tutis, [iuven- (orig. st. of iuvenis) + tus], f., youth. — Concretely, the youth, theyoungmen.

**iuxta** [instr. (?)] of tiuxtus, sup. of tiugis (lUG + is), adv. and prep. with acc., next, near, near by.

**Kal., for Kalendae** and its cases. Kalendae (Cal-), -arum, [f. plur. of calendus, p. of verb akin to calo, call], f. plur., the Calends (the first day of the Roman month, when, as it would seem, the times of the moon were announced to the assembled people).

**L.**, for Lucius.

**L** (ψ), [a corrupt form of the Greek letter ψ (prop. χ), originally used for 50, and retained in the later notation], a sign for quinquā gintā.

**Laberius**, -I, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — See Durus.

**Labienus**, -I, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Titus Alius Labienus, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the civil war on the side of Pompey.

**labor**, -oris, [rabh (seize) + or (for -os)], M., toil, exertion (in its disagreeable aspect), labor (as painful), trouble, hardship.

**laborāre**, contrive, revolve in one's mind anxiously. — Also, suffer labor, be hard pressed, labor.

**labrum**, -I, [LAB (in lambo, lick, cf. labia, lips) + rum], N., the lip. — Less exactly, the edge (of a horn, of a ditch), the rim (of a cup).

**lāc**, lactis, [?], N., milk.


**lacrima**, -ae, [†dakru- + ma], F., a tear.

**lacrimō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lacrima-], 1. v. a. and n., weep, shed tears.

**lacus**, -ūs, [?], M., a reservoir, a lake.

**laedd**, laedere, laesi, laesus, [unc.], 3. v. n., wound, injure. — Fig., esp., break (one's word, etc.), violate.

**laesus**, -a, -um, p. p. of laedo.
laetitia, -ae, [laetō- + tia], F., joy, gladness (cf. laetus).
laetus, -a, -um, [unc. root (perh. akin to glad') + tus], adj., joyful (of the inner feeling), rejoicing, glad.

languidē [old case-form of languidus], adv., with little energy, feebly.

languidus, -a, -um, [cf. langueo, be weary], adj., spiritless, listless, languid: languidior, with less spirit.

languor, -ōris, [LANG (in langueo, be weary) + or], M., want of spirit, listlessness, weariness.

lapis, -ādis, [?], M., a stone (to throw, etc.). — Collectively, stone, stones.

lapsus, -a, -um, p. p. of labor.

laqueus, -ī, [LAC (in lacio, entice) + ēus], M., a slip-noose.

largior, -īri, -ītus, [largō-, abundant], 4. v. dep., give lavishly, bestow upon, supply with. — Also, give bribes, give presents.

largiter [largō- (abundant) + ter], adv., lavishly: largiter posse, possess abundant influence.

largītio, -ōnis, [largī- (st. of largior) + tio], F., lavish giving, bribery.

lassitudō, -ūnis, [lассō- (weary) + tuss, cf. fortitūdo], F., weariness, exhaustion.

lātē [old case-form of latus], adv., widely: latus, too far; longe lateque, far and wide.

latebra, -ae, [latē- (in lateo) + bra], F., a hiding-place.

lateō, latēre, latuī, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., lie concealed, lurk, be concealed, pass unnoticed.


Latobrigi, -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii.

latrō, -ōnis, [prob. st. borrowed fr. Greek + o], M., a mercenary (?), a robber.

latrocinium, -i, [latron- + cinium, cf. ratiocinor], N., freebooting, robbery, highway robbery.

lātus, -a, -um, [prob. for †platus, cf. Eng. flat], adj., broad, wide, extensive.

lātus, lateris, [prob. latō-], N., the side (of the body). — Also, generally, a side, a flank, an end (of a hill).

lātus, -a, -um, [for titlatus, TLA (cf. tollo, tuli) + tus], p. p. of fero.

lauō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lauā-], 1. v. a., praise, commend.

lavō, laudāris, [?], F., praise, credit, glory, merit (thing deserving praise).

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvī (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), [?], 1. v. a., wash. — In pass. used reflexively, bathe.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laxā-, loose], 1. v. a., loosen, open out, extend.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, [legā- (dispatch) + tio], F., a sending or commission, an embassy, an embassy (message of ambassadors).

lēgātus, -ī, [prop. p. p. of lēgo, commission, despatch], M., an ambassador, envoy. — Also, a lieutenant, a legatus. To a Roman commander were assigned (legare) one or more subordinate officers capable of taking command in his absence or en-
gaging in independent operations under his general direction. These were the legati, and with the questor composed a kind of staff.

**legiō, -ōnis, [LEG (select) + iō], f., (a levy); hence, a legion (originally the whole levy, later the unit of army organization, numbering from 3000 to 6000 men, divided into ten cohorts).

**legiōnārius, -a, -um, [legion- + arius], adj., of a legion, of the line, legionary (the Roman heavy infantry of the legion as opposed to all kinds of auxiliary troops).

**Lemannus, -i, [?], m., (with lacus either expressed or implied), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman.

**Lemovices, -um, [Celtic], m. pl.: 1. A Gallic tribe in modern Limousin. The name is preserved in Limoges.

**lēnis, -e, [?], adj., gentle, smooth.

**lēnitās, -tātis, [leni- + tas], f., gentleness, gentle current (of a river).

**lēniter [leni-+ ter], adv., gently: lenius, with less vigor.

**Lepontiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Alps on the Italian side of St. Gothard.

**lepus, -oris, [?], m., a hare.

**Leuci (Levaci), -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle.

**Levacī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Belgian Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

**levis, -e, [for tleghvis,LAGH (jump) + us (with inserted i, cf. brevis), Eng. light], adj., light, slight, unimportant, of no weight: auditio (mere hearsay without found-
librīlis, -e, [libra- (pound) + ilis], adj., of a pound weight: fundae (heavy missiles from slings, one-pounders).

licentia, -ae, [licent- (cf. licet) + īa], F., lawlessness, want of discipline.

licensor, licērī, licitus, [prob. pass. of licet], 2. v. dep., bid (at a auction).

licet, licēre, licuit, licuēt (liciet est), [īlicē-, cf. delicus, relicuēs], 2. v. n., be allowed: id sibi, etc. (that they be allowed); per te licet, you allow, you do not hinder; licet conspicari, one can see; quibus esse licet, who may be, who have a chance to be; petere ut līceat, to ask permission.

Liger, -eris, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul between the Hāedui and the Bituriges, the Loire.

lignātiō, -onis, [lignā- (cf. lignum, wood) + tio], F., getting wood.

lignātor, -tōris, [lignā- (cf. lignum, wood) + tor], M., wood-forager, wood-cutter.

lilium, -i, [?], N., a lily. The name is applied jocosely to a peculiar kind of chevaux-de-frise.

līnea, -ae, [linō- (flax) + ea (F. of -eus)], F., a line.

Lingones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges Mts.

lingua, -ae, [?], F., tongue. Hence, language.

lingula, -ae, [lingua- + la (F. of -lus)], F., a little tongue, a tongue of land.

linter (lunt-), -tris, [?], F. (?), a trough, a skiff, a boat.


lis, litis, [for †stlis, cf. locus and Eng. strike]. F., a suit at law. — Also, the amount in dispute, damages.

Liscus, -ī, [Celtic], M., chief magistrate of the Hāedui in the year 58 B.C.

Litavicus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Hāedui chief.

littera (lit-), -ae, [? akin to lino, smear], F., a letter (of the alphabet).

— Plur., letters, writing, an alphabet, a letter (an epistle), records.

lītus, -oris, [?], N., a shore, a beach.

locus, -i, [for †stlocus (place) stla + cus], M. (sing.), N. (generally pl.), a place, a spot, a position, a region (esp. in plur.), a point, the ground (in military language), space, extent (of space), rōm. — Fig., position, rank, a point, place (light, position, character), an opportunity, a chance: obsidum loco, as hostages.

locūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of loquor.

longē [old case-form of longus], adv., far, too far, absent, far away, distant: non longius mille (not more than); longe afuturum, would be far from helping; longius prodire (any distance); longius aberat, was rather far away; longe nobilissimus (far, altogether).

longinquus, -a, -um, [case-form of longus (perh. loc.) + cus], adj., long (of time and space), distant, long-continued.

longitudō, -dinis, [longō- + tudo], F., length.

longurius, -ī, [longō- + urius], M., a long pole.

longus, -a, -um, [?], adj., long (of space and time); in longiorem
diem, to a more distant day; navis longa, a ship of war, a war galley, (opposed to the broader naves one-rariae); longum est espectare, it is too long to wait, it would take too long to, etc.

loquor, loqui, locutus, [?], 3. v. dep., speak, talk, converse.

lorica, -ae, [lorō (strap) + ica], F., a coat of mail (orig. of leather thongs). — Also, a breastwork, a rampart (on a wall).

Lucanius, -i, [Lucanō + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Lucanius, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Lucius, -i, [luc- (in lux) + ius], M., a Roman praenomen.

Lucterius, -i, [?, perh. Celtic], M., a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from the Romans. — Esp., Lucterius Cadurcus, a commander under Vercingetorix.

Lugotorix, -igis, [Celtic], M., a British prince.

lūna -ae, [LUC (in luceo, shine) + na], F., the moon. Also personified, Luna, the Moon.

Lutetia, -ae, [?], F., a city of the Parisii, on the island of modern Paris.

lux, lūcis, [luc, shine, as St.], F., light, daylight: prima luce, orta luce, or luce, at daybreak.

luxuria, -ae, [luxurō - (luxus - excess) + rus] + ia], F., luxury, riotous living.

M

M[corruption of Marcus.

M [corruption of CIC (orig. Φ) through influence of mille], 1000.

māceria, -ae, [mācerō - (whence macerō, soften) + ia], F., (mortar?), a wall.

māchinātiō, -ōnis, [machinā- + tio], F., contrivance (mechanical). — Concretely, a contrivance, an engine, a derrick.

maestus, -a, -um, [p. p. of mae-reo, MIS (in miser, wretched) + tus], adj., sad, sorrowful, dejected.

Magetobriga, -ae, [Celtic], F., a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. Position uncertain.

magistrātus, -tūs, [magistrā- (as if st. of tmagistro, cf. magister, master) + tus], M., a magistracy (office of a magistrate). — Concretely, a magistrate (cf. "the powers that be").

māgnificus, -a, -um, [magnō-ficus (FAC (in facio) + us)], adj., splendid, grand, magnificent.

māgnitūdō, -dinis, [magnō- + tudo], F., greatness, great size, size, extent, stature, force (venti), severity (supplici): silvarum (immense woods); corporum (size, stature).

māgnopere, see opus.

māgnus, -a, -um, [MAG (increase) + nus, cf. magis], adj., great (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), large, extensive, important, serious (motus), heavy (portoria), high (aestus), loud (vox): magni habere, to
value highly, make much account of; magni interest, it is of great importance. — māior, compar. in usual sense. — Also, māior (with or without nātu), elder, older. — In plur. as noun, elders, ancestors. — maximus, superl., largest, very large, greatest, very great, etc.: maximis itineribus, by forced marches. See also Maxi-
mus.

māiestās, -tātis, [maios- (orig. st. of maior) + tas], F., (superiority), majesty, dignity.

māior, see magnus.

malacia, -ae, [burr. fr. Greek], F., (soft weather), a calm.

male [old case-form of malus], adv., badly, ill, unsuccessfully. — peius, compar. — pessime, superl.

maleficium, -ī, [maleficō- (miscievious) + ium], N., harm, mischief.

mālō, mālle, mālui, no p. p., [mage- (for magis) volo], irr. v. a. and n., wish more, wish rather, pre-
er, prefer rather.

malus, -a, -um, [?], adj., bad (in all senses), ill. — pēior, compar. — pessimus, superl.

mālus, -ī, [Gr.], M., (apple-tree), mast, beam (upright).

mandātum, -ī, [N. p. p. of man-
do], N., a trust (given to one), in-
structions (given), a message (given to some one to deliver).

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, āman-
dō- (manu-do)], I. v. a., put into one's hands, entrust, instruct (give in-
structions to), commit: se fugae (take to); quibus mandatum est, who had been instructed.

Mandubii, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe north of the Hāedui.

Mandubracius, -i, [Celtic], M., a Briton, prince of the Trinobantes.


maneō, manere, mānsi, mānsurus, 2. v. n., stay, remain, stay at home (absolutely, opp. to proficiscor). — Fig., continue, stand by (in eo quod). manipūlāris, -is, [manipūlō- + aris, prop. adj.], M., comrade (of the same maniple or company).

manipulus, -ī, [manu-tpulus (ple + us)], M., (a handful, esp. of hay, used as an ensign), a maniple (two centuries, a third of a cohort).

Manlius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Man-
lius, as proconsul, beaten by the Aquitani in B.C. 78.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [mānsuē- (cf. mansuesco, grow tame, and calefaciō) -facio], 3. v. a., tame. — Pass., mānsuēfīō, be tamed.

mānsuētūdō, -dinis, [mānsue-
(cf. mansuefacio) + tūdo], F., tame-
ness, gentle disposition, kindness.

manus, -ūs, [?], F., the hand: in manibus nostris, just at hand, within reach; manu defendere (by arms); dat manus, hold out the hands to be bound, acknowledge one's self con-
quered, give in. — Also (cf. manipu-
lus), a company, a band, a troop.

Marcomanni, -ōrum, [Teutonic, akin to march and man, "the men of the marches"?], M. plur., a sup-
pposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus.
Mārcus, -i, [the hammer, akin to marceo, be soft, and morior, die], M., a Roman prænomen.

mare, -is, [?], N., the sea: mare oceanum, the ocean; nostrum (i.e. the Mediterranean).

maritimus, -a, -um, [mari- + timus, cf. finitimus], adj., of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea: aestus (in the sea); ora (the sea-shore). — Also, maritumus.

Marius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Gaius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion.

Mārs, Mārtis, [?], perh. Mar (in morior, die) + tis, the slayer, but more probably of wolves than of men in battle], M., Mars, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards identified with the Greek ᾿Απός and worshipped as the god of war. Caesar again identifies him with the Celtic Hesus.—See aequus.

mās, maris, [?], adj., male. — Noun, a male.

matara, -ae, [Celtic], F., a javelin (of a peculiar kind, used by the Gauls).

māter, -tris, [?], prob. MA (create) + ter], F., a mother, a matron.

māter familiās (old gen. of familia), F., a matron.

māteria, -ae (-es, -ēi), [?], prob. mater + ia (F. of -ius], F., wood (cut, for material), timber, (cf. lignum, wood for fuel).

māterior, -ārī, -ātus, [materia-], 1. v. dep., get timber, bring wood.

Matiscō, -onis, [Celtic], F., a city of the Hædui, now Macon.

mātrimōniun, -i, [mater- (as if matri) + monium], N. (motherhood), marriage, matrimony: in matrimonium ducere, marry.

Matrona, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, the Marne.

māturē [old case-form of maturus], adv., early, speedily.

māturēscō, -tūrēscere, -tūrui, no p. p., [maturē- (cf. matureo) + sco], 3. v. n., get ripe, ripen.

māturō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [maturō-], 1. v. a. and n., hasten, make haste.

māturus, -a, -um, [maturē- (ma, in mane) + tus] + rus], adj., early. — Also (by unc. conn. of ideas), ripe, mature.

maximē [old case-form of maximus], adv., in the greatest degree, most, very, in the highest degree, especially: ea maxime ratione, in that way more than any other; maxime confidebat, had the greatest confidence.

Maximus [sup. of magnus, as noun], M., a Roman family name.

medeor, -ērī, no p. p., [†medō- (whence medicus, remedium), root unc., cf. meditor], 2. v. dep., attend (as a physician), heal.—Fig., remedy, relieve.

mediocris, -cre, [mediō- + cris], adj., middling, moderate: spatium (a little, no great); non mediocris, no little, no small degree of.
mediocriter [medioci- + ter], adv., moderately: non mediocriter, in no small degree.

Mediomatrici, -orum, (-um), [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Rhine, about Metz.

mediterraneus, -a, -um, [medio-terra (land) + aneus], adj., inland.

medius, -a, -um, [med (cf. Eng. mid) + ius], adj., the middle of (as noun in Eng.), mid-: in colle medio (half way up); locus medius utrimque (half way between); de media nocte, about midnight.

Meldī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul.

melior, compar. of bonus.

Melodūnum, -i, [Celtic], n., a city of the Senones, on an island in the Seine, now Melun; see Metiosedum.

membrum, -i, [prob. formed with suffix -rum (n. of -rus)], n., a limb, a part of the body.

memini, -isse, [perf. of man, in mens, etc.], def. verb a., remember.

memoria, -ae, [memor + ia], f., (mindfulness), memory, recollection, power of memory: memoria tenere, remember; memoriam prodere, hand down the memory (of something just mentioned); memoriam deponere, cease to remember; memoria prodistrictum, handed down by tradition; supra hanc memoriam, beyond the memory of this generation; dignum memoria, worthy of remembrance; nostrā memoria, within our memory, in our own time.

Menapii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

mendācium, -ī, [mendac- (false) + ium], n., falsehood, a falsehood.

mēns, mentis, [man + tis (reduced)], f., (a thought?), the intellect (as opposed to the moral powers, cf. animus), the mind, a state of mind: mentes animoque, minds and hearts; oculis mentibusque, with eyes and thoughts.

mēnsis, -is, [unc. form fr. ma, measure (cf. moon, month)], m., a month.

mēnsūra, -ae, [tmensu- (ma, measure, as if man, + tu) + ra (f. of -rus)], f., measure: ex aqua mensurae, measures by the water-clock; itinerum (accurate length).

mentīō, -onis, [as if man (in memini) + tio (prob. tmenti + o)], f., mention.

mercātor, -tōris, [tmercā- (cf. mercor, trade) + tor], m., a trader (who carries his own wares abroad).

mercātūra, -ae, [tmercatu- + ra (f. of rus)], f., traffic, trade, commercial enterprise.

mercēs, -ēdis, [mercē- (cf. merx, merchandise) + dus (reduced)], f., hire, pay, wages.

Mercurius, -ī, [unc. form, akin to merces, etc.], m., Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc. He is identified by Cæsar with a Celtic divinity, probably Teutates.
mereor, -erē, -erūs, (also mereo, active), 2. v. dep., win, deserve, gain. — Also (from earning pay), serve: mereri de, serve the interests of.

meridīėus, -a, -um, [meridiē- + anus], adj., of midday: tempus (noon).

meridēs, -ēī, [prob. medio- (reduced) -dies], M., midday, noon. — Also, the south.

meritum, -i, [N. p. p. of mereo], N., desert, service. — meritō (abl. as adv.), deservedly: minus merito, without the fault; magis . . . quam merito eorum, more than by any act of theirs; merito eius a se fieri, that he deserved that he should do it.

meritus, -a, -um, p. p. of mereo.

Messāla, -ae, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Valerius Messala, consul, B.C. 61, with Marcus Piso.

mētor, mētīrī, mēnsus, [mētīrī (MA + tis ?)], 4. v. dep., measure, measure out, deal out (rations), distribute.

Metiosēdūm, -ī, [Celtic], N., earlier name of Melodunum.

Mētius, -ī, [?], M., a Gaul in relations of hospitality (see hospes) with Ariovistus.

mēto, metere, messuī, messus, [?], 3. v. a., cut, reap, gather.

metēs, -tūs, [unc. root + tus], M., fear. — Often superfluous with other words of fearing: metu territare, terrify. — Esp.: hoc metu, fear of this.

meus, -a, -um, [MA (in me) + ius], poss. adj. pron., my, mine.

mihi, see ego.

miles, -itis, [unc. st. akin to mille as root + tis (reduced)], c., a soldier, a common soldier (as opposed to officers), a legionary soldier (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service). — Collectively, the soldiers, the soldiery.

militāris, -e, [milit- + aris], adj., of the soldiers, military: signa (battle-standards). See res.

militia, -ae, [milit- + ia], F., military service, service (in the army).

mille, indecl. milia, -iīm, [akin to miles], adj. in sing., noun in plur., a thousand: mille passuum, a thousand paces, a mile.

Minerva, -ae, [unc. form akin to memini, etc.], F., Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts, identified with the Greek Athene.

minimē [old case-form of minimus], adv., in the smallest degree, least, very little, not at all.

minimus, -a, -um, [lost st. (whence minuo) + imus (cf. infimus), superl. of parvus], adj., smallest, least. — Neut. as noun and adv., the least, least, very little.

minor, -us, [lost st. (cf. minimus) + ior (compar. ending)], adj., compar. of parvus, smaller, less: dimidio minor, half as large. — Neut. as noun and adv., less, not much, not very, not so much, not so: quo minus, in order that . . . not; si minus, if not; minus valebat (not so strong, less, etc.); minus uti (not so well); minus magnus fluctus (less violent, smaller).

Minucius (Minut-), -ī, [perh. akin
to minus], m., a Roman gentile name. See Basilus and Rufus.

**minuō, -uere, -ui, -utus, [†minu- (cf. minus)], 3. v. a. and n., lessen, weaken, diminish: aestus (ebb); vim (break the force, etc.); controversias (settle); desidem (cure, correct); ostentationem (humble).

**mirātus, -a, -um, p. p. of miror.

**miror, -ārī, -ātus, [mirō-], i. v. dep., wonder, wonder at, be surprised.—mirātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, surprised.

**mirus, -a, -um, [?, SM (cf. smile) + rus], adj., surprising, marvellous, wonderful: mirum in modum, in a surprising manner.

**miser, -era, -erum, [MIS (cf. mæreo) + rus], adj., wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor.

**miscericordia, -ae, [miscericord- (merciful) + ia], f., mercy, pity, clemency.

**miseror, -ārī, -ātus, [†miserō-], i. v. dep., bewail, complain of.

**missus, -a, -um, p. p. of mittō.

**missus, -sūs, [MIT (¿, root of mittō) + tus], m., a sending; missu Caesaris, despatched by Caesar, under orders of Caesar.

**mitissimē [old case-form of mitissimus], adv., superl. of mite (N. of mitis), very gently, very mildly, in very gentle terms.

**mittō, mittere, misī, missus, [?], 3. v. a., let go (cf. omitto), send, despatch, discharge, shoot: sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke. See iugum.

**mōbilis, -e, [prob. movi- (as if st. of moveo, or a kindred st.) + bilis], adj., easily moved, movable, mobile.

**mōbilitās, -tātis, [mobilī- + tās], F., mobility, activity (of troops), inconstancy, fickleness.

**mōbiliter [mobilī- + ter (prob. terum, reduced)], adv., easily (of motion), readily.

**moderor, -ārī, -ātus, [†moder- (akin to modus, cf. genus, genero)], i. v. dep., control, regulate, restrain.

**modestia, -ae, [modestō- + ia], f., moderation, self-control, subordination (of soldiers).

**modō [abl. of modus], adv., (with measure ?), only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: paulum modo (just, a very); non ... modo, not only; aspectum modo, the mere sight.

**modus, -i, [MOD (cf. moderō) + us], m., measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, style, method: ad hunc modum, after this fashion; nullo modō, in no way. See eiusmodi.

**moenia, -ium, [MI (distribute ?) + nis (cf. communis) (orig. shares of work done by citizens ?)], N. plur., fortifications, walls of a city.

**mōlēs, -is, [cf. molestus], F., a mass.—Esp., a hike, a dam.

**molestē [old case-form of molestus, troublesome], adv., heavily, severely: molestē ferre, take hardly, be vexed at.

**mōlimentum, -ī, [moli- (st. of molior, strive) + mentum], N., trouble, difficulty, exertion.

**mōlitus, -a, -um, p. p. of molo.

**molliō, -ire, -īvi, -ītus, [molli-], 4. v. a., soften.—Fig., make easy: clivum.
mollis, -e, [?], adj., soft, tender. — Fig., weak, feeble, not hard, not firm: animus ad resistendum; litus (gently sloping).

mollitiēs, -ōĩ (also, -a, -ae), [mollis - pl. of mollis] + ties (cf. -tia), F., softness. — Fig., weakness: animi (feebleness of purpose, weakness of character).

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, [?], 3. v. a., grind. See cibarius.

mōmentum, -ōn, [mōvi (as st. of moveo, move) + mentum], n., means of motion, cause of motion. — Fig., weight, importance, influence: habere (be of importance).

Mona, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain, but confounded with Anglesea.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [causative of man (in memini) or denomi-native fr. a kindred st.], 2. v. a., remind, warn, advise, urge.

mōns, montis, [man (in mineo, project) + tis (reduced)], M., a mountain, height.

mora, -ae, [prob. root of memor, mindful, + a], F., delay, grounds of delay.

mōrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of morio-

morbūs, -ī, [mar (in morior, die) + bus], M., sickness, illness.

Morīnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ on the coast of Picardy.

morōr, mōri (morīrī), mortuus (morītūrus), [mar (cf. mors)], 3. v. dep., die.

Moritasgus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Senones.

mōrōr, -ārī, -ātus, [mora-], i. v. dep., retard, hinder, check (the advance of), delay, wait, stay.

mors, mortis, [mar (cf. morior) + tis], F., death: sibi mortem consciscere, commit suicide.

mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of morior.

mōs, mōris, [?], m., a custom, a usage, a way (of acting). — Plur., customs, habits, character (as consisting of habits, cf. ingenium and indeoles, of native qualities).

Mosa, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse, or Maas.

mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of moveo.

mōtūs, -tīs, [mōvi (as st. of moveo) + tis], M., a movement, a disturbance, an uprising; expedition (movement of ships); celer atque instabilis (changes, of the passage of events in maritime warfare); siderum (revolutions).

moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtus, [?], 2. v. a., set in motion, move, stir: castra (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp).

mulier, -eris, [?], F., a woman.

mūliō, -ōnis, [mulō- + o], M., a muleteer, a driver.

multitudō, -dinis, [multō- + tudō], F., a great number, great numbers, number (generally). — Esp., the multitude, the common people.

multō, see multus.

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [multa-], i. v. a., punish (by fine), deprive (one of a thing as a punishment).

multum, see multus.

multus, -a, -um, [?], poss. root of mille, miles, + tis], adj., much,
many: multō die, late in the day; ad multam noctem, till late at night.
— multum, neut. as noun and adv., much.— Also, plur., multa, many things, much, a great deal.— Abl., multō, much, far: multō facilius.— As compar., plūs, pluris, n. noun and adv.; plur. as adj., more, much, very: as noun, several, many.— As superl., plurīmus, -a, -um, most, very many, very much: quam plurīmi, as many as possible; quam plurīmos possunt, the most they can; plurīsum posse, have most power, be very strong or influential; plurīnum valere, have very great weight.

mūlus, -ī, [?, perh. akin to mōlo, grind'], M. (the mill-beast), a mule.

Mūnātius, -ī, [prob. akin to munus], M., a Roman gentile name.— Esp., Lucius Munatius Plancus, a legatus in Cæsar's army.

mundus, -ī, [?], M. (orig. adj., well ordered, a translation of Gr. κόσμος), the universe, the world.

mūnimentum, -ī, [muni- + mentum], N., a fortification.— Plur., a defence.

mūniō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itus, [muni- (st. of moenia)], 4. v. a. and n., fortify.— Less exactly, protect, defend, furnish (by way of protection), make (by embankment), construct: castra; iter.— munitissima castra (very strongly fortified).

mūnītiō, -onis, [muni- + tio], f., fortification (abstractly).— Concretely, a fortification, works, fortifications, defences: munitio operis, building works of defence; munitio causā, to build works, etc.

mūnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of munio.

mūnus, -eris, [min (as if root of moenia) + us, orig. share (cf. moenia)], N., a duty, a service, a task: munus militiae, military service.— Also, (a contribution), a tribute, a gift, a present.

mūrālis, -e, [murō- + alis], adj., of a wall, wall: pila (heavy javelins for service in siege operations).

mūrus, -ī, [?], M., a wall (in itself considered, cf. moenia, defences).

mūsculus, -ī, [mus + culus, dimin.], M., (little mouse), a shed (small and very strong, for covering besieging soldiers).

mutilus, -a, -um, [?], adj., mutilated: cornibus (with short broken horns, of the elk).

N

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.

nam [old case-form, cf. tam, quam], conj., for.

Nammēius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Helvetician sent as ambassador to Cæsar.

Namnetes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Loire around Nantes.

namque [nam-que], conj., for (a little more emphatic than nam).

nanciscor, -ciscī, nactus (nactus), [NAC], 3. v. dep., find, get, procure, light upon, get hold of, obtain.

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.
Nantuâtes, -um, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of Gaul of uncertain position, probably in Savoy.

Narbô, -onis, [Celtic], m., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, early made a Roman colony, now Narbonne.

nâscor, născī, nătus, [GNA, cf. gigno], 3. v. dep., be born, arise, be produced, spring up, be raised (of beasts), be found (plumbum).—nâtus, p. p., sprung, born.

Nasua, -ae, [?, Germanic], m., a leader of the Suevi.

nâtâlis, -e, [natu- (reduced) + alis], adj., of birth: dies natalis, a birthday.

nâtiô, -onis, [GNA (cf. nascor) + tio], perh. through intermediate st.], F., (a birth), a race, a nation, a tribe, a clan.

nâtivus, -a, -um, [natu- (reduced) + ivus], adj., native, natural.

nâtûra, -ae, [natu- + ra (F. of -rus)], F., (birth), nature, character (of living creature), character, nature (of inanimate things); ea erum natura, such the state of the case; secundum naturam fluminis, down stream; natura triquetra (in form); natura cогeбat, must necessarily; de rerum natura (physical science); eadem feminae marisque (form, organization); naturam vincere (human nature); natura loci, nature of the ground.

nâtus, -a-um, p. p. of nascor.

nâtus, -tūs, [GNA (cf. nascor) + tus], m., birth: maiores natu, elders.

nauta, -ae, [borrowed from Gr. wãrûs], m., a sailor, a boatman.

nauticus, -a, -um, [nauta- + cus], adj., of a sailor (or sailors), naval.

nâvâlis, -e, [navi- (reduced) + alis], adj., of ships, naval: navalis pugna, sea-fight.

nâvica, -ae, [navi- + cula], F., a boat, a small vessel, a skiff.

nâvâgâtiô, -onis, [navigâ- + tio], F., a sailing, a voyage, travelling b' sea, a trip (by sea).

nâvigîum, -i, [†navigô- (?), navi + †agus) + ium], N., a vessel (general), “a craft,” a boat.

nâvîgô, -äre, -ävî, -ätus, [†navigô- (see navigium)], I. v. n., sail.

nâvis, -is, [(S)NU, float (increased), with added i], F., a ship, a vessel, a boat: oneraria (a transport); longa (a war galley); navi egregi, land.

nâvô, -äre, -ävî, -ätus, [(g)navô-, busy], I. v. a., do one's best: operam (do one's best).

nê [NA, unc. case-form], conj., lest, that . . . not, not to (do anything), from (doing anything), so that . . . not, for fear that.—After verbs of fearing, that.—Also adv., ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either; ne Vorenus quidem, nor Vorenus either; Vorenus, too, did not, etc.

-ne (enclitic) [prob. same as nê, orig. = nonne], conj., not? (as a question, cf. nonne), whether, did (as question in Eng.), do, etc. — See also necne, nec.

nec, see neque.

necessârius, -a, -um, [†necessū- (reduced) + arius], adj., (closely bound?), necessary: tempus (critical); causa (pressing, unavoidable):
res (absolutely necessary, needful, indispensable). — Also, as noun, a connection (a person bound by any tie), a kinsman, a close friend. — Abl. as adv., necessariō, of necessity, necessarily, unavoidably.

necesse [nec-cessō-, cf. cedo], indecl. adj., necessary. — With est, one must, one cannot but, one must inevitably.

necessitās, -tās, [necessō + tās], F., necessity, constraint, compulsion: temporis (exigency); suarum necessitatum causa (interests).

necessitūdō, -dinis, [necessō + tūdō], F., close connection (cf. necessarius), intimacy, close relations.

necne [nec ne], conj., or not (in double questions).

necō, -āre, -āvi (-ūī), -ātus (-tus), [nec (st. of nex, death)], i. v. a., put to death, kill, murder (in cold blood).

nēcubi [ne cubi (? for quobi, see ubi)], conj., that nowhere, lest anywhere, that not . . . anywhere.

nēfārius, -a, -um, [nēfas + ius], adj., wicked, infamous, abominable.

nēfās, [nē-fas], N. indecl., a crime (against divine law): nefas est, it is not allowable.

neggō (necl-), -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [nec (= ne) -lego], 3. v. a., not regard, disregard, neglect: iniurias (leave unavenged, leave unpunished); hac parte neglecta (leave unnoticed); metu mortis neglecto (careless of, etc.).

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, poss. ne-aio], i. v. a. and n., say no, say . . . not, refuse.

negōtior, -ārī, -ātus, [negotiō-], i. v. dep., do business (on a large scale, as in money, etc.).

negōtiōnum, -ī, [neg-otium, ease], N., business, occupation, an undertaking. — Less definitely, a matter, a thing. — Also, difficulty, trouble: in ipso negotiō, at the moment of action; negotium conficere, make a thorough business of a thing, finish a thing up; quid negotiō, what business? cf. Eng. “what business have you here?”; dare negotium alicui, employ one, give in charge to.

Nemetes, -um, [Teutonic], m. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine

nēmō, τενεμίνις, [ne-homo, man], c., no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one.

nēquāquam [ne-quaquam, anyway (cf. eā, quā)], adv., in no way, by no means.

neque (nec) [ne-que], adv., and not, and yet . . . not, nor: neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

nēquī(d)quām (néquic-), [ne . . . qui(d)quām, anything], adv., to no purpose, in vain, not without reason.

Nervicus, -a, -um, [Nerviō- (reduced) + cus], adj., of the Nervi, Nervian.

Nervius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., Nervian. — M. plur., the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -i, [prob. for tnevrus], m., a sinew. — Fig., in plur., strength, vigor.

neu, see neve.

neuter, -tra, -trum, [ne-uter, which (of two)], adj. pron., neither. — Plur., neither party, neither side.
nēve (neu) [ne-ve], conj., or not, and not, nor.

nex, necis, [?], F., death, violent death, execution.

nihil, see nihilum.

nihilum, -ī (nihil), [ne-hilum, trīfē, whīt?], N. (also indecl.), nothing: nihil reliquī, nothing left; nihil respondere, make no answer.— nihilō, abl. as adv., none, no. — nihil, acc. as adv., not at all: non nihil, somewhat.

nimius, -a, -um, [nimi- (?), st. of nimis, too much] + ius], adj., too much, too great.

nisi [ne-si], conj., (not . . . if), unless, except, except in case: nisi cum, until; nisi rogatus, without being asked.

nīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of nītor.

Nitiobriges (-broges), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

nītor, nīsus (nīxus), nītī, [prob. genu, knee], 3. v. dep., (strain with the knee against something), struggle, strive, exert one’s self: niti insidiis (rely upon).

nīx, nivirus, [?], F., snow.

nōbilis, -e, [as if (g)nō (root of nosco, know) + bilis], adj., famous, noble, well-born (cf. “notable”). — Plur. as noun, the nobles.

nōbilitās, -tātis, [nōbili- + tas], F., nobility. — Concretely, the nobility, the nobles.

nocēns, see noceo.

nocēn, nocēre, -ui, no p. p., [akin to nex, death], 2. v. n., do harm to, injure, harm, harass. — nocēns, -entis, p. as adj., hurtful, guilty (of some harm).

noctū [abl. of †noctus (noc- tus)], as adv., by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, [noc- + turnus, cf. diurnus], adj., of the night, nightly, nocturnal, in the night, by night: tempus (night-time).

nōdus, -ī, [?], M., a knot, a joint: nōdi et articuli, protuberant joints.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, [ne-volo], irr. v. a. and n., not wish, be unwilling, wish not, not like to have: nōli, nōlite, do not (with infin.).

nōmen, -minis, [(g)nō (root of nosco, know) + men], N., a name (what one is known by), name (fame, prestige). — As a name represents an account, an account: nōmine dotis (on account of, as); suo nōmine, on his own account; nōmine obsidium, under pretence of hostages.

nōminātīm [acc. of real or supposed †nominatis (nōnīna- + tis)], adv., by name (individually).

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nōmin-], r. v. a., name, mention, call by name.

nōn [ne-oenum (unum)], adv., not:
nōn est dubium, there is no doubt; nōn mediocriter, in no small degree.

nōnāgintā, indecl., num., ninety.

nōndum (see dum), not yet.

nōnnūllus (see nullus), some.

nōnnnumquam (see numquam), sometimes.

nōnus, -a, -um, [†novi- (?) + nus (mus)], num. adj., ninth.

Nōrēia, -ae, [Teutonic], F., a city of the Norici, in modern Styria.

Nōricus, -a, -um, [st. akin to Noreia + cus], adj., of the Norici, Norican.

nōs, nōsme, see ego, egomet.
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, [c]NA, know], 3. v. a., learn, become acquainted with. — In perf. tenses, know. — nōtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., known, familiar, well-known: notis vadis (being acquainted with, etc.).

nōster, -tra, -trum, [prob. nos (nom. plur.) + ter], poss. adj. pron., our, ours. — In plur., our men (the Romans), our forces.

nōtitia, -ae, [notō- + tia], f., acquaintance with, knowledge.

nōtus, p. p. of nosco.

novem [unc. reduced case-form], indecl. num. adj., nine.


novitās, -tātis, [novō- + tās], f., novelty, strangeness, strange character: rei (novelty, unexpected occurrence).


— novissimus, -a, -um, superl., latest, last: agmen (the rear).

nox, noctis, [akin to noceo, harm], F., night: prima nocte, in the early part of the night; multa nocte, late at night.

noxia, -ae, [noc (in noceo, harm) + unc. term.], F., crime, guilt.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus, [akin to nubes, cloud], 3. v. n., veil one's self (of the bride), marry (of the woman).

nūdātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nudo.

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nudō-], 1. v. a., lay bare, expose, strip. — Less exactly, clear (murum defenso-ribus).

nūdus, -a, -um, [?, root (akin to naked ) + dus], adj., naked, bare, unprotected, exposed.

nūllus, -a, -um, [ne-ullus], adj., not any, no. — As noun, no one. — nōn nūllus, some. — Plur. as noun, some, some persons.

num [pron. NA, cf. tum], adv., interrog. particle, suggesting a neg. answer, does, is, etc., it is not, is it? and the like: num posse (in indirect discourse, could he, etc.).

nūmen, -inis, [NU (in nuo, nod) + men], N., (a nod), will, power. Hence, divinity.

numerus, -i, [num- (cf. nummus, Numa) + rus], M., a number, number: in hostium numero habuit (in the place of, etc., euphemism for slaughtered); totidem numero, the same number; impedimentorum (quantity, i.e. number of pack-horses); ad numerum, to the required number; aliquo numero, of some account.

Numida, -ae, [?, M., a Numidian (employed in the Roman army as cavalry, cf. Zouave, Turco).

nummus, -i, [akin to numerus], M., a coin: pro nummo, for coin.

numquam (num-) [ne-umquam], adv., never.

nunc [num-ce, cf. hic], adv., now (emphatic, as an instantaneous now, cf. iam, unemphatic and continuous): etiam nunc, even then (of the past considered as present).

nūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nuntio.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nuntiō-].
nūntius

I. v. a., send news, report, make known: nuntiatum est ei...ne (he was ordered not to, etc.).

nūntius, -i, [nūn-eant- (p. of nūveo, be new) + ius], m., (new-comer), a messenger. Hence, news: nuntium mittere (send word); per eorum nuntios (agents).

nūper [for novi-per, cf. parum per], adv., lately, recently, not long ago.

nūsquam [ne-usquam], adv., no-where, in no case (almost equal never).

nūtus, -tūs, [nu + tus], m., a nod, a sign: ad nutum, at one's beck, at one's command; nutu, by signs.

ob [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.), and prep. with acc. (near), against. Hence, on account of, for: ob eam rem, for this reason, on this account.—In comp., towards, to, against, over.

obae-rātus, -a, -um, [ob-tae-rātus, as if p. p. of āero, cf. aes, money], adj., bound in debt (to some one).—As noun, a debtor, a servant for debt.

obdu-cō, -ducere, -düxī, -ductus, [ob-dūco], 3. v. a., lead towards, lead against: fossam (throw out, in a military sense, carry along).

obeō, -ire, -iī, -itus, [ob-eō], irr. v. a., go to, go about, attend to.

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ob-iacio], 3. v. a., throw against, throw in the way, present, throw up (against the enemy, etc.), set up, expose.—ob-iectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying opposite, lying in the way.

obitus, -tūs, [ob-itūs, cf. obeō], m., a going to. —Esp., a going to death (cf. obire mortem), destruction, annihilation.

obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of obicio.

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of offero.

obliquē [old case-form of obli-quus], adv., obliquely, slanting.

obliquus, -a, -um, [ob-tliquus, cf. li(c)mus, aslant], adj., slanting.

obliviscor, -llvisci, -lltus, [ob-llvio, cf. liveo], 3. v. a., (grow dark against ?), forget.

obsecto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [manufactured from ob sacrum (near or by some sacred object)], 1. v. a., entreat, adjure, implore.

obsequentia, -ae, [obsequent-(yielding) + ia], f., compliance, deference: nimia obsequentia, too ready compliance.

observātus, -a, -um, p. p. of observo.

obseruō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [observo], 1. v. a., (be on the watch towards ?), guard, maintain, keep: iudicium (follow, comply with); dies natalis (keep, celebrate).

obses, -idis, [ob-īses, cf. praeses and obsideo], c., (a person under guard), a hostage.

obsessiō, -onis, [ob-īsso, cf. obsideo], f., a blockade, a siege, a state of siege (cf. oppugnatio, of actual siege operations).
occultas, -a, -um, p. p. of obsideo.
obsideo, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus, [ob-sedeo], 2. v. a., (sit down against), blockade, beset, guard.
obsidīō, -ōnis, [obsidō- (reduced) + ō], F., a siege (cf. obsessio), a blockade: obsidione liberare (from besetting enemies). — Also, the art of siege.
obsignātus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsigno.
obsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [obsigno], 1. v. a., seal up, seal.
obstinātē [old case-form of obstinatus, fr. obstino, persist], adv., persistently.
obstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of obstringo.
obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [ob-stringo], 3. v. a., bind (lit. and fig.): habere obstrictas (under obligation).
obstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of obstruo.
obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [ob-struo, pile], 3. v. a., block up, barricade.
obotemperō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, [ob-tempero], 1. v. n., (conform to), comply with, submit to.
obotestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of obtestor.
obtestor, -āri, -ātus, [ob-testor, cf. testis, witness], 1. v. dep., implore (calling something to witness).
obotineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus, [ob-teneo], 2. v. a., hold (against something or somebody), retain, maintain, occupy, possess: provinciam

(have control of as prætor); iustissimam apud eum causam obtinere, be entirely free from obligation towards him, as having a perfect right to benefits conferred.

obtulī, perf. of offero.
obvenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ob-venīo], 4. v. n., come to, come in one's way, fall to (by lot).
obviam [ob-viam], adv., in the way of, to meet (any one): obviam venire, come to meet.
occāsiō, -ōnis, [ob-tcasio, cf. occidō], F., opportunity: occasio brevis, a short time; rem occasionis, a matter of opportunity.
occāsus, -sūs, [ob-casus, cf. occidō], M., a falling, a setting (of the sun): solis (the sunset, the west).
occīdō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, [ob-cado], 3. v. n., fall, be slain, set: sol occidentis, the west.
occīdō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus, [ob-cado, cut], 3. v. a., kill, massacre: occisi, the slain.
occisus, -a, -um, p. p. of occido.
occultātiō, -ōnis, [occulita- + tio], F., concealment.
occultātus, -a, -um, p. p. of occulto.
occultē [old case-form of occultus], adv., secretly.
occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [occul-tō-], 1. v. a., conceal, hide.
occultus, -a, -um, [p. p. of occulto], as adj., concealed: in occulto, in secret; ex occulto, from an ambush, in ambush; in occulto sese continere, keep themselves hidden; insidiandi ex occulto, of attacking from an ambuscade.
occupatiō, -ōnis, [occupā- + tio], F., occupation (engagement in business), business affairs (of business): occupationes tantularum rerum, engagement in such trifling matters.

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. of occupo.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [toccupō- or toccup-, ob and st. akin to capio], 3. v. a., seize, take possession of, seize upon, occupy (only in military sense): regna (usurp); in opere occupati (engaged, employed).

occurreō, -currere, -currī (cuccurri?), -cursūrus, [ob-curro], 3. v. n., run to meet, meet, come upon, find, fall in with, meet. Hence in pregnant sense, thwart, baffle, frustrate: eo (run, to meet an enemy); ad animum (occur).

Ōceanus, -i, [Gr.], m., the ocean (with or without mare).

Ocellum, -i, [Celtic], n., a town of the Graioceli in Cisalpine Gaul (prob. Oulx in Piedmont).

octāvus, -a, -um, [octo + vus, poss. toctau + us], num. adj., eighth.

octingentiā, -ae, -a, [st. akin to octo + centum], num. adj., eight hundred.

octō [?], indecl. num. adj., eight.

octōdecim [octo-decem], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.

Octōdurus, -i, [Celtic], m., a town of the Veragri, now Martigny.

octōgintā [octo + ?], indecl. num. adj., eighty.

octōniā, -ae, -a, [octo + nus], adj., eight at a time, eight each, eight.

oculus, -i, [tōcō- (cf. AK, see) + lus], m., the eye: sub oculis, in sight, before the eyes.

ōdī, ōdisse, [perf. of lost verb (with pres. sense), akin to ōdium], def. v. a., hate, detest.

ōdium, -i, [VADH (spurn) + ium], n., hatred.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnus, [ob-fendo], 3. v. a. and n., dash against, hurt: animum (hurt the feelings, alienate, shock).—Absolutely, suffer a mishap.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, [ob-ſensio, cf. defensio and offendō], F., striking against. —Fig., offence: sine oppositione animi, without wounding one’s feelings.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus, [ob-fero], irr. v. a., (bring to), throw in one’s way, offer: se hostibus (throw themselves upon); se morti (expose one’s self to); quos sibi oblatus (placed in his power); beneficium (confer, render).

officium, -i, [ob-ſfacium, cf. beneficium], n., (doing something to one), a service, performance of a duty. —Transf., a duty, allegiance, an obligation: discedere ab officio, fail of one’s duty.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, [Celtic], m., a king of the Nitiobriges.

ommittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, [ob-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by: consilium (leave untried, neglect); omnibus omissis rebus, leaving everything else.

 omnīnō [abl. of omninus (omni- + nus)], adv., altogether, entirely, only, utterly, in all, at all, any way, only just, whatever (with negatives).
omnis, -e, [?], adj., all, the whole of (as divisible or divided, cf. totus as indivisible or not divided). — In sing., every (without emphasis on the individuals, cf. quisque, each, emphatically); celerius omni opinione (of any one); omni tempore, on all occasions, always; omnes preces, every form of prayers; omnibus rebus, everything, everything else; p.t. omnia, etc. (through nothing but, etc.). — In plur. as a short expression for all others.

onerārius, -a, -um, [oner- (as st. of onus) + arius], adj., for burdens: naves (transports).

onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [oner- (as st. of onus)], I. v. a., load: celeritas onerandi (of ships), facility of loading.

onus, -eris, [unc. root + us], N., a burden, a load, a freight, a cargo. — Abstr., weight. — Esp.: tanta onera navium, ships of such weight.

opera, -ae, [oper- (as st. of opus) + a (F. of -us)], F., work, pains, attention: operam navare, do one’s best; operam dare, devote one’s self, exert one’s self, take pains. — With ut, try, take care: opera uti (services, help, etc.); quorum opera interfactus (through whose means, agency).

opiniō, -onis, [opinō- (cf. neopinus) + o], F., notion, expectation: celerius omni opinione, quicker than any one would suppose; opinio virtutis (reputation for, etc.); tanta opinio huius belli (impression); tantam opinionem timoris praebuit (gave such an idea, impression); also, opinio timoris (display, cause for an impression); speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praebere, make a show and give an impression of being combatants; nomen atque opinio (reputation); ut fert illorum opinio, as their notion is; ad opinionem Galliae, for an impression on the Gauls; opinione praecipere, to anticipate.

opportet, -ēre, -uit, no p. p., [noun-st. from ob and st. akin to porto, cf. opportunus], 2. v. impers., it behooves, it ought, it is best: poenam sequi (the punishment was to follow); frumentum metiri (he ought, etc.); alio tempore atque oportuit (than it should have been).

oppidānus, -a, -um, [oppidō- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a (the) town. — Plur. as noun, the towns-people.

oppidum, -i, [ob-tpedum (a plain?)], N., (the fortified place which, according to ancient usage, commanded the territories of a little state), a stronghold, a town (usually fortified).

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ob-pono], 3. v. a., set against, oppose (something to something else): novem oppositis legionibus, with nine legions opposed to the enemy. — oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., opposed, lying in the way, opposite.

opportūnē [old case-form of opportunus], adv., opportunely, seasonably.

opportūnitās, -tātis, [opportunō- + tas], F., timeliness, fitness (of time or circumstance), good luck (in time or circumstance), favorable chance,
convenience (of a means of fortification).

opportūnus, -a, -um, [ob-portūnus, cf. portus, harbor, and Portunus], adj., (coming to harbor?), opportune, advantageous, lucky.

oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. of oppono.

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of opprimo.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [ob-premo], 3. v. a., (press against), overwhelm, crush, overpower, overtake (surprise).

oppugnātio, -ōnis, [opugnā- + tio], F., a siege (of actual operations, cf. obsidio, blockade), besieging, an attack (in a formal manner against a defended position).

oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ob-pugno, fight], 1. v. a., attack (formally, but without blockade), lay siege to, carry on a siege, assail (a defended position).

[ops, cf. Ops, the goddess], opis, [?] F., help, aid. — Plur., resources, means, strength, blessings. — Also, help (from several sources).

optātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of opto, wish], as adj., desired, desirable, wished for, welcome.

optimē, superl. of bene.

optimus, -a, -um, [op (cf. ops?) + timus (cf. finitus)], superl. of bonus.

opus, operis, [op + us], N., work, labor (as accomplishing its purpose, cf. labor, as tiresome). — In military sense, a work, works, fortifications: natura et opere munitus (by nature and art); operum atque artificiorum (trades, handicrafts). — In abl., magno (quanto) (tanto) opere, very much, very, greatly: (how much), (so much, so, so earnestly): often as one word, magnopere, quantopere, tantopere.

opus [same word as preceding], N. indecl., need, necessity: si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, if he needed anything of Caesar; si quid opus facto, etc., if anything needs to be done.

ōra, -ae, [?], F., a shore, a coast.

ōrātō, -onis, [orā- (speak) + tio], F., speech, words, talk, address, discourse, argument.

ōrātor, -ōris, [orā- (speak) + tor]. M., a speaker, an ambassador, envoy.

orbis, -is, [?], M., a circle (a circular plane): orbis terrarum, the circle of lands, the whole world. — Less exactly, a hollow square (in military language), a circle.

Orcynia, -ae, [Teutonic or Celtic], F., see Hercynius.

ōrdō, -inis, [akin to ordior, begin a web], M., a series, a row, a tier, a rank (of soldiers), a grade (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), an arrangement, an order: perturbatis ordinibus, the ranks being broken; ratioordoque agminis, the plan and arrangement of the march; ordinesservare, to keep their places, (of soldiers, also of anything laid in rows or tiers, preserve the arrangement, not deviating from it).

Orgetorix, -īgis, [Celtic], M., a nobleman of the Helvetii.
ior, oriri, ortus, [?], 3. (and 4).
v. dep., arise, spring up: orta luce, at
daybreak.— Fig., begin, start, spring
from, arise, be started, have its source.
— oriens, -entis, p. as adj., rising:
sol (sunrise, the east).

ōrnāmentum, -i, [ornā- + men-
tum], N., an adornment.— Fig., an
honor (an addition to one’s dignity),
a source of dignity.

ōrnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of orno.
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [unc. noun-
st.], i. v. a., adorn, equip, furnish.
— Fig., honor.— ōrnātus, -a, -um,
p. p. as adj., furnished, well-
equipped, honored.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [or- (as st. of
os, mouth)], 1. v. a. and n., speak.
— Esp., pray, entreat.
ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of orior.
ortus, -tūs, [or (in orior) + tus],
M., a rising: solis (sunrise, the east).

ōs, ōris, [?], N., the mouth, the
face: ora convertere, turn the eyes.

Osismi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur.,
a people of Gaul (in Brittany).

ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus,
[obs-tendo], 3. v. a., (stretch towards),
present, show, point out, make known,
state, declare: copias (discover, un-
mask).

ostentātiō, -ōnis, [ostenta- + tio],
F., a showing, a display: ostenta-
tionis causa, for display; osten-
tationem comminuere, humble the
pride.

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [osten-
to-], 1. v. a., display, exhibit.
ōtium, -i, [?], N., repose, inactiv-
ity, quiet (freedom from distur-
rance).

ōvum, -i, [perh. avi- + um], (be-
longing to a bird?), N., an egg.

P.

P., for Publius.

pābūlātiō, -ōnis, [pabulā- + tio],
F., a foraging, getting fodder: pabula-
tionis causa, for forage.

pābulātor, -tōris, [pabulā- + tor],
M., a forager.

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus, [pabulō-],
1. v. dep., forage, gather fodder.

pābulum, -i, [PA (in pasco, feed) + bulum], N., fodder (for animals,
including the stalk as well as the
grain), green fodder.

pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. of paco.

pacifico, -isci, pāctus (also paciscō, -ere) [paci (as st. of pāco,
agree) + sco], 3. v. a. and dep,
bargain.— Esp., pāctus, -a, -um,
p. p., agreed upon, settled.

pāco, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pac-, in pax,
peace], 1. v. a., pacify, subdue.— pācā-
tus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., peaceable,
quiet, subject (as reduced to peace).

pāctum, -i, [see pactus], N., (a
thing agreed’), an agreement, an
arrangement. Hence, a method, a
way (of doing anything) : quo pacto,
in what way, how.

pāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of paciscor
and pango.

Padus, -i, [Celtic], m., the Po, the
great river of Northern Italy (Cis-
alpine Gaul).
Paemāni, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., people of the Belgians.

paene [?], adv., almost, nearly.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, [poenitō- (perh. p. p. of verb akin to punio, punish)], 2. v. a., impers., it repents (one), one repents, one regrets.

pāgus, -i, [PAG (in pango) + us (with unc. conn. of ideas)], m., a district, a canton (cf. vicus, a smaller collection of dwellings).

palam [unc. case-form, cf. clam].

adv., openly, publicly, without concealment.

palma, -ae, [Gr.], f., the palm (of the hand).

palūs, -ūdis, [?], f., a marsh.

palūster, -tris, -tre, [palud- + tris], adj., marshy, swampy.

pandō, pandere, pandi, passus, [akin to pandus, bent], 3. v. a., spread out (perh. orig. of the hands, bending back the wrist): passis manibus, with outstretched hands; passis capillis, with dishevelled hair.

pār, paris, [perh. akin to paro, pario (through the idea of barter or exchange)], adj., equal, alike, like: intervallum (the same). — Esp., equal in power, a match for.

parātus, -a, -um, p. p. of paro.

parcē, [old case-form of parcus], adv., sparingly, frugally.

parsē, parcere, peperci (parsī), parsūrus (parcītūrus), [akin to parcus (par + cus), acquisitive, and so frugal?], 3. v. n., spare. — Esp., save alive: parcendo, by economy, by frugality.

parēns, -entis, [PAR (in pario) + ens], c., a parent.

parentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [parent-], i. v. n., make a funereal offering (to deceased relatives, esp. parents). Hence, avenge (making an offering of the wrong-doer).

pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pāritūrus, [parō- (cf. opiparus)], 2. v. n., be prepared, appear, obey, submit to.

parīō, parere, peperi, partus (parītūrus), [PAR, procure (perh. orig. by barter, cf. par)] 3. v. a., procure, acquire, secure.

Parisii, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Celtic tribe around modern Paris, whose town Lutetia takes its modern name from them, cf. Rheims, (Remi), Trèves (Treveri).

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [parō-, cf. opiparus, and pareo], i. v. a., procure, provide, prepare, get ready for (bellum used concretely for the means of war), arrange. — parātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ready, prepared: animo parato (with mind resolved), resolute, determined; paratus in armis, armed for war.

pars, partis, [PAR + tis (reduced), akin to portio, and perh. to par through idea of barter], f., (a dividing), a portion, a part, a share. — Often of position or direction merely, side, direction, region: una ex parte, on one side; in utram partem, in which direction; ex utraque parte, on both sides; sinistra pars, the left flank; pars fluminis (bank); maior pars, the majority. — Fig.: qua ex parte, in which respect; omnibus partibus, in all respects; in utramque partem, in both respects, both ways, (of a plan); in
partim, see pars.

partior, -iri, -itus, [parti-], 4. v. dep., divide: partitis temporibus, alternately.

partitus, -a, -um, p. p. of partior.

partus, -a, -um, p. p. of parvo.

parvus, -a, -um, [parvus], adj., small, slight, insignificant: ab parvulis, from infancy.

parvulus, -a, -um, [parvulus], adj., small, slight, little.

passim [acc. of passis (pad in pando, spread + tis)], adv., in all directions, all about.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of pando.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of patior.

passus, -sūs, [pad (in pando) + tus], M., (a spreading of the legs), a stride (of both feet), a step, a pace (esp. as a measure, about five Roman feet): mille passuum, a Roman mile, five thousand feet.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [noun-st. akin to pateo + facio], 3. v. a., lay open, open.

patefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of patefacio.

pateficio, pass. of patefacio.

pateō, -ēre, -ūī, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., be extended, lie open, spread, extend, be wide, be open.— patēns, -entis, p. as adj., open, exposed.

pater, -tris, [PA (in pasco ?) + ter], M., a father.— Plur., ancestors.

patienter, [patient- + ūer], adv., patiently.

patientia, -ae, [patient- + ia], F., patience, endurance, forbearance (in refraining from fighting).

patior, pati, passus, [?], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure, allow, permit: vim tempestatis (endure, stand).

patrius, -a, -um, [patri- + ius], adj., of a father, ancestral, of one's fathers.

patrōnus, -ī, [fr. pater, for form cf. colonus + nus], M., a patron, a protector.

patrius, -i, [pat (e) r- + vus?], M., an uncle (on the father's side, cf. avunculus, on the mother's).

paucitas, -tātis, [paucō- + tas], F., small number.

paucus, -a, -um, [pauco(cf. paulus and parvus) + cus], adj., almost always in plur., few, some few (but with implied only in a semi-negative sense): paucis (pauca) respondit (in a few words, briefly).

paulātim [paulō- (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of + paulatis (+ paula + tis)], adv., little by little, a little at a time, gradually, few at a time.

paulisper [paulis (abl. plur. of paulus ?) per], adv., a little while.
paulō [abl. of paulus, little], as adv., a little, slightly.
paululum [acc. of paululus, dim. of paulus], as adv., a very little.
paulum [acc. of paulus (PAU + lus, cf. paucus)], as adv., a little, a short distance, somewhat.
päx, pācis, [PAC (pāx), as st.], F., a peace, favor.
peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [?], I. v. n., go wrong, commit a fault.
pectus, -ōris, [perh. pect (as root of pecto, comb) + us, from the rounded shape of the breast, cf.
pectinatus], N., the breast.
pecūnia, -ae, [PECUNIō (pecū-
cattle) + nus, cf. Vacuna] + ia], F., money (originally cattle), wealth.
pecus, -ōris, [PEC (tie ?) + us],
N., cattle (especially sheep and goats): pecore vivere (flesh of cattle). — Pl., cattle, flocks and herds.
pedālis, -e, [ped- + alis], adj., of a foot (in thickness), a foot thick.
pedes, -ītis, [ped- (as if pedi) +
tis (reduced)], C., a footman, a foot
soldier. — Collectively, the infantry.
pedester, -tris, -tre, [pedit- + tris],
adj., of infantry, of persons on foot:
itinerā (journeys on foot, marches,
land routes); proelium (on land);
copiāe (the foot, the infantry).
peditātus, -ītus, [pedit- + atus,
cf. consulsātus], M., foot, infantry.
pēdiōs, see malus.
pēius, see male.
pellis, -is, [?], F., a hide, a skin
either on or off the body of an ani-
mal): sub pellibus, in tents, i.e. in
the field.
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, [?],
3. v. a., strike, beat, drive, defeat, re-
pulse, rout.
pendō, pendere, pependi, pēensus,
[?], 3. v. a., hang, weigh, weigh out.
Hence (since money was earlier weighed, not counted), pay, pay out.
— Esp. with words of punishment,
pay (a penalty), suffer (punishment,
off. dare and capere).
penes [prob. acc. of st. in -os akin
to penitus], prep. with acc., in the
power of.
penitus [st. akin to penes, penus,
etc., + itus, cf. antiquitus], adv.,
far within, deeply, entirely, utterly:
penitus ad extremos finis (clear to,
all the way to).
1. per [uncase-form], adv. (in
composition) and prep. w. acc.,
through, along, over, among. — Fig.,
through, by means of (cf. ab, by,
directly), by the agency of. — Often
accompanied by the idea of hind-
rance: per anni tempus potuit, the
time of the year would allow; per te
licere, you do not prevent, you allow;
per aetatem non poterant (on account
of). — Often in adv. expressions:
per fidem, in good faith, in refer-
cence to a deception on the other
side; per concilium, in council; per
insidias, treacherously; per crucia-
tum, with torture; per vim, forcibly;
locus ipse per se (in and of itself).
2. per [prob. a different case of
same st. as i. per], adv. in comp.,
very, exceedingly, completely.

peráltus, -a, -um, p. p. of perago.

peragó, -agere, -ēgī, -actus, [1. per-
{ago}, 3. v. a., conduct through, finish,
accomplish: concilium (hold to the end); convenitus (finish holding).

perangustus, -a, -um, [2. per-
angustus], adj., very narrow.

perceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-
cipio.

percipió, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [1. per-
capió], 3. v. a., take in (com-
pletely), learn, acquire, hear.—Esp.
of harvests, gather. Hence, fig.,
reap: fructus victoriae.

percontātiō, -ānis, [percontā- (in-
quire) + tio], F., inquiry, inquiries
(though sing. in Latin).

percurrō, -currere, -cūrri, (-cūrī),
-cursus, [1. per-curro], 3. v. n. and a.,
run along.

percussus, -a, -um, p. p. of percūtio.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus,
[1. per-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., hit,
strike, run through.

perdisco, -discere, -didici, no
p. p., [I. per-disco], 3. v. a., learn
thoroughly, get by heart.

perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of perdo.

perdo, perdere, perdidī, perditus,
[1. per-do], 3. v. a., destroy (cf. in-
terficio), ruin.—perditus, -a, -um,
 p. p. as adj., ruined, desperate, aban-
donied.

perdivō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus,
[1. per-duco], 3. v. a., lead through,
lead along, bring over, carry along,
make (fossam), march (legionem).—
Fig., prolong, win over, bring: rem
ad extremum casum (reduce).

perductus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-
duco.

perendinus, -a, -um, [perendie
(tperen-die, cf. postridie) + inus],
adj., (of the day beyond, cf. per), of
day after to-morrow: perendino die,
day after to-morrow, in two days.

pereō, -ire, -ī (-īvī), -itūrus, [I.
per-eo, go], irr. v. n., perish, be killed
(in battle).

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [I. per-
equito, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n.,
rive over (or around).

perexiguus, -a, -um, [2. per-
exiguus], adj., very small.

perfacilis, -e, [2. per-facilis], adj.,
very easy.

perfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-
ficio.

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [I. per-
fero], irr. v. a., carry through (or
over): opinionem (spread among);
consilium (carry over); faram
(bring).—Also, bear through (to
the end), endure, suffer, submit to.

perficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus,
[1. per-facio, make], 3. v. a., accom-
plish, complete, finish, make (com-
plete).—With ut (uti), succeed (in
doing or having done), cause to.

perfidia, -ae, [perfido- + ia], F.,
perfidy, treachery, faithlessness.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, frāctus,
[1. per-frango], 3. v. a., break
through.

perfuga, -ae, [I. per-fuga (FUG +
a, cf. scriba)]. M., a refugee, a fugi-
tive, a deserter.

perfugīō, -fugere, -fugi, no p. p.,
[I. per-fugio], 3. v. n., run away,
 flee (to a place), escape to.
perfugium, -i, [i. per-fugium, cf. perfugio], n., a place of refuge, refuge.

pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus (?), [i. per-rego, keep straight], 3. v. n., (keep one's direction?), keep on, continue to advance, advance.

periclitor, -āri, -ātus, [†periclitō-(as if p. p. of periculus, cf. periculum)], 1. v. dep., try, make a trial, be exposed, be put in peril.

periculōsus, -a, -um, [periculō- + osus], adj., dangerous.

periculum (-clum), -i, [†peri- (cf. experior, try) + culum], n., a trial, an attempt. Hence, peril, danger, risk.

perītus, -a, -um, [†perī- (cf. experior, try) + tus], p. p. as adj., (tried), experienced, skilled, skillful.

perlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfero.

perlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of perlego.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [i. per-lego], 3. v. a., read through, read (a letter aloud).

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus, [i. per-luō], 3. v. a., wash all over. — Pass. (as reflex., bathe.

permāgnus, -a, -um, [2. permagnus], adj., very great, very large.

permaneō, -manere, -mānsi, mānsūrus, [i. per-maneo], 2. v. n., remain (to the end), continue, hold out, persist: in eadem libertate (continue to live, etc.).

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscui, -mixtus (-mistus) [2. per-misceo], 2. v. a., mix (thoroughly), mingle.

permissus, -a, -um, p. p. of permitto.

permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [i. per-mitto], 3. v. a., (give over), grant, allow, give up, entrust: fortunas (trust); summam imperi (place in the hands of, etc.); suffragiis rem (leave the matter to, etc.).

permixtus, -a, -um, p. p. of permisceo.

permōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of permoveo.

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōitus, [i. per-moveo], 2. v. a., move (thoroughly), influence, affect.—permōtus, -a, -um, p. p., much affected, much influenced, overcome.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsus, [i. per-mulceo], 2. v. a., smooth over. Hence, soothe, pacify.

-perniciēs, -ēī, [?, akin to nex, death], f., destruction, ruin.

perpaucus, -a, -um, [2. perpaucus], adj.—Plur., very few, but very few, only a very few.

perpendicularum, -i, [perpendi- (st. of perpendo, hang down) + culum], n., a plumb line: ad perpendicularum, perpendicularly.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus, [i. perpetior], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure.

perpetuus, -a, -um, [i. per-petuus (pet (aim) + vus)], adj., (keeping on through), continuing, continued, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent: vita (whole); paludes (continuous); in perpetuum, forever, permanently. — Abl. as adv., perpetuō, forever, constantly, continually.

-quirīro, -quirēre, -quīsīvī, -quisītus, [i. per-quaero], 3. v. a., search for, inquire about.
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rūptus, [I. per-rumpō], 3. v. a. and n., break through, force one's way through, break, force a passage.

perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of perrumpō.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scripsus, [I. per-scribo], 3. v. a., write out (in full).

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [I. persequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue, attack: mortem, iniurias (avenge).

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrūs, [perseverō,-very strict], 1. v. n., persist.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solvūtus, [2. per-solvo], 3. v. a., pay (fully). — Esp. (cf. pendo) of penalties, pay, suffer (punishment).

perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of perspicio.

perspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus, [I. per-† specio], 3. v. a., see through, see, inspect, examine. — Also, see thoroughly. — Fig., see clearly, see, understand, learn, observe, find, discover.

perstō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrūs, [I. per-sto], 1. v. n., stand firm, persist, remain firm, be firm.

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsus, [I. per-suadeo, advise], 2. v. a. and n., induce, persuade: hoc volunt persuadere (make people believe). — Pass. (impers.), be persuaded (dat. of person), be satisfied, believe.

perrerreō, -terrēre, -terrūf, -terrūtus, [I. per-terreo], 2. v. a., terrify, alarm: perrerritus equitatus (put in a panic); timore perrerritus, struck with terror; quos perrerritos (panic-stricken, flying in terror).

c september, septēmber, -ebris, -ebris, -ebrum, 7.

petīo, petere, petīvī, petītus, [PAT], 3. v. a. and n., (fall?, fly?), aim at, attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to get, go to. Hence, ask, request,
look for, get: petentibus Haeduis (at
the request of, etc.) ; fugam (take to).

Petrocorii, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl.,
a tribe on the Garonne (Perigord).

Petronius, -ī, [?], m., a Roman
gentile name.— Esp., Marcus Petro-
nius, a centurion in Cæsar’s army.

Petrosidius, -ī, [?], m., a Roman
gentile name.— Esp., Lucius Petro-
sidius, a standard-bearer in Cæsar’s
army.

phalanx, -angis, [Gr. φάλανξ], F., a
phalanx (properly an arrangement of
troops in a solid mass from eight to
twenty-four deep, but applied also to
other bodies of troops), an array.

Pictones (Pect-), -um, [Celtic],
m. plur., a Celtic tribe south of the
Loire (Poitou).

pietās, -tātis, [piō-, dutiful, + tas],
F., filial affection, affection (for the
gods or one’s country, etc.), pa-
triotism.

pilum, -ī, [?], N., a pæstle.—
Also, a javelin (the peculiar weapon
of the Roman legion, with a heavy
wooden shaft about 4 ft. long, and an
iron head on a long iron shank, mak-
ing a missile more than 6 ft. long):
pilum murale, a heavier missil3 of the
same kind for use in siege works.

pilus, -ī, [pilum], m., a century
(of soldiers, a name applied to indi-
cate the rank of centurions, see
centurio). — Also, a centurion (of
a particular rank). — Phrases : primi
pili centurio (of the first century or
rank); primum pilum duxerat, had
commanded in the first century of the
first cohort, been first centurion.

pinna, -ae. [= penna, feather
(pet (flying) + na)], F., an artificial
parapet (of osier or the like run
along the top of a wall).

Pirĭstae, -ārum, [?], m. plur., a
tribe of Illyria.

piscis, -is, [?], m., a fish.— Col-
lectively, fish.

Piso, -onis, [pisō (pease) + o], m.,
(a man with a wart like a pea?, cf.
Cicero), a Roman family name.—
Esp.: 1. Lucius Calpurnius Piso,
a legatus in the army of Cassius
which was defeated by the Helvetii
B.C. 107, and grandfather of No. 2.
— 2. Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caes-
sonius, father of Calpurnia, Cæsar’s
wife.— 3. Marcus Pupius Piso Cal-
purnianus, consul with M. Messala
in B.C. 61.— 4. Piso, an Aquitanian
(probably enfranchised by one of the
above named).

pix, picis, [?], F., pitch.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [†placō-
(cf. plaço, and placidus)], 2. v. n.,
please.— Esp. in third person, it
pleases (one), one likes, one deter-
mines, one decides.

placidē [old case-form of placidus,
quiet], adv., quietly, calmly.

plácō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [st. akin to
placeō], 1. v. a., pacify, appease.

Plancus, -ī, [perh. akin to
planus], m. (Flat-foot), a Roman
family name.— See Munatius.

plānē [old case-form of planus],
adv., flatly, clearly, entirely.

plānitiēs, -ēī, [planō + ties, cf.
-tia], F., a plain.

plānus, -a, -um, [unc. root + nus],
adj., flat, level, even: carinae pla-
uiros (less deep, less rounding).
plēbs (plēbēs), -is (-ēī), [PLE (in plenus) + unc. term. (cf. turbā)], f., the populace, the multitude, the common people.

plēnē [old case-form of plenus], adv., fully, entirely, completely.

plēnus, -a, -um, [PLE (in pleo, fill) + nus], adj., full: luna; legio.

plērumque, see plerusque.

plērusque, -aque, -umque, [PLE (in pleo, fill) + rus-que (cf. -pletus, plenus)], adj. only in plur., most of, very many.— Acc. sing. as adv., plērumque, generally, usually, for the most part, very often.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul, clients of the Nerviī.

plumbum, -i, [?], N., lead.— plumbum album, tin.

plūrīmus, see multus.

pluș, [akin to pleo, fill], see multus.

pluteus, -i, [?], M., a mantelet, a cover (movable, for defence).— Also, a bulwark, a defence, a breastwork.

pōculus, -i, [root (or st.) po- (in potus, drink) + culum], N., a drinking-cup.

poena, -ae, [perh. †povi- (pu) + na (cf. punio, punish)], F., a penalty. Hence, a punishment (see persolvo, repeto).

pollex, -icis, [?], M., the thumb (with or without digitus).

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus, [†por-for pro (cf. portendo) -liceor, bid], 2. v. dep., offer, promise (voluntarily): liberaliter (made liberal offer). pollicitātiō, -ōnis, [pollicitā- + tio], F., an offer, a promise.

pollicitus, -a, -um, p. p. of polliceor.

Pompeius, -i, [†pompe- (dialectic form of quinque) + ius], M., a Roman gentile or family name.— Esp.: 1. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, the great rival of Cæsar, consul with Marcus Crassus in B.C. 58.— 2. Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius, probably a Gaul enfranchised by one of the Pompeys.

pondus, -eris, [PEND (in pendo, weigh) + us], N., weight.

pōnō, pōneres, posuī, positus, [prob. †por-sino (cf. polliceor)], 3. v. a., lay down, place, put: posita tollere (things laid up, consecrated); ponere custodes (set); castra (pitch); praesidium (station, but see below).— Fig., place, lay, make, depend on: in fuga praesidium; spem salutis in virtute (find, found, seek).— positus, -a, -um, p. p., situated, lying, depending on: posita est, lies; positum est in, etc., depends on, etc.

pōns, pontis, [?], M., a bridge.

populātiō, -ōnis, [populā- + tio], F., a plundering, a raid.

populor, -ārī, -ātus, [populō-], 1. v. dep., (strip, of people?, cf. Eng., skin, shell, bark a tree), ravage, devastate.

populus, -ī, [PAL? (in pleo, fill), reduplicated + us], M., (the full number, the mass), a people (in its collective capacity), a nation, a tribe (as opposed to individuals): populus Romanus (the official designation of the Roman state).

por-, port-, [akin to pro], obs. prep., only in comp., forth.
porrectus, -a, -um, p. p. of porrigo.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, rēctus, [†por- (cf. pollicere), -rego], 3 v. a., stretch forth: porrecta loca pertinent (stretch out in extent).

porro [?, akin to †por (cf. porrigo)], adv., furthermore, further, then (in narration).

porta, -ae, [POR (go through) + ta], F., (way of traffic ?), a gate.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, [porta-?], 1 v. a., carry (perh. orig. by way of traffic), bring, convey.

portōrium, -i [?, porta (reduced) + orium (N. of -orius), perh. orig. †portor + ius], N., (gate-money? or carrier's money?), a duty (an impost), a toll.

portus, -tūs, [POR (cf. porta) + tus], M., (a place of access), a harbor, a haven, a port.

poscō, posceres, poscē, poscēmus, no p. p., [perh. akin to prex, prayer], 3 v. a., demand (with some idea of claim, stronger than peto, weaker than flagito), require, claim.

positūs, -a, -um, p. p. of pono.

possessiō, -onis, [†por-†sessio (cf. obsessio)], F., possession, occupatio; —Concretely (as in Eng.), possessions, lands (possessed).

possideō, -siderē, -sēdī, -sessus, [†por-sedeō], 2 v. a., (settle farther on?), occupy (in a military sense), possess (lands, of a people), hold possession of.

possum, posse, potūi, [pote- (for potis) -sum], irr. v. n., be able, can, etc.: plurimum posse, be most powerful, have very great influence; tan-
tum potest, has so much weight, power, influence; largiter posse, have great influence; multitudine posse, be strong in numbers; equitatu nihil posse, have no strength in cavalry; quicquid possunt, whatever power they have; quid virtute possent, what they could do by valor; fieri posse, be possible; ut spatum intercedere posset (might intervene); quam maximum potest, the greatest possible.

post [?, prob. abl. of st. akin to postis (cf. ante, antes, rows, and antae, pilasters)], adv. and prep. with acc., behind, after: post diem tertium, three days after; post se, in their rear; post hunc, next to him.

postea [post ea], adv., afterwards.

posteaquam [postea quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after (only with clause).

posterus, -a, -um, [post- (or st. akin) + terus (orig. compar.)], adj., the next, later: postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day. Plur. as noun, posterity. — postremus, -a, -um, superl., last. — postremō, abl., lastly, finally.

postpōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, [post-pono], 3 v. a., place behind, postpone: omnibus rebus postpositis, disregarding everything else.

postpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of postpono.

postquam, [post quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after.

postrēmō, see posterus.

postrēmus, see posterus.

postrīdiē [†posteri- (loc. of pos-
postulátum, -i, [N. p. p. of postulo], N., a demand, a requirement, a request, a claim.

postuló, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], i. v. a., claim (with idea of right, less urgent than posco), ask, request, require: tempus anni (require, make necessary).

potēns, -entis, [p. of possum as adj.], adj., powerful: homo (influential); potentiores, men of influence.

potentātus, -tūs, [potent- + atus, cf. consulatus], M., the chief power, supremacy.

potentia, -ae, [potent- + ia], F., power (political influence), authority (not official or legal).

potestās, -tātis, [potent- + tas], F., power (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), power (generally), control, ability, opportunity, chance: sui potestatem facere, give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them; se potestati alicuius permettere (surrendere, etc.) ; consistendi potestas erat nulli (chance, possibility); discēndi potestatem facere (give permission, etc.); facta potestate, having obtained permission; imperium aut potestas, military or civil power; deorum vis ac potestas, the power and dominion of the gods.

potior, potiūrī, potitus, [poti-, cf. potis, able], 4 v. dep., become master of, possess one’s self of, get the control of: imperio (secure); castris (capture).
praecipus, -a, -um, [praex-cap-\(\text{\textendash}\)pus (\(\text{\textendash}\)cap + vus)], adj., (taking the first place), special.

praecludō, -cludere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [praex-claudō], 3. v. a., (close in front of some one or something), shut off, barricade.

praecō, -ōnis, [? \(,\) m., a herald.

Praecōninus, -i, [praexcon- + inus], m., a Roman family name.—See Valerius.

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-cur-\(\text{\textendash}\)ri), -cursūrus, [praex-curro], 3. v. n., run on before, hasten on before, hasten in advance, hurry on before: equites (ride on in advance); celeritate (get the start of, etc.).

praeda, -ae, [prob. praex-thida (root of -hendo, seize, + a)], P., booty, prey, plunder.

praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [praedi-co- (or similar st. from praex with -dic-)], I. v. a. and n., make known (before one), proclaim, assert, describe, vaunt one's self.

praedor, -āri, -ātus, [praeda], I. v. dep., plunder, take booty.

praedūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [praex-duco], 3. v. a., lead (etc.), before: murum (carry out, draw round).

praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeficere. — As noun, see praeficere.

praefero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [praefero], irr. v. a., place before, esteem above, prefer to (with quam): se alicui (show one's self better than).

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus, [praefacio], 3. v. a., put before, place in command of, set over. — praefectus, p. p. as noun, a cap- tain (esp. of cavalry), a commander, an officer.

praefigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [praefigo], 3. v. a., fix in front, set on the edge (of something).

praefixus, -a, -um, p. p. of praefigo.

praemetuō, -metuere, no perf., no p. p., [praemetuō], 3. v. a. and n., fear beforehand, be anxious.

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [praemitto], 3. v. a., send forward, send on, send ahead.

praemium, -i, [praex-temium (EM, in emo, buy, + ium)], (taken before the general distribution or disposal of booty?), N., a reward, a price, distinction (as a reward or prize): magno praemio remunerari (a great price).

praecoccupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [praex-occupo], I. v. a., take in opposition or beforehand: timor animos (take complete possession of, to the exclusion of everything else); vias (close against one), preoccupy.

praecoptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [praeco-opto], I. v. a., wish in preference, choose rather, prefer.

praeparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [praeparo], I. v. a., prepare beforehand.

praepōnō, -ponere, -posui, -positus, [praepono], 3. v. a., put in command, set over.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [praex-rumpo], 3. v. a., break off (at the end or in front). — praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., precipitous.

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praerumpo.

praesaeπiō (-sēp), -saepire, -saepsi,
praesaepus 4. v. a., stand before, be at the head, excel, be superior: praestat, it is better. — Also, causatively (bring before), furnish, display: officium (discharge, perform); stabilitatem (afford, possess); idem (keep, perform one's duty).

praesum, -esse, -fuī, [praes-sum], irr. v. n., be in front, be at the head of, be in command: magistratui (hold). — praesēns, -entis, p., present, immediate: pluribus praesentibus, in the presence of many; praesens adesse, be present in person.

praeter [compar. of prae (cf. inter)], adv. and prep. with acc., along by, past, beyond. — Fig., except, beside, contrary to.

praeterea [praeter-ea (abl.) ?], adv., furthermore, besides: si nemo praeterea, if no one else.

praeterēō, -ire, -iī, -itus, [praeter-eo], irr. v. a. and n., go by, pass by, pass over. — praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., past. — Esp. N. plur., praeterita, the past (cf. "bygones").

praeteritus, -a,-um, p. p. of praetereo.

praeterußu, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, [praeter-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by, let slip, omit, neglect.

praeterquam [praeter- quam], conjunctive adv., except, besides.

praetor, -tōris, [prae-tor, (t, go + tor)], M., (a leader), a commander. — Esp., a praetor, one of a class of magistrates at Rome. In early times two had judicial powers and the others regular commands abroad. Later all during their year of office had judicial powers, but like the
consuls (who were originally called praetors) they had a year abroad as propraetors: legatus pro praetore (lieutenant in command, acting as a praetor).

praetorius, -a, -um, [praetor- + ius], adj., of a praetor (in all its senses); praetoria cohors, the body guard, of a commander (see praetor).

praevō, -īrere, -ūsī, -ūstus, [praev-uro], 3. v. a., burn at the end (in front); praevastae sudes (burnt at the point, to harden them).

praevūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of praevō.

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [praev-erto, turn], 3. v. a., anticipate, forestall, attend to first.

prāvus, -a, -um, [?], adj., crooked. — Fig., wrong, vicious.


prendō (prehendo), prendere, prendī, prēnsus, [praev- + hendo], 3. v. a., seize (against some one else ?), seize (generally), take, grasp.

pretium, -ī, [?], N., a price, cost, value.

† prex, precis (dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), [?], F., a prayer, an entreaty, an impprecation.

prīdiē [loc. of st. of pro (praev-)] -die, cf. postridie, adv., the day before.

primipilus [primō-pilus], m., the first centurion. See centurio and pilus.

prīmō [abl. of primus], adv., at first (opposed to afterwards, cf. primum).

prīmum [acc. of primus], adv., first (in order of incidents, opposed to next, etc.), in the first place: cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.

prīmus, -a, -um, see prior.

prīnceps, -ipis, [primō- (reduced) -t ce (CAP as st.)], adj., (taking the lead), first, chief, foremost: principes belli inferendi (leaders in, etc.); locus (chief, highest); ea princeps persolvit (was the first to). — Often as noun, leading man, leader, chief man, chief: legationis (head).

prīncipātus, -tūs, [princip- + atus, cf. consulatus], m., foremost position, first place, highest place, the lead (in power and influence among states), leadership.

prīor, -us, -ōris, [compar. of st. of pro], adj., former, before: priores, those in front; non priores inferre (not the first to, etc.). — prius, N. as adv., before (see also priusquam).

prīmus, -a, -um, superl., first: agmen (front); primos civitatis (the best men); a prima obsidione, from the beginning of the siege: in primis, especially. — See primo and primum.

prīstinus, -a, -um, [prius-tinus, cf. diutinus], adj., (of former times), old, former: prīstinus dies, the day before.

prīus, see prior.

prīusquam [prius-quam], conj. adv., earlier than, before. Often separated.

privātim [as if acc. of † priva-
tis (privā- + tis)], adv., privately, as private persons (opp. to magis-
tratus): de suis privatim rebus (their own private affairs); plus posse privatim (in their own name, opposed to official action).

privātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of privo, deprive], adj., (destitute of official character), private, personal.

prō [for prod, abl. of st. akin to prae, prior, etc.], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of: nihil pro sano, nothing prudent; pro explorato, ascertained, as certain. — Also, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, according to, considering, in return for, for. — In comp., before, forth, away, for, down (as falling forward).

probātus, -a, -um, p. p. of probo.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [probō-], 1. v. a., (make good, find good), approve, test, prove, show, be satisfied with, favor (a plan), adopt (a measure).

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., go forward, advance, proceed: longius (go to a distance).

Procillus, -i, [Procūlō- + lus], m., a Roman family name. — See Valerius.

prōclinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of proclino.

prōclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pro-
cūlō], i. v. a., (bend forward), throw down: res proclinata (falling, ruined).

prōcōnsul, -ulis, [pro-consult, on account of the phrase pro console],

m., a proconsul, an ex-consul (during his term of service abroad).

procul [?, †procō-, "off" (pro + cus) + lus (reduced, cf. simul)], adv., at a distance (not necessarily great), at some distance, afar, from afar.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubū, no p. p., [pro-cumbo, lies], 3. v. n., fall (forward), fall (generally), sink down, lie down (for rest), become lodged (of grain). — Less exactly, incline, slope, lean.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pro-
curo], 1. v. a., care for, have charge of, attend to.

prōcurrō, -currere, -curī, (-cu-
curī), -cursūrus, [pro-curro], 3. v. n., run forward, charge, rush out.

prōdeo, -ēre, -iī (-iī), -itus, [prod (see pro) -eo], irr. v. n., go forth, come forth, come out, go forward: longius (go to any distance).

prōdesse, see prōsum.

prōditīō, -ōnis, [pro- + dītio, cf. prodo], F., (a giving away), treason, treachery.

prōdītōr, -tōris, [pro- + dātor (cf. prodo)], m., a traitor, a betrayer.

prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of prodo.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [pro-
dō], 3. v. a., (give forward), give forth, publish, betray (give away), transmit, hand down: memoriam (preserve, by handing down to posterity); memoria proditum, told in tradition, handed down.

prōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [pro-ducō], 3. v. a., lead forth, lead out, bring out (iumenta), draw up (troops). — Fig., protract, prolong.
profalor, -ārī, -ātus, [profalō-], 1. v. dep., fight (in war).

proelium, -ī, [?], N., a battle (a single encounter, great or small), a contest, an engagement, a general engagement, a skirmish: commit tere (engage, join battle, risk a battle, begin an engagement, begin the fight, fight).

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficere.

proficiscentum pertinere (to a journey, etc.).

profiteor, -sitērī, -fessus, [profatōr, confessi], 2. v. dep., declare publicly: se (offer one's self; volunteer as, declare one's self).

profligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of profiligo.

profligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [proflīgō- (proflīgus, FLIG + us)], 1. v. a., (dash to the ground). — Esp., put to rout, rout.


profugō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugītūrus, [profugio], 3. v. n., flee forth, flee, escape, make one's escape.

profgnatūs, -a, -um, [pro-(g)natus], p. p. as adj., sprung from: progeniti on ex, descendents of.

profredior, -gredī, -gressus, [progradīr, step, go], 3. v. dep., go forward, march forward, march out, come out. — Also, fig., proceed, go: amentia longius (go).

profressus, -a, -um, p. p. of profredior.

prohibēō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitus, [prohibēo], 2. v. a., hold off, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, restrain, hinder from, forbid. — Also (by a change of relation of the two things concerned), protect: aliquem ab omni militum inuria (keeping one protected from the assailant).

prohibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of prohibeo.

proficīō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [proficīscio]]], 3. v. dep., (make way forward). — Esp., start, leave, depart, set out, withdraw, march out, go out, come out, sail out: quo proficisciamur, whither we are going; unde erant profecti, whence they had come; ad proficiscendum

proficium pertinere (to a journey, etc.).

profiteor, -sitērī, -fessus, [profatōr, confessi], 2. v. dep., declare

publicly: se (offer one's self; volunteer as, declare one's self).

proficiscentum pertinere (to a journey, etc.).

profiteor, -sitērī, -fessus, [profatōr, confessi], 2. v. dep., declare

publicly: se (offer one's self; volunteer as, declare one's self).

profredior, -gredī, -gressus, [progradīr, step, go], 3. v. dep., go

forward, march forward, march out, come out. — Also, fig., proceed, go: amentia longius (go).

profressus, -a, -um, p. p. of profredior.

prohibēō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitus, [prohibēo], 2. v. a., hold off, keep

off, repel, stop, prevent, restrain, hinder from, forbid. — Also (by a change of relation of the two things concerned), protect: aliquem ab omni

militum inuria (keeping one protected from the assailant).

prohibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of prohibeo.
proiectae, casting themselves; se ex
navi (leap).

proinde [pro-inde], adv., (from there forward), therefore, hence.

prōminēns, -entis, p. of pro-
mineo.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, no
p. p., [pro-†mineo (cf. minor, pro-
ject)], 2. v. n., lean forward, lean
over.

prōmiscuus [old case-form of pro-
miscuus], adv., in common.

prōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
mitto.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,
[pro-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go forward),
let grow (of the hair): promissa ca-
pillo sunt, they wear long hair.

prōmōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
moveo.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,
[pro-moveo], 2. v. a., move forward, advance, push forward.

prōmptus, -a, -um, [p. p. of promo,
bring forth], as adj., (taken out of
the store ready for distribution), ready, quick, active.

prōmunturium, (-mon-), -ī, [akin to
promineo], N., a headland.

prōnē [old case-form of prōnus, lea-
ing], adv., with a slope.

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pro-
nuntio], 1. v. a., (publish forth),
make known, communicate, declare,
give orders, make proclamation.

prope [?, akin to pro, cf. procul
and proximus], adv. and prep. with
acc., near. — Fig., almost, nearly. —
Compar., proprius, nearer: proprius
tumulum (as prep.). — Superl., pro-
imē, lately, last.

prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus,
[pro-pello], 3. v. a., drive away (cf.
pro), repulse, rout, dislodge, force
back (changing the point of view).

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pro-
perō-, quick], 1. v. a. and n., hasten,
be in haste, make haste.

propinquitās, -tātis, [propinquō-
+ tas], F., vicinity, a being near,
a position near: propinquitates
fluminum (positions near, etc.). —
Esp., nearness in blood, relationship,
a relation (by blood).

propinquus, -a, -um, [st. akin to
prope (or case-form) + cus], adj.,
near at hand, near. — Esp. by
blood, related. — As noun in plur.,
relatives.

proprius, -us, -oris, [compar. of st.
of prope], adj., nearer. — proximi-
us, superl. (of st. †procō-, cf.
procul), nearest, next, neighboring:
bellum (last). — With force of prep.
(cf. prope): proximi Rhenum, nearest
the Rhine.

prōpōnē, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,
[pro-pono], 3. v. a., place before, set
before, lay before: vexillum (hang
out). — Less exactly, offer, put in
the way, present (difficulty), make
known, state, represent.

prōpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
pono.

proper 

propinquus, -a, -um, [? akin to
prope?], adj., of one's own: fines
(particular); hoc proprium vir-
tutis (a peculiar property, a mark).

propertē [prope + ter, cf. aliter,
praeter], adv. and prep. with acc.,
near by. — Also, on account of (cf.
"all along of ").
proptereā [propter-ea (prob. abl. or instr. of is)], adv., on this account.—With quod, because, inasmuch as.

prōpūgnātor, -tōris, [pro-pugnator (cf. propugno)], M., a defender.

prōpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [propugno], 1. v. n., (rush forward to fight, or fight in front), rush out (fighting), discharge missiles (ex silvis).

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [propulso (cf. propello)], i. v. a., repel, keep off, drive off, defend one’s self against.

prōra, -ae, [Gr.], F., the prow (of a ship).

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -ruitus, [pro-ruo], 3. v. a., dash down, overthrow, demolish.

prōrūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of proruo.

prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōsequor.

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [prōsequor], 3. v. dep., pursue, follow (on one’s way), escort.—Fig. (from escorting), address, take leave of one (with some kind of attention).

prōspectus, -tūs, [prospectus (cf. prospicio)], M., outlook, view: in prospectu, in sight; prospectu tenebris adempto, the view cut off by the darkness.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus, [pro-spicio], 3. v. a., look forward, look out.—Fig., provide for, take care, look out.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, [pro-sterno], 3. v. a., dash to the ground, overthrow (lit. and fig.).

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, [pro(d)-sum], irr. v. n., be for the advantage of, benefit: quod alci prodest, by which one profits.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, [pro-tego], 3. v. a., (cover in front), protect, cover.

prōterreo, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, [pro-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten away, drive away in fright.

prōterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōterreo.

prōtinus (-tenus), [pro-tenus, as far as], adv., forward, straight on. Hence, straightway, forthwith, at once, instantly (keeping right on).

prōturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōturbō.

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pro-turbo, disturb], i. v. a., drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge.

prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōveho.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, [pro-veho], 3. v. a., carry forward.—In pass., be carried forth, sail out, set sail: leni Africo provectus (sail with, be driven by).

prōveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [pro-venire], 4. v. n., come forward.—Esp. of fruits, come up, grow.

prōventus, -tūs, [pro-tventus, cf. eventus and provenio], M., an issue (a coming forth), success, a result.

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, [pro-video], 2. v. a., foresee, see beforehand, take care, make provision, provide, arrange beforehand: satis est provisum, sufficient provision has been made.

prōvincia, -ae, [† provincio- (vinc-
as root of vinco (conquer) + us + ia], F., (office of one extending the frontier by conquest in the field), office (of a commander or governor), a province (in general), a function. — Transf., a province (governed by a Roman magistrate). — Esp., The Province (of Gaul); so with nostra, ultterior, citerior (the province, as opposed to the unconquered parts of Gaul).

prövinciälis, -e, [provincia- + lis], adj., of a province. — Esp., of the province (of Gaul).

provisus, -a, -um, p. p. of prövideo.

prövolö, -äre, -ävī, -ätürus, [provolö], i. v. n., fly forth. — Less exactly, rush forth, rush out, fly out (of cavalry, etc.).

proximë, see prope.

proximus, see propior.

prüdentia, -ae, [prudent-, foreseeing, + ia], F., foresight, discretion.

Ptiänii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Aquitania.

pübës (püber), -eris, [?, prob. same root as puer], adj., adult. — Plur. as noun, adults, grown men, young men of age.

pública [old case-form of publicus], adv., publicly, in the name of the state, as a state, on behalf of the state: publice iurare (for the people, making the oath bind them).

pública, -äre, -ävī, -ätus, [publicā-], i. v. a., (make belong to the people), confound.

publicus, -a, -um, [public- + cus], adj., of the people (as a state), of the state, public: consilium (a state measure, a public measure, action by the state, action by general consent); res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the interests of state, public business; relatis in publicum cornibus (publicly displayed); mulieres in publicum procurreré (abroad into the streets).

Püblius, -ī, [prob. populō- + ius, cf. publicus], m., a Roman prænomen.

pudet, pudère, puduit (puduit est), [?], 2. v. impers., (it shames), one is ashamed (translating the accusative as subject).

pudor, -ōris, [PUD (in pudet) + or], m., shame, a sense of shame, a sense of honor.

puer, -ī, [?], m., a boy. — Plur., children (of either sex); a pueris, from childhood.

puerilis, -e, [puerō- (reduced) + lis], adj., of a child: aetas (of childhood).

pügna, -ae, [PUG (in pugno) + na], F., a fight (less formal than proelium): ad pugnam, for fighting; genus pugnae (of fighting).

pügnō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [pugna-], i. v. n., fight, engage. — Often impers. in pass., pugnatum est, etc., an engagement took place, they fought, the fighting continued. — Esp.: pugnandi potestatem fecit, offered battle; pugnantes, those engaged.

pulcher, -cha, -chrüm, [?], adj., beautiful, handsome, fine. — Fig., fine, noble, splendid.

Pullō, -ōnis, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Titus Pullo, a centurion in Cæsar's army.
pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of pello.
pulsus, -ūs, [PEL (in pello) +
tus], m., a stroke, a beat: pulsu re-
morum praestare (the working, etc.).
pulvis, -eris, [?], m., dust.
puppis, -is, [?], F., the stern.
pūrgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of pur-
go.
pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [purīgō-
(purō- + tagus, cf. ago)], i. v. a.,
clean, clear. — Fig., excuse, exonera-
ate, free from suspicion, exculpate.
pūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [purī-
(tus) (st. of putus, clean)], i. v. a., clean up,
clear up. — Esp.: rationes (clear up
accounts). Hence alone, reckon,
think, suppose.
Pyrēnæus, -a, -um, [?], adj., only
with montes, the Pyrenees moun-
tains, between France and Spain.

Q., for Quintus.
quā [abl. or instr. (?) of qui], rel.
adv., by which (way), where.
quadrāgendī, -ae, -a, [quadraginta
(reduced) + nus], distrib. num. adj.,
forty each, forty (each often omitted
in Eng.).
quadrāgintā [akin to quattuor],
indecl. num. adj., forty.
quadriringenti, -ae, -a, [akin to
quattuor], num. adj., four hundred.
quaeārō, quaerere, quaeāvisi, quae-
situs, [?], with r for original s], 3. v.
a., search for, look for, inquire about,
inquire, ask: eadem (make the same
inquiries).
quaeōstīo, -onis, [quaes (as root of
quaero) + tio], F., an investigation:
habere de aliquo (examine, as wit-
tesses, usually by torture).
quaeōstor, -tōris, [quaes (as root
of quaero) + tor], m., (investigator,
or acquireur, perhaps both). — Esp., a
quaestor (the Roman officer who had
charge of the finances of an army).
quaeōstus, -tūs, [quaes (as root of
quaero) + tus], m., acquisition.
quālis, -e, [quō- (st. of quis) +
alis], inter. adj., of what sort? qualis
ascensus (what is the nature of? etc.).
quam [case-form of quis and qui,
cf. tam, nam], adv. and conj.: i.
Interrog., how? — 2. Rel., as, than:
praeferre quam (rather than). — Often
with superlatives, as much as possible:
quam maximus, the greatest possible;
quam maxime, very much. — See
also postquam, posteaquam, prius-
quam (often separated), which are
best translated by a single word,
omitting the relative part, according
to the common English idiom.
quamdiū (often written sepa-
rately), adv. (see diu): i. Interrog.
how long? — 2. Rel., as long, as
long as (with antecedent omitted).
quam ob rem (often found togeth-
er), adv. phrase: i. Interrog.,
why? — 2. Rel., on which account,
for which reason.
quamvis [quam vis], adv., as you
please, however, no matter how.
quandō [quam + unc. case-form
akin to de], adv., at any time: si
quando, if ever, whenever.
quantō, see quantus.
quantus, -a, -um, [prob. for ka-(root of qua) + vant + us], adj.: 1. Interrog., how great? how much? quantum boni, how much good? quantae civitates (how important?). — 2. Relative, as great as, as much as: tantum ... quantum, so much ... as; so quanta ... tanta pecunia.

quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, [quantus-vis (from volo)], however great, as great as you please.

qua rē, adv. phrase, by which thing, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (circumstance, etc.), why. — The relative and interrogative senses are not always distinguishable; neque commissum qua re, nothing had been done for which, etc.; res hortabantur qua re, etc. (many reasons for doing so urged, etc., to).

quartus, -a, -um, [quattuor- (reduced) + tus], num. adj., fourth: quartus decimus, fourteenth.

quasi [quam (or quā) -si], conj., as if: quasi vero, as if forsooth (ironical).

quattuor [?, reduced pl.], indecl. num. adj., four.

quattuordecim [quattuor-decem], indecl. num. adj., fourteen.

-que [unc. case-form of qui], (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase which it connects), conj., and. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, and in general, and other.

quam ad modum, phrase as adv., how, just as, as.

queror, queri, questus, [?, with r for original s], 3. v. dep., complain, complain of, find fault, find fault with, bewail, lament.

questus, -a, -um, p. p. of queror.

qui, quae, quod, cuius, [prob. quō+i (demon.)], rel. pron., who, which, that. — Often where a demon. is used in Eng., this, that. — Often implying an antecedent, he who, etc.: ea quae, things which, whatever; qua de causa, for this reason; qui patebant (though they, etc.) qui videant, men to see, scouts; qui, and they; habere sese quae, with subjv. (something to, etc.) qui potuisissent (men who); qui postularent, to demand; haec esse quae, this was what; qui faceret, in that he, etc.; paucis diebus quibus (after); idem quod, the same as. — quo, abl. of degree of difference as adv., the (more, less, etc.). — See also quis, quod, 2 quo, and 3 quo.

quicquam, see quisquam.

quicumque, quae, quod, [quicumque (cf. quisque)], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whichever, whatever.

quidam, quae, quod- (quid-), [qui-dam (case of DA, cf. nam, tam)], indef. adj. pron., a (possibly known, but not identified), a certain, certain, a kind of (referred to as belonging to the class, but not exactly the thing spoken of): artificio quidam, a kind of trick; quidam ex militibus (one).

quidem [unc. case-form of qui + dem (fr. DA, cf. tandem, idem)], adv., giving emphasis, but with no regular English equivalent: ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either; vestrae quidem certe, yours at least,
quiès

with emphasis; si quidem, if at least, in so far as, since.

quiès, -ētis, [quiē- (st. of quiesco, keep quiet) + tis (reduced)] F., rest, sleep, repose.

quiētus, -a, -um, [quiē- (st. of quiesco, cf. quies) + tus], p. p. as adj., at rest, quiet, peaceable, settled, at peace, free from disturbance.

quīn [qui (abl. or instr. of qui) + ne], conj., interrog., how not? and rel., by which not: quin etiam, nay even, in fact.—After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt, so but that, but that, that, from (doing a thing), to (do a thing); non dubito quin, I doubt not that; also, rarely, I do not hesitate to; non aliter sentio quin, I have no other idea than that; non especto quin, I do not delay doing, etc.; nec abest ab eo quin, it is not far from being the case that, etc.

quīnam [quis-], quae-, quod- (quid-), cūius-, [qui-nam], interrr. pron., who? etc. (emph.) : quibusnam manibus (with what possible? etc.).

quīcūnx, -īncis, [quinque-uncia, ounce], F., (an arrangement of dots in the form marked on the five-ounce piece of copper, ♣️), a quin- cūnx: in quincuncem dispositis (in quincuncial or alternate order).

quīndecim [quinque-decem], indecl. num. adj., fifteen.

quīngenti, -ae, -a, [quinque-centum], num. adj., five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a, [quinque + nue], distrib. num. adj., five at a time, five (at a time).

quīnquāgintā [quinque + unc. st.], indecl. num. adj., fifty.

quīnque [?], indecl. num. adj., five.

quīntus, -a, -um, [quinque + tus]. num. adj., fifth. —Esp. as a Roman prænomen (orig. the fifth-born?).

Quīntus, -ī, see quintus.

quīs (quī), quae (qua), quid (quod), cūius [st. qui- and quō-] : 1. Interrog. adj. pron., who? which? what? — 2. Indef., one, any one, any thing: ne quid, that nothing; ubi quis, when any one; si quis, if any one.

quīnsam, see quīnams.

quīspiam, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius-, [quis-piam (pe-iam, cf. qui-ppè, nempe)], indef. adj. pron., any, any one, any thing.

quīsquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), cūius-, [quis-quam], indef. pron. used substantively (cf. ullus), only with negatives and words implying a negative, making a universal negative, any one, anything. — As adj., any.

quīsque, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius-, [quis-que], indef. adj. pron. (distrib. universal), each, each one, every. —Esp. with superlatives, implying that things are taken in the order of their quality: nobilissimus quisque, all the noblest, one after the other in the order of their nobility; antiquissimum quoque tempus, the most ancient times in their order; decimus quisque, every tenth, the tenth part of, one in ten. — With ut, and īta, a proportion is indicated, in proportion as . . . so, the more . . . the more.

quīsquis, quaequae, quicquid (quidquid), cūiuscuius, [quis,
doubled], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whatever, every one who, all who.

quīvis, quae-, quid- (quod-), cuius- [qui-vis], indef. adj. pron.,
who you please, any one, any whatever (affirmative), any (whatever).

1. quō, see qui.

2. quō [old dat. of qui], adv.: 1. Interrog., whither? — 2. Rel.,
whither, into which, as far as (i.e. to what end): quō intrare (which);
habere quo (have any place to go to, or the like). — 3. Indef., anywhere.

3. quō [abl. of qui], as conj., in order that (with comparatives), that:
magis eo quam quo (than that, than because). — Esp., quō minus, that
not, so that not: recusare quominus, refuse to.

quoād [quo-ad], conj., (up to which point), as far as, until, as long as.

quōd [N. of qui], conj., (as to which), because, inasmuch as, in
that, as for the fact that, the fact that, as for (with clause ex-
pressing the action): quod si, now
if, but if.

quō minus, see 3 quo.

quoniam [quam (cum) -iam],
conj., (when now), inasmuch as, since, as, seeing that.

quoque [?], conj., following the
word it affects, (by all means?), also, as well. Cf. etiam (usually pre-
ceding).

quōque, see quisque.

quōque, quo with enclitic.

quoqueversus, see versus.

quot [akin to quis], adj. pron.
indcl.: 1. Interrog., how many? —
2. Rel., as many, as many as (with implied antecedent), the number
which.

quotannis [quot-annis], adv., (as many years as there are), every year,
yearly.

quotiēns [quot + iens, cf. quin-
quiens], adv.: 1. Interrog., how
often? how many times? — 2. Rel.,
as often, as often as (with implied antecedent).

R

rādīx, -īcis, [?], F., a root. — Plur.,
the roots (of a tree), the foot (of a
mountain).

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus, [?],
3. v. a., shave, scrape.

rāmus, -i, [?], M., a branch, a
bough, a prong (of antlers).

rapiditās, -tātis, [rapidō- + tas],
F., swiftness, rapidity.

rapīna, -ae, [rapī- (as if st. of
rapio, seize) + na (F. of -nus)], F.,
plunder. — Plur., plundering.

rārus, -a, -um, [?], adj., thin,
scattered, singly, in small bodies (of soldiers), a few at a time, few (as
being wide apart).

rāsus, -a, -um, p. p. of rado.

ratiō, -ōnis, [rati- (ra, in reor,
+ ti) + o], F., a reckoning, an ac-
count, a roll. — Also, calculation,
reason, prudence, terms, a plan, sci-
ence (or art, or knowledge, as sys-
tematic), a reason (as consisting in a
calculation), a manner, a method,
a consideration: rationem habere, take an account, take account of, have regard to, take into consideration, take measures, take care of, a mercantile term, cf. account; rei militaris (art, also nature); omnibus rationibus, in all ways, in all respects; proeli (character); reposcere (demand an account, make one responsible); rationem habere ut, take care that, etc.; rationem habere frumentandii (take measures for, etc.).

ratis, -is, [?], F., a raft.

Rauraci, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine.

re-, red-, [abl. of unc. st. perh. akin to -rus], insep. prep., back, again, away, out, un.—Esp. implying a giving up or taking something which is due, or which creates an obligation by the taking, see recipio, refero.

rebellio, -ēnis, [rebelli- + o], F., a renewal of war, an uprising, a rebellion.

Rebilus, -ī, [?], m., a Roman family name.—See Caninius.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus, [re-cedo], 3. v. n., make way back, retire, withdraw.

recēns, -entis, [prob. p. of lost verb τρeeceo, be back, (cf. recipero)], adj., (?, just coming back?), new, fresh, late.

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, [re-censeo, estimate], 2. v. a., review, inspect (of troops).

receptāculum, -i, [receptā- + culum], n., a retreat, a place of refuge.

receptus, -ā, -um, p. p. of recipio.

receptus, -tūs, [re-captus, cf. recipio], m., a retreat, a way of retreat, a refuge: receptui canere, to sound a retreat.

recessus, -sūs, [re-tcessus (cf. recedo)], m., a retreat: recessum dare (a chance to retreat).

recidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, [re-cado], 3. v. n., fall again, fall back, fall upon (one after some one else).

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [re-capio], 3. v. a., take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit: misericordiam (admit of); tela recipi, be exposed to missiles; ad se (attack).—With reflexive, retreat, fly, return, retire, get off, withdraw, resort: se ad aliquem (rally on).

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, [re-cito], 1. v. a., read (aloud).

reclinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of reclino.

reclinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [reclino], 1. v. a. and n., lean back, lean over, lean: reclinatus, leaning.

rectē [old case-form of rectus], adv., straight, right, rightly: recte factum, a good action.

rectus, -a, -um, [p. p. of rego], adj., (directed), straight: recta regione, in a straight direction, parallel with.

recuperō (-cip-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*recipero*, from recē- (cf. recens) + parus (cf. parilo)], 1. v. a., get back, recover, regain.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, [re-tcauso (cf. excuso)], 1. v. a. and n., (give an excuse for drawing back), refuse, reject, repudiate, object to; abs., make
objections: de stipendio (refuse to pay, etc.); quin (refuse to); quominus (refuse to); periculum (refuse to incur).

rēda (rhēda), -ae, [perh. Celtic form akin to rota], F., a wagon (with four wheels).

redāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo.

redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo.

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [re (red) -do], 3. v. a., give back, restore, pay (something due, cf. re), render: supplicatio (offer).

redemptus, -a, -um, p. p. of redimo.

redeō, -ire, -ī (īvī), -īturus, [re (red-) -eo], irr. v. n., go back, return, come down again (collis ad planitiem): eodem unde redierat (come); summa (be referred).

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -actus, [re (red-) ago], 3. v. a., bring back, reduce, render, bring (sub imperium Galliam), make (one thing out of another).

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptus, [re- (red-) emo], 3. v. a., buy back, redeem, purchase, buy.

redintegrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of redintegro.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re (red-) integro], I. v. a., renew (again), restore, revive (spem).

reditiō, -ōnis, [red-titio (cf. redeo)], F., a return.

reditus, -tūs, [re-(red-) titus], M., a return.

Redones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Brittany.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, [re-duco], 3. v. a., lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in, extend back.

refectus, -a, -um, p. p. of reficio.

referō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [refeo], irr. v. a., bring back, return, bring (where something belongs), report.—Esp.: ad senatum (lay before for action); de re publica (consult in regard to); gratiam (make return, show one's gratitude); pedem (retreat, draw back).

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [refacio], irr. v. a., repair, refresh: se ex labore (rest); exercitum (allow to recover).

refrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus, [re-frango], 3. v. a., break away, break in (portas): vim fluminis (break, opposite to its direction).

refugīō, -fugere, -fugī, -fugitus, [re-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, escape.

Rēginus, -ī, [akin to rex], M., a Roman family name.—See Antistius.

regiō, -onis, [REG + io, but cf. ratio], F., a direction, a part (of the country, etc.), a region, a country, a district: recta regione, straight, along, parallel; e regione, over against, just opposite.

rēgius, -a, -um, [reg- + ius], adj., of a king, regal, royal.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, [regnō-], 1. v. n., rule, be in power, reign.

rēgnum, -i, [REG + num (N. of -nus)], N., a kingdom, royal power, a throne.—Plur., the royal power (of several cases).
regō, regere, réxi, réctus, [akin to rex], 3. v. a., direct, manage, rule, have control of.

réciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus, [re-iacio], 3. v. a., throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off.

réictus, -a, -um, p. p. of reicio.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, no p. p., [re-languesco], 3. v. n., languish away, be relaxed, be weakened, be deadened.

relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of refero.

relēgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of relegō.

relēgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-lēgo, depute], 1. v. a., remove, separate.

relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquo.

religīo, -ōnis, [? re-legio (cf. religo)], r., (the original meaning unc.), a religious scruple, a religious observance, the service of the gods, a superstition, a superstitious terror, religion.— Plur., religious matters (of all kinds).

relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictus, [re-linquō], 3. v. a., leave behind, leave, abandon: obsidiōnem (raise).

— Pass., be left, remain.

reliquus, -a, -um, [re-liquus (liq (leave) + us)], adj., left, remaining, the rest, the other, other (meaning all other), the others, all other, future (of time), remaining: nihil est reliqui, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, [re-maneō], 2. v. n., remain behind, remain, stay.

rēmex, -iges, [remō- with unc. term. (perh. ūagus)], M., an oarsman, a rower.

Rēmī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae about Rheims, which was their capital.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [remig-], 1. v. n., row.

remigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [remigro], 1. v. n., move back, return.

reminiscor, -minisci, [re-+miniscor (man, in memini, + isco)], 3. v. dep., remember.

remissus, -a, -um, p. p. of remittō.

remittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, [re-mitto], 3. v. a., let go back, send back, throw back.— Fig., relax, cease to use, give up: remissoribus frigoribus (less intense).

remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p. p., [remollesco], 3. v. n., soften away, soften, become feeble.

remōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of removeō.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, [re-moveō], 2. v. a., move back, move away, send away, remove, draw away, get out of the way.— remotus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., far away, remote.

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus, [re-munerō], 1. v. dep., repay, requite.

Rēmus, -ī, [?], M., one of the Remi.

rēmus, -ī, [?], M., an oar.

rēnō, -ōnis, [?], M., a skin, a pelt.

renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-novo, fr. novus, new], 1. v. a., renew.

renūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of renuntio.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [renuntio], 1. v. a., bring back word, report, proclaim.
repellō, -pellere, -ppuli, -pulsus, [re-pello], 3. v. a., drive back, repel, repulse: ab hac spe repulsī, dis-appointed in this hope.

repente [?], adv., suddenly.

repentīnus, -a, -um, [repente + inus], adj., sudden, hasty.—repentīnō, abl. as adv., suddenly.

reperiō, reperire, reperī, repertus, [re- (red-) pario], 4. v. a., find out, discover, find (by inquiry, cf. invenio): reperti sunt multi, there were many.

repertus, -a, -um, p.p. of reperio.

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, [re-peto], 3. v. a., try to get back, demand back, ask for: poenas (in-flict, exact, cf. sumo).

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [repleo], 2. v. a., fill up, supply well.

replētus, -a, -um, p.p. of repleo.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-porto], 1. v. a., carry back.

reposcō, -poscere, no perf., no p.p., [re-posco], 3. v. a., demand back, de-mand (something due).

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-praesento], 1. v. a., make present, do at once.

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hensus, [re-prehendo], 3. v. a., drag back, seize hold of, find fault with, blame, censure.

repressus, -a, -um, p.p. of re-primo.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [re-premo], 3. v. a., check.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [repudiō-], 1. v. a., (spurn with the feet, cf. tri-podium), spurn, refuse, reject.

repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [repugno, fight], 1. v. n., resist. — Fig., be in opposition.

repulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of repello.

requirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, quisītus, [re-quaero], 3. v. a., search out. Hence, request, require, demand, need.

rēs, rei, [akin to reor, reckon], F., property, business, an affair, a matter, a thing (in the most general sense), a fact, an occurrence, an event, a case, an action, an act.— Often to be translated from the context: ob eam rem, for this reason; quam ob rem, for which reason, wherefore; his rebus, by these means, for these reasons, on this account; ea res, this, (often equivalent to a pronoun); qua in re, in which; eius rei, of this; his rebus cognitis (this); qua ex re futurum, the result of which would be; hic rei, for this purpose, for this; alia re iurare (in any other way); nihil earum rerum quas, etc., nothing of what, etc.; sine certa re, without certain grounds; omnibus rebus, in every respect, in all ways; his omnibus rebus unum repugnabat (considerations, reasons, arguments); quibus rebus occurrentum esse (dangers); rem deferre, lay the matter before, not for consultation, bring information, cf. rem referre; rerum omnium casus, all accidents; rem gerere, operate, conduct operations, in war, succeed well or ill; his rebus gestis, after these operations, events; male re gesta, want of success; rerum na-tura, nature, also, state of the case;
imperitus rerum, ignorant of the world; omnium rerum summa (of the whole, of all the forces); ei rei student (this branch, cavalry); cuius rei, of which, ships.—Esp., the affairs (of a person), position, interests, condition, fortunes, circumstances: Gallicis rebus favere (the interests of Gaul); rem esse in angusto (affairs, things); commutatio rerum, change of fortunes.—Esp.: res secundae, or adversae, success, prosperity, or adversity, want of success; res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the general interests, public business, politics; res communis, the common interest; de re publica, in regard to the welfare of the state, about politics; res divinae, divine worship, and everything pertaining to it, religion; res familiaris, property; res militaris, warfare, the art of war; res frumentaria, grain supply, grain; res alicui est, one has business with, has to do with, and the like; one’s affair is; res est, it is a fact, it is so; novae res, a new form of government, revolution.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus, [re-scindo], 3. v. a., cut away, tear down, break down, destroy.

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitus, [re-scisco, inquire], 3. v. a., find out, learn, discover.

rescīribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, [re-scribo, write], 3. v. a., transfer (by writing).

reservātus, -a, -um, p. p. of reservo.

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, [re-servo], 1. v. a., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve.

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, no p. p., [re-sedeo], 2. v. n., sit back, sit down, remain behind, remain.

residō, -sidere, -sēdi, no p. p., [re-sido], 3. v. n., sink down, become calm, subside.

resistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p., [re-sisto], 3. v. n., stand back, stop, withstand, make a stand, resist, remain.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [re-†specio], 3. v. a. and n., look back, look back at, look behind one, see behind one, consider.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, [re-spondeo, promise], 2. v. n., reply, answer.

respōnsum, -i, [N. p. p. of respondeo], N., a reply.—Plur., a reply (of several parts).

rēs publica, see res.

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, no p. p., [re-spuo], 3. v. a., spit out.—Fig., spurn, reject.

restitūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of restinguo.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxi, -stīntus, [re-stinguo, quench], 3. v. a., extinguish.

restitūto, -stituere, -stitūi, -stītūtus, [re-statuo], 3. v. a., set up again, replace, restore, make anew.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of restituo.

retestentus, -a, -um, p. p. of retineo.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus, [re-teneo], 2. v. a., hold back, restrain, (quin, from doing something), detain, retain: memoriam (preserve); Gallos (arrest).

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus,
[re-traho], 3. v. a., drag back, bring back (a person).

revellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus, [re-vello, pull], 3. v. a., tear away, pull away.

reversus, -a, -um, p. p. of revertō.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [re-verte], 3. v. n., return (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses, return, go back, come back.

revincio, -vincire, -vinxi, -vinctus, [re-vincio], 4. v. a., bind back (to something), make fast, fasten, bind.

revinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of re-vincio.

revocatus, -a, -um, p. p. of revoco.

revocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-voce], 1. v. a., call back, call away, call off, recall.

rex, regis, [reg, rule, as st.], m., a king.

Rhēnus, -i, [Celtic?], m., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, -i, [Celtic?], m., the Rhone.

ripa, -ae, [?], f., a bank.

rivus, -i, [akin to Gr. ῥέω], m., a brook, a stream (not so large as flumen).

rōbur, -oris, [?], n., oak.

rogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of rogo.

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a. and n., ask, request, ask for: sacramentum rogare milites (bind by an oath, enlist under oath).

Rōma, -ae, [?], f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, [Roma- + nus], m., Roman. — As noun, a Roman.

Rōscius, -i, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Roscius, a legatus of Cæsar.

rōstrum, -i, [rodo (in rodo, gnaw) + trum], n., a beak. — Esp. of a ship, the beak, the ram (used as in modern naval fighting).

rota, -ae, [?], f., a wheel.

rubus, -i, [?, perch. rub- (in ruber) + us], m., (red?), a bramble.

Rūfus, -i, [prob. dial. form = rubus, red], m., a Roman family name. See Sulpicius.

rūmor, -ōris, [?], m., a rumor (confused report), report.

rūpēs, -is, [rumpo (cf. rumpo) + unc. term.], f., a cliff, a rock (in position).

rūrīus, for reversus, adv., back again, back, again, in turn.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe on the borders of Provence.

Rutilus, -i, [prob. akin to ruber], m., red. — As a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Sempronius Rutillus, a cavalry officer under Cæsar.

S

Sabinus, -i, [unc. st. (cf. sabulus, sand) + inus], m., (Sabine). — As a Roman family name. — See Titurius.

Sabis, -is, [Celtic], m., a river of Gaul flowing into the Meuse, now Sambre.

sacerdōs, -dōtis, [sacrō-dos (da + tis)], c., (arranger of sacred rites?), a priest.

sacrāmentum, -i, [sacrā-], hallow, + mentum], n., an oath.

sacrificium, -i, [sacrificiō- (sacrī-]
saepe [N. of *saepeis* (perh. same as *saepes*), adv., often: minime saepius, compar., many times, repeatedly. — saepius, compar., many times.
saeopenumerō [saepe, numerus], adv., oftentimes, many times.
saepeś, -is, [akin to *saepio*, hedge in], F., a hedge.
saeviō, -ire, -ii, -ītūrus, [saevō-, raging (as if saevi-)], 4. v. n., be angry, rage, be violent.
sagitta, -ae, [?], F., an arrow.
sagittārius, -i, [sagitta- + arius], m., an archer, a Bowman.
sagulum, -i, [sagō- (cloak) + ium], N., a cloak (military).
saltus, -tīs, [?], perh. sal (in salio, leapt) + tus], M., a wooded height, a glade, a pass (in the mountains).
salūs, -ūtis, [salvō-, (?) safe, + tis (cf. virtus)], F., health, well-being, welfare, safety, preservation, deliverance, life (as saved or lost); salute desperata, despairing of saving one's self; salutis suae causa, to protect one's self; ad salutem contendere (a place of safety).
Samarobriva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Ambiani, now Amiens.
sanciō, sancire, sānxī, sānctus, [sac (in sacer)], 4. v. a., bind (in some religious manner), make sacred, solemnly establish (by law). — sānc-
tus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., holy, sacred, solemn, inviolable.
sānctus, -a, -um, p. p. of sancio.
sanguis, -inis, [?], M., blood (as the vital fluid, generally in the body, cf. cruror).
sānitās, -tātis, [sanō- + tas], F., soundness, sound mind, good sense.
sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sanō-], v. a., make sound, make good, repair.
Santones, -um, (i, -orum), [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe between the Loire and the Garonne.
Santonī, see Santones.
sānus, -a, -um, [sa- (akin to salvus) + nus], adj., sound (in body or mind), sane, discreet: nihil pro sano facere (nothing discreet).
sapiō, -ere, -ii (-īvī), no p. p., [?, SAP], 3. v. a. and n., taste (actively or passively). Hence, be wise, understand (what to do).
sarcina, -ae, [sarc- (as if st. of sarcio, or a kindred noun-st.) + na (f. of nus)], F., a pack (sewed up?). — Plur., baggage (soldiers' packs, cf. impedimenta, baggage not carried by soldiers).
sarcīo, sarcire, sarsi, sartus, [?], 4. v. a., mend, patch. — Fig., restore, repair.
sarmentum, -i, [perh. sarī, prune (but cf. sarcina) + mentum], N., (either prunings or tied fagots), only in plur., fagots, fascines.
satis [?], adv., enough, sufficiently. — Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., enough, sufficient: satis habere, consider sufficient, be satisfied; neque ... satis commode (not very, etc.) ; satis grandis, rather large, tolerably large. — Often a mild expression for very and the like.
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus, [satis facio], 3. v. n., do enough for, satisfy, make amends, excuse one's self, apologize.
satisfactio, -ōnis, [satis-factio (cf. satisfacio)], F., amends, excuses, an apology.
satus, -a, -um, p. p. of sero.
saucius, -a, -um, [?], adj., wounded.
saxum, -i, [?], N., a rock (as movable), cf. rupes.
scālae, -ārum, (sing. rare), [perh. scad- (in scando, climb) + la], F., a ladder, a scaling ladder.
Scaldis, -is, [?], M., a river of Gaul, the Scheldt.
scapha, -ae, [Gr., orig. a "dug-out"], F., a skiff, a boat.
scelerātus, -a, -um, [as if (perh. really) p. p. of sclero (stain with crime?)], adj., villainous, accursed.
scienter [scient- (cf. scio) + ter], adv., knowingly, skilfully.
scientia, -ae, [scient- (cf. scio) + ia], F., knowledge, acquaintance with (thing in the genitive), skill.
scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, [SCID, split], 3. v. a., tear, tear down.
sciō, scire, scīvī, scīitus, [?], 4. v. a., (separate?), distinguish, know.
scorpiō, -ōnis, [?], M., a scorpion; a machine for throwing darts. Hence, a shot from an engine (of that kind).
scībō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus, [?], 3. v. a. and n., write, give an account (in writing).
scrobis, -is, [prob. akin to scribō], M. and F., a ditch, a pit.
scūtum, -i, [?], N., a shield, of the Roman legion, made of wood, con velit, oblong (2½ by 4 ft.), covered with leather.
sē- sēd- [old abl. of unc. st.], prep., mostly as adv. in comp., apart, away, aside, off, un-.
sē, see sui.
sēbum, -i, [?], n., tallow.
secō, secāre, secū, sectus, [prob. causative of sec], 1. v. a., cut, reap.
sècrētō [abl. of secretus, p. p. of secerno, separate], adv., in private, privately.
sectō, -ōnis, [sec (in seco) + tio], F., a cutting. Hence (prob. from dividing in lots), a lot of booty, booty.
sector, -āri, -ātus, [prob. sectā (SEQU + ta, cf. moneta)], 1. v. dep., pursue, chase after.
sectūra, -ae, [prob. sectu- (SEC + tus) + ra, F. of -rus], F., a cutting, a mine, a shaft, a gallery.
secundum, see secundus.
secundus, -a, -um, [part. in -dus of sequor], adj., following. Hence, second. — Also (as not opposing), favorable, successful: secundiores res, greater prosperity; proelium secundum nostris (in favor of); secundum flumine, down the stream; secunda acies, the second line of battle, the second division. — Neut. acc. as prep. with acc., along, in the direction of, in accordance with; secundum ea, besides that.
secūris, -is, [sec + unc. term.], F., an axe. — Esp., the axe of the victor (as a symbol of the power of life and death).
sēcūs, [SEQU (in sequor) + unc. term.], adv., (inferior), otherwise.
Compar., sēcius (sētius), less: nihiloscēcius, none the less, nevertheless.

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of sequor. sed [abl. of unc. st., cf. re], conj., apart (cf. sēditio, and securus), but (stronger than autem or at), but yet.
sēdecim [sex-decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen.

sēdēs, -is, [sed + es (M. and F. term. corresponding to N. -us)], F., a seat. Hence, an abode (both in sing. and plur.), a settlement: locus ac sedes, a place of abode.

sēditio,-onis, [sed-tilio (I + tio)], F., a secession, a mutiny, an uprising.

sēditiosus, -a, -um, [sedition- + osus], adj., seditious, factious.

Sedulus, -i, [?], M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps.

Sedusīi, -orum, [Teut.], M. plur., a tribe of Germans.

seges, -etis, [unc. st. + tis], F., a crop of grain (growing), a field (of grain).

Sēgni, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul.

Segonax (-ovax), -actis, [Celtic], M., a British king.

Segontiaci, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Britain.

Segusiāvi (-āni), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people west of the Rhone, near modern Lyons.

semel [prob. n. of adj., akin to similis], adv., once: semel atque iterum, more than once, again and again; ut semel, when once, as soon as.

sēmentis, -tis, [semen (seed) + tis, cf. Carmentis, virtus], F., a sowing: sementis facere, sowing grain.

sēmita, -ae, [se- (sed-) + imita (mi, in meo, go, cf. comes)], F., a side path, a by path, a path (over the mountains).

semper [†sēmō- (?) (in semel) -per (cf. parumper)], adv., through all time, all the time, always.

Semprōnius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — See Rutilus.

senātor, -tōris, [†senā- (as if verb-st. akin to senex, perh. really so, cf. senatus) + tor], M., (an elder). Hence, a senator.

senātus, -tūs, [†senā- (as if, perh. really, verb-st. akin to senex)], M., a senate (council of old men). — Esp., the senate (of Rome, the great body of nobles acting as an administrative council).

senex [seni- + cus (reduced)]. —

Gen., senis, [?, cf. seneschal], adj. (only M.), old. — Esp. as noun, an old man (above forty-five).

sēnī, -ae, -a, [sec(s) + ni], distrib. num. adj., six each, six (where each is implied in Eng. by the context).

Senones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Seine, near Sens (their chief town, anciently Agedincum).

sententia, -ae, [†sentent- (p. of simpler pres. of sentio) + ia], F., (feeling, thinking). Hence, a way of thinking, an opinion, a view, a determination, a sentiment, a feeling, a purpose, a design. — Esp., officially, a judgment, an opinion, a sentence, a vote: in ea sententia permanere
sentio, sentire, sensi, sensus, [?], 4. v. a., perceive (by the senses), know, see, think (of an opinion made up), learn about, learn: unum sentiunt ac probant, hold the same opinion, etc.

sentis, -is, [?], m., a briar.

separatum [as if acc. of separatis (separ- + tis)], adv., separately, privately (apart from others).

separatus, -a, -um, p. p. of separo.

separo, -are, -avi, -atus, [se- (sed-) paro], 1. v. a., (get apart?), separate.

- Especially separatus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate.

septem, [?], indecl. num. adj., seven.

septentriōnes (septem, triones), -um, m. plur., the seven plough oxen (the stars of the Great Bear). — Hence, the north.

— Also (by an error), in the sing., septentrionis, -onis, the north: a septentrionibus, in the north; sub septentrionibus, in the north, towards the north.

septimus, -a, -um, [septem + mus, cf. primus], adj., the seventh.

septingenti, -ae, -a, [septem (in some form) -centum (?)], num. adj., seven hundred.

septuāgintā [from septem, in some unc. manner], indecl. num. adj., seventy.

seputūra, -ae, [septul- (cf. sepelio, bury) + ra (f. of -rus)], F., burial, burying.

Sēquana, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Seine.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul, on the Rhone, N. of Macon). — Masc. sing., one of the Sequani, a Sequanian. — Masc. plur., the Sequani.

sequor, sequi, secutus, [sequ], 3. v. dep., follow, accompany: damnatum poena (be inflicted upon, the penalty following the condemnation); eventus (ensue); hiems quae secuta est (the following); fidem (hold to, remain under, come under, surrender one's self to, etc.); aestus commutationem (take advantage of).

Ser., for Servius.

sermō, -onis [ser (in sero, twine) + mo (prob. -mō- + o)], m., (series?). Hence, conversation (continuous series of speech), talk, intercourse, conversation with (genitive).

serō, serere, sévē, satus, [sa, redundant], 3. v. a., plant, sow.

serō [abl. of serus], adv., too late.

Sertōrius, -i, [sētor (garland-maker?) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Especially, Q. Sertorius, a partisan of Marius, who held a command in Spain against the party of Sulla from B.C. 80 to B.C. 72.

servilis, -e, [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin, cf. servīo) + is], adj., of slaves, of a slave, servile: in servilem modum, as with slaves, (i.e. by torture); tumultus (the servile war, the revolt of the slaves under Spartacus in B.C. 73).

servīō, -ire, īī (-īvī), ātūrus [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin)], 4. v. n., be a slave (to some one or something); rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow); bello (devote one's self to).
Servius

+ tus) + tis, cf. iuventus, semen-tis], F., slavery, servitude.

Servius, -ī, [servō- + ius], M., a Roman praenomen.

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [servō-], r. v. a., watch, guard, keep, preserve: praesidia (hold, maintain); ordines (keep); fidem (keep one's word).

servus, -ī, [unc. root (ser, bind?) + vus], M., a slave.

sēsē, see sui.

sēsequipedālis, -e, [†sesquiped-(a foot and a half) + alis], adj., of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch (beams, etc.).

seu, see sive.

sevēritās, -tātis, [severō- + tas], F., strictness, harshness, severity.

sēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [se (sed) -vocō], i. v. a., call aside, call out (aside).

sex [?], indecl. num. adj., six.

sexāgintā [sex + unc. term.], indecl. num. adj., sixty.

sexcentī (ses-), -ae, -a, [sex-cen-tum], num. adj., six hundred.


sī [loc. prob. akin to se], conj., (in this way, in this case, so, cf. sic), if, in case. — Esp., to see if, whether: id si fieret, should this happen, etc.

sibi, see sui.

Sibusātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a people of Aquitania, near the Pyrenees.

sic [si-ce, cf. hic], adv., so, in this manner, in such a manner,

thus: sic... ut, so... that, so well... that; sic reperiebat (this). — sicutī, as conj., just as, just as if.

siccitās, -tātis, [siccō- + tas], F., dryness, drought, dry weather. — Plur. in same sense, of different occasions. sicut (sicuti), see sic.

sīdus, -eris, [sed + us], N., (position?), a heavenly body.

signifer, -ferī, [signo-fer (fer (bear) + us)], M., a standard-bearer. significātiō, -ōnis, [signīficā- + tio], F., a making of signs, a signal, an intimation, a warning.

signīficō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†signīficō- (signō-ficus, cf. facio)], i. v. n., make signs, indicate, make known, spread news, give an intimation, give information, show: hac re significari, this is an indication; de fuga; deditio
ergem (make signs of).

signum, -i, [unc. root + num (N. of -nus)], N., (a device?), a sign, a signal. — Esp., a standard (for military purposes, carried by any body of men, consisting of some device in metal on a pole). — Phrases: signa convertere, wheel, change front, face about; signa inferre, advance to attack, charge; conversa signa inferre, change front and charge; infestis signis (for an attack, at charge); signa ferre, move, move on, march; signa subsecui, keep the line of march; signa relinquere, leave the ranks; se continere ad signa, keep the ranks; a signis discedere, desert, leave the ranks; ad signa convenire, join the army; ad signa consistere, rally around the standard; signa constituere, halt.
Silanus, -i, [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., Marcus Silanus, a legatus of Caesar.

silentium, -i, [silent- + ium], N., stillness, silence.—silentiō, abl., in silence, silently.

Silius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Titus Silius, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

silva, -ae, [?], F., a forest, woods, forests.—Plur. in same sense.

silvester (-tris), -tris, -tre, [silva- (as if silvus-, cf. palustris) + tris], adj., woody, wooded.

similis, -e, [‘simō- (cf. simplex, semper) + lis], adj., like, similar.

similītūdō, -inis, [similī- + tudo], F., likeness, resemblance (to, genitive).

simul [N. of similis, cf. facul], adv., at the same time: simul atque (or without atque), as soon as; simul ... simul, both ... and.

simulācrum, i, [simulā- + crum], N., an image, a likeness.

simulātiō, -onis, [simulā- + tio], F., a pretence, a show, deceit.

simulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of simulō.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [similī- (as if, perh. orig., ‘simulō)], I. v. a., pretend, make a show of (something), feign.

simultās, -tātis, [similī- (cf. simul) + tas], F., likeness?, equality?), rivalry.

sin [si-ne], conj., (if not), but if. sincērē [old case-form of sincerus], adv., honestly, truly, frankly.

sine [?], prep. with abl., without.

singiillātīm (singul-), [as if singulā- (singulus) + tim (acc. of -tis)], adv., singly, one by one, individually.

singulāris, -e, [singulō- + aris], adj., solitary, single. Hence, unique, extraordinary, unparalleled, unequalled, marvellous.

singuli, -ae, -a, [sim (in similis) + unc. term.], adj., one at a time, single, each, one by one, several (severally).—Often to denote distribution, one to each: singuli singulos, (with verb), one ... each; singulis legionibus singulos legatos (one over each); ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere (each from his); inter singulas legiones (between each two, one to each); navis singulas Romanis equitibus (severally, separately, one to each); sevocare singulos (individuals, one by one).

sinister, -tra, -trum, [?], adj., left: sub sinistra (manu), on the left.

sinistrōrsus [sinistro-vorsus (versus)], adv., to the left.

sinō, sinere, sivi, situs, [st (of unc. meaning)], 3. v. a., (lay down, cf. pono), leave. Hence, permit, allow.

situs, -tūs, [st + tus], M., (a laying, a leaving), situation, position, site.

sive, seu, [si-ve], conj., if either, or if: sive ... sive, either ... or, whether ... or.

socer, -eri, [?], M., a father-in-law.

sociētas, -tātis, [sociō- + tas], F., an alliance.

socius, -i, [sequ (follow) + ius], M., a companion, an ally, a comrade.

sōl, sōlis, [?], M., the sun.—Also personified, Sol, the Sun.—See also under orior, occido, occasus.
sölācium (sölāt-), -i, [solacō + ium], N., a consolation, a comfort.
soldurius, -i, [Teutonic], M., a retainer, a follower.
soldēō, solēre, solitus, [?], 2. v. n., be wont, be accustomed.
sölītūdō, -inis, [solō + tudo], F., loneliness. Hence, a wilderness.
sollertia, -ae, [solert- (sollo- + ars, with complete skill, cf. sollicito) + ia], F., skill, ingenuity, shrewdness.
sollicitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sollicito.
sollicitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātus, [sollicitō- (sollō-citus, entirely roused)], 1. v. a., stir up, instigate, make overtures to, tamper with, approach (with money, etc.), offer bribes to, tempt.
sollītūdō, -inis, [sollicitu- (st. akin to sollicitus) + do], F., anxiety, apprehension.
solum, -i, [?], N., the soil, the foundation, the bottom: solum agri, the bare ground; ab infimo solo, from the very bottom.
sōlus, -a, -um, [?], adj., alone, only.—sōlum, N. as adv., alone, only.
solūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of solvo.
solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtus, [prob. se-luo, loose], 3. v. a., unbind, loose. — Esp. with navis, weigh anchor, set sail. — Also without navis, absolutely, set sail.
sonisus, -tūs, [soni- (as st. of sono) + tus], M., a sound, noise.
sonus, -i, [SON + us], M., a sound.
soror, -ōris, [?], F., a sister: soror ex matre, a half-sister.
sors, sortis, [perh. ser (in sero) + tis, but the orig. sense is unc.], F., a lot (for divination), chance.

Sōtiātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a people of Aquitania.
spatium, -i, [?], N., space, extent, a space, a distance. — Transf., time, space of time, lapse of time. — Phrases: quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for; intermisso spatio, after an interval; spatia omnis temporis, the whole course of time.
speciēs, -īi, [spec + ies (akin to -ia)], F., (a sight, prob. both act. and pass.). — Passively, a sight, a show, an appearance: summa species earum stantium, a perfect appearance of standing trees (lit. of them standing); ad speciem, for show.
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spectō-]. 1. v. a. and n., look at, regard, have regard to, lie towards (of a country), face.
speculātor, -tōris, [speculā- + tor] M., a spy, a scout.
speculātorius, -a, -um, [speculator + ius], adj., (of a scout), scouting, reconnoitring (navigia).
speculator, -ārii, -ātus, [speculō-], cf. specula, watch-tower], 1. v. dep., spy, reconnoitre: speculandi causa, as a spy.
spērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of spero.
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spes- (prob. orig. st. of spēs) with r for s], 1. v. a. and n., hope, hope for, expect.
spēs, -ei, [?], F., hope, expectation: summam in spem venire, have the greatest hope.
spīritus, -tūs, [spirī- (as st. of spiro, breathe) + tus], M., breath. — Also, spirit. Hence, in pl., pride arrogance, temper.
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spoliō-, booty], I. v. a., despooil, strip. — Fig., rob, deprive, despoil.

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), [prob. akin to spondeō, promise], F., only with poss. or (poetic) gen., of one's own accord, voluntarily, on one's own account. — Rarely, by one's influence.

stabilīō, -āre, -āvī (īī), -ātus, [stabilī-,], 4. v. a., make firm.

stabilitās, -ātis, [stabilī- + tas], F., steadiness, firmness.

statim [acc. of tstatīs (sta- + tis)], adv., (as one stands, on the spot), at once, forthwith, immediately.

statiō, -ōnis, [apparently STA + tio, prob. ĭstati- + o, whence the common -tio used as ending without regard to its origin], F., (a standing), a position, a post, a picket: in statione, on guard.

statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [statu-,] 3. v. a., set up. Hence, establish, resolve upon, determine, consider (make up one's mind), take measures. — Euphemistic for, punish (de eo causa cognita).

statūra, -ae, [stata- + ra, F. of -rus], F., (a standing), stature, size.

status, -tūs, [STA + tus], M., (a standing), a position, a condition, a state, a situation.

stimulus, -ī, [stigmō- (stig + mus) + lus], M., a goad, a spur. — As name of a calthrop or instrument of defence, "spurs."

stipendiārius, -a, -um, [stipendiō- + arius], adj., tributary, under tribute, subject to tribute.

stipendium, -ī, [stipī-, gift, and st. akin to pendo (perh. ĭpendus, cf. pendulus) + ium], N., a tribute.

stipes, stipitis, [?], M., a trunk (of a tree).

stirps, stirpis, [?], M. and F., a stock, a stem. — Fig., a race: stirpem hominem interfici, men to be killed root and branch.

stō, stāre, stētī, statūrus, [STA], I. v. n., stand, be placed: decreto (stand by, abide by).

strāmentum, -i, [STRA (form of root of sterno) + mentum], N., (something strewn), straw, thatch. — Also plur., saddle-cloths.

strepitus, -tūs, [strepī- (as st. of strepo, roar) + tus], M., a noise, a confused din.

studeō, studēre, studuī, no p. p., [stūdō- (or ĭstūda-), cf. studium], 2. v. n., be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (a thing in the dat.).

studiōsē, [old case-form of studiōsus], adv., eagerly, zealously.

studium, -ī, [prob. ĭstudō- + ium, cf. studēo], N., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (for a thing), enthusiasm. Hence, a pursuit (to which one is devoted), an occupation.

stultitīa, -ae, [stultō- (foolish) + tia], F., folly.

sub [unc. case, prob. abl., akin to super], adv. (in comp.) and prep.: a. With abl. (of rest in a place), under: sub oculis, before the eyes.

b. With acc. (of motion towards
sábbius, a., -um, p. p. of subigo.

sábbius, a., -um, [s superhero artifice], adj., cunning, wily.

sábbiō, -dīcere, -dūxi, -ductus, [sub-duco], 3. v. a., draw up, lead up: navis (beach, draw up).

sábbiciō, -ōnis, [sub-ductio, cf. subduco], f., a drawing up, a beaching (of ships).

sábbicōs, -a, -um, p. p. of subduco.

sábbīo, -ire, -iī, -itus, [sub-ii], irr. v. a., go under, undergo, encounter, come up, approach.

sábbiōs, -a, -um, p. p. of subfodiō.

sábbiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [sub-iacio], 3. v. a., throw under, place below, place under, subject, expose to. — Also, throw up. — sábbicus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying near.

sábbiō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [subago], 3. v. a., bring under, subject.

sábbiō, see subitus.

sábbitus, -a, -um, [p. p. of subeo], adj., (coming up secretly from under), sudden, suddenly (as if adv. taken with the verb), quick, hasty. — sábbiō, abl. as adv., suddenly, of a sudden.

sábbiōs, -a, -um, [sub- (t) latus], p. p. of tollō.

sábbiōs, -a, -um, p. p. of sublevo.

sábbiōs, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sublevo], 1. v. a., lighten up, lighten, raise, raise up, assist, render assistance. — With reflexive, rise up. — sábbiōs, p. p., supporting one's self.

sábbula, -ae, [?], f., a pile.

sábbulō, -luere, no perf., -lūtus, [sub-luo], 3. v. a., wash underneath, wash: flumen collis radices.

sábbiōs, [sum-], -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sum-], 1. v. a., supply (as needed), furnish (from time to time), provide.

sábbimittō, [sum-], -mittere, -missī, -missus, [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., send up, send to one's assistance, send as reinforcements, send (as help), reinforce.

sábbimōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of submoveo.

sábbimoveō, [sum-], -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [sum-], 2. v. a., drive off, dislodge.

sábbirū, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [subruo], 3. v. a., dig under, undermine.

sábbiseguor, -sequi, -secūtus, [subsequo], 3. v. dep., follow up, follow on, follow, succeed to.

sabbisidius, -i, [sub- (sed + ium)], n., (a sitting in reserve), a reserve, a reinforcement, help. relief, support assistance, resources, provisions: subsidium mittere, send assistance; subsidium ferre, rescue; subsidium comparare, make provision.

sabbisidō, -siderē, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [sub-sido], 3. v. n., sit down, remain behind.
ancorae tribunal, inter a!
Hence, inter see Swabian cido, cendo, succedo), cendo.
vance, assistance sarcus, [sub-sarto], 3. v. n., rush to support, rush to one's rescue, run to help, succor.
sudis, -is, [?], f., a stake.
Suessiones, -um, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of the Belgians between the Marne and the Isère. Their town Noviodunum was later called from them Soissons.
Suëvi (Suëbi), -orum, [Teutonic], m. plur., name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, Swabians.
Suëvus, -a, -um, [see Suevi], adj., Swabian.—As noun, a Swabian (man or woman).
suffició, -ficere, -ficis, -fictus, [sub-facio], 3. v. a., make in place of, supply the place of. Hence, suffice, be sufficient, be adequate.
suffrágium, -i, [akin to suffringo, break up], n., (a pastoral bone, or a potsherd, either used as a ballot), a ballot, vote.
Sugambrí (Sig-), -orum, [Teutonic], m., a German tribe between the Sieg and the Lippe.
suggestus, -tús, [sub-gestus, cf. suggeró], m., (earth brought up), a raised mound, a tribunal, a platform (whence the Roman commander addressed his troops).
suí (prop. gen. n. of suus), sibi sē, [sva], reflex. pron., himself, etc. —Often to be translated by the personal, he, etc., also each other.— Esp.: inter se, from, with, by, etc., each other; inter sese dant, give each other, exchange; per se, of himself, etc., (without outside influence or excitement); see ipse.
Sulla, -ae, [?], m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called the Dictator Sulla.

Sulpicius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp.: 1. Sulpicius Rufus, a legatus of Cæsar. —2. Servius Sulpicius Galba, a legatus of Cæsar.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, [as, cf. am, is], irr. v. n., be (exist).—Also, with weakened force, be (as a mere copula).—Phrases: erant duo itineria (there were); sibi esse in animo, that he had in mind, intended; pars quae est ad Hispaniam (lies); eorum est, they have; multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged).

summa, -ae, [F. of summus as noun], F., (the top), the sum, the total, the main part: summa omnium rerum, the whole amount; bellum, the general management, the chief control; imperium (the chief command); imperii bellique administrandi (the chief management, etc.); rerum consiliorumque (chief control); summa exercitūs, the main body, etc.; summam victoriae, the whole victory.

summus, see superior.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmpitus, [sub-emo, take], 3. v. a., take away, take, get, assume: supplicium de (in-lict, cf. capere); laborem (spend).

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, [sumptu- + osus], adj., expensive, costly.

sūmpitus, -tūs, [sub-emptus, cf. sumo], m., (a taking out of the stock on hand), expense.

superātus, -a, -um, p. p. of supero.

superbē [old case-form of superbus], adv., haughtily, arrogantly, with arrogance.

superior, see superus.

superō, āre, āvī, ātus, [superō-], 1. v. a. and n., overtop. Hence, get the upper hand of, overtop, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail, overmatch, survive (vita).

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [super-sedeo], 2. v. n., sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [super-sum], irr. v. n., be over and above, remain, survive.

superus, -a, -um, [†supe- (st. akin to sub, perh. same) + rus (cf. inferus)], higher, being above (of space only).—Compar. (in wider meanings), superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), past, before, superior, victorious.—Superl., supersumus [supra- (?) + imus (?)], highest.—Also, summus [sup- + mus], highest, the highest part of, the top of.—Fig., greatest, most important, very great, most perfect, perfect, supreme, most violent: ab summo, from the top, at the end; summis copiis, with all the forces, in force, with all one’s might.

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītūrus, [sub-peto, aim at], 3. v. n., (? but cf. sufficio and subvenio), be on hand, be supplied, be to be found, hold out.

supplēmentum, -i, [supplē- (as st. of suppleo, fill up) + mentum], n., a supply (to fill up), a reinforcement.

supplex, -icis, [sub-plex (PLIC
supplicatio, -onis, [supplicā- + tio], F., a supplication. - Esp., a thanksgiving (prayer to the gods upon any signal success, decreed by the senate).

suppliciter [supplici- (as st. of supplex) + ter], adv., in the guise of suppliants, as suppliants.

supplicium, -i, [supplic- (st. of supplex) + ium], N., a supplication, a sacrifice. - Also, esp., a punishment (usually of death).

supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [supporto], I. v. a., bring up, convey, supply, furnish.

supra [instr. (?) of superus], adv. and prep. with acc., above, before.

susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspense.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [sub(capio)], 3. v. a., take up, take upon one's self (sibi), assume, undertake, engage in, undergo.

suspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicion.

suspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicion.

suspičiō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [sub(specio)], 3. v. a. and n., look up, look up at, look askance at. Hence, suspect: suspecta nobis, an object of suspicion to us.

suspičiō (-spītiō), -onis, [sub-

(specio, cf. suspicio], F., suspicion, an imputation (timoris), an indication: dabat ... fugae (endeavor to excite a suspicion); neque abst suspicio, and there is a suspicion abroad, not without suspicion.


sustentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sustento.

sustentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sub(s)-tento (cf. sustineo)], I. v. a. and n., sustain, hold out: bella (hold out against); aegre is dies sustentatur, with difficulty they hold out for that day; pecore famem (keep from starvation by means of, etc.).

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [sub(s)-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., hold up under, withstand, endure, hold out, bear, stop, rein in (horses); sustinerē se, stand up.

sustulī, see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, [sua + ius, cf. se], adj. pron. (reflex., referring back to subject), his, hers, its, theirs, etc. - Sometimes emphatic, his own, etc., sua clementia, his characteristic clemency. - Often without noun, sui, their (his) men, countrymen, their friends; sua, their (his) possessions, their property: se suaque omnia, themselves and all they had.

T.

T., for Titus.

tabernāculum, -i, [taberna- + cum], N., a hut of boards, a tent.

tabula, -ae, [†tabō- (TA (stretch)

+ bus?) + la], F., a board. Hence, a record (written on a board covered with wax), a document, a list.

tabulātus, -a, -um, [tabulā- (as
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus, [tācō- (tāc + us)], 2. v. a. and n., be silent, be silent about, keep secret, conceal, say nothing about. — tacitus, p. p. as adj., silent, in silence.

tacitus, -a, -um, p. p. of taceo.

tālea, -ae, [perh. akin to tālus, ankle-bone], f., a rod, a bar.

tālis, -e, [TA (akin to that) + alis], adj. pron., such, so great.
	
tam [unc. case-form of TA (cf. quam, nam)], adv., so (as indicated in the context), so much.

tamen [unc. case-form of TA (locat.?)], adv., (introducing a thought opposed to some preceding concession expressed or implied), yet, nevertheless, still, however, for all that, notwithstanding, after all, at least.

Tamesis, -is, [Celtic], m., the Thames.

tametsi, [tamen (or tam?) -etsi], adv., (still although, anticipating the thought to which tamen properly belongs), although, though.

tandem [tam-dem, cf. idem], adv., (just so, even so?), at last. — In questions, to add emphasis, pray, tell me, or trans. only by emphasis.

tangō, tangere, tētigī, tāctus, [TAG], 3. v. a., touch, border on.

tantopere, see opus.

tantulus, -a, -um, [tantō- + lus], adj., so small, so little, so trifling.

tantum, see tantus.

tantummodo [tantum modo], adv., [so much only], only, merely, only just.
tēllum, -ī, [?], N., a weapon (of offence), a missile, a javelin, a spear.

temerārius, -a, -um, [t]temerō- + arius], adj., reckless, rash, hasty.

temerē [old case-form of t]temerō-rus], adv., blindly, without reason, without cause. Hence, recklessly, hastily.

temeritas, -tātis, [t]temerō- (hasty) + tas], F., blindness, thoughtlessness, recklessness, hasty temper.

tēmō, -onis, [?], M., a pole (of a wagon, etc.).

 temperantia, -ae, [temperant- + ia], F., self-control, prudence.

 temperatus, -a, -um, p. p. of tempero.

 temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [temper-(st. of tempus)], i. v. a., (divide), mix properly. Hence, control, control one’s self, refrain, restrain one’s self from (quin). — Esp., temperatus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., temperate, mild.

 tempestās, -tātis, [tempes- (st. of tempus) + tas], F., a season, weather. — Esp., bad weather, a storm, a tempest.

 temptō (tentō), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tentō-, p. p. of teneo, hold], i. v. a., handle. Hence, try, attempt, make an attempt upon, tempt: iter (try to force).

 tempus, -oris, [TEM (cut, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], N., (a cutting). — Esp., a division of time, a time, time (in general), a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis: tam necessario tempore, at so critical a moment; omni tempore, at all times, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; uno tempore, at once; tempore exclusus, cut off by the want of time.

 Tencterī (-theri), -ōrum, [Teutonic], m. plur., a branch of the Usipetes, which see.

 tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsus (tentus), [TEN + do (of unc. origin)], 3. v. a., stretch, stretch out. — Esp., stretch a tent, encamp.

 tenebrae, -ārum, [?; perh. akin to temere], F. plur., darkness.

 teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tensus (tensus), [ttenō- (TEN + us)], 2. v. a., hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: circuitus milia (occupy, extend). — Also, restrain, detain: tenere obsidibus (bind); se tenere, remain; memoria tenere, remember.

 tener, -era, -erum, [TEN + rus], adj., (stretched, thin), delicate, tender, young.

 tenuis, -e, [TEN + us, with accidental i, cf. gravis], adj., thin, delicate, feeble, meagre, poor.

 tenuitas, -tātis, [tenui- + tas], F., thinness, weakness, poverty.

 tenuiter [tenui- + ter], adv., thinly, slightly.

 ter [prob. mutilated case of tres], num. adv., three times, thrice.

 teres, -etis, [tere- (as st. of tero) + tis], adj., (rubbed), smooth and round, tapering.

 tergum, -ī, [?], N., the back: tergum, at once; tempore exclusus, cut off by the want of time.

 tenēri, -āre, -ānus, [Teutonic], m. plur., a branch of the Usipetes, which see.

 ter, -era, -erum, [TEN + rus], adj., (stretched, thin), delicate, tender, young.

 teres, -etis, [tere- (as st. of tero) + tis], adj., (rubbed), smooth and round, tapering.

 terra, -ae, [TERS (?) + a, cf. torreo, dry up], F., (the dry land), the earth, the land. — Also, a land, a
region. — Also, the ground. — Plur., the world.

Terasidius, -i, [Celtic], M., a Roman gentile (?) name. — Esp., Titu- Terasidius, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

terrēnus, -a, -um, [terra- (as if terrē-)] + nus, adj., of earth.

terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus, [†terrō (?)], 2. v. a., frighten, alarm, frighten off, deter.

territō, -āre, no perf. or p. p., [terrīto-], 1. v. a., frighten: metu (alarm with fears, keep alarmed).

terror, -ōris, [terr + or], M., fright, alarm, terror, dread, panic.

tertius, -a, -um, [prob. tri- + tius], num. adj., third (in order); pars (one-third).

 testimōntum, -i, [testā- (witness) + mentum], N., a will.

testimōniōn, -i, [testi- + mōnium], N., proof, evidence.

testis, -īs, [?], C., a witness.

testūdō, -inīs, [†testū- (akin to testa, tile) + dō], F., a tortoise.— Esp., a covered column (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another). — Also, a shelter (a small roof over attacking soldiers).

Teutomatus, -i, [Celtic], M., a king of the Nitiobriges.

Teutones, -orum, (-i, -orum), [Teu- tonic], M. plur., a great German people in Jutland who overran Gaul in B.C. 113 along with the Cimbri. They were defeated by Marius in B.C. 102 at Aquae Sextiae (Aix).

tīgnum, -i, [?], N., a log, a timber, a pile.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Tigurini.— M. pl., the Tigurini, a canton or division of the Helvetii.

timeō, -ēre, -ui, no p. p., [†timō- (cf. timidus)], 2. v. a. and n., be afraid, fear. — With dat., be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear); timentes, as noun, the timid, the fearful.

timīdē [old case-form of timidus], adv., with timidity: non timide, fearlessly.

timidus, -a, -um, [†timō- (cf. timeo) + dus], adj., cowardly, frightened, timid.

timor, -ōris, [tim- (cf. timeo) + or], M., alarm, fear, dread.

Titūrius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Titu- rius Sabinus, a legatus of Cæsar.

Titus, -i, [?], M., a Roman plā- nomen.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†toler- (tol + us)], 1. v. a. and n., (raise up), bear, endure, hold out, support: famem (keep from starvation). — Esp., sub- lātus, -a, -um, p. p., elated.

Tołosa, -ae, [Celtic], F., Toulouse, a city of the Volcæ Tectosages.

Tołōsätēs, -ium, [Tołosa- + tis], M. plur., the people of Toulouse.

 tormentum, -i, [torqu + mentum], N., (means of twisting), torture. — Also, an engine (for throwing missiles by twisted ropes). Hence, a shot from an engine, a missile.

 torreō, torrēre, torrui, tostus.
[torro- (cf. torrus, firebrand)], 2. v. a., scorch, burn.

tot [TA + ti], indecl. adj., so many.

totidem [toti- (cf. tot) + dem], indecl. adj., just as many, as many, the same number.

tötus, -a, -um, [TA + tus], adj., the whole, the whole of, all, entire.— Often translated by an adverb, entirely, throughout.

trabs (trabēs), trabis, [ʔ?], F., a beam, a timber.

trāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of traho.

trāditus, -a, -um, p. p. of trado.

trādō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [trando], 3. v. a., hand over, give up, give over, deliver up, surrender, commend, recommend.— Also, pass along, hand down, teach, communicate.

trādūcō, -dūcere, -düxi, -ductus, [trans-duco], 3. v. a., lead over (with two accusatives), lead across, bring over, lead through, transport, draw over, win over, transfer, lead (along).

trāgula, -ae, [ʔ?], F., a javelin (perh. with a barb, like a boat-hook) used by the Gauls.

trabhō, trahere, trāxi, trāctus, [trah (for †trag)], 3. v. a., drag, drag along, drag in, draw in.

trāiciō, -icere, -icēi, -iectus, [trans-iacio], 3. v. a., throw across, throw over.— Also, strike through, transfix, pierce.

trāiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of traicio.

trāiectus, -tūs, [trans-ictus, cf. traicio], M., (a throwing across), a passage, a route.

trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [trans-no], 1. v. a. and n., swim across.

trānquilītās, -tātis, [tranquilītō + tas], F., stillness, calm.

trāns [ʔ, akin to terebra, auger], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of.— In comp., over, across, through.

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, [trans-Alpes + inus], adj., Transalpine (lying beyond the Alps from Rome).

Trānscedō, scendere, -scendi, -scēnsūrus, [trans-scando], 3. v. n., climb across, board (ships).

Trānsdūcō, see traduco.

Trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itus, [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., go across, cross, pass over, go over, pass through, pass, migrate, pass by.

Trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [trans-ferō], irr. v. a., carry over, transfer, change the place of: ad se bellum (direct against, transferring from somewhere else).

Trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [trans-figo], 3. v. a., pierce through.

Trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [trans-fodio], 3. v. a., dig through.— Also, pierce through, wound (by stabbing).

Trāngredior, -gredī, -gressus, [trans-gradiōr], 3. v. dep., step across, step over, cross.

Trāngressus, -a, -um, p. p. of transgredior.

Trānsitus, -tūs, [trans-itus, cf. transeo], M., a crossing: difficultis transitus, of difficult passage, difficult to cross.

Trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transferō.

Trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, [trans-mare (sea) + inus], adj., foreign.
transmissus, -ūs, [trans-missus, cf. transporto], M., a crossing, a distance across: pari spatio transmissus, with a passage of the same length.

transmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of transporto.

transmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [trans-mitto], 3. v. a., send over.

transportātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transporto.

transportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [transporto], 1. v. a., bring over (with two accusatives), transport, carry over: milites navibus transportari (were crossing, being taken over).

Trānsrēnānus, -a, -um, [trans-]Rhenum + anus], adj., living across the Rhine. — Plur. as noun, the people across the Rhine.

trānstrum, -ī, [trans (trant-?) + trum], N., a thwart, cross-beam.

transversus, -a, -um, [p. p. of transvertō], as adj., across, athwart, oblique, transverse: fossa (a cross-ditch).

Trebius, -ī, [-?], M., a Roman gentile name. — See Gallus.

Trebonius, -ī, [-?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius Trebonius: 1, a Roman knight; 2, a legatus in Caesar's army.

trecenti, -ae, -a, [tri-centum], num. adj., three hundred.

tredēcim [tres-decem], indecl. num. adj., thirteen.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [trepidō-], 1. v. n., bustle about, hurry: totis trepidatur castris, there is a bustle throughout the camp.

trēs, tria, gen. trium, [st. tri-], num. adj., three.

Trēverī (-virī), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people in Gaul, originally German, on the Moselle. Sing., Trevir.

Triboces, -um (i, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasbourg.

tribūnus, -ī, [tribu-+ nus], M., (a chief of a tribe). With or without plebis, a tribune (one of several magistrates elected in the assembly of the plebs voting by tribes, to watch over the interests of the commons). — With militum or militaris, a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune.

tribūno, -uere, -uī, -utus, [tribu-], 3. v. a., (distribute by tribes), distribute. Hence, grant, render, assign, attribute: tantum dignitatis (pay such respect); magnopere virtuti (attribute it so very much to valor); rei publicae (grant out of regard to); plus libertati (have more regard for).

tribūtum, -ī, [N. p. p. of tribuō], N., a tribute.

triduō, -i, [tri-+ st. akin to dies, cf. biduum], N., three days' time, three days.

triennium, -ī, [trienni- (tri-annus) + ium], N., three years.

trigintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty.

trīnī, -ae, -a, [tri-+ nus], distrib. num. adj., three each, three sets of, three (of things in sets).

Trinobantes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of southern Britain, in the region of Colchester.

tripartitus (tripert-), -a, -um,
tri-partitus, p. p. of partio], adj., divided in three. — Esp., tripartitō, abl. as adv., in three divisions.

triplex, -icis, [tri-plex (PLIC as st.)], adj., threefold: acies (in three divisions or lines), triple.

triquetus, -a, -um, [tri-†quatrus [quattuor], cf. "three-square"], adj., three-cornered, triangular.

tristis, -e, [unc. root + tis], adj., sad, gloomy, dejected.

tristitia, -ae, [tristi- + tia], f., sadness, a gloomy state (of mind).

truncus, -i, [?] M., a trunk.

tū, tuī, [TVa], plur. vōs [VA], pron. 2d person, you (sing.), you (plur.).

tuba, -ae, [?] F., a trumpet (a straight instrument for infantry).

tueor, tuērī, tūtus (tuitus), [?], 2. v. dep., watch, guard, protect. See also tūtus.

tuli, perf. of fero.

Tulingi, -orum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe.

Tullius, -i, [Tullo- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — See Cicero.

Tullus, -i, [?], M., a Roman family name. — See Volcatus.

tum [prob. acc. of TA], adv., then (at a time indicated by the context), at this time: cum . . . tum, see cum; tum vero (then, with emphasis, of the decisive point of a narrative); tum maxime, just then, but especially.

 tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus, [tumultu-], 1. v. dep., make an uproar. — As impersonal, there is an uproar. — tumultuōsē [old case-form of tumultuosus], adv., with disorder, noisily.

tumultus, -tūs, [tumulō- (perh. reduced) + tus], M., (a swelling, an uprising?), an uproar, confusion, a commotion. — Esp., an uprising, a commotion (of revolt, or a war not regularly declared). — See servilis.

tumulus, -i, [†umō- (whence tumo, swell) + ius], M., (a swelling?), a hill, a mound.

tunc [tum-ce, cf. hic], adj., just then, then, at that time.

turma, -ae, [TUR (cf. turba, turbo) + ma], F., (a throng?), a squadron, a troop (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

Turones, -um (-i, -orum), [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Their city became afterwards Tours.

turpis, -e, [?], adj., ugly (in appearance). Hence, unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable.

turpiter [turpi- + ter], adv., dishonorably: turpiter factum, an inglorious deed.

turpitūdō, -inis, [turpi- + tudo], F., baseness. Hence, disgrace.

turrīs, -is, [?], F., a tower.

tūtē [old case-form of tutus], adv., safely, with safety.

tūtus, -a, -um, [p. p. of tueor], as adj., protected, safe, secure: victis nihil tutum, no safety for the conquered. — tūtō, abl. as adv., in safety, safely.

tuus, -a, -um, [TVa + ius], adj. pron., your, yours.
ubi [supposed to be quó (dat. of quó-) + bi], adv., where, in which: ubi ubi, in the place where. — Also, of time, when: ubi primum, as soon as.

Ubii, -ōrum, [Teutonic], m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they were afterwards settled.

ubique [ubi-que, cf. quisque], adv., everywhere, anywhere.

ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus, [?], 3. v. dep., punish (an injury, or the doer), avenge (an injury), take vengeance (absolutely).

ullus, -a, -um; gen. -ius, [unō- + lus], adj., a single (with negatives), any. — As noun (less common), anybody, any one.

ulterior, -us, -ōris, [comp. of ulterō, cf. ultra], adj., farther, more remote: ulteriores, those farther off. — Superl., ultimus, -a, -um, [ul- + timus], farthest: ultimi, those in the rear.

ultrā [unc. case, perh. instr. of ūlter], adv. and prep. with acc., beyond.

ultrō [dat. of ūlter (us)], adv., to the farther side, beyond: ultro citroque, this way and that, back and forth. — Esp. beyond what is expected or required, voluntarily, without provocation, freely, besides: sibi parcere cogi (in spite of himself); ad se venire (without his asking it).

ultus, -a, -um, p. p. of ulciscor.

ululātus, -ātus, [ululā- (yell) + tās], m., a yell, a loud cry.

umerus, -i, [?], m., the shoulder.

umquam (unquam), [supposed to be for cum-quam (cf. quisquam)], adv. (with neg.), ever: neque ... umquam, and never.

ūnā, [instr. (or abl.) of unus], adv., together, along with them, etc., at the same time, in the same place also.

unde [supposed to be for + cunde (cum, cf. umquam, + de, cf. inde)], adv., whence, from which.

undecim [unus-decem], indecl. num. adj., eleven.

undecimus, -a, -um, [unus-decimus], num. adj., eleventh.

undique [unde-que, cf. quiique], adv., from every side, from all quarters. — Also (cf. ab), on every side.

universus, -a, -um, [unō-versus], adj., all together, all (in a mass), entire.

ūnus, -a, -um; gen. -ius, [?], old oenus], adj., one, a single, the same, alone (as adv.): una celeritate (alone); unum se esse, that he was the only one; ad unum, to a man.

urbānus, -a, -um, [urbi- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a city. — Esp., of the city (Rome), in the city.

urbs, urbis, [?], f., a city. — Esp., the city (Rome).


ūrus, -i, [Teutonic], m., a wild ox.

Usipetes, -um, [Teutonic], m. pl., a German tribe who migrated from eastern Germany to the lower Rhine.
ütitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of usitor.

ūsitor, -āri, -ātus, [ṭusītō- (as if p. p. of ṭusō, freq. of utor)], i. v. dep., practise. — ātītātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pass. sense, used, practised, customary, much practised.

ūsque [unc. case of quō (cf. usquam) -que (cf. quisque)], adv., (everywhere), all the way, even to, to that degree (with eo ut), all the time, till, even till.

ūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of ātor.

ūsus, -ūs, [ūt (in ātor) + tus], m., use, practice, experience. Hence, advantage, service. — Esp.: usus est, it is necessary, there is need, is necessary (with personal subject); also, ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage; usu venire, happen, occur, turn out, come to pass (on trial, in practice); usum navium eripi, be deprived of all use of the ships; quae sunt usui, which are serviceable, are needed, are of use.

ut (ūtī), [supposed to be for quoti (quō- + ti? )], adv. and conj.: a. Interrog., how? — b. Rel., as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was. — Esp. with subjv., that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that. — Often with object-clause compressed in Eng. into some other form of speech: poenam ut, etc. (of being), etc.; id facere ut, do this, namely. — Esp.: ut semel, when once, as soon as; timere ut, fear that not; ut quisque est ... ita (in proportion as).

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. -trius [quō (cf. ubi) + terus (reduced), cf. alter], adj.: a. Interrog., which (of two)? : uter utri, which to the other. — b. Relative, whichever (of two), the one who (of two). — Neut., utrum, adv., (which of the two), whether.

uterque, utra-, utrum-; gen. utrius-, [uter-que, cf. quisque], adj., both: medium utriusque, between the two.

— Plur., of sets: utraque castra, both camps; utrique, both parties. — Rarely of single things: utraque, both women.

ūtī, see ut.

ūtilibs, -e, [tuti- (st. akin to ātor) + lis], adj., useful, of use, helpful.

ūtilibstās, -tātis, [utili- + tas], f., advantage, benefit, service.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, [ʔ?, old oetor, akin to aveo? ], 3. v. dep., avail one’s self of, use, exercise, practise, enjoy, adopt, employ, have (in sense of enjoy or employ), possess, show (qualities which one exercises), occupy (a town), navigate (a sea): pace (remain at peace). — Esp. with two nouns, employ as, have as, and the like: aliquo adiutore (have one’s services). — usus, p. p., often merely with.

utrimque [unc. case of uter (cf. interim) + que (cf. quisque)], adv., on both sides.

utra, see uter.

uxor, -ōris, [ʔ? ], f., a wife.
V, for quinque, five.

Vacalus, -i, [?], m., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth.

vacātiō, -onis, [vacā- + tio], f., freedom (from something), exemption, immunity.

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [prob. *vacō- (cf. vacuus)], i. v. n., be vacant, be free from, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vacuus, -a, -um, [prob. vac (empty) + vus], adj., free, unoccupied, vacant, destitute of (ab or abl.).

vadum, -i, [vad (in vado, go) + um], n., a ford.—Plur., a ford, shoals, shallows: vado, by fording.

vagātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vagor.

vāgīna, -ae, [?], f., a sheath.

vagor, -āri, -ātus, [vagū-, roving], i. v. dep., roam about, roam, wander.

vales, -is, [?], f., a valley.

vāllum, -i, [n. of vallus], n., a palisade, a rampart (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), a wall.

vacātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vaco.

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [prob. *vacō- (cf. vacuus)], i. v. n., be vacant, be free from, be unoccupied, lie waste.

Vacalus, -i, [akin to valeo], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp.: 1. Gaius Valerius Flaccus, proprōtōr in Gaul, B.C. 83.—2. Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a legatus under some unknown proprōtōr in Gaul.

He was defeated and killed in Aquitania.—3. Gaius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul who received the Roman citizenship prob. from No. 1.—4. Gaius Valerius Procillus, and (5) Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus, sons of No. 3, who fought for Caesar in the war against Vercingetorix.

Valtiācūs, -i, [?], m., a noble of the Hācūi.

valētūdō, -inis, [prob. valent- + tudo], f., health.—Also, ill health.

vallēs, -is, [?], f., a valley.

vāllum, -i, [n. of vallus], n., a palisade, a rampart (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), a wall.

valēs, -is, [?], f., a valley.

Vangiones, -um, [Teutonic], m. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms.

varietās, -tātis, [variō- + tas], f., diversity, variety: pellium (different colors).

variōs, -a, -um, [prob. akin to variō, bent, bent], adj., various, diverse.

vārstūs, -a, -um, p. p. of vasto.

vastō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [vastō-].

vāster, -a, -um, [?], adj., waste.—Also, immense, vast.

vaticinātiō, -onis, [vaticinā- (foretell) + tio], f., divination.

-ve [?], conj. enclit. or.

vectigal, -alis, [n. of vectigalis], n., an impost, tribute.—Plur., revenues (of a state).
vectigālis, -e, [vectigō- (vectis, akin to veho, + unc. term, cf. castigo) + alis], adj., tributary: vectigalis habent, make tributary.

vectōrius, -a, -um, [vector- (cf. veho, carry) + ius], adj., carrying: navigia (transports).

vehementer [vehement- (violent) + ter], adv., violently, severely, strongly, hotly, exceedingly.

vel [prob. imperat. of volo, wish], conj., or: vel ... vel, either ... or. — As adv., even.

Velānius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Velānius, a tribune of the soldiers in Caesar’s army.

Veliocassēs, -ium, (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe of Normandy, about Rouen.

Vellaunodūnum, -i, [Celtic], N., a town of the Senones.

Vellāviī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of Gaul in the Cevennes mountains.

vēlōcitās, -tātis, [veloci- + tas], F., swiftness, fleetness, speed.

vēlōciter [veloci- + ter], adv., swiftly, quickly.

vēlōx, -ōcis, [st. akin to volo (cf. colonus) + cus (reduced?)], adj., swift, quick.

vēlum, -i, [?], cf. vexillum], N., a curtain, a veil. — Also, a sail.

velut [vel-ut], adv., even as, justas: velut si, just as if, as if, no less than if.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [venā- (hunt) + tio], F., hunting, the chase. — Plur., hunting, hunting excursions.

vēnātōr, -ōnis, [venā- (hunt) + tor], m., a hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [venum do], 3. v. a., put to sale, sell.

Venēlli (Unelli), -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Normandy.

Venēti, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Brittany.

Venetia, -ae, [venētō- + ia (f. of -ius)], F., the territory of the Veneti.

Veneticus, -a, -um, [Venetō- + cus], adj., of the Veneti.

venia, -ae, [?], F., indulgence, favor, pardon: potentibus veniam dare, grant their request.

veniō, venire, vēnī, ventūrus, [GAM (for gvenio)], 4. v. n., come, go: in spem (have hopes). — See also usu.

ventītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [as if ventītō- (from ventō, old freq. of venio)], 1. v. n., come often, visit.

ventus, -i, [?], m., the wind: vento se dare, run before the wind.

vēr, vēris, [for ćvasar, vas, burn], N., spring.

Veragrī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic people of the Alps, on the upper Rhone.

Verbigenus, -i, [Celtic], m., a canton of the Helvetii.

verbum, -i, [?], cf. morbus], N., a word: pluribus verbis, at great length; animos verbis confirmavit (with encouraging words); facit verba, speak for, etc.; magna contumelia verborum, with most insulting words.

Vercassivellaunus, -i, [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, the uncle of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix, -igis, [Celtic], m., a noble of the Arverni. Being
chosen king, he made a stout resistance to Caesar, but was finally overpowered by the Romans and surrendered by his followers.

vereor, -erī, -itus, [prob. ῥerō-(akin to wary)], 2. v. dep., fear, be afraid, dread. — veritus, p. p. in pres. sense, fearing.

vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [?] 3. v. n., incline, slope, look towards (of an exposure), lie towards.

vergobretus, -i, [Celtic], M., Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Haedui.

vērisimilis, -e, [veri similis], adj., (like the truth), probable, likely.

veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of vereor.

vērō [abl. of vērus], adv., in truth, in fact, certainly. — With weakened force, but, on the other hand, however. — Often untranslatable, expressing an intensive (emphatic) opposition, or pointing to the main time, circumstance, fact, or agent in a narrative.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [versō-], 1. v. a., turn (this way and that), deal with (some one or some thing). — Esp. in pass. as dep., turn one’s self, engage in, be, fight (as indicated by the context).

versus, -a, -um, p. p. of verto.

versus (versum), [orig. p. p. of verto], adv. and prep. with acc., towards, in the direction of: quoque versus (or as one word), in every direction, all about.

versus, -ūs, [vert + tus], M., a turning. — Esp., a verse (of poetry, where the rhythm turns and begins anew), a line.

Verticō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., one of the Nervii.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, [vert], 3. v. a., turn: terga (turn and flee).

Verudoctius, -i, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Helvetii.

vērus, -a, -um, [? ver (in vereor) + us], adj., (?, seen, visible), true. — Neut. as noun, the truth: reperit esse vera, found the truth to be. — Also, just, right. — See also vero.

verūtum, -i, [veru (a spit) + tum], N., a spear (of a light kind), a dart.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon.

vesper, -erī, [?], M., the evening.

vester, -atra, -trum, [ves- + ter (us)], poss. adj. pron., your, yours.

vestigium, -i, [vestigō- (cf. vestigo) + ium], N., the footstep, the footprint, a track. — Esp.: e vestigio, forthwith (from one’s tracks?); eodem vestigio, in the same spot; in illo vestigio temporis, at that instant of time.

vestīō, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -ītus, [vestī-], 4. v. a., clothe, cover. — Pass., clothe one’s self with (with thing in abl.), wear.

vestis, -īs, [ves (cover) + tis], F., clothing, garments.

vestītus, -tūs, [vestī- + tus], M., clothing, garments.

veterānum, -a, -um, [veterā- (as if st. of vetero) + nus], adj., veteran (long in service).

vetō, vetāre, vetūi, vetitus, [st. akin to vetus], 1. v. a., forbid.
vetus, -eris, [?], adj., old, former, of long standing: milites (old soldiers, veterans).

vexātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vexo.

vēxillum, -ī, [?, apparently a dim. of velum], N., a flag: sub vexillo, in a detachment, without any signa, which were carried only in the regular corps.

vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [vexō- (as if p. p. of veho)], I. v. a., (carry this way and that), harass, annoy, commit depredations on, overrun (a country), ravage (lands).

via, -ae, [for veha? (veh- + a)], F., a road, a way, a route, a march: tridui viam, three days' journey.

viātor, -tōris, [viā- (as st. of viō) + tor], M., a traveller.

vicēnī, -ae, -a, [akin to viginti], distrib. num. adj., twenty (apiece).

vicēsimus, -a, -um [akin to viginti], num. adj., twentieth.

viciēs (-ēns), [akin to viginti], num. adv., twenty times: vicies centum milia passuum, two thousand miles.

vicinītās, -tātis, [vicinō- (neighboring) + tas], F., neighborhood, vicinity. — Plur., neighbors.

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), change, turn: in vicem, in turn.

victimā, -ae, [akin to vinco, perh. going back to the sacrifice of prisoners], F., a victim, a sacrifice.

victor, -tōris, [vīc (in vinco) + tor], M., a victor. — Often as adj., victorious, triumphant.

victōria, -ae. [victor- + ia], F., victory, success (in war).

victus, -a, -um, p. p. of vinco.

victus, -tūs, [vīc (?) (cf. vīxi + tus)], M., living, life. — Also, means of living, food: domus victusque, intercourse, life in common.

vīcus, -ī, [vīc (enter) + us], M., (a dwelling), a village (a collection of dwellings).

videō, vidēre, vidi, visus, [vid, perh. through a noun-st.], 2. v. a., see, observe, examine (reconnoitre), take care (see that). — In pass., be seen, appear, seem, seem best.

Vienna, -ae, [Celtic], F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne.

vigintī [dvi- (st. of duo) + form akin to centum (perh. the same)], indecl. num. adj., twenty.

vīmen, -inis, [root (or st.) vī (twine) + men], N., a twig (flexible, for weaving), osier.

vincīō, vincire, vinxi, vincitus, [perh. akin to vinco], 4. v. a., bind, fetter.

vincō, vincere, vici, victus, [vīc], 3. v. a. and n., conquer, defeat, prevail : naturam (outdo).

vincus, -a, -um, p. p. of vincio.

vinculum (vinclum), -ī, [vincō- (st. akin to vincio, perh. primitive of it) + lum (N. of lus)], N., a chain: ex vinculis, in chains, see ex: in vincula, into prison, into confinement.

vindecō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [vindic- (defender), I. v. a., claim, claim one’s rights against, defend: in aliquem (punish); Galliam in libertatem...
vinea, -ae, [vinīō + ea (f. of -eus)], F., a vineyard, a vine arbor. Hence, a shed (defence, for a besieging party, made like an arbor).

vīnum, -ī, [?], N., wine.

violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], I. v. a., abuse, violate (a sacred object), lay waste: hospites (injure, a guest being held sacred).

vīr, vīrī, [?], m., a man, a husband.

vīrēs, see vis.

vīrgō, -inis, [?], F., a maiden, a maid, a virgin.

vīrgultum, -ī, [†virgula- (?) + tum, cf. tumultus], N., only in pl., shrubbery, a thicket, bushes (cut for military purposes).

Vīridōmārus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Hādui.

Vīridōvīx, -īcis, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Venelli.

vīrītim [vir + itim, as if acc. of verbal in -tis], adv., man by man (of distribution), to each individual.

Vīromandui, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Picardy.

vīrūs, -tūtis, [virō- (reduced) + tus], F., manliness, valor, prowess, courage. — Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtus (with gen.), thanks to. — Plur., virtutes, merits, good qualities.

vīs, vis (?), [?], F., force, might, violence. — Esp.: vi cogere (forcibly); vim facere, use violence; vim hostium prohibere (violent attack); vi fluminis oppressi, overcome by the violent current. — Plur., strength, force, powers, bodily vigor.

vīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of video.

vīta, -ae, [root of vivo + ta], F., life, the course of life.

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?; vita-?], I. v. a., (escape with life, live through?), escape, avoid, dodge.

vītrum, -ī, [?], N., woad (a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue).

vīvō, vívere, vīxi, vīctus, [vic (vigor?), cf. victus], 3. v. n., live: lacte (live on).

vīvus, -a, -um, [vīgor (?) + us], adj., alive, living.

vīx [poss. vic (in vinco)], adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely. — Also, of time, hardly (. . . when).

Vocātēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

Voccīō, -onis, [Celtic], M., a king of Noricum.

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [voc- (st. of vox)], I. v. a., call by name, call, summon, invite.

Vocentīi, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe between the Isère and the Durance.

Volcae, -ārum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Gaul in the Roman province. — See Tectosages and Arecomici.

Volcānus (Vul-), -i, [?], M., Vulcan (the god of fire and metals).

Volcātius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius Volcatius Tullus, a young man in Cæsar’s suite.

volgus (vul-), -ī, [VOLG (press) + us], N., the crowd, the common people, the mass: in volgus efferri,
be spread abroad; militum (the common soldiers, the army).—vol-
gō, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, everywhere.

volnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vol-
nero.

volnerō (vul-). -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [volner-], r. v. a., wound, hurt.

volnus (vul-), -eris, [prob. akin to vello, pluck], N., a wound.

volō, velle, volui, [vol], irr. v. a. and n., wish, be willing, want: velle aliquem aliquid, want one for anything, want anything of one; quid sibi vellent, what they wanted, or meant, or intended to do, what business they had.

voltus (vul-), -tūs, [vol + tus], M., (wish, expression of counte-
nance), look, countenance, face: vol-
tūs fingere, compose one's counte-
nance, conceal one's feelings; alicuius voltum ferre, dare to look in one's face.

voluntārius, -a, -um, [volent- (p. of volo) + arius], adj., voluntary. — As noun, a volunteer.

voluntās, -tātis, [volent- (p. of volo) + tas], F., willingness, good-
will, consent, desire, will, approval, an inclination: voluntates alienare (good-will).

voluptās, -tātis, [volup- (akin to volo) + tas], F., pleasure, delight.

Volusēnus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., Gaius Volu-
senus Quadratus, a military tribune in Čæsar's army.

Vorēnus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., Lucius Vor-
nus, a centurion of Čæsar's army.

vōs, see tu.

Vosegus, -ī, [Celtic], M., the Vosges Mountains, running north-
erly from the Jura along the Rhine.

voveō, vovere, vōvī, vōtus, [?], 2. v. a., vow, make a vow.

vōx, vōcis, [voc as st.], F., a voice, a word, an expression, a shout. — Collectively, cries, words, talk.— Plur., talk, reports: nulla vox au-
dita (not a word); militum vocibus carpi (taunts); concursu ac vocibus cogi (outcries).

X, for decem, ten.

XX, for viginti, twenty.
PLEASE RETURN TO
MONTCLAIR HIGH SCHOOL
MONTCLAIR, N. J.